

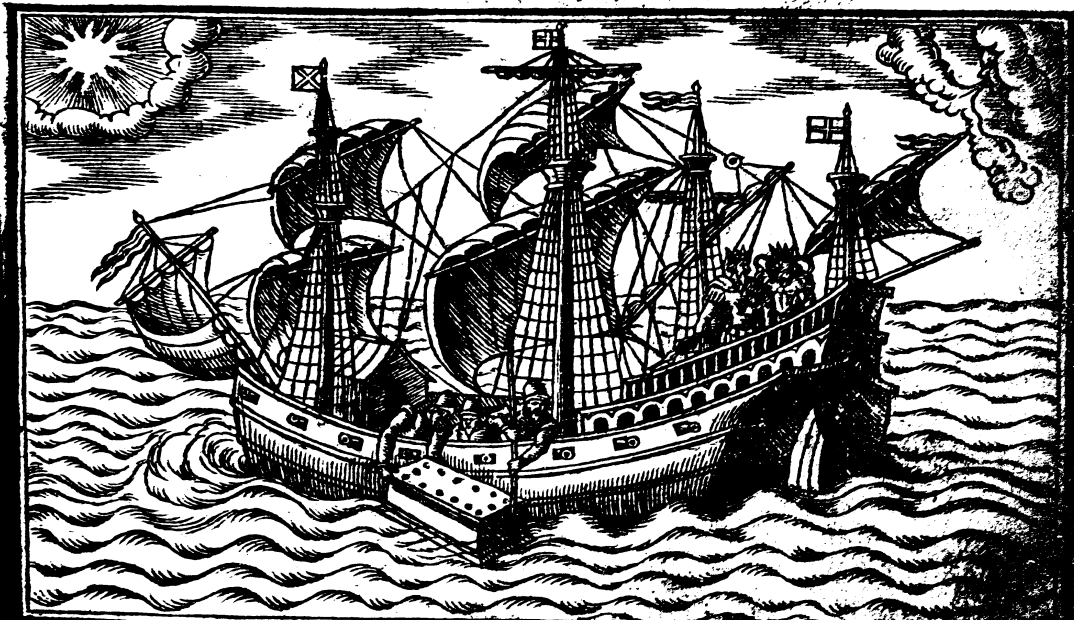
C. 89. h. 11.

*1544*

THE  
ANCIENT, FAMOUS  
And Honourable History of  
Amadis de Gaule.

DISCOVERING THE ADVENTURES,  
Loves and Fortunes of many Princes, Knights and  
Ladies, as well of Great Brittain, as of many  
*other Kingdoms beside, &c.*

Written in French by the Lord of Effars, Nicholas de Herberay,  
Ordinarie Commisarie of the Kings Artillerie, and his  
*Lieutenant thereof, in the Countie and government  
of Picardie, &c.*



Printed at London by NICHOLAS OKES, 1619.



TO THE RIGHT HO-  
NORABLE, SIR PHILLIP HERBERT,  
Knight of the *Bath* at the Coronation of our  
dread Soueraigne King *James*; Lord Baron of *Sherland*;  
Earle of *Mountgomerie*, and Knight of the most  
*Noble Order of the Garter*, &c.



Auing already presented your Ho-  
nour, with the Third and Fourth  
Bookes of this famous History of  
*Amadis de Gaule*, and standing enga-  
ged by my promise, to translate so  
many more of them, as time and  
your noble acceptance shall thereto  
enable me; finding also those two  
imprinted parts, to appeare as a bo-  
dy without an head, because these former Bookes are  
the guide and direction to them all: I haue now finished  
them, and therefore make a fresh representation of them  
all foure to your Honour. The fift, sixt, seuenth and eight  
Bookes (being already in good forwardnesse of translation)  
with as much expedition as possible may bee, and your wor-  
thy encouragement for their proceeding; shall very shortly  
present themselves before you, in the best habit that mine a-  
bility can put vpon them.

It is not vnknowne to your honour, that the manifolde im-  
pressions of this history, the Bookes thereof being now come  
to be fife and twentie in number, and printed in places farre  
distant a sunder: through neglect in the publishers, or defect  
of the Bookes which are perfect indeede, many false volumes  
haue flowne abroad, and the world thereby very much abu-  
sed.



fed. But by the helpe of that worthy Lady, I haue had such Bookes as were of the best editions, and them (as I haue already begun) I intend to follow.

In the meane time (Noble Lord) accept of these foure Bookes I beseech you, and defend them from the venomous tongue of foule mouthde detraction, burying all my imperfections heerein committed, in the vrgent importunitie of that worthy Lady, by whom I haue thus boldly presumed, & the rest will beare me blamelesse against your least mislike.

*Your Honours in all duty.*

A. M.

THE



# THE FIRST BOOKE OF AMADIS DE GAVLE.

Discourſing the Aduentures and Loue of many  
*Knights and Ladies, as well of the Realme of great Brittain,*  
as ſundry other Countries, &c.

## CHAP. I.

*Of whence the Kings Garinter and Perion were, and the Combate betwene Perion and two Knights, as alſo how he fought with a Lyon that deuoured a Hart in their preſence: with the ſucceſſe following thereon.*



Soone after the paſſion of our Sauour Ieſus Chriſt, there reigned in little Brittain a King named *Garinter*, enſtricted in the lawe of veritie, and highly adorned with many laudable vertues: hauing a Noble Ladye to his Wife, by whome he had two beautifull Daughters. The eldeſt (beeing married with *Lauguines* King of *Scotts*,) was commonly called the *Lady of the Garland*: becauſe the King her Huſband, taking great pleaſure to behold the golden treſſes of her haire, would haue them no otherwiſe couered then with a faire circle or chaplet of flowers: *Lauguines* enioying by his Queene, *Agrates* and *Mabils*, of whom this preſent

History often maketh mentiō. The other yongest Daughter to this King *Garinter*, was named *Elisena*, very much excellling the eldeſt in beauty, & though ſhe had been oftentimes deſired in marriage, by ſundry Princes and great Lords: yet as then ſhe had no wil thereto, but for her ſolitary and holy life, was commonly called of euery one, *The loſt Virgin in deuotion*, conſidering that in a perſon of ſuch eſtate, endued with ſuch excellent beauty, and ſolicited by ſo many great Princes, this ſtrict religion was not conuenient. King *Garinter* being ſumewhat in yeeres, for recreation tooke pleaſure in Hunting, whē at one time amōg other it happened, that hauing appointed a meeting neere one of his Cities called *Alma*, a Hart was put forth, in purſuite whereof himſelfe was dred very farre: wherefore being

he had lost both his people and game, commending himselfe to God, he began to make sumwhat the more hast, til hauing trauesed first one way and then another, at the very entrance into a Wood, he saw two Knights fighting against one. Soone had he knowledge of the twaine, in that they were his owne Subiects, of whome he had heard sundry complaintes: but slender order was taken in the cause, by reason of the great alliance they had in the Country, as also for that they kept themselves still in this great Forrest. Who the third should be, he meruailed, and for that time he so well liked the valour of the one Knight, as he feared not what might happen to the other twaine: wherefore he withdrew himselfe a little further into the Forrest, because he might the better beholde the issue of the fight, which sorted to such effect, as by the strength of the one Knight, both the other were vanquished and slaine. The King beholding what had happened, came forth of the Wood, when the Knight seeing one so neere him alone, thus demanded. Gentle Sir, what Country is this, where Knights errant are thus assayed by robbers and theeves; Let this be no wonder to you Sir, answered the King, for this Country yeelds as others doe, both good and bad: as for them that thus assaulted you, they haue done diuers & villainous outrages, not only in this Wood, which hath been their accustomed receptracle: but likewise in many other places, and chiefly against their Lord & King, who could not execute iustice on them, in that they were allyed to the best houses in this Realme. And where may I find the King you speake of; said the Knight, for I am come to seeke

him, to bring him newes from a great friend of his. Happen what shall, answered *Garinter*, I will tell ye so much as I know: vnderstand then for a truth, that I am the man you aske for. At these words the Knight tooke off his Helmer, and throwing downe his Sheeld, ran to embrace him: saying, that he was King *Perion of Gaule*, who of long time had been desirous to know him. Greatly were these Kings contented, that their meeting was in such fortunate manner, and conferring together on many matters, they tooke the way through the Wood toward the Citie, where they thought to find the Hunters: but suddenly a Hart ranne before them, which with some danger had escaped the toyles: wherefore the Princes galloped after the Deere, hoping to kil it ere they gaue ouer. But it fell out otherwise, for in the pursuite, as they came into the thickest of the Wood, a chafed Lyon ran before them: which in their sight seized on the Hart, and hauing with his strong pawes torne it in peeces, turned againe, when running furiously against the two Princes, he watched his aduantage, as if they had angered him, which the King *Perion* perceiuing, in laughter saide. You shall not be such a glutton, maister Lyon, but you shall leave vs parte of the game. And herewith presently he alighted, because his Horse would not come nere the beast, so drawing his Swoord, and clasping his sheeld on his arme, not regarding the cries of King *Garinter*, who laboured to dissuade him from the attempt, he marched to the Lyon, who for defence of his pray, ran eagerly against the King, and so betwene them began a new warre. But the Lyon being quicke and nimble,

nimble, did so much as he got his enemy vnder him, yet was the Kinges heart so good, that albeit he was in very great perill of his person, he was not abashed one iotte: but turned himselfe in such sorte, as he thrust his Swoord into the belly of the beast, which at that instant fel downe dead before him. The King seeing what had happened, was so overcome with meruailling at this deed as he said within him selfe. In sooth it is no shame to renoune one of the best Knights in the worlde. In this meane while, the rest of the traine came thither, who for to finde their king, had searched long time vp and downe the Forrest. Then was their pray and Venison laid on two horses, and caryed to the Citie, where the Queene was immediately aduertised of king *Perions* arriual, and therefore made speedy prouision of all things necessarye, to welcome and feaste so great a Prince. At their coming they found Dinner ready, and the tables couered: wherefore (after the welcomes and reuerences done on all sides) the two kinges sat downe, so did the Queene, and faire *Elisena* her Daughter. Now had loue secretly ambushed himselfe, because he had long time assayed this yong Princessse, without any power to ouercome her: but now he saw her so vnprovidid, as at this instant hower he might touch her to the quick, and thence forwarde hold a sure conquest of her. The like in king *Perion*, who thought of nothing but a friendly entertainment, yet when he cast his eye on the Lady *Elisena*, & she in like sorte vpon him: by vertue of this pearcing regarde, her wonted chaste and holie life, had no longer power to priuledge this Princessse, but she was wonderfully thralld

in extreame loue to this yong king, and he in selfe same manner to her, albeit till that hower, he had his hart francke and free, without subiection in any other place. In this sorte during dinner tyme, they found themselves (for each other) in a strange opinion, till the tables were with-drawn, where the Queene would departe to her Chamber, wherefore *Elisena* arose to follow her: but as she stepped forward, she let fall a Ring which she had put in her bosome when she washt her handes, and so had forgot it, by reason of this new loue, that made her thinke on other matters. Now was king *Perion* somewhat neer her, and desirous to let her know how willingly he would be hers, stooped downe as soone as she to take it vp, and so right did their handes meete together, as the king had the meane to close her fingers, yet feigning to take vp her Ring. Wherevpon this amorous Lady began to change colour, and (notwithstanding) by a sweete regard humbly thanked him. Ah Madame, quoth he, this shall not be the last seruice I hope to doe you, for my whole life time shalbe employed to obey you. Constrained was *Elisena* (without answering him) to follow the Queen her mother, so surprized & altered, as very neere she had forgotten her selfe: so that not able to endure this new fire of loue (which so sudden & vehemently had conquered her wonted chaste and choice determination:) with the teares in her eyes, and her hart full of anguish, she went and discovered the same to a faithful Damocelloffers, named *Darsolletta*, praying her most instantly to counsell her, how she might safely know, if King *Perion* had not elsewhere placed his loue, and whether the affectionate semblance he had

showne her, might proceed from force of that impression, which had so lately seized on her hart. The Damofell meruailing at this so sudden mutatio, & in a person thought so farre from any such matter: taking (neuerthelesse) compassion on her piteous teares, thus answered. I see well Madame, that according to the extreame passion, wherewith the tirant Loue hath tormented ye, he hath left no place in your iudgement, where counsell or reason may be entertained: and therefore following not what I ought for your seruice, but the will I haue to obey you, I shall do what you haue commaunded me, by the most honest meanes that my little discretio and great desire I haue to please ye, will permit me. So without any more words, *Darioletta* went to the Chamber where King *Perion* was, and at the doore she found his Squire, who brought other garments for his Lord to weare, which the Damofell tooke of him. For (quoth she) it is necessary that I performe this seruice, and you (gentle Squire) may goe if you please about your other affaires. The Squire thinking it was the custome of the Country, made no deniall, but willingly suffered her to take the Garments, whereupon she entred the Chamber, where she found the King laid on his bed: who seeing her enter, and knowing well it was she, whom he had seene to conferre with *Elisena* most priuately, & in whom (aboue al other) she put chiefest trust, he thought that she wold not come in that sort to him, without bringing him some remedy for his mortall passions, for which cause, all in trembling, he said. Faire friend, what demand ye; If it may so like you my Lord, quoth she, I haue brought other

garments for ye. Much rather would I, said the King, that you had brought some comfort to my hart, which at this present is left & despoyled of all pleasure. As how my good Lord; answered the Damofell. Thus quoth he. When first I arriued in this country, I was free from all passions, and doubted nothing but of aduentures that might happen to Knights errand: but now (I know not in what fort) entring this Court, by some one of your Ladyes, haue I receiued a deadly wound, for which if you (faire Damofell) know how to giue me any remedy, your recompence shall be so good, as you shall repute your selfe beholding to me. Certes, quoth she, I should imagine my selfe happy, by doing seruice to so high a personage, and so good a Knight as you are, if I could tell wherein. If you wil promise me said the King, as you are a loyall Damofell, not to discouer me but where it is requisite, I shall tell ye. Say boldly your pleasure, answered *Darioletta*, for by me (without your liking) it shall not be known to any. Damofell and my friend, quoth he, I giue you to vnderstand, that at what time I beheld the excellent beauty of *Elisena* your Mistressse, I became extreamely tormented with her loue, and in such sorte, as I cannot excuse my selfe from death, if I find not remedy for my greefe the sooner. *Darioletta* (who knew thorowly the mind of the Princeesse) hearing what the King had saide, returned him this answer. My Lord, if you will assure me by the faith of a King, which before all other things ought to be kept, as a person most bounden to vertue, and as a loyall Knight, who ought (as is saide) to suffer much, for maintenance of right and

and equitie, that you will take to wife my Lady *Elisena* when time shall serue: right soone will I bring ye to the place, where not only your hart shall be satisfied but hers likewise, who (it may be) is in as much or more thought and dolour, then you are, by reason of the new anguish that toucheth her thorow the selfe same meanes. But if you do not (my Lord) what I haue said, you shall not there recouer her, nor shall I haue other cause then to thinke, that your words proceeded from no loyall hart, nor to credit anything you say hereafter. The King whome loue had already depriued of liberty, to vnite him selfe with *Elisena*, (to the end that hee might be adorned with the great & gracious fruite, which afterwarde happened, as shall be recited vnto ye,) tooke his Swoord, and setting his right hand on the Crosse thereof, saide these wordes. I sweare by this Crosse, and on this Sword, wherewith I receiued the order of Knighthood, to do what you (faire Damofell) shall commaund mee, at all times, and when soeuer your mistressse *Elisena* shall be thereto aduised. Be you then frolicke & merrie, answered *Darioletta*, for I shall likewise accomplish what I haue promised. And at that instant shee returned to the Princeesse, declaring to her what shee had concluded with king *Perion*, wherewith the amorous Lady was so pleased, as she had vtterly lost her former countenance, and incessantly embracing *Darioletta*, thus demaunded. My deere friend, when will the hower come, that I shall holde betwene mine armes, my Lord whom thou hast giuen me? I shall tel ye answered the Damofell, you know that in the Chamber where King *Perion* lodgeth, there is a doore on the

Garden side, which your father sundry times vsed for his recreation, & which at this present is covered with the cloth of Arras, but I haue the key thereof: wherfore at night when euery one is at rest, we may easily there enter vnto one of my, and when needfull time of returne cometh, my selfe will call ye. When *Elisena* heard this deuice, she was highly contented therewith, yet breathing forth a sigh, she said. Alas my faithfull friend: how shall we bring this to passe? seeing my father is determined to lodge with King *Perion*: & if he perceiue vs, we shall be both in very great danger. Refer that doubt to me, answered *Darioletta*, & I shall easily provide for this matter: wherupon for this time they brake off conference, because the tables were covered for Supper. And in like manner as the feasting began in the morning, so now it continued, till the tables being voyded, each one prepared himself to rest. Now a little before, *Darioletta* went to King *Perions* Squire, & thus saide to him. Gentle Squire, & my friend I pray ye tel me in good faith, whether you be a Gentleman or no, why aske ye? answered the Squire. For the desire I haue, said the Damofell, to know one thing of you which I entreat ye (by the faith you owe to God and to the King your Maister) not to hide from me. By Saint Mary, quoth he, I will tell you what you please to aske, provided, that it be not to the damage of my Lord. Herein, saide the Damofell will I consent with ye, for I would not demand any thing of you that should giue him displeasure, nor were it reasonable that you should acquaint me with any such matter: but I desire to know, who is the Lady he loueth most perfectly. The king my Maister,

ster, quoth the Squire, loueth all ingenerall, and I assure ye, that I know no one, to whom he beareth such affection as you speake of.

While they were thus talking, the King *Garinter* came, who seeing *Darioletta* conferring with King *Perions* Squire, demanded what shee had to do with the Gentleman? In sooth my Lord quoth she, he telleth me that the King his Maister is wont to lye alone, and therefore I thinke he loueth not to haue any company. When *Garinter* vnderstood that, he went presently to King *Perion*, saying, My noble Brother, there are certaine affaires suddenly befallen me, and likewise I must rise somewhat early in the morning, which hath made me thinke, that (not to trouble you) the best way is, that I breake company from lodging with ye. My Lord, answered king *Perion*, do as shall seeme best to your liking, this answer appeared to king *Garinter*, conformable with that the Da-

mosell had said, wherefore right soone he commaunded his bed to be fetcht from king *Perions* Chamber. When *Darioletta* heard thereof, shee imagined their affaires would fall out the better, and therefore returned to *Elisena*, acquainting her with all that had passed betweene the two kinges. In good faith quoth she, I now beleeeue, that seeing God hath granted so good a beginning, our enterprise, which at this present seemeth a great sin, will hereafter redound to his seruice: but tell me what wee shall do? for the great ioy which I haue, hath taken from me the most healthfull parte of my iudgement. Madam, said *Darioletta*, this night will wee execute what we haue determined, seeing the doore (whereof you knowe) is certainly open. To my selfe I keep it, answered *Elisena*, & to you only I commit the charge, to prouide, when the hower shall permit: and so they remained attending for the fauourable time.

## CHAP. II.

*How the Princesse Elisena and her Damosell Darioletta, went to the Chamber where King Perion was lodged.*



He time being come, when each one most commonly betake themselves to rest: *Darioletta* (who for the contentment of her Mistresse, had vsed extreame diligence) came and tolde her. Madame, now is the time to finish our enterprise, then let vs go if you please. When *Elisena* heard what shee saide, you must thinke shee gaue no occasion to be reproofed with slothfulness: but hastily arose, & without tarrying, calling only a

mantle about her shoulders, went forward, and afterward they both entred the Garden. The time was then calme & gracious, the Moone faire and splendant, giuing cleere light to the two Ladyes: but surely the one had more cause of content then the other, who gladly would haue tasted this good hap, or such an other for her selfe, if she could any way haue compassed the meane, & so much shee gaue in outward appearance, as *Elisena* perceiued well, that she wanted but the executor to performe the same: for *Darioletta*

feeling in her spirit, the ease at hand which shee should receiue whom shee conducted, could not but very pleasantly iest & dally with her Mistresse, breaking many a bitter sigh among, as though she were to participate in *Elisenas* future good fortune, to whom shee saide. Alas Madame, how happy is the Prince, by whom this night you shall receiue such pleasure? You say true answered *Elisena*, but what? thinke you not that fortune is as fauourable to me, as to him? for if I be faire, is not he one of the most perfect men that hath bene heard of, either in personage, good grace or hardines? assure thy selfe, *Darioletta* my friend, that I imagine my selfe so happy, as I thinke it is impossible for me to be more, & therefore let vs make hast I praye thee. These words she vttered with such affection, that she trembled like the little leafe on the high tree, and as she ended those speeches, they arriued at the Chamber doore where King *Perion* was lodged: who (for the strangenes of this new amorous flame, as also the hope he had in *Darioletta*) had not as yet taken any rest. Neuerthelesse, being as then wearye with trauaile, & overcome with sleepe: began (euen as they opened the doore) to slumber, and dreamed that one entred his chamber at a false dore, without knowledge who it should be: but he thought that he thrust his hands into his sides, and rent forth his hart, afterward he saw him throw it into the Riuer, when the king saide. Wherefore commit ye such cruelty? This is nothing at all answered hee that did this outrage, for with you shall remaine another hart, which I must take from ye against my wil. In great feare he suddenly awaked, & making the signe of the Crosse,

commended himselfe to God. Now had the Ladyes opened the dore & entred the Chamber, wherefore he hearing the noyse, suspected some treason, especially by reason of his feareful dreame, & lifting vp his head beheld thorow the curtans the dore open, whereof he knew nothing, and afterward by the light of the Moone, he saw the shadowe of the Ladyes that were entred. For this cause in feare he started out of bed, tooke his Sword, and went to the place where he had scene them: but when *Darioletta* saw him so affrighted, shee spake to him in this manner, What shal be done here? Do you draw armes against vs, that come to you with so slender defence? the king who quickly knew them, especially *Elisena* whom hee so much desired, threw his Sword to the ground, and casting a mantle about him which lay neere at hand: in great affection hee came to her, whom he loued better then himselfe, kissing, embracing & shewing the best countenance could be deuised, which *Darioletta* seeing, as one ialous and enuious of such fauour, said to *Elisena*. Now are you somewhat better contented, for in my iudgement, although till this time you defended your selfe from many. And he likewise hath withstood sundry assaultes: notwithstanding at this present, neither the one or other of you hath force or meane, which way any longer to warrant or defend your selues. As thus shee spake, shee looked where the king had thrown his Sword, which shee took vp, as a witness of the oath and promise hee made her, concerning the future marriage of *Elisena* and himselfe: then shutting the dore after her, shee went into the Garden, and so the king remained alone with his faire friend, whom (after

(after many amorous embracings, infinite kissings, and execution of delights) he behelde, verily perswading himselfe, that all the beauty of the world was in her, repuring himselfe much more then happy, that the heavens had allowed him so good an aduventure. See now how it chaunced to this Princesse, that for so long time, in the cheefest flower of her youth, being requested by so many mighty Princes and great Lordes, she had withstood all, to remaine in the liberty of a Maiden: now won in lesse space then one day, and at such time as her fancie (in her one thinking) was farthest off from such matters.

Thus Loue breaking the strong bandes of her holie and chaste life, caused a sudden alteration of her purpose, making her soone after, of a faire virgen, a faire woman: serving for example to many other, who assaying to withdraw their thoughtes from worldly things, & despising the great beauty wherewith nature hath endowed them, & tender youth, which maketh them ignorant of the pleasures & delights in their Fathers Courts, whereof sometime they might haue tasted: yeelde themselves (for saluation of their soules) in poore and religious houses, thereto in offering their free will, vowing themselves to the subiectiō of others, hoping to passe their time without any renowne or glory of this world. Certes such Ladyes, ought with great sollicitude to stop their eares, close their eyes, and giue themselves to continuall deuoute contemplatiōs & prayers, accepting them as their true and singular pastimes, as to such they are: and above all, they should exempt themselves from sight of Parents neighbours and freinds, because oftentimes the talk

and frequenting of such, procureth a change of their holy & chaste will. and not without cause haue I made this little discourse, for it is to the end that it happen not to them, as it did vnto the faire Princesse *Elisena*, who so long labored in thought to preferue her selfe: yet notwithstanding in one only moment, seeing the beauty and good grace of King *Perion*, changed her will in such sorte, as without the aduise & discretiō of *Darioletta*, who would couer the honor of hir Mistresse vnder the mantle of mariage: you may see she was at the poynt to fall, into the very lowest parte of all dishonor. As it hath happened to many other, of whom hath commonly beene heard speech: who not keeping them selues from what I haue saide before, haue beene taken bad enough, and taken will be, if they admit no better foresight.

Now then are these two louers in their solace, *Elisena* demanding of the king, if his departure should be shortly or no. Wherefore Madam: do you aske? said king *Perion*. Because, quoth she, this happy fortune that with so great delight hath giuen ease to our affectionate desires: doth threaten me already with extreame anguish & sorrow, which by your absence I shall receiue, and feare it will rather cause my sudden death, then long life. Haue no doubt thereof saide the king, for although my body is separated from your presence, my hart for euer shal remain with ye, which shall giue strength to vs both, to you to suffer, and to me by my speedy returne. These two contented louers are thus deuising, when she that had bin the cause of their meeting (seeing it was time to call her mistresse, who by this pleasure forgot her selfe in her louers armes) entered

entred the Chamber, & speaking somewhat loude saide. Madme, I know that heretofore you thought my company more agreeable, then you doe at this present: but it is needfull that you arise, and let vs goe, for the time calleth vs. When the King heard her, knowing that perforce it must be so, he prayed *Darioletta* to walke into the Garden, and to bring him word in what corner the winde sat: in meane while he tooke his amorous conge, with such reciprocal pleasure, as you that loue may easily iudge, then sweetly kissing her, he saide, I assure you Madame, that for your sake I will stay longer in this Country then you imagine, therefore I praye be not vnmindfull of this place. So arose *Elisena*, and went to her Chamber with *Darioletta*, leauing the king alone, not a little contented with his new acquaintance: but dreading his dreame, as you haue heard, and willing to know what it might signifie, he became desirous to returne to his owne Country, where as then were good store of Philosophers, that were well seene in those Sciences: himselfe likewise in former times tooke great pleasure therein, and vnderstood sundry rules thereof. Neuerthelesse, he sojourned ten dayes with king *Garinier*, after his sporting with *Elisena*, who neuer a night failed to visit her louely haunt. The ten dayes being spent, king *Perion* (forcing his will, and notwithstanding the teares and extresies of *Elisena* which were exceeitue) resolved to depart, and therefore tooke his leaue of the Court: but as he wold haue mounted on horsebacke, he perceiued that he wanted his good Sword: wherat he became somewhat offended, because it

was one of the best, and fairest in the world, yet durst he not demand it, fearing least the loue of him and *Elisena* should thereby be discovered, or King *Garinier* angry with them that visited his Chamber. In these thoughts, accompanied with infinite regrets, without longer stay, he tooke his way toward *Gaule*: albeit before his departing, *Darioletta* came & intreated him, to be mindfull of the great grieve wherein he left his *Elisena*, and of the solemne promise he had made her. Alas my deere friend, saide the King, I praye to assure her on my parte, that she shall haue no cause of offence, and that right soone I meane to see her, in meane while, I commend her to you as mine owne proper hart. Then taking from his finger a Ring, semblable to another that he had, he sent it to the desolate lottier, inuincing her earnestly (for his sake) to giue it her. This present did no whit lessen her great grieffe, but increase it, so that if she had not beene comforted by *Darioletta*, without doubt, she had then finished her dayes: but so well she perswaded her to take good hope, that by the alligations she laid before her of dangerous occurrences, she came somewhat better to her selfe, and learned thence forward more smoothly to dissemble her sorrowe, till she felte her selfe great with Childe, by meanes whereof, she not onely lost the taste of her food, but also the pleasure of rest, and the faire cullour of her countenance.

Now on the highest step of mishap was her sorrow set, and not without cause, for in that time was there an inuolable lawe, that any woman or maiden, of what quality or estate soeuer, offending in such sorte, could no way excuse herselfe from



from death. This sharpe and cruell custome, endured til the comming of the vertuous King *Arthur*, the best Prince that euer reigned in that Country: which he reuoked at the time, as he killed *Floian* in battaile before the Gates of *Paris*. But many other Kinges were betweene him and *Garinter*, who maintained that lawe, and for this cause the sorrowfull Lady could not be absolved by ignorance thereof: albeit that by the oathes and promises of King *Perion* on his Sword, God would remit the offence, yet knew she not how to excuse her faulte to the worlde, because it was done so secretly as you haue heard. See here the distresse wherein King *Perion* left his *Elisena*, which gladly she wold giue him to vnderstand, if possible she could: but it might not be, for she knew the promptitude of this yong King, that tooke no rest in any place wher he came, nor was his hart satisfied, except in this, with following armes, as also seeking strange and hazardous adventures, and therefore he was the harder to be found. Thus despairing of this succour, she thought there was no remedy for her life, for which she made not so much mone, as the losse of the sight of her true friend and onely Lord. But at that instant the great and puissant maker of all thinges, by whose permission this act was appointed to his seruice, inspired *Darioletta* with such counsell, as she onely should remedie these occurrences, in such sort as you shall presently vnderstand.

In the pallace of King *Garinter*, there was a Chamber-vault seperated from the rest, neere to which was a riuer, whereto one might easily descend by a little Iron dore, this Chamber (by the aduice of

*Darioletta*) did *Elisena* request of her father, as well for her ease, as to continue her accustomed solitary life, and would haue none other companion then *Darioletta*, who (as you haue heard) knew the occasion of her dolorous griefes. This request she lightly obtained, the King thinking his daughters intent to be as she feigned, and heereupon was the keye of the Iron dore giuen to *Darioletta*, to open when it pleased *Elisena* to recreate her selfe on the water. By this meane had she a place proper to her affaires, and so was in better rest & assurance then before: for well was she aduised, that in this place more commodiously then any other, might she prouide to escape without danger. Wherefore beeing there one day alone with her Damosell, they fell in conference, & she required counsell, what should be done with the fruites that she trauiled withall. What? answered *Darioletta*: Mary, it must suffer to redeeme you. Oh poore maidenly mother, saide *Elisena*, how can I content to the death of the creature, begoten by the only man of the worlde, whome most I loue? offend not your selfe, quoth *Darioletta*, for if you should dye, hardly would it be permitted after you to liue. In sooth, saide *Elisena*, although I dye beeing culpable, it were no reason the little innocent should suffer. Leau we this talke, answered *Darioletta*, seeing it were great folly to hazard the safety of that, which hereafter may be the onely cause of your losse, and your friend likewise: for well you knowe, that if you be discovered, you shall dye, and the infant shall not liue, & you dying, no longer can he liue that so decreely loueth you. So shall you alone cause the death of all three, where

contrariwise

contrariwise, if you escape the perill, the time will come, when you may haue together children enow, which will make you forget the affection you bare to this first. And as this Damosell was thus inspired, so would she before hand seeke to prevent the inconuenience, in this manner. She got foure little boards, of such largenes as was necessary to make a Chest wherein to put the infant, with the clothes & the Sword, which she kept, then did she glue them together in such sorte, as the water should haue no place to enter. This beeing done & made fit, she put it vnder the bed, without declaring any thing thereof to *Elisena*, vntil the time of child-birth approached, and then *Darioletta* saide. What thinke ye Madame this little Cofer is made for? In good faith I know not, quoth she. This shalbe to serue vs, saide the Damosell, when we haue need. Beleeue me answered *Elisena* weeping, but little doe I care for any thing that may happen, for I feele my selfe too neere the losse of my good, and all my ioy. Very soone after, the Princeesse felt the anguish of trauaile, which was to her very strange & troublesome, oppressing her hart with sundry bitter passions: yet notwithstanding al her yrkfome plunges, poore soule she durst not but be silent, greatly fearing least she should be heard. Her agonies thus redoubling, the most mighty (without danger of her person) gaue her in deliuerance a faire Son, which the Damosell receiued, and as she held it, it seemed to her of wonderful feature, and happy would she haue repured him, had he not bene borne to hard fortune, where-to *Darioletta* was constrained to send him, for the redemption of the sorrowfull mother, and therefore she

deferred it not. But euen as before was concluded, she wrapped the infant in riche clothes, and afterward brought it with the Cofer to *Elisena*: which when the good Lady sawe, she demanded what she would do therewith. Madame quoth she, herein shall your little Sonne be put, then will I send it forth on the water, and if it please God, he may escape and liue. Alas my sweete infant, saide *Elisena*, how full of danger is thy destiny? In meane while, *Darioletta* tooke inke and parchment, and writ therein these words, *This is Amadis without time, Sonne to a King*: by these words without time, she meant, that she thought his death to be neere at hand, and the name of *Amadis* was of great reuerence in that Country, because of a Saint there so called, to whom this little infant was recommended. The letter beeing written and sealed, was couered and wrapped in silke, & then with a little golden Chaine, fastened about the Childes necke, with the Ring that King *Perion* sent *Elisena* at his departure. Each thing thus appointed, *Darioletta* came to the wofull mother, and in her sight put the Child into the Chest, laying by him the King his Fathers Sword, which he threw on the ground the first night he came to *Elisena*, and this is the cause wherefore the Damosell had so well kept it: then after the Mother had kist her Sonne, as her last farewell, the Cofer was made fast very arteificially, and *Darioletta* opening the iron dore, commending the babe to the heauenly protection, she set it on the water, the course whereof beeing very speedy, full soone caried the Cofer into the Sea, which was lesse then halfe a mile from the place.

Now

Now began the breake of day to appeare, and the little infant followed his fortune, now throwne heere, then there, according as the boystrous waues pleased: but by the will of the highest, who (when he pleaseth) makes impossibilities easie, caused it so to fall out, that at the same time as this was done, a Scottishe Ship sayled on the Sea, wherein was a Gentleman named *Gandales*, who from little *Brittaine* sailed with his wife into *Scotland*, she hauing beene lately deliuered of a sonne called *Gandalin*. The morning was both calme & cleere, wherefore *Gandales* might easilye perceiue the Chest floating on the waues, which he presently sent out for, thinking it to be some matter of great value: then the Mariners casting forth a Skiffe, made toward the Cofer and tooke it vp: when they had brought it to *Gandales*, he got open the couer, and beholding the goodly infant within, as also the rich clothes wherein it was wrapped, he suspected that it came from no meane place, as he gathered by the ring & the good Sword. So taking it in his armes, he was filled with such compassion, as he be-

gan to curse the mother thereof, who through feare had forsaken so cruelly such a beautifull creature: and carefully did he cause all things to be kept which he found in the Cofer, desiring his wife, that this infant might be nourished as his owne Sonne. She was heere with very wel contented, and so the two children were equally fostered together, for neuer had yong *Amadis* suckt the teat, but so soone as it was giuen him by his new nurse, he made no refusall thereof, but being very thirstie sucked very hartily, whereat *Gandales* and his wife were exceeding glad. Now had they the time so fauourable, as shortly they landed in *Scotland*, neere to a Citie named *Antallia*, and soone after they came to their owne Country, where little *Gandalin*, and the Childe found in the sea were nourished together. And because *Gandales* forbade his seruants to vse any speech of his good hap, requesting the like of the Mariners, to whom the ship belonged, and were to faile els where: the two children were esteemed bretheren by such as were ignorant of their fortune.

### CHAP. III.

*How King Perion parting from little Brittain, travelled on his journey, hauing his heart filled with griefe and melancholie.*



King *Perion* being on his way toward *Gaule*, as already hath beene recited, entred into a marueilous melancholy, as well for the greefe wherein he had left his *Elisene*, to whom in his hart he wished well: as also for his doubtfull dreame, being in such

sorte as you haue heard. So long rode he in this heauines, till he arrived in his country, and soone after he sent for all his great Lords as also the Prelates of his Realme, giuing them expresse charge, to bring with them the most learned Clarks in their Countreyes, and this he did, to the end they might expound his dreame. When his vassalles had made knowne his will,

not

not only those he sent for, but many other came to the court, shewing the desire they had to see him, & their readines to obey his command: for they did so loue and reuerence him, as oftentimes (being fearefull to loose him) they were for him in very great greefe and sorrow, thinking on the dangerous perils, that in chiuallry (to win honor) he hazarded himselfe, so that they would more gladly haue had him dayly with them, which could not be, because his hart was discontented, til by armes he had brought the greatest adventures to end.

The Lordes and Princes thus assembled, the King conferred with them on the estate and affairs of the Realme, but it was with so sad countenance as could be: for the occasion of his dreame made him so pensue, as his Subiectes (being abashed thereat) were in meruailous doubt, notwithstanding, after he had giuen them to vnderstand his will, and appointed all requisite matters in order, he gaue them leaue to departe, sending each one home to his house, only staying with him three Astrologers, reputed the most skillfull in those actions, and therefore he made choise of them. These men he called into his chappell, there causing them solemnely to sweare & promise, that without feare of any thing, how dangerous soeuer it were, they should interpret to their vttermost, and truly expresse what he would declare to them, whereupon he told them his dream, as hath bin already before rehearsed: then one of them being named *Vngan* the *Piccard*, the most experte of them all, thus answered. My Lord, dreames are vaine thinges, and for such ought

to be esteemed: notwithstanding, seeing it is your pleasure that some account should be made of yours, giue vs some time to consider thereon. I tell thee wel, said the King, within 12 daies look that you make me answer. But to the end they should not dilate or vaine create the truth from him, he commanded them to be separated, so that during the time agreed vpon, they might neither see or speake together: wherefore to their vttermost they trauailed in what they had promised the King, so that the day being come, when they should render an account of their labour, he first tooke *Albert* of *Champagne* aside, and said to him. Thou knowest how thou hast sworne and promised, to tell me what thou hast found by thy skill. Sir answered *Albert*, let them the rest be called into your presence, for before them will I tel ye. Well hast thou aduised, said the King, whereupon they were sent for, afterward *Albert* thus began. My opinion is, my Lord, that the closed Chamber, and him whom you saw enter by the secret dore, signifieth this Realme which is close & well guarded: notwithstanding by some right thereto, some one shall come to take it from you. And like as he thrust his handes into your sides, renting forth thence your hart, and afterward threw it into the Riuer: even so shall your Townes and Castles both more & lesse, be priuily stolen from you, and put into his hand from whom you shall not easily recouer them. And what meaneth the other harte, said the King, which I dreamed should remain with me, and yet he said, that soone after I should lose it, against the will of him that took the first from me? It seemeth by this,

C

this, answered *Albert*, that some other shall invade your Country as the first did, yet constrained more by force of another that commanded him to do so, then by any will thereto in himselfe: thus see ye (my Lord) all that I can tell ye. Now said the king to the second named *Antalles*, tel vs your aduise. Me thinks Sir, quoth he, that *Albert* hath very well saide, and I am of his opinion, except in this, (for ought I can learne, & as the cause sheweth me) that what he saith shall happen, is already effected, & by the person that most loueth ye: notwithstanding I am greatly amazed thereat, seeing there is not as yet any part of your Realmelost, & if you do loose any thing hereafter, it must be by such a one as loueth you dearly. When the king heard this, he nodded his head, for it seemed to him, that he came neere the marke: but *Vngan* the *Piscard*, who knew much more the other, fel into a laughter, which he was sildome wont to doe, because he was a man very sad and melancholly, yet (by chance) the King perceiued it, wherefore he said. Maister *Vngan* my friend, now remaineth none but you, say boldly what you haue gathered. My Lord, quoth he, peradventure I haue scene into things, which is not necessary to be knowne to any other then your selfe, & therefore let these giue place a while, if you please. At these words they withdrew themselves, leauing the King and *Vngan* alone, who thus spake.

If your Maiesty saw me ere while to laugh, it was at one word which little you thinke on, yet it is true, and will you know what? It was that which *Antalles* said, that what he found by your dreame was already

happened, & by the person that best loueth ye: Now shall I reueale what you keepe in secret and thinke that none knowes but your selfe. You loue (my Lord) in such a place, where you haue already accomplished your will, and she whom you loue is surpassing faire, then tolde he all the gests and fashions of her, as if she had bene there present. But as for the chamber you found shut, you know Sir, full well what it meaneth, and how she whome you loue, desirous to deliuer her heart and yours from griefe and sadnesse: came to ye, entering your chāber by the false dore that was hid from you. The hands that opened your sides, is the conuinction of you twaine: then the heart taken from ye, sheweth that she hath by you a Son or a Daughter. Now tell me said the King, what meaneth the casting thereof into the Riuer? My Lord, quoth he, that nothing concerneth you, therefore neuer labour for further knowledge thereof. Yet would I, said the King, faine vnderstand it, and therefore feare not to tell me for any harme that may happen. Seeing you will needes haue it, answered *Vngan*, I beseech ye Sir assure me while you liue, for any thing that I shal reueale, you wil not be displeased with her who loueth you so loyally. That promise do I faithfully make thee, said the King. In good sooth Sir, quoth *Vngan*, that heart that you saw throwen into the water, is the first infant she shall haue by you, who must of necessity be forsaken. And the other, said the King, that shall remaine with me, what meaneth that? You may, answered *Vngan*, vnderstand by the one, desseigne of the other, which is, that she shall conceiue another childe, who shall

shall be caryed away against the will of her, that caused the losse of the first. Thou hast told me strange things, said the King, and would God the misfortune of my Children were not so true, as what thou hast told me concerning the Lady I loue. For things ordeined and appoynted by the highest, answered *Vngan*, none knoweth how to gaine-say or remedy, and therefore men of wisdom should neuer be sad or reioyce at them, because oftentimes the Lord disposeth matters beyond the capacity of men & farre otherwise then they expect. For this cause my Lord, forgetting all that I haue said, and which you haue bin so curious to vnderstand: referre all things to God, desiring him in these your affaires and all other, to limit the end of them to his honor and glory, and thus (in mine opinion) you ought to set downe your rest. The King was highly contented with *Vngan*, and so esteemed of him, that from thence forward he had him neere his person, by meanes whereof he receiued many great fauours. Now it happened, that at that instant as the king parted from the Philosophers, a Damosell presented her selfe before him, right costly in garments and faire in beauty, thus speaking. Vnderstand King Perion, that when thou recourest thy losse, the Kingdome of Ireland shall loose her flower. So giuing her Palfrey the bridle, and the King not able to stay her, she rode away: these wordes made the good Prince more sad & pensue then he was before.

For this time the Auther leueth this purpose, & returneth to speake of the infant, that *Gandales* caused to be nourished, whom he made to be called the Gentleman of the Sea. Now was he curiously en-

certained, wherefore in short time he grew and became so faire, that all which beheld him meruailed thereat, but one day among other it happened, that *Gandales* rode to sport himselfe in the fields, arming himselfe as became a good Knight: for he had dayly accompanied the king *Languines*, at such time as he searched after aduenures, and albeit the king discontinued Armes, yet *Gandales* would oftentimes exercise himselfe, and as he rode, he met with a Damosell that thus speake to him. Ah *Gandales*, if many great personages were aduertised of what I know certainly, I assure thee they would cause thee to loose thy head. Wherefore? quoth he. Because, said the Damosell, thou nourishest their death in thy house. The knight knew not the woman that thus talked with him, but you must vnderstand, how she was the same that said to king Perion, that when he recouered his losse, the Kingdome of Ireland should lose her flower, yet notwithstanding he was farre from the matter, because he knew not whereof she spake, and therefore thus replied. For Gods sake (Damosell) I pray ye tell me, on what occasion you vse these speeches. Beleeue me *Gandales*, quoth she, I haue tolde thee nothing but truth. At these wordes she departed from him, leauing him very sad and pensue: yet long he did not continue in these thoughts, but he saw her returne againe, in great hast, thus crying & calling. Ah *Gandales*, for Gods sake succor me: then *Gandales* turning about, beheld a knight follow her with his Sword drawne, wherefore he gaue his horse the spurres to meete him, and placed himselfe for the defence of the Damosell,



then comming to him that pursued her, he said. Stay thou bad aduised knight, what moueth thee thus trecherously to outrage Ladyes? What now? answered the other, doest thou hope to saue her, who by trumpery hath made me loose both body and soule? That meddle not I withall, said *Gandales*, but I will defend her to my power, well knowing that Ladyes ought not to be corrected in this manner, albeit they did deserue it. We shal presently see that, answered the knight: and so gallopped to the place from whence he came, which was a little thicket of trees, where stayed a very beautyfull Lady, who when she saw him returne, came forth, bringing him a Sheeld and a strong Launce, which he tooke, and without longer tariance, returned to his enemy, *Gandales* being a sterne knight, would not refuse him: whereupon they met together in such sorte, as their lances were broken no their Sheelds, and they with their horses cast to the ground, yet quickly did they recouer footing, when began betweene them a meruailous combat, which worse would haue bin, but that she which desired succor of *Gandales*, stepped betweene them, saying. Stay Gentlemen, fight no more. At these wordes, the Knight who before pursued her went back, then said the Damofell to him. Come now and aske pardon of me. Most willingly, answered the Knight, then throwing his Sword and Sheeld down, came and humbled himselfe on both his knees before her, whereat *Gandales* was greatly amazed, afterward the Damofell said to the Knight. Goe comand the Lady vnder the trees, that she get her away immediatly, vnlesse thou shalt take her head

from her shoulders. To this charge the Knight yeelded himselfe obedient, and to her whom he loued more then himselfe (by sudden change from loue to hatred) he came and angerly said. Trayterous woman, I know not how I shall defend my selfe from killing thee presently. Well perceiued the poore Lady, that her friend was enchanted, and that contestation would nothing at all profit her: wherefore incontinent she mounted on her palfrey, and rode away, making the most grieuous sorrow that euer was heard, and there remained she whom *Gandales* had defended, speaking to him in this manner. You haue (Sir) done so much for me, as I shall be beholding to you while I liue, and now you may depart at your pleasure: for if the knight offended me, I haue pardoned him with all my heart. As touching your pardon, answered *Gandales*, I haue nothing to doe therewith: for my selfe, I will end the Combate, or he shall hold himselfe vanquished. It behoueth that you acquite him, said the Damofell, seeing that if you were the best Knight in the world, easily can I make him ouercome yee. Do therein what you can, replied *Gandales*, but I will not acquite him, except you first declare to me, wherefore (euen now) you said, that I kept the death of many people in my house. Then will I rather tell ye, quoth she, because I loue you both: He as mine owne Soule, & you as my defender, albeit constraint cannot make me doe it: so taking him aside, she said. You shall sweare to me as a loyall Knight, that no other shall know it by you, vntill such time as I command it: hercof he made her faithfull promise. Know then, said the Damofell, that he whom

whom you found in the Sea, shall one day be the flower of chiualdry, and shall cause the very strongest to stoope, he shall enterprife, and with honor finish what other shall faile off: and such deedes of armes shall he doe, as no one thinkes can be begun or ended by the strength of one man. The proud shall he make humble and gracious, being cruell and pittilesse, as also benigne and amiable to the debonaire: this Knight most loyally will maintaine loue, and shall effect in place answerable to his magnanimity. Moreover, I assure thee *Gandales*, that he is the Sonne of a King, and (without doubt) all this will happen which I haue told thee: but if thou keepe it not secret, it may returne thee more harme then good. Madame, answered *Gandales*, I pray ye tell me where I may meete with you hereafter, to conferre with you on the affaires of this infant. That must you not know by me, said the Damofell, or any other. Yet tell me your name, quoth *Gandales*, if so it be your pleasure. By the faith you beare to the thing you most loue in the world, replied she you cōiure me so, as you shall know it: albeit the thing that most I loue, is he that wisheth me least good, and would you know what he is? it is the Knight against whom ere while you combated: notwithstanding, I will not leaue to intreat him at my pleasure, without he being able to remedy himselfe. My name is *Vrganda the vknowne*: and to the end you may remember me an other time, behold me well at this present. At that instant, she who shewed herselfe to *Gandales* faire, yong and fresh, as one of eightene yecres, became so olde and ouer spent, as he meruailed how she could sit on

her horse, if then he was stricken into admiration, you may iudge. But when she had beene a prittie while in that state, she tooke out of a little bottell (which she caryed) a certaine vnguent, wherewith she rubbed her face, & right soone recovered her former countenance, saying to *Gandales*. What iudge ye now Sir? thinke you to finde me hereafter against my will, vsing all the dilligence you can deuise? neuer therefore put your selfe to such paine: for when all liuing creatures goe about it, if I list, they shall loose their labour. In good faith Madame, answered *Gandales*, I now make no doubt thereof, yet I beseech ye to be mindefull of the Gentleman, who is forsaken of all but my selfe. Doe not you trouble your selfe therewith, said *Vrganda*, this forsaking will be a recouering of much more. My loue to him in greater then you can imagine, being she that shortly intendes to receiue by him two aydes, which no other can giue me. In recompence whereof, I will giue him two likewise, wherewith he shall thinke himselfe highly satisfied. Let this suffice ye for this time, because of necessitie I must be gone: aduising ye, that you shal see me againe sooner then you thinke for. At these wordes the Damofell departed, and *Gandales*, who had not all this while regarded the Knight against whom he fought, seeing him now bare-headed, reputed him one of the goodlyest Gentlemen that euer he had seene: who after he had taken vp his Sheeld, and laced on his helmet, followed the Damofell, wherefore for this time we will let them goe, continuing what happened to *Gandales*.

*Vrganda* being departed, he returned

turned toward his Castell, meeting by the way with the Lady, who *Vrganda* had caused to be chased from her friend, and this sorrowfull woman was heard by a Fountaine, where she wept & lamented very bitterly: when she espyed him that came toward her, she easily knew him, wherefore she thus spake. Is it possible, Sir Knight, that the wicked creature whom you succoured, hath done so much as to let you liue? wicked she is not, answered *Gandales*, but wise and vertuous: and if you be otherwise, I will make you deny these foolish wordes. Ah God, said the Lady: how can the villaine deceiue every one? How hath she deceiued you? replied *Gandales*. Alas, quoth the Lady, she hath taken from me the faire Knight that should be mine: and so may I well say, seeing he would be more content to be with me, then with her. This is meete folly, answered *Gandales*, for in mine opinion, both you & she doe loue without reason. How euer it be, said the Lady, if I can I will be auenged. You traile in vaine, quoth he, thinking to iniurie her that knowes it, not onely before you execute it, but when you imagine it. In sooth answered the Lady, this afternoone ye may be gone when you please: and neuertheless it often happeneth, that those which thinke they know most by presumption, fall into the greatest dangers. *Gandales* seeing her so impatient, commending her to God, followed his way, thinking more of the yong Gentlemans affaires, then what the Lady had spoken to him. Being come to his Castell, and seeing the little boy come running towards him, he tooke him vp in his armes, and lovingly embracing him, remem-

bered what *Vrganda* had saide to him, which made the teares stand in his eyes with ioy, saying within himselfe. Faire Childe, I pray God I may liue so long, as to see thee such a one as I hope for. At this time the yong Prince was about three yeeres olde, who seeing his Lord weep, (as one moued with compassion) he wiped his eyes, which made *Gandales* imagine great humanity in him: and that as the childe grew in age & strength, so waxed he in will, the better to helpe him if he had occasion. Wherefore thence forward, he was very carefull of him, deuising all meanes for his best education, and compayning continually with his play fellowe *Gandalin*, he took very great delight in shooting.

He being come to the age of sixe yeeres, King *Languines* and his Queene riding through the Country, came to *Gandales* Castell, where they were royally feasted: But before they there arriued, *Gandales* being aduertised of their coming, caused the yong Prince and his companions to be hid in a backe Chamber, fearing that in respect of his beauty and good grace, the King would be desirous to take him away with him, or else that the childre would be troublesome to the house. But it fortunated, that the Queene being lodged in one of the highest roomes in the Castell, as she looked forth at a window, which was on that side where the Children were, she espyed the yong Prince and his play-fellowes drawing their bowes, and marking him very well, she liked him aboue all the other, taking great pleasure to behold his countenance, thinking he was Sonne to the Lord of the house: yet being doubtfull, and not seeing any of whom

whom she might aske the questiō, she thus called to her Ladyes. Come and behold the fairest yong creature that euer was seene. At these words they all came running, and soone after, the Childe being drye, left his bowe by his companions, going to drinke at a conduit pipe, which was hard by: in meane while, one of them that was bigger then the Prince, tooke vp his bow to draw it, but *Gandalin* would not suffer him, whereupon a great strife fell betweene them, and *Gandalin* being the weakest, cryed out: Gentleman of the sea, come helpe me. When the Prince heard him, he left his draught, and ran to him that misused his brother, taking his bowe from him, giuing him therewith a great stroke, ouer the head, saying: In an euill hower (varlet) dost thou outrage my brother. The other not content therewith, came to the Prince, & they fought together: yet he that began the

noyse was glad to run thence, and by the way met their Gouvernour, who said: Whether runnest thou, Maister, quoth he, the Gentleman of the sea will beate me: then the Gouvernour coming to the Prince, rigorously threatened him, saying. What are you already so helde to beate your companions, you shall be talked withall by and by for it. When the Prince heard his threatening, he fell downe on his knees, saying. If you will appoynt that I shall be beaten, more gladly will I take it, then suffer my brother to be wronged in my presence. With these words the teares trickled downe his cheekes, which moued pity in the Gouvernour, wherefore he thus answered. If euer you doe so againe I will make ye weepe in an other sorte. The Queene who had heard and seene all the debate, was greatly abashed, wherefore they called the little boy, the Gentleman of the sea.

### CHAP. III.

How King *Languines* carryed away with him the Gentleman of the sea, and *Gandalin* the Sonne of *Gandales*.



While the Queene thus beheld the Gentleman of the sea, the King entered her Chamber accompanied with *Gandales*, of whom she presently demanded, if that faire yong Sonne were his. Yea Madame answered *Gandales*. And (quoth she) why suffer you him to be called the Gentleman of the sea? Because Madame, said he, that at returne of my last voyage into little *Brittayne*, he was borne vpon the sea. Truly quoth she, he resembles you but little: & this was her opinion, because the

Prince was excellent faire, and *Gandales* somewhat heard fauoured, yet a most gentle companion. It chanced during these speeches, that the King cast his eye on the little Prince, to whom he seemed no lesse beautyfull then he did to the Queene, wherefore he commanded *Gandales* to fetch him: for when I goe hence (quoth he) I will take him with me, and haue him brought vp with mine one Son. In sooth my Lord, answered *Gandales*, he is yet to yong to leaue his Mother: but hauing brought him, presented him to the King,

who said. Faire Child will ye go with me to the Court; My Lord, answered the Childe, I will goe whether you please, if my brother shall goe with me. And I quoth *Gandalin*, will not tarry here without him. I perceiue my Lord, said *Gandales*, that if you take the one, you must needs haue the other, for they will not be seperated. I am the better pleased, answered the King: then calling *Agrais* to him, said. My Son, I will that you loue these two Gentlemen, as I do their Father. When *Gandales* saw, that the King would haue them away in good earnest, with the teares in his eyes, he thus spake in his hart. My childe, that so soone beginnest to proue fortunate, now I see thee in the seruice of them, who one day may (happily) serue thee, if it please God to guide and protect thee, as I shall humbly pray for, & suffer that the words of *Vrganda the unknowne* spoken to me, may proue true: making me so happy, as to liue to see the time, of those great meruailes, promised thee in Armes. The King who noted *Gandales*, seeing that his eyes were filled with teares, came to comfort him, saying. Beleeue me, I neuer thought you had bene such a foole, as to weepe for a Childe. Ah my Lord answered *Gandales*, it may be vpon greater occasion then you thinke for, and if it please you to know the truth, I will presently tell ye heere before your Queene. So he tolde the whole discourse, how he found the *Gentleman of the sea*, and in what equipage: and he had proceeded with that which *Vrganda* foretold him, but that he remembered the oath he tooke. Now my Lord said *Gandales*, deale for him as you shall please, for (so God helpe me) according to his begin-

ning, I thinke him to be issued of great linage. Vhē the King heard this, he esteemed much the better of him, that he had so carefully nourished the childe he found, and thus answered. It is great reason (seeing god hath done so much for him, as to preserve him frō so great a danger) that now we be diligent in his education, and endowe him with habilities when time shall serue. In good faith my Lord, said the Queene, so please you, he shalbe mine during his yong yeeres, and when he comes to mans estate, I will deliuer him to serue you. Well Madame, quoth the King, I giue him you. Now early on the next morning, the King would set forward, wherefore the Queene, not hauing forgot the gift of her Lord, tooke with her *Gandalin* and the yong *Gentleman of the sea*, whom she commanded to be so carefully attended as her owne Sonne, for she tooke such pleasure in beholding him, that dayly she would haue him neere her owne person, because he had such a cheerefull spirit, and so well governed withall, as he was well liked of euery one, so that whatsoeuer he did, passed with generall allowance, & no other pastime had he, but in shooting and cherishing dogges for the chase.

Now doth the Authour leaue this matter, returning to that which happened to King *Perion*, & his new freind *Elisena*. King *Perion* (as you haue already heard) being in *Gaule*, where he vnderstood by his Philosophers the exposition of his dreame, as also what the *Damofell* had told him: That when he recovered his losse, the Kingdome of *Ireland* should loose her flower: he became more pensiuē then before, yet could he vnderstand nothing thereof.

thereof. As he thus sadly spent his dayes, it chanced that another *Damofell* entred his Pallace, who brought him a letter from *Elisena*, whereby she gaue him to know, that King *Garinter* her Father was dead, and she remained alone, and for this cause he should pittie her, in that the King of *Scots* would take her Kingdome from her. For the death of King *Garinter* was *Perion* somewhat sorrowfull, but yet he comforted himselfe, by thinking he should goe to see his friend, towards whom he had not diminished one iot of his affection, wherefore he quickly dispatched the *Damofell*, saying to her. Returne and say to your Mistress, that without staying one whole day, I shall be in short time with her. The *Damofell* well pleased with this answer, returned, and after the King had set his affaires in order, he parted in good equipage to see his *Elisena*, and iournied so speedily, as he arriued in little *Brittaine*: where he heard newes that king *Languines* had already gotten all the cheefe of the Country, except those Cities which *Garinter* gaue to *Elisena*, who now abode (as he vnderstood) at a place named *Arcate*, whether he addressed himselfe. If he were there well received, I leaue to your iudgments, and she likewise of him whom she loued so much. After the welcoming & feasting of one another, the King told her that he would now marry her, and for that cause she aduertised her kindred and Subiects: which she did with all diligence could be deuised, as also with so great contentation as her heart might desire, for herein only consisted the summe of her affections. Which being heard by the King of *Scots*, and how to ac-

complish this, King *Perion* was already arriued with his Sister: he sent immediatly for all the noble men of his Realme, to beare him company in doing honor and welcome to the King his brother. At his comming, he was graciously received by King *Perion*, and after by embracings they had saluted each other, and the nuprials likewise thorowly ended: the kings derermined to returne home into their owne Countreyes.

King *Perion* trauiailing toward *Gaule* with his Queene *Elisena*, & somewhat weary with tediousnesse of the way, he would refresh himselfe along by a Riuer side: & while the tentes were erecting, he rode softly alone by the water-banke, imagining how he might know the truth, whether *Elisena* had a child, according as his Philosopher told him in expounding his dreame. But so long continued he in this thought, that riding on without any regarde, he came to an Hermitage which was neere at hand: wherefore finding himselfe at a place of deuotion, he alighted, tying his Horse to a tree, that he might goe in to say his prayers. And entring the Church, he found there a very ancient religious man, who comming to meete him, said, Knight, is it true, that king *Perion* is married to our kings daughter? yea verily, answered the king, Praised be God, said the good Hermit, for I know certainly, that she loueth him with all her hart. How can you tell that, replied the king. Euen from her owne mouth, said the good olde man. The king then hoping he should heare of him the thing which he most desired to know, said. I pray ye Father tell me, what you haue vnderstood of her

her and me, for I am King *Perion*. Truly Sir, answered the wise man, herein shall I greatly fault, and iustly might she repute me an heretique, if I should manifest what she hath told me vnder confession: suffice your selfe with that I haue declared, namely, the true and sincere loue she beareth you. But seeing I haue met ye in a place so conuenient, I will that ye know, what a Damofell (in mine opinion very wise) said to me at the time you came first into this country: yet spake she to me so darkely, as I neuer knew well how to comprehend her words, for she said. *That from little Brittain should come two great Dragons, that should hold their government in Gaule, and their hearts in great Brittain, and from thence they should go to deuoure the beastes of other Countreyes: but against some they should be brave and cruell, and against other some humble and gracious, as though they had neither nayles or hart.* At these words I became very pensieue, nor could I euer since learne the signification hereof. Nor did the King at this instant vnderstand them, but was in no lesse meruaile then the Hermite: notwithstanding, no long time after he found this prophesie to be true. Now the king having commended the holy man to God, returned to his tents, where he saluted his Queene, yet would he not tell her (as then) any thing of that wherewith his mind was troubled: but dissembled the same till they were in bed, and after their accustomed embracings, the king by an apt meane recoüted to her, what his Astrologers had said on his dreame, earnestly desiring her to tel him, whether she had any Child by him or no. When the good Lady heard this, she was

surprised with shame in such sorte, as willingly she could haue wished her selfe dead: and therefore altogether denied the truth, so that at this time the king might not know what he desired. On the morrow they departed thence and arriued in *Gaule*, where this noble Queen was generally receiued with great ioy. And because that (as it hath bene heretofore rehearsed) the king bare her singuler affection, he did for her sake stay more in his Realme, then he was wont to doe: so that not long after, the Queene brought him a Sonne, who was named *Galaor*, and next a daughter called *Melicia*.

But the little *Galaor* being two yeeres and a halfe olde, it chaunced that one day the king his father, sojourning not farre from the seafide, in one of his Cities named *Orangill*, standing at a window toward the Garden, where was then the Queene with her son & Ladies sporting: there entred at a postern dore such a horrible Giant, as no man that euer saw him but was exceedingly affraide, bearing on his neck a huge & mighty Mace. When the company of women espied him, some fled among the trees, and other (not to see him) fell on the ground: but the Giant made no reckoning of them, only he came to little *Galaor*, whom he tooke in his armes, and in a laughter said. *By my faith, the Damofell said true.* So without any thing else, taking away the Child, returned the same way he came: and entring a Brigandine that there stayed for him, departed vnder saile. In meane while the sorrowfull Queene, who saw her son caryed away. (Forgetting through motherly loue the feare of the Giant) followed him very neere,

hoping to recouer her little *Galaor*: but when she saw him enter the Brigandine, God knowes in what anguish she was, for her Sonne in crying said: Ah helpe me mother. Alas she could not, and more strange then death she tooke it, to see him caried away, whom she loved as her owne life: ~~and~~ in this extreame dollour, she ~~cast~~ her other Sonne throwne into the sea, wherefore the wofull mother fell downe in a swoone. King *Perion* her husband, who saw all this in the place where he stood, from whence he could not quickly come to aide the Queene or her Son: at last came to the Queene, finding her in that case, and did so much as he recouered her againe. Then began she to make the most grievous mone in the world, regretting this new losse, by whom she before hoped to vnderstand of the first: and displaying euer to heare any newes of comfort, moued great compassion in all that beheld her. All this while the king laboured to perswade her, whereby at last she reobtained the reason that before was absent, whereupon the king said. Madame, we must thank God for all, and cheefely in this case, for now I euidently see hath happened, the effect of my dreame, whereof sometime I tolde ye: thus is little *Galaor* the last hart, that must be taken from vs against our will. Henceforth therefore feare not to declare, what is become of the first, for considering the estate you then were in, you ought not in reason to be blamed. At these words the mournfull mother forgetting none of the fault committed, told him the misfortune of her first borne Sonne, entreating him to pardon her, seeing she did

it throw feare of death, according as was the law of the Country. In good faith Madame, answered the king, well may ye assure your selfe; that while I liue I will not be offended with ye on your behalfe, therefore I pray ye, take their destiny so secretly as you may: for I trust in God, that seeing it hath pleased him at our beginning, to afforde vs so little ioy and comforte by our children, in time to come he will recompence vs with better successe, and it may be yet one day, that we shall heare good tidings of them.

Now leauing this, ye must note, that the Giant who bare away the yong Prince, was of the Country of *Leonois*, Lord of an Isle named *Gandalan*, wherein he had two strong places. He was not a bloudy man, as many other were, but of a gentle and peaceable conuersation; except when he was offended, for in his fury he would doe great cruelties. At one instant was the little barque so caried by the wind, as he arriued in his country, which he had caused to be peopled with Christians, & there he kept a Hermite of most holy life, to whom he went saying. Father take this child, and nourish him for me, teaching him all that is conuenient in a knight, for I assure ye, he is the son of a king and a Queene. Ah, said the Hermite, why haue you doone such a cruell deede? I will tell ye, answered the Giant. Being minded to go combate with the Giant *Albadan*, who most vnhappily killed my father, as you know, and at this present forcibly holds from me the Rocks of *Galteres*, which by right appertaineth to me: being thus imbarqued to execute mine intent, there came a Damofell to me, who said. Thou abusest

abusest thy selfe, for what thou goest about, must be done by the son to king *Perion* of *Gaul*, who is much more strong and hardy then thou art. I demanded by her faith, whether she told me true or no. That shalt thou see, quoth she: *At what time the two branches of one tree shall be ioyned, which at this instant are severed*: then did she tell me, where I should find him of whome she spake, and this is he I giue you in guard, euen as you loue me. By these meanes remained little *Galaor* in the holy mans charge, and there he staid so long, till he was of yeeres to receiue the order of Knight-hood, as hereafter shalbe recited to you.

At this time reigned in great *Brittaine* a king named *Falangris*, who dying without children, left one of his bretheren his heire: no lesse prudent in all affaires, then prompt at armes, and Knightly chiuallry, being called *Lisuart*, who married (not long before) with *Bri-*

*sana*, daughter to the king of *Denmarke*, the fairest Lady that then was to be found in all the North parts.

And albeit she had bene requested in mariage by great Princes of the country, notwithstanding for feare of some, the father durst not consent to the other, which he would provide by marrying one himselfe, and so he sent her to the yong Prince *Lisuart*, who for loue serued him, nor was he ignorant of the vertues harbouring in his gentle hart. Now after the death of *Falangris*, the Princes of great *Brittaine*, knowing the right of *Lisuart*, sent for him to succeed in the Realme: for he being in a strange country, whereby his haury deeds and chiuallry, he was married in so good a place, therefore they dispatched their Ambassadors to him, intreating him to accept the Realme and subiects of great *Brittaine*, and to come to inuest himselfe therein.

## CHAP. V.

*How King Lisuart sayling by sea, landed in Scotland, where he was greatly honoured, and well entertained.*

**R**ince *Lisuart* vnderstanding his Subiects desire for his short returne, provided his equipage by Sea, being aided and assisted by the king of *Denmarke* his father in law, and afterward set saile toward great *Brittaine*. And because he coasted along *Scotland*, he tooke landing there, whereof *Languines* being aduertised, came and receiued him very royally. Now was this new king of great *Brittaine* accompanied with the Queene his wife, and

a faire Princess their daughter, aged (as is thought) about ten yeeres, named *Oriana*, one of the fairest creatures that euer was seene: and therefore (during the time of her aboad in *Denmarke*) she was commonly called *The only*, because her paragon was not to be found in beauty. This yong Lady *Oriana*, being not vsed to trauaile on the sea, found her selfe somewhat weary, and her father fearing a worse mis-hap, intreated the king of *Scotland* she might stay with him till he sent for her. Right gladly

ly did king *Languines* and his Queene accept this charge, wherefore king *Lisuart*, (without longer stay in *Scotland*) went to sea, where weighing Anckers and hoising sailes, in short time landed in his owne Country, where being arrived, before he could abide in quiet, as in such occasions it often falleth out: certaine rebels were found, whom in time he ouer-mistred; which was the cause he could not so speedily send for his daughter that he left in *Scotland*.

In this place the author leaueth the new King peaceably ruling in great *Brittaine*, and returneth to the *Gentleman of the sea*, who by this time hath attained the age of twelue yeeres: albeit in stature he seemed past fiftene, and for his good grace (both of the Queene and the other Ladies) was loued and esteemed more then any other. Now according as hath beene already declared, the yong Princess *Oriana*, daughter to King *Lisuart*, was left with the Queene of *Scots* to refresh her selfe, till the King her father should send for her, and to her did the Queene vse all the gracious curtesies could be deuised, saying to her withall: Faire Madame, henceforth (so please you) shall the *Gentleman of the sea* serue you, and be yours. Which the Princess *Oriana* willingly accepted, wherefore the yong Prince made such an impression of this kindnes in his spirit, as during life he ment to serue nor loue any other, and therefore for euer bequeathed to her his heart: but so well it came to passe, that this loue was muall and equall betweene them both. Notwithstanding, the Prince for a while, hauing no knowledge thereof, thought himselfe vnworthy to great good: re-

puting it a very bold enterprize to thinke thereon, which was the cause he durst not speake, but shew his good will in outward semblance. The yong Princess who was of the same minde, and also in like paine, forbore to talke more with him then any other, thereby to auoyde all suspection: but the eyes of the two louers doing their deuoir and office, entercoursed the thing which most they esteemed, and thus couertly they liued, without acquainting each other with this amorous affectiō. Soone after, this yong vknowne Prince, seeing that to attaine the good grace of the Lady he loued, it was necessary he should take Armes, & receiue the order of Knight-hood, he said to himselfe: If oncel were a Knight, I would do such exploit, as should deserue the fauour of my Lady, or die in the attempt. And in this desire, one day finding king *Languines* at leysure for his request, and comming to him in the garden where he walked, he fell on his knee, vsing these speechs. My Lord, might it stand with your pleasure, I gladly would receiue my Knight-hood. When the King heard him, seeing his yong yeeres, he was greatly abashed, and thus answered. How now *Gentleman of the sea*? Do you thinke your selfe already strong enough for such a weightie charge? In sooth it is an easie thing to receiue honor: but to maintaine it as behooueth (it may be) is more hard then you esteeme, so that oftentimes a right good hart is troubled therewith. For if through feare or cowardise he forsake what he ought to doe, more better is death to him, then a shamefull life: therefore by mine aduise, I would haue you yet a while to forbear. The Prince not

D con-



contented with this answer, replied. I will not forgoe honor, my Lord, through any such feare as it pleaseth you to alleadge, for if I had not the desire to doe all that appertaineth to Chivalrie, I would not haue beene so bold to make this request: but seeing by your gracious fauour I haue beene hitherto nourished, most humbly I beseech ye to grant me this petition, that I may receiue no occasion of loosing your seruice, to seeke else where for obtaining my suite. The king highly esteemed the courage of the youth, and doubting least he would depart indeed, answered. Assure your selfe Gentleman, that I wil do it whē I see it necessary for ye, in meane while prouide your Armes and what else belongeth: Yet tell me (faire Sir) to whome (if I refused) would you go for your order. To King *Perion*, said the Prince, who is reputed a good and hardie Knight, for he hath married the Sister to your Queene, who maketh me beleue that he will not denie me: when I shall let him vnderstand, how shee hath nourished me, and that I am her seruant. It is true, quoth the King, but for this present haue a little patience, and when time serueth, you shalbe honorably knighted: in meane while he gaue charg, that all his needfull accoutrements for the cause should be prouided.

Now did the king aduertise *Gandales* heereof, who was so contented therewith, as he soone dispatched a Damofell toward the yong Prince: by whome he sent the Sword, the Ring, and the letter couered with waxe, which he found in the chest he tooke out of the sea. Such speede made the Damofell, as she came to the Prince, at what time he was sporting with *Oriana*

and the other Ladies, while the Queene slept. At that instant was he in such a sollemne thought of *Oriana*, as not daring to lift vp his eyes to behold her, said within himselfe. Ah God, why hast thou endued this Lady with such excellent beauty, that vnhappy I should suffer so extreame passions by louing her? Ah mine eyes, too high did ye looke when ye beheld her, of whome you are not worthy: but if the worst happen, death shall satisfie this timoriticie, whereto my hart (for her) is humbled. In this thought he was like to fall downe, so had he forgotten and ouergone himselfe: when a page came to him, saying. Gentleman, there is a strange Damofell attending without, who hath brought you certaine presents, and would speake with ye. When she (who loued him) heard this message, her hart began to tremble in such sorte, as being not able to endure this new flame, she called to the Prince, saying. I pray ye stay heere, and let the Damofel come in, that we may haue the sight of what shee hath brought: which he did, & the Damofell being entred, thus spake to him. My Lord, your good friend *Gandales* saluteth you, as the man whom he onely loueth, and hath sent ye this Ring, this waxe, & this Sword, which he desireth ye for his sake to keepe while you liue. The Prince hauing receiued the presents, laid the Ring and waxe aside, to behold the Sword, which being without a sheath, was wrapped in a fine linnen cloth, wherewith he greatly meruailed: and while he was musing thereon, *Oriana* came the waxe, thinking it to be some other thing, and said. Beleue me Gentleman, for my part I would haue this waxe. You may haue it if

if you please Madame, quoth he, but me thinkes this faire Ring were better for ye. I will haue nothing but this waxe, said *Oriana*, and so tooke it. During these discourfes, the King came, who said to the Prince: What thinke ye of that Sword? My Lord, quoth he, I find it a very faire one, but I maruaile wherefore it hath no scabbard. It is said the King, very neer fifteene yeeres since it had one: & hauing so said, he laid it aside, proceeding thus. You would be a Knight, and know not whe ther you ought to be one or no: therefore it is necessary that you vnderstand what you are, and I to tell you so much as I know. Heereupon he declared, how he was found in a chest on the sea, with the Sword & the Ring, as you haue already heard. I beleue my Lord, quoth the Prince, that for your pleasure you vse this inuention, because the Damofell when she entred said: that my good friend *Gandales* sent me these presents, but I think she fayled in her words, and would haue said my father *Gandales*. Notwithstanding (my Lord) if it be so as you haue reherfed, I am not displeased thereat: except in not knowing of whence I am, nor they me, yet do I thinke my selfe a Gentleman, for my hart perswades me of no lesse. Now therefore it is more necessary that I be Knighted then before, to the end I may labour to become such a one as may acquire honor and reputation, seeing I haue no parents by whom I may be named, not knowing what I am. When the King heard him speake so virtuously, he esteemed much better of him then before, thinking himselfe, that he could not but be a man of calling and hardy.

As thus they were deuising, a

Gentleman came to the King, and said. My Lord, King *Perion* your brother is come to the Court. The King very glad thereof, departed to receiue his brother, & embracing him, thus spake. I see my good brother, you meant to take me vnprovidd, for little did I thinke of your so sudden arrival in this country. Noble brother, answered King *Perion*, I come to request the ayd of my friends, because I haue more neede of them at this time then euer I had: for *Abies* King of *Ireland* threatneth me with strong warre, and is with great puissance entred my Kingdome, so that he and *Dagauel* his Cozin, haue laid very seuerie sledge to me. And which is worst of all, Fortune hath so hardly dealt with me, that certaine whome I trusted haue forsaken me, and the greatest part of my other friends are ouerthrown in the skirmishes we haue had together, so that now I come to request your succour in this extreame neede. Truly brother, answered *Languiues*, you may be sure thereof, and your misfortune grieueth me not a little: but I wil prouide therefore so well as I can. *Agrais* who was newly knighted, being hot and ready to Armes, hauing heard the request of his Vnckle, and the grant the King his father had made him of assistance: came and fell on his knee before him, saying. I beseech ye father let me obtaine one boone at your hands. The King who loued him as himselfe, answered. Demand what thou wilt, for it shall not be denied thee. I desire your sufferance, quoth *Agrais*, that I may go to *Gaule* to aid the Queene my Aunte. In good faith, said the King, well content am I, and in good equipage shalt thou goe and strongly accompanied. When the

*Gentleman of the sea* heard this determination, he was more earnest to compasse his enterprize then before: and seeing king *Perion* was present, he could not glut his eyes with beholding him, onely for the good reports he had heard of him: for he thought not then of any affinity or parentage, but would rather be Knighted by his hand then any other, in respect of his high & hautghy deedes of Armes. And to attaine his purpose, he thought best to entreat the Queene, hoping that if she would doe so much for him, as to moue the King her brother therein she should not be gain-said: and for he saw her so sad, that he durst not speake to her, he boldly went to *Oriana*, and setting his knee to the ground, said. I pray ye Madame tell me what causeth the Queene to be so pensive? *Oriana* beholding the man before her, whom she loued in her very Soule, albeit neither he or any other knew it: was surprized which such vehemency of loue, as she could hardly tell how to dissemble it, yet thus she answered. *Gentleman of the sea* and my friend, I will take paine to know, then shall I tell ye with all my hart, seeing it is the first request that euer ye made to me. Madame, quoth he, I know in my selfe so small deserving toward you, that I account my selfe vnworthy to request any thing of you: but I should thinke I were happy if I had the meane to obey you, or that it would please you to command me. What? said shee, haue you so base a mind, & such smal estimatiō of your selfe? Madame, answered he, in what sort soeuer it be, I haue no forces at all, but such as haue left me in great desire to serue you: for my hart is altogether yours, and can receiue nothing

but from you. Mine? quoth *Oriana*, and since when? Since the time it pleased you Madame, replied the Prince. And when was it, quoth she, that it pleased me? At that time, answered the Prince, when the king your father left you in this Country, if you remember, and when the Queene presented me to you, saying: I giue you this Gentleman to serue you, and at that time you accepted me as yours, when you answered, that you were well contented. Then was I giuen to you, and yours onely I reputed my selfe, so that I haue no authority ouer my selfe. Certes, said *Oriana*, you tooke her words to better end, then at that time she meant them: which I take in good part, and am content it shall be so. No sooner had she thus said, but the Prince was ouercome with such ioy, as he had no power to answer. *Oriana* perceiuing it, made no shew thereof, but said she would goe to the Queene, to doe what he had desired: and returned soone after, telling him, that her grieve was for the Queene of *Gaule* her sister, because the King of *Ireland* so oppressed her country. So please you Madame, answered the Prince, if I were Knighted, I gladly would go succor her, with your leaue. And without my leaue, quoth *Oriana*, will ye not goe? Not for death, said he, for without your gracious fauour, my conquered hart can haue no force or vertue in any perill. At these words *Oriana* smiled, saying. Seeing then you are mine, I grant you to be my Knight, and you shall aide the Queenes sister. Most humbly did the Prince giue her thanks, telling her, how the King thought it not good to giue him the order of Knighthood, but had denied him: yet, quoth he, is King *Perion* heere

heere as you know, at whose hands (so pleased you to intreate it) I would more willingly receiue it, then of any other. Nor will I let for that, said she, and the better to compasse your desire: I will cause the Princessse *Mabila* to beare me company, for whose sake he will the sooner grant it. So presently she went to her, and told what she and the *Gentleman of the sea* had concluded, to attaine his Knighthood, and how faine he would haue it at King *Perions* hand, for which cause she intreated her assistance in the sure. *Mabila* who loued the Prince very well, thus answered. I assure ye (sister) there shall be no want in me, for so well doth the Gentleman deserue, as would make one do much more then this for him, wherefore let him be ready this night in the Queens Chappell: then when time shall serue, we will go with our women to accompany him, and I will send for the King mine Vncle (which shall be somewhat before the breake of day) that he may come see me, and he being come to vs, you and I will moue him in the matter, which I hope he will graunte vs, considering he is a very gracious and affable Prince. This is very well appointed, answered *Oriana*: wherefore they sent for the Prince, and tolde him all the platforme they had laid: who humbly thanking them, would provide all things ready for himselfe, and therefore departed. Then went he to finde *Gandalin*, making him acquainted with the whole, saying. I pray ye brother, conuay mine armour so closely as you can into the Queenes Chappell, because I hope this night to receiue mine order: and for I must right soone depart hence, I would know if you haue any will to beare me

company. Beleeue me, quoth *Gandalin*, neuer with my will shall I depart from ye. Of these words was the Prince so glad, that the teares stood in his eyes with ioy. Well said he, provide all things ready as I told ye: wherein *Gandalin* failed not, for ere supper he tooke such order, as all was done vnscene of any, and the Prince got him secretly into the Chappell, where he armed himselfe except the head & hands. So staying there for the Ladies & King *Perion*, he fel on his knees before the Alter, desiring God to be his aide: not onely in conquering such as he should deale withall in Armes, but also in obtaining her, who caused him to endure so many mortal passiōs. The night being come, & the Queen with-drawne, the Princesses *Oriana* and *Mabila* with their womē, came to the chappell where the *Gentleman of the sea* attended, & *Mabila* hauing sent for K. *Perion*, he was no sooner entred but she thus began. My L. seeing you haue taken so much paines for me as to come hither, I pray you grant Madame *Oriana*, daughter to King *Lisuart*, a small request she will make to ye. I would be loath, said the King to deny her, as well for her Fathers honor as her own sake. *Oriana* arose to thanke him, whom whē he beheld so faire, he thought all the world could not match her in beauty: thus speaking to her. Madame, doth it please you to command me any thing? Not command my Lord, quoth she, but intreat ye to giue my Gentleman the order of knight-hood: this said she, pointing to him as he kneeled before the Altar. When the king saw him, he wondred at his goodly stature, and said to him. My friend, would you receiue the order of Knighthood? Yea my good Lord, answered

red the Prince, may it please you to giue it me. In Gods name be it done, said the King, who giue you grace so well to proceede therein, as he hath bestowed seemely perfection on you. Then putting on his right spur, and dubbing him with his Sword, thus spake. Now haue ye the Order appertaining to a Knight, but I would opportunity had serued me, to haue giuen it you with greater honor: notwithstanding, according to mine opinion of you, I hope you will proue such, as your renowne shall supply what wanteth here in performance. Afterward King *Perion* took leaue of the Ladies, who highly thanked him, & then set on his way toward *Gaule*, comending the new Knight to the heauenly protection: this was the first act, that might beare testimony of these louers sweete desires. If it seeme to the Reader, that their purpose was not according to affection, but simple in respect of their vehement passions: I answer, that they ought to excuse their age, likewise it often cometh to passe, that they which thinke themselves most expert in those pleasing and amorous actions, haue beene by this God so strongly bound, and liuely attained: as not only he depriued them of speech, but of iudgment also, & it is necessary for such persons to vse greater words, then these two who as yet had not learned them. But this new Knight being thoroughly furnished, and ready to his journey by his Ladies consent: would in thanking the company, take a more secret conge of *Orisna*. And she who for his sudden parting, felt new passions in her heart, yet neuertheless dissembling the: tooke him by the hand, and walking aside, thus spake. *Gentleman of*

*the sea*, you will be gone then, but first I pray ye tell me, whether you be the Sonne of *Gandales* or no: for according to the good opinion I haue of you, I thinke you to be issued of better place. Then reherfed he all that King *Langüines* had told him, wherein she conceiued very great pleasure: which done, they committed each other to God. So departed the Prince from this company, and right-soone found *Gandalin*, who attended for him at the Kings lodging dore, with the rest of his Armes and his Horse, whereon he mounted, and left the Citie vnseene of any, because as yet it was not day, so rood they on till they came into a Forrest.

Now is the greatest part of the day spent, before they would refresh themselves in any place: but hunger constrained them to feede on such viandes as *Gandalin* had brought with him from the Citie. During this time, they heard in the Wood on their right hand the voyce of some one, which seemed to them very doleful, wherefore the Prince rode presently that way: where he found a knight dead, and hard by him another in little better case, for he was so wounded, that he had no hope to liue. As for the partie that so cried, it was a woman who lay vpon the knight, pressing him so fore, as made his hart to faile him: and which was worst of all, the villanous woman to cause his death the sooner, cruelly thrust her hands into his wounds. But when the wounded knight espied the Prince, so well as he could he craued succor, saying. Ah gentle Sir, for Gods sake suffer me not to be thus murdered by this ribaud. Greatly was the Prince abashed at this wicked dealing, and therefore very roughly thus

thus spake. Woman withdraw your selfe, for you doe the thing not becoming you or your like. She as one ashamed, retired, and the Knight full of anguish fell in a swoone, which made the Prince very desirous to know what he was: but fearing that he had already yeilded his breath, quickly alighted, & vsed such good meanes as reuiued him againe, when he began to cry. Ah I am dead, good friends bring me to some place where I may haue counsell for my soule. Take courage, answered the Prince, for you shal haue what you demand: but I pray ye tell me, what fortune brought ye hither, or where is he that hath thus hardly intreated ye? It is, said the Knight, through this wicked woman, who (albeit I was rich and puissant, yea far much more then she) I made choise, for the good loue I bare her, and espoused her as my wife: neuertheless she discourteous creature, forgetting the good and honor I had done her, hath sundry times abandoned her honest regarde, namely this night past with this Knight here dead, whom I hauing neuer before seene, by chance yesterday he came to me: and this last night thus villanously abused me, where taking him with the head, we had a combat together, wherein (as you see) he lost his life. But when this strumpet saw I had slaine him, fearing I would do as much to her: she fell at my feete and desired pardon, whereto I easily condiscended, provided, that she offended no more. Hereupon, I intreated her to bind vp my wounds, but she perceiuing how grievously I was hurt, and brought into very weake estate through ouer-much losse of my blood, to reuenge the adulterous

villaines death, she assaied to kill me outright: and to make me languish the more in dying, cruelly she thrust her hands into my wounds, so that well I perceiue I cannot long liue. Therefore I beseech ye good Sir, helpe me to an Hermitage which is neere at hand, where I shall find some religious man, to comfort me in the agonie of my Soule. Such compassion tooke the Prince on him, as he and *Gandalin* taking him in their armes, caried him on a Horse to the Hermitage: in meane while the wretched woman stole away priuily, and a little before, she fearing that her Husband would be reuenged on her, sent for helpe to three of her bretheren, who dwelled not far from that place, giuing them to vnderstand which way they should come. In her wandering they met with her, and she had no sooner espied them, but she thus cried out. Ah helpe me good bretheren, for heere before is a theefe, who hath slaine this Knight which lieth heere, and hath beside so wounded my Husband: as there is no hope of life left in him: let him not therefore escape ye, nor he that is in his company, because the one is as deepe in the euill as the other. Such like speeches vsed this Harlot, that by the death of the Prince and *Gandalin*, her treason might be coueted: therefore that her Husband should not dy alone with her will, she shewed them the *Gentleman of the sea*, such as he returned from the Hermitage where he left the wounded Knight. Hereupon the three bretheren (too light of beleefe) galloped toward him, crying. Traitor thou art but dead. You lyé villaines, answered the Prince, for right well shall I defend my selfe from such traitours as you are.



are. Bestirre thy selfe then, said the bretheren, for thou hast offended vs all three, and we all wil be reuenged on thee if we may. By good hap the Prince had his Sheeld and Launce ready, and his Helmet very well laced, wherefore without any further answer, he sharply charged them, and meeting with the first, pearced through both his Sheeld and arme: and withall threw his Horse & him so fiercely against the ground, as his right shoulder was broken in the fall: in like manner was one of the Horses legges, so that neither the one or other could rise. At this encounter he brake his Launce, wherefore he suddenly drew his Sword, and addressing himselfe to the other twaine, gaue one of them such a forcible stroke, as slicing through his Armour, entred the flesh to the very bone on his shoulder likewise, so that therewith he fell from his saddle. Being thus dispatched of two, he came to the third, and saluted him with such a sound blow on the Helmet, as the poore Gentleman was constrained to embrace the necke of his Horse, thereby to sheeld himselfe from falling, finding himselfe as greatly amazed as the other were. Here-upon the woman that brought them thither fled away, which the Prince perceiuing cried to *Gandalin* that he should stay her: in meane while the first Knight hauing recovered himselfe, vsed these speeches to the Prince. We know not Sir, whether this fight hath bene for right or wrong, For right it could not be,

answered the Prince, vnlesse you thinke I haue done wrong, in succouring the husband to this traitorous woman, whom cruelly she hath caused to dy. When the three Knights heard that, they were very much abashed, and then thought they had bene abused by their sister, wherefore they thus replied. In sooth my Lord, so please you to assure vs, we will shew on what occasion we assailed you. You shall haue good assurance so to doe, said the Prince, yet will I not acquit ye from the combate. Then he that first spake, rehearsed all the words of their sister, according as hath bene already declared. In good sooth quoth the Prince, neuer was villanie disguised in such sorte, for she hath done far otherwise: as you may vnderstand by her husband himselfe, who being nere his death, I conuailed to an Hermitage hard at hand. Seeing it hath so fallen out, said the three bretheren, dispose of vs as they that remain at your mercy. And mercy shall ye haue, answered the Prince, if first ye will loyally sweare to me, that you will cary this woman and her husband, to the Court of King *Languines*, & there before him recite al that hath happened: saying withall how you were thereto constrained by a yong Knight that sent ye thither, & who this day departed from his Court, desiring him to censure on this mis-deed as he shall thinke good. All this they promised and swore to performe: wherefore commending them to God, he rode away, leauing them together.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. VI.

*How Vrganda the vnknowne, brought a Launce to the Gentleman of the sea.*



His quarrell thus ended with the three Knights, the Gentleman of the sea tooke the way which before he had left: but they had not ridden long, till they saw two Damosels come toward them by two sundry waies, who addressed themselves to meete together, which when they had done, they entred into communication. One of them bare a Launce in her hand, and when they were come to the Prince, she with the Launce aduanced herselfe to him saying. My Lord, take this Launce which I giue ye, because I can assure ye, that within three dayes it will stand ye in good steed, as therewith you shall deliuer from death, the house from whence ye are descended. The Prince amazed at these words, thus answered. How can it be Lady, that a house should liue or dye; It shalbe, quoth she, even so as I haue said, and this present I was desirous to bring ye, as a beginning of recompence, for two fauours I hope to receiue by you, the first whereof shall be: *when one of your best friends, shall by you haue one of the greatest honors that euer he can receiue, whereby he shall fall into the deepest danger, that any Knight hath done these ten yeeres space.* Belieue me Lady, answered the Prince, such honor (if God please) I will not doe my friend. Full well I know, quoth the Damosell, that so it shall come to passe: then putting on her *Busfray*, departed: this Damosell you must note, was *Vrganda the vnknowne*.

When the other Damosell (who heard the words) say her forsake her company, she determined for certaine daies to stay with the Prince, to see what he should doe, wherefore she said. My Lord, although I am a stranger, if you thinke it conuenient, I would gladly for a while abide with ye, deferring a iourney that I haue to my mistresse. The Prince well perceiued she was a stranger, which made him to demand of whence she was: where-to she replied, that she was of *Denmarke*. And that himselfe could not gain-say, because her language gaue assurance thereof, for hauing heard his Lady *Oriana* at her first comming into *Scotland*, it made him the better remember that Country speech, whereupon he said. If you please faire Damosell to goe with me, I will defend ye to my power: but I pray ye tell me, if you know the other Lady that euen now gaue me this Launce? Truly Sir, quoth she, neuer did I see her, till now I met her on the way, and then she said to me: that the Launce she caried, she would giue to the best Knight in the world, desiring me (withall) to let you vnderstand after her departure, that she bare you great affection, and how she was named *Vrganda the vnknowne*. Ah God, quoth he, how infortunate am I a not knowing her, if I forbore now presently to follow her, you must thinke Lady the cause is, that I cannot find her against her will: and thus deuising they rode on, vnill

untill the dark euening ouer-tooke them.

At this time it so chanced that they met with a Squire, who demanded where they intended to find lodging traauiling so late. Where we can, answered the Prince. In good faith, said the Squire, if you meane to haue lodging, you must leaue the way which now you take, for you cannot long time come to any that way: but if you will follow me, I will conduct you to a Castle belonging to my father, who shall do you all the honor and good entertainment may be deuised. The Damofel thinking this counsel good, desired the Prince to accept thereof, which he did, therefore the Squire rode before them as their guide, leading them directly forth of the way, because he had neuer scene the combates of Knights errand: and hoping to conduct them the day following to a Castell where such pastime was vsed, but that night he brought the to their lodging, feasting and entertaining them very sumptuously: yet could the Prince take no rest all the night, for thinking on the Lady that brought him the Launce. On the morrow very early they would be gone, and taking leaue of their hoste, the Squire said he would bring them againe into their way, acquainting the Prince as he rode, with the custome of the Castell, which being very neere at hand he shewed them: the Castell standing very strong and pleasantly, for before it ran a huge swift Riuer, and no passage thereto, but ouer a long draw-bridge, hauing at the end a faire Tower for defence thereof. When the Prince beheld it, he thought he must needs passe thither by the bridge, yet he asked the

Squire if there were any other way. No my Lord, quoth he, for this is the vsuall passage. March on then, said the Prince, wherewith the Squire, the Damofell and their company set forward, but the *Gentleman of the sea* remaining behind, entred into such a thought of his Lady *Oriana*, as he had well neere forgotten himself: but at length he heard the noyse of sixe Halberders, armed with Corslets and Helmets, who at the entrance of the bridge had arrested the Damofell, and there would force her to take an oath, that she should neuer beare loue to hir friend, if he would not promise her to aide King *Perion*: of *Ireland* against King *Perion*: which she refusing, cried to the Prince for his assistance. This clamour made him forget his musing, when adressing himselfe to the *Palhardes*, he said. Traiterous villaines, who commanded you to lay hands on this Lady being in my charge; In speaking these words, he came to the chiefe of the sixe, from whom right-soone he caught his hatchet, and gaue him such a stroke therewith, as he fell to the ground. All the other together presently set vpon him, but one of the he sliced to the very teeth, and soone after another bare him company, with the losse of his arme. When the three that were left saw their companions so handled, they tooke themselves to flight, and the Prince followed them so neere, as one of them left his legge behinde him, the other twaine he let go, returning where he left the Damofel, to whom he said. Now boldly go on, and like euill fortune may they haue, that encourage any villany, to lay forfible hand on Lady or Damofell. She being assured by these words, went on with the Prince

Prince and his Squires: but ere they had gone any thing far, they heard a great noyse & tumult within the Castell. Methinks Sir, said the Damofel, I heare a meruailous murmuring within this Fortresse, therefore I would aduise ye to take the rest of your armour. Go on quoth the Prince, and feare not, for where Ladies are euill entreated (who ought euery where to goe in safety) there hardly abideth any man of vaw. In sooth, said she, if you doe not what I haue desired, I will not passe any further: and so much shee perswaded him, that at length he laced on his Helmet: afterward he went into the Castell, at the entrance whereof, he met a Squire weeping, who said. Ah God, why will they murder (without cause) the best knight in the world? alas they wold inforce him to promise, what is impossible for him to accomplish. These words of the Squire, could not stay the Prince, for he saw King *Perion* (who had so lately Knighted him) very hardly vsed by two Knights, who with the helpe of ten armed Halberders had round beset him, saying sweare, if not, thou diest. Greatly did it grieue the Prince, to see such outrage offered to King *Perion*, wherefore he thus called to them. Traiterous villaines, what moues you to misuse the best Knight in the world; by heauen you shall all die for him. At these words, one of the Knights left the King, and taking sixe Halberders with him, came to the Prince, saying. It likewise be-houeth you to sweare, if not, you can escape no better then an other. What quoth he, shall I then sweare against my will, by Gods leaue it shall not be so. Then they of the Castell cryed to the Porter, that he should shut the gate, wherefore

the Prince now saw he must stand vpon his defence: whereupon hee ran fiercely against the Knight, charging him in such sorte, as he fell downe dead ouer the crupper of his Horse, for in the fall he brake his necke. Which the Prince beholding, not tarring any longer with the Halberders, came to the other knight that combated with King *Perion*, piercing his Launce quite through his body, so that he accompanied the first in fortune King *Perion* seeing himselfe thus succoured, so cheered vp his hart, as he did much better then before against his enemies, causing them by sharpe strokes of his Sword to retire: in meane while the *Gentleman of the sea*, (being on Horse-backe) ranne among them and scattered them, tumbling one downe heere, and another there, so that at length by the aid of the king, they were all slaine, except certaine that fled away on the top of the walles. But the Prince alighted and followed them, where at they were so affrighted, as they cast themselves downe headlong from the wals: only two got them into a Chamber, where they thought to remaine in safetie, notwithstanding he pursued them so neer, as he buckled *pel mel* with them. But within the Chamber on a bed lay an ancient knight, whose vnweldy age had taken from him the vse of his legges, to them that came in he vsed these speeches. Cowardly villaines, from whom run ye so shamefully, From a knight, answered one of them, who hath plaide the Diuell in your Castell, for he hath slaine your two Nephewes, and all our companions. As thus he spake, the Prince caught him by the head, saying. Tell me (villaine) where is the Lord of this place, or else

else thou dieſt. The poore man ſee-  
ing himſelfe in ſuch perill, ſhewed  
him the old knight lying on the bed:  
but when the Prince ſaw him ſo old  
and decrepite, he blamed him in  
this manner. Thou wretched olde  
man, hath death already ſeized on  
thy bones, and yet dooſt thou  
cauſe ſuch a wicked cuſtome to be  
maintained heere? Well dooth  
thine age excuſe thee from bearing  
Armes, yer ſhall I giue thee thy de-  
ſert belonging to ſuch a villaine.  
With theſe words he made offer  
to ſmite off his head: Wherefore  
the affrighted olde man cried: Al-  
as my Lord, for Gods ſake mercy.  
None at all, quoth the Prince, thou  
art dead if thou ſweareſt not to me,  
that while thou liueſt, ſuch like  
treason ſhall be no more maintai-  
ned in this place: whereto the olde  
knight right gladly tooke his oath.  
Now tell mee, ſaide the Prince,  
wherefore haſt thou heere tofore  
kept this cuſtome heere; For the  
loue of King *Abies* of *Ireland*, an-  
ſwered the Knight, who is mine  
Nephew, and becauſe I cannot aid  
him with my perſon in his warre, I  
was deſirous to ſuccour him with  
ſuch Knights errand as paſſed  
this way. False villaine, answered  
the Prince, what haue Knights er-  
rand to do with thy deſire: ſo ſpur-  
ning the bed with his foote, threw  
it downe, and the olde Knight vn-  
der it: where commending him to  
all the Diuels, he left him, and  
comming downe into the Court,  
tooke a Horſe which was one of  
the ſlaine Knights, and bringing it  
to the King, ſaid. Mount your  
ſelfe my Lord, for it little likes me  
to ſtay any longer here, where  
ſuch bad people haue their habita-  
tion. The king preſently went to  
Horſe-bake, and ſo they rode toge-  
ther out of the Caſtell: but the

Prince fearing leaſt the king ſhould  
know him, would by no means  
take off his Helmet, notwithſtan-  
ding as they rode along, the king  
thus ſpake to him. I pray ye Sir  
knight tell me of whence you are,  
that haue ſuccoured me when I  
was ſo neere my death: warran-  
ting me alſo hereafter from the eni-  
mies of this place, & ſhewing your  
ſelfe a good friend to Ladies and  
knights errand. As for me, I am  
the ſame man againſt whom they  
kept this ſtraight paſſage, impor-  
ting the cruell oath for which you  
combated. My Lord, answered  
the Prince, I am a knight deſirous  
to do you any ſeruice. Beleeue  
me, quoth the king, that haue I al-  
ready well perceiued, for hardly  
ſhould I haue found ſo good a  
friend to helpe me: yet will I not  
giue ouer till I know ye. Alas my  
Lord, ſaid he, that will little profit  
ye. Notwithſtanding, quoth the  
King, I pray ye take off your Hel-  
met: which he would not do, but  
put downe his Beuer a little. Whe-  
the king ſaw that his intreatie  
would not preuaile, he deſired the  
Damoſell to obtaine ſo much for  
him: whereto ſhe conſcended,  
tooke the Prince by the hand, ſay-  
ing. I beſeech ye Sir, grant the king  
what he hath requested. He ſeeing  
her importunate, took off his Hel-  
met, when preſently the king  
knew him, that it was the ſame man  
he had knighted at the Ladies mo-  
tion, wherefore embracing him,  
he ſaid. Right glad am I to know  
ſo deere a friend. My Lord, quoth  
the Prince, I knew you ſo ſoone  
as I came to the Caſtell, to be the  
man that gaue me mine order of  
knight-hood, wherewith (ſo pleaſe  
it God) I meane to ſerue you while  
your warre continueth in *Gaule*: &  
willingly I would not be knowne  
by

by any one till your troubles be fi-  
niſhed. You haue already, ſaid the  
King, done ſo much for me, as I  
reſt bounden to you while I liue,  
allowing you to diſpoſe of me and  
mine: and if (as you ſay) you come  
into *Gaule*, you ſhall augment with  
aduantage the honor due to you,  
then iuſtly may I tearme the hower  
happy, that it was my fortune to  
make ſo good a Knight. Such like  
words ſaid King *Perion*: little thin-  
king how neere they were allied to-  
gether, & thus they rode deuiling,  
till at length they came to a dou-  
ble way, when he demanded of the  
King, which of thoſe waies pleaſed  
him to take. This on the left hand,  
answered the King, becauſe it gui-  
deth directly to my Country. God  
haue you then in his keeping, ſaid  
the Prince, for I muſt needs ride  
this other way, I pray ye, quoth the  
King, remember your comming  
into *Gaule* as you promiſed me, for  
the hope I haue in you, hath abrid-  
ged part of my ſorrow, and giueth  
me aſſurance withall, that by your  
meanes I ſhall recover my loſſe.  
So tooke they leaue of each other,  
the king toward *Gaule*, and the  
Prince in company with the Da-  
moſell and *Gandalin*: but becauſe  
ſhe had now ſeene what ſhe deſi-  
red, namely the prooffe of the  
Launce which *Vrganda* gaue him,  
ſhe wold trauaile no further out of  
her way, but turning to the Prince,  
ſaid. I haue hitherto (my Lord)  
with right good will kept ye com-  
pany, becauſe the Lady that gaue  
ye the Launce, ſaid ſhe brought it  
to the beſt knight in the world, and  
ſurely I haue ſeene ſo much, as I  
ſtand in no doubt of her ſpeeches:  
wherefore I ſhall now ſhape my  
courſe to find her I am ſent to, as  
before I tolde ye. I pray ye Lady,  
quoth he, tell me what ſhe is. It is,

ſaid ſhe, the Princeſſe *Oriana*,  
Daughter to king *Liſuart* of great  
*Brittaine*. When he heard her na-  
med whom he loued ſo deere, his  
hart began to tremble in ſuch  
ſorte, as he had fallen beſide his  
Horſe, but that *Gandalin* ſtaied him,  
yet ſerching a great ſigh, ſaid. Ah  
God, my hart faileth me, the Da-  
moſell thinking ſome ſudden ſick-  
nes was the cauſe thereof, would  
haue had him vnarmed: but hee  
tolde her it was needleſſe, for he  
was oftentimes wont to feele ſuch  
paſſions. The Squire (who all this  
while had beene their guide) tooke  
leaue of the Prince, asking the Da-  
moſell if her way lay toward the  
Courte of King *Languins*: which  
ſhe affirming, he ſaid he would ac-  
company her thither, becauſe hee  
had buſines of ſome importance  
there. So hauing courteouſly ſalu-  
ted each other, they returned the  
ſame way they came, & the Prince  
rode on with *Gandalin* to ſeek ad-  
uentures.

Heere leaueth the Author, to tel  
ye what happened to *Gaule*, whom  
the Giant carried away, and gaue in  
keeping to the aged *Hermes*, as al-  
ready you haue heard. By this time  
had *Gaule* attained the age of ſix-  
teene yeeres, & was comely perfecti-  
on: hauing no other exerciſe,  
then reading on a Booke, which  
the olde man lent him, diſcouering  
the deeds of Armes of ſundry an-  
cient Knights. Heerein he tooke ſo  
great pleaſure, as on this occaſion,  
as alſo by a naturall inſtinct, he was  
deſirous to be knighted, neere the-  
leſſe, he knew not whether by right  
ſuch honor appertained to him.  
Very earnestly he questioned  
thereon with the *Hermes*, but the  
holy man who knew right well,  
that ſo ſoone as he receiued the  
E order,

order, he should combat against the Giant *Albadan*: his eyes being filled with teares, he thus answered. My sonne, much better were it for you to labour in the safetie of your soule, then to adventure on the order of Knight-hood, which is to be maintained with wonderous trauaile. Father, quoth *Galaor*, very hardly shall I follow the calling, which I take against my will: but in that whereof my hart hath made choise, if God grant me good successe, will I aduance his seruice, for there-out may I not be during life. The good Hermit, who then well perceiued his grounded resolution, replied. Certes my Sonne, seeing you are determined to follow Armes, I can well assure ye, that through fault of high linage, you neede not dispaire of good hap, in respect you are son to a King and Queene: but keepe that to your selfe, and let not the Giant know how I told ye so much. When *Galaor* heard this, he was exceedingly contented, saying to the Hermit. In sooth Father, the care I haue had all my life time to be a Knight, hath bene very great: but now I thanke God and you, I am rid thereof, for by that you haue told me, I cannot misse of it. The Hermit noting his earnest affection, doubted least soone after he would be gone: wherefore he gaue the Giant to know his Schollers forwardnes, as also how his constitution did now very well serue him, being wonderfull desirous of his knight-hood, and therefore he should now deale in the cause as best himselfe pleased. No sooner was the Giant enformed hereof, but presently he got him to Horse-backe, and rode to the Hermit, with whom he found *Galaor*, of more large stature then his

yeeres expressed, very comely and beautyfull in euery parte, whereupon he thus spake to him. I vnderstand Sonne, that you would be a Knight to follow Armes, truly you shall, prepare your selfe to go with me when time serueth, and your desire shalbe honorably satisfied. Father answered *Galaor*, heerein consisteth the summe of mine affection: so not long after, the Giant departed from the Hermit, taking *Galaor* with him, who falling on his knee before the reuerent olde man, desired that as he had fatherly nourished him, so still he would remember him in his deuout orisons. The holy man with the teares trickling downe his cheekes, kissed and blessed him, then mounted *Galaor* on Horse-back and followed the Giant, who brought him home to his Castell: where for certaine time he practised to combat at Armes, as also bravely to manage Horses, hauing all things conuenient for the same, and two maisters very expert therein. When he had continued a yeere at these exercises, the Giant seeing him worthy to receiue honor, & strong enough to endure chiuallric: disposed thereon as you shall read hereafter.

Now againe doth the Author leaue him, and discourseth of that which chanced to the Gentleman of the sea, who after he departed from King *Perion* and the Damosell, rode two daies together, without any adventure: and on the third about mid-day, he arriued at a very goodly Fortresse, that appertained to a Gentleman named *Galpan*. This *Galpan* was then the most valiant Knight in all that Country, and therefore was greatly feared of all his Neighbours, yet did he there maintaine an abhominable and wicked

wicked custome: forgetting God, who was cheefely to be honored, bequeathed his endeouours to the seruice of the Diuell. For he constrained all Ladies and Damosells that passed by his Castell, to enter in, where villainously he tooke his pleasure of them: and not contented therewith, enforced them to sweare, that while they liued they should beare affection to none but him, if any denied, he caused them cruelly to be put to death. Likewise he compelled such Knights as trauielled that way, to combat one alone, against his two bretheren, but if they were vanquished, he would force the conquerour to deale with himselfe, he being the

most hardy knight in al those parts. If it happened that he brought the into any debilitie, he would take from them all they had, turning them away on foote, after he had made them sweare, to name themselves while they liued, the vanquished by *Galpan*, otherwise, hee would depriue them of life. But God displeased with the cruelty, which so long time he had vsed to the hurt of many good people, would now alter this great inconuenience, and that *Galpan* with his complices should receiue guerdō to their deserts, making them an example to all other, as you shall heare presently recited.

## CHAP. VII.

*How the Gentleman of the sea, combated with the guarders of Galpans Castell, and afterward with his bretheren, and in the end with Galpan himselfe.*

**B**Y this time the Gentleman of the sea is come nere the castle, where he saw a Lady comming towards him greatly afflicted, hauing no other company then a Squire and a Page. This sorrowfull woman breathed forth many griueous sighes, shewing a violent kind of warre, betweene her hands and the golden tresses of her haire, which she discheueled and rent very pitifully. Hereat was the Prince not a little amazed, and willing to know what moued her to these extreames, he came to her with these speeches. Faire Gentlewoman, I pray yetel me the cause of your sorrow. Ah my Lord, qud. shee, death would be now right welcome to me, being the onely friend to

beare me company: for such is my misfortune, as teares are more conuenient for me then remembrance of the cause. In sooth Lady, saide the Prince, if in any respect I can do ye good, you shall find me ready withall my hart. Being sent Sir, quoth the Damosell, by my mistresses commandement, to a yong Knight, a man of some account in these parts, and passing along this way: foure cruell villaines set vpon me, and (whether I would or no) brought me into this Castel where a traiterous Knight dishonorably forced me, compelling me afterward to sweare, that I should neuer loue any friend but him. This complaint moued the Prince to great admiration, and thus he answered. Follow me Lady, for your iniury shalbe reuenged, if God

giue me leaue. Heereupon the Damosell immediatly went with him, and by the way he desired her to tell him, what the man was to whom she was sent. If you reuenge my wrong quoth she, I will tell ye: but I can assure ye he is such a one, as will be right sory when he hears of my misusage. Great reason, said the Prince, hath he so to do: and as thus they communed together, they came to the place where shee shewed him the foure Gardants, to whom he presently said. Disloyall varlets, wherefore haue ye abused this Lady as she trauailed on her Iournie? Because (quoth they) wee stood in no feare of you: but if you get ye not the sooner, your entertainment shalbe worse then hers was. Without any more talking he drew his Sword, and comming to one that heaued his hatchet against him, quite cut away the right arme from his body: then turning to another, cleft him ouer the face to the very eares. When the rest saw their companions thus mained, they fled away so fast as they could, running through a by way along a Riuer side: but the Prince making no shew of pursuing them, wiped his Sword and put it vp againe, then comming to the Damosell, bad her go forward. My Lord, quoth she, hard by is a gate, where I found two armed Knights attending. Well, said he, and I shall find them when I come thither. So rode they on, & as the Prince entred the base court, he saw the Dungeon dore open, and an armed Knight on Horse-back come forth, after whom they within let downe a Port-cullis, and shut the dore againe: then the Knight of the Castell aduancing himselfe, very boldly thus spake to the Prince. Poore

wretch, too soone art thou come herher to receiue shame and dishonor. Dishonor? quoth Prince, tush these are but words, leaue what shall happen to the presence of God, who only is skilfull therein: and tell if thou be the villaine that did force this Lady? No, answered the Knight, but if it were I, what then? I meane, quoth the Prince, to reuenge her wrong if I can. Go to, said the Knight, I shall see then what kinde of reuendgo you vse. So giuing the Spurs to his Horse, ran as fiercely as he could against the Prince, yet he failed in the attaine: but the Prince meeting him with full carire, gaue him such a greeting with his Launce through the Sheeld, as the armour being vnable to resist it, let passe the yron through both his shoulders, whereby he fell downe dead in the place. Hauing withdrawne his Launce, prepared himselfe for another that came to succor the first, who pearcing quite through the Princes Sheeld, left the head of his Launce in his armour, which was of sufficient proofe: but in the encounter he met his enimie so desperately, as he rent his Helmet from his head, casting him so violently off his Saddle, as hee was able to sit no more on. Hersebacke. The Knight seeing himselfe thus vnarmed, cried for some other to come helpe him, whereupon three Halberders issued forth, to whom he said: Looke well my friends that this man escape vs not. At these words, they ranne all three violently on the Prince, and buckled so neere him, as they slew his Horse betweene his leggs, whereby he was constrained to fight on foote: and so offended was he thereat, that hauing recoured himselfe, he smote his

Launce

Launce through the Knights head, which made him presently yeeld the ghost. And now he bestirres himselfe against the other three, who cowardly stealing behinde him, wounded him on the shoulder, whereby he lost a great quantity of his blood: but full well he recompensed the villaine that did it, letting forth the deereft blood he had in his body, by cleauing him with his Sword as it had bene an Axe. The other two terrified heerewith, ranne vp into a long Gallery, crying: Come my Lord, come quickly, for we are all vanquished. In meane while, the Prince seeing his owne Horse was slaine, mounted on that belonged to the knight he slew last: soone after he saw another Knight stand looking forth at a dore, who perceiuing the Prince had espied him, said. What hath moued thee to come in heere and kill my people? Nothing els, answered the Prince, the desire I haue to reuenge this Lady, who hath bene here wronged most dishonorably. As thus he spake, the Damosell came to him, and knowing the Lord of the Castell that forced her, she said. Ah gentle Knight, see that this monster escape you not, for by him haue I lost my former honor. Libidinous Ruffian, quoth the Prince, deerey shalt thou pay for thy disloyall dealing: Goe arme thee, else will I slay thee naked as thou art, for to thee or such like villaines ought to be vied no fauour: but the Damosell more and more still cried. Kill, kill the Traitour, that hereafter he liue not to abuse any more, otherwise will their shame be laid to your charge. Lewde woman, answered the Knight, in an euill hower came he hither by thy counsell, and in thy

company. And thou that threatenest me so brauely, attend my coming, and flie not away, for by no other meanes canst thou warrante thy selfe. So he departed, and soon after came armed into the Court, where he mounted on a lusty white Courser: then comming to the Prince, he began to menace him, saying. Well maist thou curse the time that euer thou sawest this Damosell, for it will cost thee the price of thy head. Each one, said the Prince, must keepe his head so well as he may, and he that cannot, let him loofe it. Without longer stay they couched their Launces, which at their encounter ran into their Sheelds and armour, wounding some what deep into their flesh: and so forcibly did their bodies meet together, as they were both laid a long on the gound, when quickly recouering themselves, with their Swords drawne they prepare to the combate. Fierce and cruell strokes were giuen on either side, to the great admiration of such as beheld them, for many peeces of their Sheelds & armour was scattered round about them: & which is more, their Helmets were so torne and battered, as oftentimes their bare heads bore off the blowes, so that the ground was coloured with their blood: but *Galpan* had receiued a wound through the sight of his Helmet, which made the blood trickle into his eyes, and he to wipe them retied backe aside. What *Galpan*? said the Prince, desirest thou to breath? dost thou not remember that thou fightest for my head? if thou defendest not thine owne well, thou art like to loofe it. Be patient a while, answered *Galpan*, and let vs breath a little, for we haue time enough to

E 3

make



make an end. It is no reasonable motion, said the Prince, seeing I fight not with thee for curtesie, but to reuenge the dishonor thou hast done to this Lady. With these words he gaue him such a stroke on the head, as made him fall to the ground on his knees, yet quickly he arose and tooke hart a fresh: but the Prince would not let him range about as he desired, for hee was so out of breath, that he could hardly lift vp his Sword, wherefore he did nothing but crouch vnder his Sheld, yet was it so sliced away in peeces, as very little was left to defend himselfe withall. *Galpan* seeing he had no other remedie, began to flye before the Sword of his enimie, and at length (as his last refuge) thought to saue himselfe in a little Tower which his Gardanes vsed to stand in: but the Prince following him hard at the heeles, got him by the Helmet and puld it off, and giuing a full stroke at him, therewith smot his head from the shoulders, afterward he came to the Damofell, saying. Faire Lady, now may you choule an other friend if you please, for he to whom you promised, hath discharged ye of the bargaine. Thanks be to God and you Sir, quoth she: and as they returned from the Tower, they heard the dore shut too, wherefore he mounted on *Galpan's* Horse, which was esteemed one of the goodlyest in the world, and said to the Damofell. I pray ye Lady, now let vs be gone hence. My Lord, quoth she, if it like you, I will cary his head to him whom I am sent, and present it to him on your behalfe. Do not so, said the Prince, for the carriage will be too troublesome, but take the Helmet if you will. The Damofell liking well of his aduise,

commanded her Squire to cary it with him: and so they rode from the Castell, the seruants whereof were all gone, & had left the gates wide open. But the Prince not forgetting the Damofels promise, that she would rel him the Knights name she was sent vnto: therefore earnestly he entreated her to satisfie him therein. Good reasō, quoth she, his name is *Agrais*, Sonne to the King of *Scotland*. Praised be God, said the Prince, who made me able to do so much, as so good a Knight shall be no more wronged by traiterous *Galpan*: for you are (in mine opinion) well auenged, and worthily may you call *Agrais* a good Knight, in respect he is one of the best I know, and if for him you haue receiued dishonor, it now returneth to your commendation. Go then and say to him, that a Knight of his, humbly salueth him, whom he shall find at the warres in *Gaulle* when he commeth thither. Gentle Sir, quoth she, seeing you loue him so well, I pray ye grant me one request. That will I, quoth the Prince. Let me then, said she, vnderstand your name. Lady, quoth he, at this time forbear the knowledge thereof, and command what else you please, you shall not be denied. No other thing will I desire, answered the Damofell. Belieue me, said the Prince, it is little courtesie to request the thing, which willingly I would not reueale to any one. Yet must I needs know it, quoth the Damofell, or else you do not performe your promise. When he perceived she would not be dissuaded, somewhat moued with anger he replied. Such as know me, call me the *Gentleman of the sea*. So seeing spurres to his horse, he gallopped away from the Damofell, who was not

not a little glad that she knew his name: but when he was gone from her, he remembered the wound on his shoulder, which still bled very freshly, so that he might easily be tract by his bloud, & on his white Horse it had dropp in many places. At euening he came some what neere a Fortresse, where he beheld a knight vnarmed comming toward him, and after he had well viewed him, he said. My Lord, I pray you tell me where haue you beene so wounded? In sooth, quoth the Prince, at a Castle not very far hence. And how, said the Knight, came you by that goodly white Horse; I tooke it, answered the Prince, in requirall of mine owne, that was there slaine by traiterous villaines. But would *Galpan*, quoth the Knight, suffer ye so to do? Ye may Sir, replied the Prince, he is now become more patient, for he hath endured the losse of his head. When the Knight heard of *Galpan's* death, he presently alighted from his Horse, and ran to kisse the Priuies scete: but he would not suffer him, yet could he not hold him from embracing his Sheld, saying.

ing. Ah Gentle Knight, how highly am I indebted to you; you are to this place the most wellcome man in the world, for by your meanes haue I thorowly reuenged mine honor. Leauē wee this talke, said the Prince, & say where I may quickly finde some remedie for my wounds. In my house, answered the knight, abideth a Neece of mine, who shall heale your hurts better then any other. So riding on they arriued at the castle, where being dismounted, they walked into the great hall, the Knight reporting by the way, how *Galpan* had kept him from bearing Armes one whole yeere and a halfe, compelling him to change his name, and sweare to call himselfe while he liued, the conquered by *Galpan*: but now, quoth he, seeing he is dead, mine honor is restored me againe. Afterwarde he caused the Prince to be vnarmed, and laid in a sumptuous bed, where his wounds were dilligently attended by the Lady, who assured him in short tyme to make him well againe: if he would be aduised by her counsell, which he promised faithfully to do.

## CHAP. VIII.

*How the third day after the Gentleman of the sea departed from king Languines, the three Knights, came to the Court, bringing with them the wounded Knight in a Litter, and his disloyall wife.*



On the third day after the Prince left the Court of King *Languines*, where hee receiued the order of Knight-hood, the three Knights came thither, with their wounded brother and his trothlesse wife, of whom the discourse hath bene already recited. At their arriuall

they presented him before the King, letting him vnderstand the cause of their coming, and deliuering their prisoner on the new Knights behalfe, to deale with her as he should thinke conuenient. Greatly did the King meruaile at the womans disloyaltie, not imagining such wickedness could haue harboured in her.

ding, he thanked the Knight that had sent them to his Courte, yet could he not guesse who it was, for he nor any body else knew that the *Gentleman of the sea* was Knighted, but the Princessse *Oriana*, and the Ladies which accompanied her in the Chappell. Full soone was hee aduertised of his absence from the Courte, but he thought hee was gone to visite his father *Candales*: the King turning to the knight in the Litter, said. Me thinkes that a woman so vnfaithful as your wife hath beene, deserueth not to liue. My Lord, quoth the Knight, doe therein as it shal like your maiesty: as for me, I will neuer consent that the thing I most loue should die. This said, the Knights tooke their leaue of the King, carying backe againe with the brother in the Litter: leauing their sister to receiue iustice by the Kings appointmēt, who after their departure called for her & said. Woman, thy malice hath bene too great in respect of thy husbands kindnes, but thou shalt be made an example to all other, that they hereafter offend not in the like: and so he commanded her to be burned aliue. The execution being doone, the King was in greater pensiuenesse then before, because he knew not who the new knight should be, that parting so suddenly from his Court: but the Squire standing by, which lodged the *Gentleman of the sea*, & afterward conducted him to the Castell, where he deliuered King *Perion* from death, began to imagine that it was his guest, wherefore he said to the King. It may be (my Lord) a yong Knight, with whom the Damofell of *Denmarke* and my selfe were certaine daies, and then we left him when wee came thither. Knowest thou his

name? quoth the King. No my Lord, quoth the Squire, but hee is both yong and very beautyfull: beside I saw him do such rare deeds of Chiuallrie in so little time, as in mine opinion if I liue, he will proue one of the best Knights in the world. Then discoursed he at large euery action, as also how hee deliuered King *Perion* in the time of great danger. When the King had noted well his taile, his desire to know him increased now more and more. My Lord, quoth the Squire, the Damofell that came hether with me, happily can telye more tydings of him, for it was my chance to meet them together. Of what Damofell speakest thou? said the King. Of her, answered the Squire, that lately came from great *Brittaine* to Madame *Oriana*. Presently was she sent for, and hee demanded what the Knight was of whom there went such reporte. Whereupon she declared so much as she knew, chiefly the occasion wherefore she rode with him, and in what manner the Launce was giuen him by *Vrganda*, as to the onely Knight in the world: but in sooth, quoth shee, I know not his name, for neuer could I learne it of him. Ah God, said the King, how may it be? Now was *Oriana* voyde of all doubting, for shee well knew it was her *Gentleman of the sea*, but shee was so grieued with the news, which the Damofell of *Denmarke* had brought her, as shee well knew not whom she might complaine to: for the king her father sent her word how she should prepare her self in readinesse to come to him, so soon as his Ambassadors should bee sent for her into *Scotland*. But much more willingly could she afford to stay in that Country, then there whether she should now goe against

gainst her mind, not onely in respect of her gentle vsage there, but because she imagined by being far thence, she should be further from him that had the prime of her affection: beside, she might there hardly afterward heare any newes of him, but continuing in *Scotland* she could easily compasse it. In these melancholly thoughts was the amorous Princessse, and the King (on the other side) in dayly musing, what he might be that spāt the foure Knights, with the wicked woman whom the fire had consumed. But fixe or fixe dayes after these matters were thus passed, as the King was conferring with his Sonne *Agrais*, (who now stood vpon departing toward *Gaule* to succour the king his Vncle) there entered a Damofell, who falling on her knee before all the assembly, framed her speeches to *Agrais* in this manner. May it please ye my Lord, that in the presence of his highnes and this assembly, I deliuer a message of importance to ye; whom taking the Helmet from her Squire, she thus proceeded. This Helmet thus broken and battered as ye see, I present ye in place of *Galpans* head, as a token to you from a new Knight, to whom (in my iudgment) it better belongeth to beare Armes then any other: and the cause why hee sends it you, is, for that *Galpan* villainously abused a Damofell, that came to you on urgent affaires. What, quoth the King, is *Galpan* overcome by the hand of one man, beleue me Damofell you tell vs meruailes. Worthy Lord, answered she, he onely of whom I speake hath done him to death, after hee had slaine all the other that resisted him in *Galpans* Castell: and he thinking to reueng their soile himselfe,

combated hand to hand with the Knight, but such was his bad fortune, as there with dishonor hee lost his head, which I would gladly haue brought to this Court, yet doubting the escape faulter thereof, and being otherwise aduised by him that sent me to my Lord *Agrais*, as testimony of his victory this Helmet may suffice. Vndoubtedly, said the King to at their present, it is the same Knight of whose name we are ignorant: how say you Lady, cannot you resolve vs. My Lord, quoth she, I obtained it by exceeding importunity, for otherwise he would neuer haue told me. Say then good maiden, replied the King, to rid vs of all other doubt. He nameth himselfe, said the Damofell, the *Gentleman of the sea*. When the King heard this, he was greatly abashed, and so were all the other likewise, afterward he thus spake. By my faith, I am assuredly perswaded, that whosoever Knighted him, needs not be ashamed thereof, seeing so long time he requested it of me, and I deferred it for occasions which I needed not to haue done, seeing Chiuallry is in him already so well accomplished. Then *Agrais* taking occasion to speake, demanded of the Damofell, where he might meet with his gentle friend. My Lord, quoth she, he humbly commendeth himselfe to your good grace, giuing you to vnderstand by me, that you shall finde him at the warres in *Gaule* if you come thither. Good newes faire Damofell, said *Agrais*, haue you brought me, now am I more desirous to be gone then before I was: and if I may finde him there, with my good will shall neuer leaue his company. You haue reason so to do, answered the Damofell: for he loueth you as becommeth

meth a Gentleman. Great was the ioy for these good newes of the *Gentleman of the sea*, and if any one receiued displeasure, you must thinke it was *Oriana* aboue all the rest, yet was it handled so couertly, as the watchfullest eye could not descerne it. Now in meane while the king enquired by diuers meanes, how and by whom the Prince was Knighted; when at length he was aduertised, that the Ladies attending on the Queene, could tell better then any body els, which with much a do he obtained of them. Then may the *Gentleman of the sea*, quoth he, vaunte,

that he hath found more curtisie in you then in me: but the cause why I prolonged the time of his honor, was that he seemed too yong for so great a charge. In this time *Agrais* courteously wellcomed the *Damosell*, who beside the *Helmer*, deliuered him letters from a Lady that deereely loued him, of whome the History hereafter maketh mention. But now for this present occasion, the Reader must imagine, that *Agrais* (without longer tarrying in *Scotland*) is departed with his Army, trauieling toward *Gaule* to his Vnckle King *Perion*.

#### CHAP. IX.

*How King Lisuarte sent for his Daughter the Princeesse Oriana, for that long before he had left her in the Court of King Languines: who sent her accompanied with the Princeesse Mabila his onely daughter, as also a noble traine of Knights, Ladies and Gentlemen.*



About ten daies after *Agrais* was departed the King his Fathers court with his troupe, three Ships of great *Brittaine* tooke port in *Scotland*: wherein as cheefe was *Galdar of Rasenit*, accompanied with an hundred knights of king *Lisuarte*, as also many Ladies and Gentlewomen that came for *Oriana*. Being arrived at the Court of king *Languines*, they were very graciously entertained, especially *Galdar*, for he was esteemed a wise and hardy knight. After he had giuen his Maiesty to vnderstand his Ambassadge, which was harty thanks fro king *Lisuart* his Maister, for the gentle entreatance of the Princeesse his daughter: he requested now to haue her home, & *Mabila* his daughter with her, to

whom he would do all the honor could be deuised. Right thankfully did king *Languines* accept this offer, and was content that his daughter should go with *Oriana*, thence-forward to be educated in the Court of King *Lisuart*. Certaine dayes sojourned *Galdar* and his traine in *Scotland*, during which time they were most honorably feasted, and in this while the king prepared other Ships to accompany the voyage. When *Oriana* saw that matters fell out in this sorte, she knew well it was impossible longer to dissemble or tarry: wherefore as she placed all her little trifles in order, she found among her Jewels the waxe, which she had taken from the *Gentleman of the sea*. This gaue her such a remembrance of him, as the teares entred her eyes, and (through vehement

hement loue) often wringed her hands, so that the waxe which shee held in them, suddenly brake, & she espied the letter enclosed therein, which so soone as she vnfolded, she found there writtē these words: *This is Amadis without time, Sonne to a King*. At these newes shee conceiued such ioy, as quickly she left her former countenance, and not without cause, for she was now assured, that he who before was esteemed (at the most) but the son of a simple Gentleman, or it might be of lesse, because he was vnknowne both of name and parents: the man whom she so faithfully loued, was Sonne to a King, and named *Amadis*, therefore without longer deferring, she called the *Damosell* of *Denmarke* to her, on whom she intirely trusted, & thus spake. My good friend, I will declare one thing to ye, which no other then mine owne hart and you shall know: therefore regarde it as the secret of such a Princeesse as I am, and of the best Knight in the world beside. On my faith Madam, answered the *Damosell*, seeing it pleaseth you to honor me so much, more willingly shall I dye the faile therein, & wel may you be assured, that what soeuer you disclose to mee, shall be altogether kept secret, & executed to my power. The so it is deere friend, said *Oriana*, that you must needs go seek the *Gentleman of the sea*, whom you shall find at the warres in *Gaule*, and if you chance to come thither before him, there must ye of necessitie stay for him: but so soone as you see him, giue him this letter, saying, he shall find his name therein, writtē on the day that he was cast into the sea, whereby I know him to be the son of a king, which ought inspire him with higher courage &

hardines, to encrease the same hee hath already so well begun. You shall likewise tel him, how the king my father sent for me, and therefore I am gone toward great *Brittaine*: which I was desirous to acquaint him withall, and when hee returneth from the warre where he is, he should immediately come to the place of my aboad, limittin g all things in such sorte, as he may liue in my fathers Court, vntill he receiue other commandment of me. Such was the speedy dispatch of the *Damosell*, as without longer stay she iourned toward *Gaule*, and executed her enterprise, whereof heereafter you shall vnderstand more. But not to discontinue the purposed voyage of *Oriana*, after that *Languines* had provided all things necessary for the same, *Oriana*, *Mabila* & their company were imbarqued: the taking leaue of the King & Queene at the sea side, they set saile hauing the winde so prosperous, as in few daies they landed in great *Brittaine*, where they were all right worthy welcommed.

Heereof doth the author at this time make no more mention; because he meaneth to tell ye what happened to the *Gentleman of the sea*, hauing left him at the Knights Castell that was vanquished by *Galpan*, in the *Damosell*s charge who attended his wounds, which in fiftene daies were almost thoroughly healed. Notwithstanding, despising rest, determined to set on his way, so that on a Sunday morning, taking leaue of his host and his gentle Chirurgion: he mounted on Horse-backe, accompanied onely with *Gandalin* who neuer would forsake him, and not farre from the Castle they entred a great Forrest. It was now about the moneth of April, when the Birdes came



tune their Notes most pleasantly, and that all Trees, Herbes, and Flowers declare the comming of the Spring time: this delightfome changemade him remember her, who aboue all other flowred in excellent beautie, and for whom (abandoning his libertie) Loue hath taken him captiue, so that in these thoughts, he thus (somewhat loud) parled with himselfe.

Ah poore *Gentleman of the Sea*, without Parents or Lands, that thou canst auouch, how durst thou lift thy heart so high, as to loue her who is beyond all other in beautie, bounty, and birth? Ah wretch as thou art, oughtest thou not to consider by these three things, wherein she is most perfect: the best Knight in the world may not be so hardy as to thinke of louing her? And thou poore vnknowne, art wrapt in a labyrinth of folly, louing and dying, not daring to tell it, or make shew thereof. In this complaint was the *Gentleman of the Sea* so carryed away, as forgetting all other matters, hee rode crosse the Forrest a long space, with his Helmet closed: till at length lifting vp his head, hee behelde a Knight well mounted, in the wood by him, who long had kept company to heare his sadde discourse. When the knight sawe the Prince had discried him & for that cause held his peace, he approached neerer him with these words. Belecue me knight, it seems you more loue your Friend then shce doth you, when in commending her you dispraise your selfe: and for ought I vnderstand by your speeches, you are no such man as ought to pretend loue, therefore it is necessarie I should know who shce is, to the end I may supply your defect and seue her. Sir knight (answered the

Prince) you haue some reason for these speeches, yet hap what shall, you can know no more then you doe: and I can assure yee, that by louing her you can get no aduantage. So doe not I beleue, sayd the knight, for a man ought to conceiue glory in trauaile, or any danger in the seruice of so faire a Ladie, seeing that in the end, he cannot but gaine his long looked for recompence: wherefore hee that loueth in so high a place as you doe, should not be agreede at any thing that happeneth. When the Prince heard him speake so sensibly, imagining hee vsed these wordes to comfort him, he was of better chere, and came more neere to him, to continue this talk, but the Knight sayd. Keepe yee backe, for either by friend-ship or force, you must tell mee what I haue demaunded. Now trust me, answered the Prince, it shall not be so. Goe too then, quoth the knight, see what will happen thereon, and defend your selfe. With right good will sayde the Prince. So gan they lace their Helmets, taking likewise their Shieldes and Lances: but as they seuered themselves for the Ioust, a Damofell came and spake in this manner.

Knight, I pray you forbear a while, and tell mee one thing before the combate if you can: for such is my haste, as I haue no leasure to tarry the end of your fight. At these words they stayed themselves, demanding of her what she desired. I would faine, quoth she, heare some news of a Knight, called the *Gentleman of the Sea*. And what would you with him? said the Prince. I haue brought him tydings, answered the Damofell, from *Agrais Sonne* to the King of Scotland. Attend a little, replied

plied the Prince, and I will tell ye so much as I know of him. All this time was the Knight of the Forrest ready for the Ioust, and much offended at her that came to stay them, wherefore hee called to the Prince to gaurd him-selfe, giuing him such an attaint in the encounter, as his Launce flew in peeces: but the Prince met him full, as both Horse and Man were thrown to the ground, when the Horse (being more nimble then his Maister) seeing him selfe at libertie, ran about the field, yet the Prince found the meanes to take him againe, and bringing him to the dismounted knight, sayd, Heere Sir, take your Horse, and hence-forth desire not to know any thing against a mans will. The knight would not refuse his gentleness, for he found himselfe so shaken with his fall, as hee could hardly follow to catch him againe & in meane while he assayed to remount on his Horse, the Prince left him, comming to the Damofell that stayed for him, demaunding if she knew the man she enquired after. No truely, quoth she, I did neuer see him: but *Agrais* told me, that he would presently make himselfe knowne, so soone as I should say that I came from him. He did not deceiue you therein answered the Prince, therefore ye must vnderstand I my selfe am the man: and with these words he vnclad his Helmet, when the Damofell saw his face, she said. In truth now doe I verily beleue it, for your beauty I haue heard very much commended. Then tell me, quoth the Prince, where haue you left *Agrais*? Hard by a Riuer not farre hence, sayd she, where he staid with his Troupe, attending a fit winde for Passage into *Gaule*: and is very desirous (before he go

any further) to know if you will beare him companie. With all my heart, replied the Prince, ride then before and conduct mee the way. So rode he on with the Damofell; and in some short time after, they came neer the place where *Agrais* and his Armie were encamped: but yet before they arrived there, they heard behinde them one cry: Stay knight, for thou must tell me what I demaunded. The Prince turning backe, beheld the knight who he so lately dismounted, and another that bare him company, wherefore hee stayed to take his Armes. Now were they so neere the Prince *Agrais Campe*, and heas they all might see the Tourney, hauing a farre off noted the Princes comming, maruailing what he was that so gallantly managed his Horse: and to say sooth, hee was (in his time) a Knight of the comlyest grace that euer was seen, & where he stroue to hide himselfe, he was soonest discovered, by reason of his brauery in horseman-ship. The two Knights ran together in full course against him, breaking their Lances in peeces on his shield: but the Prince meeting him that had the foile in the Forrest, drew him againe frō his saddle so roughly, as in the fall he brake his arme, the grief wherof made him lie still as if he had bin dead. When he perceined he was so well rid of one, hee drew his sword: & came to the other, giuing him such a stroke on his Helmet, as the Sword entring in, hee puld it backe with such force, that the laces brake, wherby he brought it quite frō his head vpō his sword: then he lifted vp his arme to haue smitten him, but the knight quickly clapt his Shield before. In meane while the Prince got his sword in to his left hand (which hee could doe

doe very hardly) and with his right hand tooke holde on his enemies shield, renting it violently from about his necke, and afterward gaue him such a blow on the head, as in great amazement hee fell to the ground. Thus did hee leaue him there with his companion, and rood with the Damosell to the Tents of *Agrais*: who hauing seen the conclusion of this quarrell, meruailling what he was that had so soone ouer-come two knights, therefore when he came towardes him, hee went forth to meete him, and so soone as they knew each other, you need not make no doubt of their kinde salutations. Soone after the Prince alighted, and by *Agrais* was conducted into his Tent to be vnarmed, but first hee gaue commandement, that the knights dismounted in the fildes should bee brought thither, where they were no sooner arriued, but *Agrais* thus spake to them. Beleeue mee, my friends, you attempted great folly to meddle with this Knight. You say true my Lord, answered hee whose arme was broken, yet once to day I saw him in such plight, as I little thought of any such resistance. Afterward he declared all that happened in the Forrest, and the communication they had together: yet he omitted the Princes complaints because hee stood in feare to displease him. During the repetition of these matters, the patience of the one and boldnesse of the other, was entercoursed among them, and all that day they sojourned there, but on the morrow Morning they mounted on horse-backe, shaping their course to *Palingues*, a right good City on the frontiers, and the outmost part of *Scotland*, where they found shipping, and imbarqued them-

selues toward *Gaule*. The winde seruing according to their desire, in fewe dayes they landed in the Hauen of *Galfrin*, and marching thence in seemely order, without any hinderance, they came to the Castle of *Baldain*, where King *Perion* was besieged, hauing already lost great number of his people. When he was aduertised of this succour, you must imagine him comforted thereby, and their welcome to bee good and gracious: chiefly by the Queene *Elisena*, who hauing knowledge of their arriual, sent to entreat her Nephew *Agrais* to come visite her: which he did, being accompanied with the King, and the Gentleman of the Sea, and two other knights of good account. But you must note, that king *Perion* knew not the prince at the first sight, yet at the length he called him to remembrance, that it was the same man whom he had knighted, and afterward saued his life at the Castle, wherefore thus he spake. My deare friend, on my faith I had forgotten ye, you are most welcome to this place, for your presence giueth assurance, that I neede feare this warre no further, hauing the onely Knight of the world so neere mee. Dread Lord, answered the Prince, God giue me grace to serue you accordingly, for perswade your selfe, that while these troubles endure, I will make no spare of my person.

As thus they deuised, they entered the Queenes Chamber, when the King taking the Prince by the hand, presented him to her saying. Madame, this is the good Knight of whom here-tofore I tolde ye, he defed me from the greatest danger that euer I was in: and therefore I pray ye let no spare of curtsie be made to him here, but giue him

him the best entertainment the time will afford. The Queene aduanced her selfe to embrace him, but he fell on his knee with these wordes. I am seruant (Madame) to the Queen your sister, and for her I come to serue you, with laudgedience as to her owne person. Right graciously did the good Lady giue him thanks, yet little thought she that he was her Sonne, for she imagined the sea had deuoured him: yet was the Princes presence at that very instant so pleasing to her, as her eyes could not be satisfied with beholding him, and (through a secret mouing of nature) she wished more good to him than any in the troupe. At this time likewise was her remembrance solicited, with the former losse of her two Childre, whose yeeres she thought would haue equaled the Princes, if God had preserved them, & these occasions vrged the teares in her eyes. Thus wept she for him that nature touched her withall, and yet vnknown was in her presence, but when the Prince beheld her so sorrowfull, he reputed it to the reason of the warre begun, wherefore hee said. Madame, I hope with the aide of God, your King, and the fresh supply we haue brought: in shorte time to recouer your ioy, and for mine owne part, trust me I will make no spare. Heauen prosper ye, answered the Queene, with happy successfe, & for you are the Queene my sisters Knight, I wil that ye provide no other lodging, but abide here with vs, and all things shall be appointed for yee to your owne contentment. Such was their conference together, vntill *Agrais* would goe refresh himselfe, wherefore taking leaue for that night, he went to his lodging where it was provided: and gladly would the

Prince haue followed him, but the Queene withheld him by such importunity, as he was constrained now to remaine in his vnknowne mothers custody. Right soon was the news of this fresh succour brought to K. *Abies* of *Ireland* & *Daganel* his Cozin, who made very small account thereof, because (in those times) was King *Abies* accounted for one of the best Knights that euer was heard of, and in respect of his hot desire to the fight, determined (seeing new aide was come to his enemy) very quickly to bid him batraile, and for this cause he said before all his people there present. If King *Perion* were so gentle: a companion as to come seers, I had rather he would do it to day then to morrow. Assure your selfe, answered *Daganel*, he is nothing so hasty as I thinke: for hee feareth you too much, albeit he maketh little thereof. Know you, said *Orlando* Duke of *Normandy*, by what means we may thereto constrain him? First let vs make an ambush of the greater part of our Army, which shall remaine with the King in the Forrest of *Baldain*, then you Lord *Daganel* and my selfe will go with the rest, so present our selues at breake of day before the Cittie: & I am certaine that being descried by our enemies, who imagining our strength is altogether, will take hart, and not faile to come running forth vpon vs. When we see them approach, we will dissemble a timorous feare, and take our flight toward the Forrest, where shall abide the King with his company: then our enemies pursuing assured victory in their own conceit, will seeke aduantage by our shamefull retire, & so be take theselues in the snare. Very well haue you aduised, answered King *Abies*, do you your selfe

Fi worthy

worthy Duke giue order, that all things bee done as you haue appointed. Now might ye there behold armed men on Horse-backe, the Souldiers mustering, the drums thundering, and the Trumpets cheerefully sounding, as in one instant; matters were so well ordered, that the Kings Commandement failed in nothing: whereupon the next morning at the breake of day, *Daganel* and the Duke of *Normandie*, shewed themselves with their Squadron before the Towne. Little did King *Perion* at that time thinke of any such enterprize; but altogether refreshed his succour, and honoured the Prince by who he had found such friendship. And to make some shew of his affection towards him, in the morning he came with his Queens to the Princes Chamber, where they found him washing his hands, and perceiuing his eyes red, swollen & blubbered with teares, they easily gathered hee had taken no good rest that night: and very true it was, for continually hee thought of her, whose loue had deprived him of libertie, and likewise compared withall the slender means he had to attaine so high, which made him enter into such profound griefe, as he expected no other remedie but death. The Queene desirous to know the cause of his sadness, tooke *Gandalin* aside, thus speaking to him. My friend, your Maisters countenance berayweth some inward displeasure, hath any one heere offended him in ought? No Madame, answered *Gandalin*, he hath by your Maestie receiued great honor: but he is wont to bee tormented in sleepe as you see. During these discourses, the Sentinell came to aduertise the King, how he had discouered the ambush

and the enemies were very neere the Citie, where presently he commanded to doraie the Armie. Now was each one ready to horse-backe, especially the King and the Prince, who went directly to the Citie gate, where they found *Agrais* chiding, because they would not let him goe forth, thinking he should tarry too long from the fight: for he was one of the hardiest Knights, and the best to giue assistance in neede that could bee found, so that if good aduise had beene as ready with him, as he was possessed of vnconquerable courage, his like might not haue beene found in the world. At the Kings comming the gates were suddenly opened, and then went forth the men of *Gaul* in order, who seeing their enemies to be so great a number, albeit the whole Armie was minded to goe no further, repuning it ouer-much boldnesse to assaulte such an vnequall strength, and therefore arose among them a murmuring contestation. Which *Agrais* perceiuing, without further trifling gaue the spurres to his horse, crying aloud, Bestrow him that tarrieth any longer: seeing them hee is to deale withall, shall we not venter? So saying, he gallopped toward his enemies, in like manner did the Gentleman of the Sea, and the rest of their traine, who without any order of marching, ran among them, and were immediately mingled together. He whom the Prince first met withall, was the Duke of *Normandie*, who he charged so couragiously, as breaking his Launce on him, overthrew both man and horse to the earth, and with this rough fall, his legge was broken. So passed on the Prince setting hand to Sword, as a chafed Lyon entred the preasse, shewing

shewing such deeds of Armes, as none durst withstand him: for he ouer-threw all that encountered him, killing some outright, chining and dismembriing others, so that euery one was glad to giue him way. When *Daganel* saw his men in such disorder, by the meanes of one Knight, he got the most of them together so well as he could, and round about beset the Prince to beate him downe: which they had done, but that *Agrais* perceiuing it, came with his troupe to rescue him. At their arriual you might behold Launces broken, Knights tumbling downe, helmets rent, and shields scatred on the ground making a great conflict & disorder, amongst the *Irish-men*, for King *Perion* likewise came fresh vpon them with his band. *Daganel* (on the contrary side) did the best he could to retire backe, but the Gentleman of the Sea was among the thickest, shewing such chivalry, as he found before him not any resistance, each one was so abashed at his behaviour: and *Agrais* about the rest, shewed that his arme was not benumbed, for the more to hearten and cheere vp his men, he cryed aloude to them: follow my friends, follow the best Knight that euer bare Armes. When *Daganel* saw his side to haue the worst, & what great damage he receiued by the Prince, he determined to kill his horse, and so to make him fall amongst the crowde: but he was deceived, for the Prince comming to him, let fall so mightie a stroke on his Helmet, as rent it cleane from off his head, and so remained *Daganel* vnarmed. Which when King *Perion* espied, he reached him such a salutation with his Sword, as cleft his head through the very braines: whereupon his men see-

ing him slaine, they that had the best horses fled away for life, and stayed not till they saved themselves where King *Abias* was ambushed. But King *Perion* still pursuing victory, discouered the rearguard (that came from the Forrest) marching in very great haste toward him, shewing by their countenance a reuenge of their losse, wherefore ioyning together, they cryed; Set on them men of *Ireland*, see that none of them escape vs, but let vs enter pell-mell in the field. When the *Gaulles* found themselves thus surprized, neuer were people more astonished, for they imagined the ambush had not beene so great, and which most of all affrighted them, was, that they must now deale with fresh and lustie men, themselves being sore wearied, & their horses so ouer-laboured, as they could hardly indure their burden. Beside, they knew king *Abias* was there in person, being (as you heard before) accounted one of the best knights in the world: and for this cause the most part of the *Gaulles* began to tremble. But the Gentleman of the Sea foreseeing the disorder was like to ensue, came & perswaded them rather to die then loose one iot of their honour and reputation, saying: My friends and companions, be of good cheere, each one make knowe his vertue, and remember the esteeme the *Gaulles* haue gotten by Armes. We are to deale with the people astonished & halfe ouercome, let vs not make change with them, taking their feare, and deliuering our victorie: for if they but onely behold your resolute countenances, I am certaine they are not able to endure yee, let vs then enter among them, for God is our defender. At

these words the most disheartened tooke courage, concluding to stay and fight manly with their enemies, who soone after in great furie set vpon them. Now did King *Abies* make knowne his magnanimitie, and hardly could Prince *Agrais* men endure the assault, nor the Squadron that King *Perion* brought: for King *Abies* maimed some, other he ouerthrew, & while his Launce held, he dismounted euery knight that met with him. Afterward he layd hand to Sword, wherewith hee carried himselfe so valiantly, as the hardyest were amazed thereat, for he made way whereuer he came: so that king *Perions* men, not able longer to hold out, began to retire so fast as they could toward the Citie. Whē the Gentleman of the Sea, saw that Fortune was so contrary to them, in great spight he entered the throng, and fought so fiercely, as the most part of the *Irish-men* were glad to stay, while the *Gaules* without disorder retired toward the Castle, then turning his horse, he followed them. To defend this brunt there was also king *Perion*, and the Prince *Agrais*, who deliuered testimonie to their enemies (by the keen edge of their Swords) how well they knew to gouerne themselves in such extremities: notwithstanding, the *Irish-men* seeing they had the better, still pursued them with eager courage, driving them confusedly into the Citie, hoping that now would be the end of their warre. Such was the retire of the *Gaules*, still more and more pressed by their enemies, as doubtesse the *Irish* had entred the Citie after them, but that they were hindered by king *Perion*, *Agrais*, and the Prince, who wholly did repulse the throng, till their

people by them were gotten in. But now was tydings brought to king *Abies*, that his cousin *Dagenel*, and *Gallus* Duke of *Normandie* were slaine, whereat he waxed very displeasent: and seeing King *Perion* with his people were inclosed in the Citie, he resolved to take leysure for his reuenge, wherein he was deceiued, for soone after he was very strongly repulsed, which made him almost mad with anger. And as he thus raged vp & downe, one of his knights shewed him the Prince, saying: My Lord, hee whom you see mounted on the white Horse, is the man that slewe Prince *Dagenel* and the Duke of *Normandie*, with many other, the best in our Armie. When King *Abies* heard that, he rode to the Prince with these words: Knight, thou hast slaine the man whom most I loued in the world: but if thou wilt combate, I hope to be reuenged so well, as I shall haue cause to be quit with thee. Your men (answered the Prince) are too little trauailed to meddle with ours, notwithstanding if thou wilt as (a Knight) reuenge him thou louedst, and declare the great hardnesse for which thou art renowned: chuse of thy men such as thou shalt like, and I (if it please the King) will doe as much of mine, for being equall in number, thou shalt gaine more honor then with so great an Armie, which thou hast brought into this Countrey without iust occasion.

Beleeue me, quoth the King, thou talkest well, go to, chuse thou thy selfe the number of men, how many or few thou thinkest good. Seeing you leaue it in my choyse, replied the Prince, I will make another offer, which (it may be) you will account more couenient. You

are

mine enemy for that which I haue done, and I yours for the wrong you haue done to this Realme, so for our seuerall cause of anger, it is not reasonable any other then our selues should suffer: let then the battaile be betweene you and me onely, and presently (if you will) without longer dallying, yet shall you assure me from your men, as I will do you from mine, so that none shall moue, whether the one or the other be vanquished. Right well said King *Abies*, do I allow of thy offer: whereupon he choften Knights on his parte to garde the field. And as the Prince laboured to gaine the like of the King, with his consent, hee found King *Perion* and *Agrais* somewhat loath to grant the Com-

bate: as well for the consequence that might ensue, as also because the Prince was much wearyed and sore wounded beside, wherefore they entreated him to deferre the matter till the day following: But the desirous affection he had to be conquerour, as also to make a small conclusion of the warre, that hee might returne vnder her obedience, from whom he came to serue king *Perion*: would not suffer him to make any longer delay, of the glory and honor which he saw so neere at hand. For this cause he vfed so many perswasions to the king, as in the end hee was granted the Combate, and on his side likewise were tenne knights appointed, for his guard and safetie in the field.

## CHAP. X.

*How the Gentleman of the sea fought a Combate with King Abies, on defence of the warre he made in Gaule.*

**T**OU haue heard in what manner the combat was accorded betweene King *Abies* & the Gentleman of the sea, and now already is the greatest part of the day spent: wherefore it was agreed by the Lords on either side, (very much against the wils of the two Combatants) that all should be deferred till the morrow morning: as well that they might refresh themselves, and repaire their battered armour, as also for regarding such wounds, as they had received in the passed encounters. Hereupon the two Kings withdrew themselves, the one to his Campe, and the other to his castle. But such is the bruite spread through the Citie, what worthy

exploits the Gentleman of the sea had done: as he could not passe by them, but thus they spake with generall voyce. Ah famous Knight, God giue thee grace to proceed as thou hast begun: impossible is it to find a Gentleman, so accomplished with beauty and Chualrie as he is, for our eyes are iudges of the one, and our enemies full well haue felt the other. But you must note, that in the morning when they went to the field, the King had given the Queene in charge, that so soone as the Prince returned frō the warre, she should send one of her Ladies to him, requesting him not to be vnarmed in any other place then in her chamber: wherefore as he went neere the Kings lodging, the Lady came vnto

unto him, saying. Sir Knight, the Queene desires you not to be elsewhere vnarmed, but in her Chamber, where she stayeth your coming. In foorth, said the King, you must needes grant this request, and I desire it may be so. The Prince condiscending, went where the Queene staid with her Ladies, and no sooner was he entred, but presently the Ladyes holpe to vnarme him: yet the Queene herselfe tooke the greatest paine of all, and as shee had off his coate of Mayle, shee perceiued he was fore wounded, which she shewing to the King, he said. I maruaile Gentleman, seeing you are so hurt, that you tooke no longer time for your combat. It had bin needlesse, answered the Prince, for I haue no wound (I thanke God) that can keepe me from the Combate. Right soone were the Chirurgions commanded to looke thereon, and they found it greater in shew then danger. In the meane while supper was prepared, during which time, they had much talke of the accidents that day past: vntill the houre of rest came, when each one departed till the next morning. Which being come, after they had serued God, the king sent a rich & goodly Armour to the Prince, of better prooffe and strength then that hee had on the day before: wherewith he armed himselfe, and hauing taken leaue of euery one, mounted on Horse-backe in company of the King, who bare his Helmet, the Prince *Agrais* his Sheeld (wherein was portrayed two azured Lions in a golden field, rampant the one against the other, as if they both inteded murder,) & another Prince carried his Launce. In this equipage he set forward to the field, where the King of *Ireland* at-

tended his coming, well armed, and mounted on a goodly blacke Courser: but because King *Abies* had in former time fought hand to hand with a Giant, and vanquished him with the losse of his head, therefore he brought to the Combate the like figure in his Shield, describing the whole order as the deede was done. On either side resorted thither a number of people, placing themselves for most conuenient sight of the Combate. And now were the Champions entred the lyst, each one courageously resolving against his enemy, wherfore without longer taryng, lacing downe the sight of their Helmets, and commending themselves to God: they gaue the spurres to their horses, meeting together so furiously, both with Launce, body and horse, as their staues flew in shiuers, yet piercing their Armour, and both were laid along in the field. But heat of hart and desire of conquest, made them recouer footing quickly, and plucking forth the spieds of their Launces wherewith they were wounded: set hand to Sword, beginning such a strange and cruel fight, as each one was amazed to see them endure so much. For this fight was not equally matched, in respect the Prince was but yong, well proportioned, and of a reasonable height: but King *Abies* was so great, as he neuer found any knight that exceeded him a handfull eny way, being (withall) so strongly made, that he was rather to be accounted a Giant then a man, yet was he highly loued & reuerenced of his subiects, for the vertue and prowesse which remained in him, albeit he was too much audacious and proud.

Now were these Champions so animated

animated against each other, as well for honor as the consequence of the Combate, that without any stay for breathing, they layde on such load, as their strokes rebounded the fight of twentie men together. And well they witnessed no great good will betwene them, for there might ye see the earth stained with their blood, the pikes of their Shields, the plate of their Armour scattered abroad, and their Helmets so bruised: that by reason their Armes being so squandered, they were vnable to hold out their strokes, for euery blow caused the blood to gush out abundantly, yet were they of such inuincible courage, as they seemed to feele none of this annoyance. Hereupon they maintained such brauery the one against the other, as it could not be judged who had the better or worse: notwithstanding, about the houre of three, the Sunne gaue an exceeding warme and violent heate, whereby they found themselves so chased in their Armour, as they began to waxe somewhat feeble: especially King *Abies*, inso much as hee was constrained to retire backe, thus speaking to the Prince.

I see thee very neere failing, and my selfe am likewise out of breath, if thou thinke it good, let vs rest a while, for afterward we may more easily finish our enterprise. And thus much I tell thee (although I haue no cause or desire to fauour thee) that I hold better opinion of thee, then any knight that euer I combated withall: moreover it displeaseth me that I had an occasion to see thee, & much more that I am so long in conquering thee, whereby I might take vengeance for his death whom most I loued in the world, and as thou didst slay him

in open battaile, so likewise will I ouercome thee in sight of both our Campos. King *Abies* replied the Prince, I now perceiue in displeasure thee that thou canst doe no more harme, entering so like a Tyrant as thou didst to minime this Countrey. And as it often happeneth, that he which delighteth in euill, can neuer broke any other fauour: so hope I to toward thee as well for thy paines, as thou shalt confesse thou hast wronged these people. Beside, thus much I aduise thee before hand, that I shall giue thee as litle leisure or respite, as thou hast giuen them who haue tasted thy crueltie: therefore stick close to thy tackling, and defend thy selfe against the Knight, whom thou repurest failing. The King then taking his Sword, and what was left of his Shield, thus answered. Well mayst thou curse the boldnesse that made thee enter these Lysters, for hence thou shalt not escape without losse of thy head. Doe what thou canst said the Prince, for thou shalt rest no more, till thou or thine honour be dead. Herewith more cruelly then before they began againe their Combate, as if they had euen then entred the field, & albeit King *Abies* was so expert, by reason of his long exercise in Armes, that he knew right well how to defend and offend: neuertheless the lightnes, hardines, and promptitude of the Prince, made him in the end forget all his industrie, for hee was closely followed at an inche, as he lost altogether the rest of his Shield, by which means the Prince could endamage him farre better then before: wherof he failed not, and in so many places withall, that the blood streamed downe his Armour in marvellous abundance, causing him by little



little and little to lose his strength, and being in this agony, staggering from one side to another, hee could not deuise what to do, to escape the pursuing sword of his enemy. Seeing himselfe now deuoyd of all hope, he concluded either soone to dye, or haue the victory, and taking his sword in both hands, he ran with all his might against the Prince, and pierced it so farre into his Shield, as he was not able to pul it forth againe. Which when the Prince beheld, he gaue him such a furious stroke on the left leg, that being quite cut from the rest, the King was enforced to fall downe: and right soone did the Prince set foote vpon him, searing violently his Helmet from his head, saying. Thou art dead King *Abies*, if thou dost not yeeld thy selfe vanquished. Belecue me I am dead, answered the King, not vanquished alone, but of both the one and other, my ouerweening hath beene the onely cause. Notwithstanding, since it is so come to passe, I pray thee let assurance be giuen to my Souldiours, that without iniury they may carry me into my Country, and dying like a Christian, I may pay my debt both to God & men. Faine would I haue counsel for my ouerburdened Soule, then afterward shall I render to King *Perion* what I vsurped from him. And as for thee who hast vanquished me, I despise not to dye by the valiance of so gentle a Knight as thou art: but withall my hart pardon thee my death, wishing thou mayest continue honorable, and yet hereafter to remember me. When the Prince saw him in such debilitie, he was exceeding sorowfull for his death, although he knew assuredly, that if he had woon the glory of the com-

bate, he would haue dealt much worse with him. During these speeches, the Knights appointed on each side came to them, wherefore King *Abies* commanded his Captaines, to render King *Perion* what he had conquered in *Gaule*: which was accomplished, and by these meanes the *Irish-men* had assurance to carry home their King, who dyed soone after order was giuen for their affaires. These matters thus ended, King *Perion*, *Agraius*, and all the Lords of *Gaule* came to the Prince, accompanying him with great ioy from the fildes into the Citie, euen with such triumphant glory as to Conquerours is accustomed: who by their prowess not onely ouercome their enemies, but restore the Country that is well neere ruined.

Now must ye vnderstand, that a little before the beginning of the Combate, the Damosell of *Demarke* who came from faire *Oriana* to the Prince, was arriued at King *Perions* Courte: and before shee would make her selfe knowne, she desired to behold the issue of the fight. Afterward, seeing him returne with so honorable a victory, she shewed her selfe, and taking him aside, said. Knight, may it please you to heare a word in secret, of such matter as doth verie neere concerneye? Euen what you will, answered the Prince: with which words he tooke her by the hand, and keeping her from the throng, she thus spake. The Princess *Oriana* who is onely yours, hath sent me to you, and this Letter withall, wherein you shall finde your name written. When he heard her named, by the remembrance of whom only he liued, he was so perplexed, that without vnderstanding what else the Damosell said:

he said: hauing taken the Letter, he let it fall, being readie himselfe to heare it companie, which the Damosell seeing, shee tooke vp the Letter and came to him againe. Every one that beheld him in these passions, meruayled what newes she brought to procure this alteration: but she puld him by the arme so roughly, as made him forget his former Traunce, thus speaking. What now my Lord? Take you the Message in so ill part, that comes from the onely Lady in the world, and who aboue all other loveth you? for whose sake likewise I haue taken so great paine to find you? Ah Ladie (quoth he) on my faith I knew not what you sayd to me, for euen as you began to speak, I felt the paine to renewe in mee, which heretofore you haue seene me endure. It is true (said the Damosell) but now it is needlesse for ye to conceale your selfe any longer from me, for I know more of your affayres and my Ladies, then you imagine, because her selfe hath bewrayed them to me. And if you beare her affection, you neede not be ashamed thereof, in that she loveth you beyond all other: in respect whereof, she telleth you by me, that she must goe to the King her father, requesting after your departure from this warre, you would come see her in great *Brittaine*, appointing all things in such order, as at your arriuall you may remaine there in the Court, vntill more amply you vnderstand her mind. Beside, she gaue me charge to tell ye, how she certainly knowes you are Sonneto a King, wherewith she is no lesse pleased then shee thinkes you will be: and seeing (being ignorant of your Linage) you haue proued so good a Knight, now vnderstanding your Nobilitie, you

should labour to increase your Fame if you can. And then againe shee gaue him the Letter, saying. Take here the Letter wherein your Name is written, and which you had hanging about your necke, at such time as you werẽ found in the Sea. The Prince tooke the Letter, and when he looked on it, remembering to what good purpose his Lady had taken it from him, fetching a vehement sigh, somewhat softly, he thus spake.

Ah happy Letter, most diuinely wast thou found, in respect thou hast beene kept by her, who hath my heart in her custodie, and for whom I haue so often assayed to die, yet cannot. For thinking on her perfection, I seeke to augment it by strength and commendation, but of so slender value is my puissance found: that struiuing thereby to gaine her fauor, the least paine I feele surpasseth a thousand deaths: which (neuerthelesse) are now recompenced by this present benefite. O highest God, when shall I see the time, wherein I may giue her to vnderstand, how great my deuotion is to obey her by some agreeable seruice? Hauing finished these words, he opened the Letter, and saw his Name written therein, which was *Amadis*: then thus spake the Damosell againe to him. I was charged, Sir, when I had done my Message, to returne with all speed to her that sent me to you; therefore be-thinke your selfe if you will command me any thing. You shall not depart (so please you) in such haste, answered the Prince, but stay with mee two or three dayes: during which time, for what occasion so euer it be, you shall not forsake me, and then will I conduct you whither you please. In obeying you (sayd the Damosell)

fell, I trust I doe seruice to my Ladie *Oriana*. Their talke thus breaking off, he returned to the King and *Agrais*, who stayed for him him at the entrance of the Citie, where the people were wonderfully assembled in the streetes. Then came the Queene with her Ladyes & Gentle-women to vname him, and the Chirurgions to visite his wounds, which when they had regarded, albeit they were many and ykesom to behold, yet were they to bee healed without any great daunger of his person. For this night the king desired, that he and *Agrais*, would suppe with him, but the Prince making his excuse by his wounds, went to his Chamber, willing to haue no other company

then the Damosel: to whom he did all the honour that could be deuised, hoping through her to finde remedie for part of his griefes. This Damosell sojourned with him certaine time, and in respect of the good Newes shee brought him, no wound could hinder him from visiting the great Hall, there walking and conferring with eue-ry one: but most with her whom he caused to stay, attending his disposition till he might beare Armes. And betwene them happened a strange occasion, which was cause of his longer abode in *Gaule*, then hee expected: so that the Damosell returned to *Oriana* without him, as you hereafter shall vnderstand.

## CHAP. XI.

*How the Gentleman of the Sea was knowne by King Perion, his Father, and by the Queene Elisena his Mother.*

**I**N the beginning of this Historie, it hath beene recited, how King *Perion* gaue his Queene *Elisena*, being then in little *Brittaine*, a Ring like another that commonly hee wore, and these two Rings were of such an vniforme, as there was no difference to bee discerned betwene them. Likewise ye haue vnderstood how when the yong Prince was put vpon the water, this Ring was fastened about his necke, which *Gondales* kept, till time he sent it by the Damosell (a little before he was knighted) with the Sword and the waxe. Now had the King sundry times demanded of the Queene for the Ring, who made him diuers doubtfull answers, and in the end sayd she had lost it. But

it came to passe, that as the Prince walked with *Orianaes* Damosell, which commonly he was wont to do, yong *Melicia* daughter to king *Perion*, passed by him weeping, when the Prince staied her, saying. Faire friend, why weepe ye? Ah my Lord, quoth the Princessse, I haue euen now lost a Ring, which the King my Father gaue me to keepe while he slept. Weepe not so faire Virgin, answered the Prince, you shall haue another of me to giue him: So taking his owne Ring from his finger, he gaue it her. When she beheld it, (thinking it was the same she had lost) she said. Ah my Lord, haue you found it, wherewith I am not a little glad, for I haue all this while sought it. What nowe? quoth the Prince, this is not your Ring.

Ring. In mine opinion it is, answered *Melicia*, or the onely thing of the world that most resembles it. So much the better, said the Prince, for more easily will it be iudged the same you lost. Herewith went *Melicia* to the Kings Chamber, and finding him awake, he asked her for his Ring, then gaue she him the same she had of the Prince, which the King put on his finger, thinking it was his owne. But soone after as he walked through the Gallary, he espied in a corner lying the other Ring, which he gaue his daughter before to keepe, and taking it vp, he compared them together: whereupon he remembered, that one of these two was the same he sometime gaue the Queene, so he asked of *Melicia* where she had the Ring. The yong Princessse affraid of beating, durst not lye, but thus answered. My Lord and Father, your Ring I lost, and as I searched for it, I met with the Gentleman of the sea: who because he saw me weepe, gaue me one of his, which I deliuered you in stead of your owne, and if that be not it, I know not where it is. When the King heard this, he presently conceiued suspicion betwene his Queene and the Prince, imagining in respect of his beauty, how she was fallen into some dishonest liking of him, and therefore had giuen that token. Hereupon he went to the Chamber where she was, and shutting the dore, sate downe by her, not speaking one word a good space, but silently fixed his eyes on the ground: then breathing forth a passionate sigh, he said. I will not maruaile any longer Madame, why you would neuer make me any certaine answer, when I demanded for the Ring I gaue ye in little *Brittaine*: you haue lost it in such a

place, where you would be loath I should know of it, but hardly can you conceale affection, when it proceedeth to such effects. The Gentleman of the sea inconsiderately gaue it to *Melicia*, little thinking that it came at the first from me: and thereby do I know what he suspecteth not, and your selfe would I should not vnderstand. When the Queene (who already by his countenance saw he was troubled) heard what he had said, she now determined not to dissemble with him in any thing, but summarily made a true discourse of her childbirth. And (not without teares) she recounted to him, how standing in feare of the king her father, as also the seuer law vsed in his Kingdome, she was constrained to commit her sonne to the mercy of the sea, and in his cradle coffin put with him, both the Ring, sword, & what else hath bene already declared. Confounded was the king with maruaile when he heard the whole truth, and presently imagined the Prince might bee his first sonne, whom God had so miraculously preserved, wherefore he said to the Queene. According to your circumstances reuealed, it may be, that he who is vnknowne to vs, is our sonne, and the rather I coniecture so by the name he beareth of the sea. Ah God, said the Queen, may it fall out so haply? I beseech ye my Lord, send presently for him, and we will desire him to tell vs of whence he is. Let vs go then, quoth the King, to seeke him.

So went they to his Chamber, where they found him sleeping, wherefore (without making any noyse) he approached nere the bed, espied his Sword, which he tooke, and after he had well viewed it, knew it to be the same he esteemed

so much, and wherewith he had finished many famous adventures, whereupon he said to the Queene. On my faith, this is the sword I left in the Chamber of the King your Father, the first night we were acquainted together, and now do I the better beleue what you haue said vnto me. Ah God, said the Queene, let vs suffer him sleepe no longer, for my hart cannot endure this weighty burden: herewith she tooke him by the hand and awaked him, saying. My Lord, sleepe no more at this time, for other occasions calleth you. Easily was the Prince raised from sleepe, but when he beheld the Queene weeping, as one amazed thereat, he said. Madame, from what occasion proceede these teares? is there any thing I may do ye seruice in, to remedy them? Noble friend, quoth the Queene, you onely may quallifie my griefe by your words, in telling me whose sonne you are. So God helpe me Madame, answered the Prince, I know not, for by strange aduerture was I found in the sea. The good Lady was then so ouercome with ioy, as not onely speech, but vitall sence was taken from her, and she fell downe in a swoone: which the Prince perceiving, quickly ranne to recouer her, saying. What aile ye Madame? further could he not imagine on the cause of this alteration. Ah my sonne, quoth she, now know I better then thy selfe who thou art. The King likewise was so caried away with ioy and admiration, as he stood not able to speake a word: now was it hard to iudge, which of these three felt greatest contentation, but the mother throwing her armes about the Princes neck, said. Now may I boldly dare to kisse in safetie, hauing beene so long de-

priued of thy sight and knowledge: highly am I beholding to the diuine bountie, who hath fauoured the offence I committed through feare, which was, in deliuering thee to the courtisie of the waters, and see heere thy Kingly father that begot thee. With these words the Prince fell at their feete, extreame ioy reducing the teares into his eyes, and altogether praised God for this good aduerture: especially the Prince, because he had beene preferred in so great danger, and now at length to finde such honor and good hap, as to meete with his Parents, being all this while vknowne to them. As thus they deuised on the fortunes passed, the Queene demanded of him if hee had no other name, then that which now he called himselfe by? Yes Madame, quoth he, but it is not fully three daies past since I knew thereof, for as I came from the Combat against King *Abies*, a Damosell brought me a Letter which I haue, and (as she saith) was fastened about my neck, being wrapped in waxe, when I was found in the sea, wherein I finde that my name is *Amadis*: and here-withall he shewed the letter to the Queene, which she full well knew so soone as she saw it. Beleue me, said the Queene, this truly is the Letter that *Darietta* wrote, when she made the separation betweene you and me: thus though I was ere while in great griefe and sorrow, yet now (praised be God) I feele as much ioy and pleasure. Now seeing assuredly your name is *Amadis*, it is needlesse you should beare any other contrary title: so thence forward he was called no more the Gentleman of the sea, but *Amadis*, and sometime *Amadis de Gaule*. It was not long before the bruit

heereof

hereof was spread through the city, that the good & famous knight was sonne to King *Perion* and the Queen *Elisena*: wherefore if euery one reioyced (you must thinke) the Prince *Agrais* was not sorry, for they were found to bee Cozin germanes. Among the rest, the Damosell of *Denmarke* had knowledge here-of, wherefore considering what comfort this would be to the Princeesse *Oriana*, she laboured so much as she could to return toward her: knowing she would giue her friendly countenance, bringing her so good Newes, what gracious fortune had happened to him whom she all other she loued. For this cause she intreated *Amadis*, to dispatch her returne to her Mistresse: In that I well perceiue, quoth she, you can not so speedily depart hence as you would, nor were it reasonable, but you should giue some contentation to them, who for the loue of you haue shedde so many teares. These wordes caused the teares to trickle downe his cheekes, yet smothering his griefe so well as he could, he made this answer to the Damosell. Lady, I will pray that the Heauens may safely conduct ye; yet let mee entreat your friendly remembrance, commanding the vttermoost of my endeaours, for without your gentle care my life cannot endure: withall, I finde my selfe so endebted to my gracious Mistresse, as I dare not request any thing at her hand. Neuerthelesse you may say to her, that right soon shall I come to shew my obedience, and in like Armor will I be clad, as when you saw me combare with the King of *Ireland*: because both she and you may the more easily know me, if I cannot compasse the meane to

speake with you; & in this manner departed the Damosell of *Denmarke*. On the other side, *Agrais* seeing his Cozin *Amadis* was to remaine longer in *Gaule*, determined to take his leaue, and calling him aside sayd. Faire Cozin, for this time I must be enforced to leaue ye, albeit your company is more pleasing to me then any other: but my passionate heart will allow me no quiet, vntill I be with her, who both farre and neere hath power to command me. It is Madame *Olinia*, daughter to the King *Renain* of *Normay*, who sent for me, (by the Damosell that brought me the Helmet of *Galpan*, which you sent me, in reuenge of the dishonour she receiued by him) that I should come to her with all convenient speed: and therefore I neither may or dare faile, which is the onely cause of my parting with you.

Now must you note heere-withall that at the time as *Don Galuanes* brother to the king of *Scotland*, was in the Realme of *Nerway* with *Agrais* his Cozin: this young Prince became so enamoured of the Lady *Olinia*, as he concluded neuer to loue any other then her, and this made him the more earnest to depart by her commandement. And to tel ye what this *Galuanes* was, he had the name of *Galuanes without land*, because at the portio his father left him, was onely a poore Castle: for the rest he had spent in following armes, & entertaining Gentlemen, whereupon he had the Surname of *without land*. Such as you haue heard were the speeches *Agrais* had with *Amadis*, of whom he requested to know, where he should finde him at his returne from *Nerway*. Cozin (quoth *Amadis*) I hope at my departure



hence, to visite the Court of king *Lisuart*, where I haue heard Chiuallrie to be worthily maintained, with greater libertie and honour, then in the kingdome of any Emperour or King. But seeing it liketh you to take another way, I desire when you shall see the King your Father, and the Queene, to remember my bounden dutie to them both: assuring them (on my behalfe) that they may command mein their seruice, euē as your self, or any other, as well in respect of our alliance together, as also for the gracious entertainment I had in my youth, being by them most carefully educated and esteemed. This done, *Agrais* took his leaue, beeing Honourably conducted through the Cittie, by the King and all the Lords of his Court: but so soone as the King entred the fields, he saw a Damosell coming toward him, who boldly laying hold on the raine of his Horse bridle, thus spake.

Remember thy selfe King *Perion*, what a Damosell some-time sayd vnto thee: *That when thou didst recouer thy losse, the Kingdome of Ireland should lose her flower.* Thinke now (I pray thee) whether she sayd true or no, thou hast recouered thy Sonne whom thou reputedst lost, and euen by the death of valiant King *Abies*, who was the Flower of Ireland, and such a one as that Countrey shall neuer haue his like: *Vntill time the good brother of the Ladie must come, who shall by force of Armes cause to be brogth thither the tribute of other Countreys, and he must die by the hand of him, that shall accomplish for her the onely thing of the world, which must be leueth.* And so it happened by *Marlot* of Ireland, brother to the Queene of that Countrey:

whom *Tristan* of *Leonnys* killed, on the quarrell of tribute demanded of King *Marke* of *Cornwall* his Vncle: which *Tristan* afterward dyed for the loue he bare to Queene *Yseul*, being the onely thing of the world that hee most loued. Now must thou be mindefull hereof, sayd the Damsel to the King, for *Vrganda* my Mistresse so comandeth thee. When *Amadis* heard her speake of *Vrganda*, he tooke occasion thus to answer. Damosell, and my friend, I pray you say to her who sent you hither, that the Knight to whom she gaue the Launce, commendeth himselfe to her good grace: being now assured in the matter whereof then she spake, how with that Launce, I should deliuer the house from whence I first descended: and euen so it fell out, for I deliuered my Father vnknowne to me, being then at the very point of death. So without any other reply, the Damosell turning bridle rode backe the same way she came, and the King into the Citie, with *Amadis* his Sonne so lately recouered: for which cause he assembled all the Princes and Lords of his Realme, meaning to keepe a more magnificent Court then euer he had done before, to the end that every one might behold *Amadis*, in regard of whose honour all happie coming, there were Knightly Tourneys daily vsed, beside great store of other pastimes and delights.

During these pleasures, *Amadis* was aduertised in what maner the Gyant had carryed away his brother *Galaor*, wherefore hee determined (happen what might) to goe seeke him, and if possible hee could to recouer him, either by force of Armes or otherwise. Notwithstanding, his heart being day-

ly moued to goe see her that hourly expected his presence, one day he entreated the King his Father: seeing now he had peace with his enemies, that with his leaue he might goe seeke aduentures in great *Brittaine*, because he was loath to remaine idle. But little pleasing was this request to the King, and much lesse to the Queen, yet by opportunitie hee obtained permission for his Voyage: nor could they all haue power to with hold him, by reason of the loue he bare to *Oriana*, which made him obedient to none but her. Hereupon, being clad in such Armour, as he promised the Damosell of *Denmarke*, he set forward on his iourney, imbarquing himselfe at the neereft Port of the Sea, where by good hap he found passage readie. Not long was his cut into great *Brittaine*, landing at *Bristow*, a most noble and auncient City of that Countrey, where hee heard that King *Lisuart* sojourned at *Windsore*, royally accompanied with Knights and Gentlemen: for all the Kings & Princes (his neighbours) did highly fauour and shew him obsequy, which made *Amadis* shape his course directly to the Court. Not long had he ridden on the way but he met with a Damosell, who demanded of him, if that were her readie way to *Bristow*? Yea marry is it (answered the Prince.) I pray ye then tell me, quoth she, if I may finde any shipping there, for my speedie passage

ouer into *Gaule*? What assayres calles you thither? sayd *Amadis*. In sooth, replied the Damosell, I goe thither to finde a Knight named *Amadis*, whom King *Perion* not long since had knowne to bee his Sonne. Greatly did *Amadis* meruaile hereat, for hee thought these newes had not been so farre spread abroad, wherefore hee demaunded how she heard thereof? I know it, quoth she, from her, to whom the most secret things of all are manifest: for she knew *Amadis* before he knew himselfe, or that his Father heard of *Amadis*; and if you would vnderstand what shee is, her name (by common report) is *Vrganda the unknowne*. She hath at this time especiall assayres with him, and by no other can she recouer that, which shee now standeth in feare to loose. Boleue me Damosell, answered *Amadis*, seeing she who may command euery one, doth now please to employ *Amadis*, I assure ye it is needlesse for you to trauaile any further: for I am the man you are sent to seek, and therefore let vs goe, whither you thinke conuenient. What? sayd the Damosell, are you *Amadis*? Yea, verily am I, answered the Prince. Come, then and follow me, quoth she, and I will conduct yee where my Mistresse is, who attendeth your arriuall in good deuotion. Heere-with *Amadis* rode after the Damosell, and thus are they gone together in company.

## CHAP. XII.

*How the Gyant bringing Galaor to King Lisuart, that hee might dubbe him Knight, mette with his brother Amadis, by whose hand hee would bee knighted, and no other.*

**H**He Gyant of whom sundry times we haue spoken heereto-fore, causing yong Galaor to bee instructed in managing horses, & all other exercises becomming a Knight: found him so capeable of euery thing, as in lesse space then a yeere, hee was growne meruailous perfect, so that now nothing remained, but to know of him, by whom hee most willingly would receiue his order of Knight-hood. Notwithstanding, before the Gyant moued this matter to him, one day among other, Galaor came to him in this maner. Father, quoth he, you haue dayly promised me that I should be Knighted, I desire you would bee so good as your word: for there is too much time spent since I ought to haue had it. In sooth my son (answerd the Gyant) you haue reason for your words: yet tell me by whō you would receiue your Order? King Lisuart, quoth Galaor, is reputed a gentle Prince, and a right good Knight, wherefore if so it like you, I shall be contented to haue it at his hand. Wel haue you aduised, sayd the Gyant: so presently preparing all things in order, they set forward on their journey. About fīue dayes after their departure, by good hap they came neere a very faire and strong Castle, named *Bradoid*, seated on the toppe of a mountaine, enuironed about with Fennes and Marishes, as also with a salt water, that

ran before it wondrous swiftly, so that without a Barque it was impossible to get thither. And because the Marish was very long, there was to passe ouer it a faire long Causey, being so broad that two Chariots might well meet together on it: and at the entrance of the Causey was a draw-bridge, where-under the water ran with such a violent fall, as no one was able by any meanes to passe it. Heere must ye note, that equally facing this bridge, there grew two goodly Elme trees, where-under the Gyant and Galaor beheld two Damofels and a Squire, with a knight mounted on a black Courser, this Knight was armed, bearing figured in his Shield, two Lyons rampant: and because the bridge was drawne vp, hee could passe no further, but called with a loude voyce to them within, that some should come to giue him entrance, which Galaor perceiuing sayd to the Gyant. My Lord (if it please you) I would gladly see what this Knight will doe here. Soone after, they espyed at the further end of the Causey, by the Castle side, two other Armed Knights, accompanied with tenne Halberders, who came and demanded of the knight, what he would? Marie enter in, answered the Knight. It may not be, said one of the two Knights, except you meane to combat first. I will not sticke for that, answered hee that would enter, cause you the bridge to bee let downe

downe, and come to the combate: which presently they did. But one of the twaine (more hasty then his companion) aduanced himselfe first, and placing his Launce, ran with a swift carreer against the knight, who receiued him so brauely, as he sent both Horse and man to the ground. The friend to the dismounted knight thinking to reuenge his iniury, gaue forth to meete him, and failing in the at- taint with their Launces, so furiously encountered with their bodies, as the knight of the Castle fell into the water where he was drowned, and the conquerour rode on, which the Halberders seeing, presently drew vp the bridge againe after him.

When the Damofels saw he was thus closed in, they cryed out aloud vnto him that he should returne, & as he was about so to do, he espied three other Knights well armed come toward him, who very audaciously thus spake. Vnhappie was the houre to thee whē thou didest passe this bridge, for thou shalt dye in this water, where he is drowned that was of greater reputation then thou art. Here-with they all three together ran against him, and met him so firmly, as his Horse was like to haue fallen ouer backward, yet hauing broken their Launces on him, he was at this encounter wounded in two places, neuerthelesse, one of them he met in such order, as his armour vnable to resist the pointe of the Launce, pierced through with such violence, that the trunchion still remained in his body. This done, couragiously he drew his sword, adressing himselfe to the other twaine, and they in like manner against him, where-upon began a dangerous Combate betwene

them: but he with the Lions in his Shield doubting his death, laboured so much as he could to overcome his enemies, giuing one of them such a stroke on the right arme, as (being cut from the body) it fell sword and all to the ground: wherefore feeling himselfe thus wounded, he gallopped with all speed to the Castell, crying. Helpe my friends, helpe your Lord who is in danger of killing. When the Knight of the Lions heard, that he with whom he must yet deale, was the Lord of the Castell: he deliuered him such a rigorous blow on the Helmet, as made him loose his stirrups and ready to fall, had he not got hold about the neck of his Horse: in this staggering the Knight of the Lions rent his Helmet from his head, and he perceiuing himselfe vnarmed, thought to escape by flight as the other did; but his enemy got betwene him and the Castell, saying. Thou art dead, if thou yeeld not thy selfe my prisoner. Alas, answered the amazed Knight, I am dead indeede if you please, but as you are a Gentleman take pittie on me, for I doe yeeld my selfe your vanquished. Suddenly the Knight of the Lions looking about, espied other Knights and armed men on foote, that came in great hast from the castell to succour their Lord: wherefore he stepped to his conquered prisoner, and holding his sword against his throate, said. Command thy men to returne else shalt thou presently die. Then he who saw his life in such perill, cryed to them, & made a signe with his hand, that if they loved him they should returne: where-upon, they beholding their Lords life at his enemies swords pointe, obeyed his command with all possible speed. Yet

is not this enough, said the conquerour, cause now the bridge to be let downe: which he did, and they came both forth on the causey where the Ladyes taried: but when the Knight of the Castell beheld them, and that one of them was *Vrganda the unknowne*: Ah my Lord, quoth he, if you keepe me not from this Lady, I am but dead. Nay beleeue me, answered the Knight, that will not I do, but rather am to deale with thee as thee shall command me: then stepping to *Vrganda*, he said. Madame, see here the Lord of the Castell, what is your pleasure I shall do with him? Smite off his head, answered *Vrganda*, if he will not deliuer you my friend whom he keepeth in prison. Here-with he lift vp his sword to feare him, when the Knight falling on his knee, cried. Ah my Lord, kill me not, I will obey whatsoever she commandeth. Dispatch it quickly then, said the Knight of the Lions. So called the Lord to one of the halberdiers within, saying. Go to my brother, and tell him if euer he intend to see me aliue, let him quickly cause the imprisoned Knight to come hither, and the Damosel that brought him with her. Right soone was the messenger gone on this errand, returning immediatly with the Damosell and the Knight, to whom the Knight of the Lions thus spake. Thanke this Lady who hath done so much for ye, and truly great cause you haue to loue her, in that she hath taken wonderfull paines to deliuer you from this thraldome. I do loue her, answered the restored Knight, and so will continue better then I haue done heretofore. But before he could finish these words, *Vrganda* ran and embraced him, the like did he to her: afterward the conquerour de-

manded, what should be done with her that brought him thither. It is necessary that she dy, replied *Vrganda*, to let her know the price of so hainous an offence. Presently was the poore Damosel so strangely enchanted, as she ran skipping ouer the marish quag-mires, and turning backe againe, would haue throwne her selfe into the water, had not the knight of the Lions intreated *Vrganda*, to pardon her trespassse for this time. Provided, saide *Vrganda*, that she returne no more to offend me, otherwise she shall pay for altogether. Vvhē the Lord of the Castell saw the Damosell was remitted, at his request who ouercame him, he thus spake. My Lord, I haue performed what hath bin commanded, therefore I pray ye giue me leaue to depart from her that neuer loued me. In sooth, answered *Vrganda*, for honor of him by whom you make your suite, I am content, and you may returne. He being gone, the Knight of the Lions (who yet maruailed, by what occasion the Damosell was driuen into that furie) asked what moued her so to do? Ah my Lord, quoth she, me thought one came round about me, and would haue burned me with a lighted torch, therefore to saue my selfe, I sought to leape into the water. At these words the Knight fell into a laughter, saying. Your folly hath bene ouer great, faire Damosel, to worke her ill who knowes how to reuenge it.

*Galaor* stood and had seene all these things, where-upon he thus spake to the Giant. Beleeue me father, I very much desire that this worthy man should giue me my order, for if King *Lisuart* be renowned, it is for his possessions; but this Knight deserues it by his strength and valour. I am well content,

tent answered the Giant, go and request it of him, if he deny you the fault is his owne. So *Galaor* went forward, accompanied with foure squires and two Damosels, when comming to the Knight of the Lions, he found him yet vnder the trees: At his arriual he was courteously received by the Knight, who reputed him one of the most comely Gentlemen that euer he had seene, afterward *Galaor* thus began. Gentle Sir, I am come to entreat a fauour at your hand. Truly, answered the Knight, if your request be reasonable, it will the sooner be granted. My suite Sir, quoth *Galaor*, is for nothing else, but that it might please you to giue me the order of knight-hood, and in so doing, you shall saue me a great deale of trauaile to king *Lisuart*, to whom I am going for the same cause. My friend, replied the knight, you shall do your selfe ouer-much wrong, to leaue so good an occasion by the best king in the world, for so poore a knight errand as I am, My Lord, quoth *Galaor*, the great state of the king can put no such strenght into me, as I haue seene performed by you in the late Combats: therefore (so please it you) accomplish in me my earnest desire. I can be much better content, answered the knight, to grant any other thing you will demand: for such authority appertaineth not to me, nor to you likewise is it so honorable. As thus they stood on these tearmes, *Vrganda* (vnllooked for) came to the, where-with the knight of the Lions was very glad: and she hauing as yet not heard any of their talke, thus spake to her champion. What is your opinion of this Gentleman? Me thinks, quoth he, a brauer person was neuer seene: but

he requireth such a thing of me, as is neither in him or me conuenient. What is it? said *Vrganda*. That I, quoth he, should giue him the order of knight-hood, and yet he is now in trauaile, with determination to request the same of the famous king *Lisuart*. Certainly, answered *Vrganda*, to make him stay, will be a greater cause of euill to him then good, and I will counsel him not to desist from his former motion: for you ought not to deny him, seeing I can assure ye, that honor will be better imployed by him, then any other in all the Isles of the sea, except one. Seeing it is so, replied the knight, in the name of God let it be done: goe we then to some Church to performe the vigill. It shall be needlesse, quoth *Galaor*, to stand about such matters now, in that I come not vnprovided of them already. It sufficeth then, answered the Knight: so put he on his right spurre, and embracing him, said. You are now a knight, wherefore take the honor of the sword by whom you shall thinke it more conuenient. Do you then giue it me, said *Galaor*, if you please, for by no other will I accept it with my will. Then he called a Squire that held a sword ready, but *Vrganda* stepped before, saying. No, no, you shall haue a better: take that which hangeth on yonder tree, and you shall finde it farre more faire and good. Heere-with they looked vpon the tree, yet saw it not, wherefore they all began to smile, and she doing the like, said to them. In sooth it is almost ten yeeres since it first was hanged there, yet no passenger by euer saw it: looke better about the tree, for sure you cannot but easily behold it. Now did they all perceiue it tied to a branch of the tree,

cuen

euen as though it had but euen then beene hanged there: and by it was a Scabberd couered with gold, shewing most fine and curious Worke-manship on it. The Knight of the Lyons tooke it downe, and afterward girded it about *Galaor*, saying. So faire a Sword becometh a knight so formall, and thinke thee hated you not, who of so long time hath kept it for you. Most cheerefully did *Galaor* giue her thanks, and the knight likewise, thus speaking to them. I beseech ye to hold me excused, for I am constrained presently to depart from ye, and were it not I must goe where I am attended, no companie in the world would I desire more then yours; therefore I desire ye Sir, to tell me where I may find ye at my returne. In the Court of king *Lisuart*, answered the knight, where I shalbe very glad to see you: and because it is no long time since I was knighted, I am the more desirous of some abode there to attaine honour, as you cannot chuse but doe the like if you come hither. Certes, said *Galaor*, to that place will I shortly follow ye: and Madame, quoth he to *Vrganda*, you haue so strictly bound me to your seruice, as may it please you to account me your knight, I am readie wheresoeuer you shall command mee. So departed he from them, returning to the Gyant who stayed for him by the River side, where hee had hid himselfe, least he should bee seen.

But now you must here obserue, that as *Galaor* thus deuised with *Vrganda* and the Knight, one of the Damofels that was in *Galaors* company, had conference with her that attended on *Vrganda*, of who at large shee vnderstood, how the knight of the Lyons was *Amadis*,

Son to king *Perion* of *Gaule*: whose coming thither *Vrganda* had caused, to deliuer by force of Armes her friend that there was kept prisoner, for by enchantment she could not compasse it, by reason the Ladie of the Castle was too cunning in that Arte, and there had first enchanted him in despight of her, fearing no way to loose him againe but by knightly chiuallrie.

On this occasion the custome there was appointed, which *Amadis* ended, and restored (as you haue heard) the man for whom they came thither: and hee by the Damofell, Neece to the Ladie of the Castle, that in enchanted furie would haue leapt into the Riuer, was conducted to this place.

So soone as *Galaor* had left *Vrganda*, shee demaunded of *Amadis*, if he knew the man to whom hee gaue the Order of Knighthood. No, truly Madame, quoth he. In sooth answered *Vrganda*, it is great reason you should knowe what he is: for he beareth so braue a minde, that if you both should meet without further knowledge, there might happen betwene yee great inconuenience. Therefore I giue ye to vnderstand, how he is your owne brother both by father and mother, and the very same whom the Gyant caryed away, being then but two yeeres old and a halfe: now he is of so goodly stature as you haue scene, for whose sake and yours likewise, I haue a long time kept the Sword, wherewith (I assure ye) he shall do more in exploits of Armes, then euer any knight did in Great Brittain. *Amadis* concieued hereat such inward joy, as the teares trickled downe his cheekes, wherefore he said to *Vrganda*. I beseech ye Madame

dame, tell mee where I may finde him. It is not necessarie, quoth she, that as yet you should seeke him. Why said *Amadis*, is he then constrained to accomplish some predestinate matter, before I may finde him? Yea verily, answered *Vrganda*, and it is not so easie to know as you may imagine. Long time thus continued their conference, till *Vrganda* would depart alone with her friend: so she commended *Amadis* to God, who presently tooke his way toward *Windsore*, where at this time King *Lisuart* sojourned.

Our Historie (at this time) pauseth of him, continuing what happened to *Galaor* the new Knight, who being arriued where the Gyant stayed for him, thus spake. Father, I am now thanks be to God, and him you sent me to, a confirmed knight. My sonne, quoth the Gyant, I am not a little glad thereof: and seeing it is so well effected, will yee graunt mee one request? What? said *Galaor*, am I to denie you any thing, except you would withhold mee from seeking honour? My sonne, answered the Gyant, I rather desire thy happy proceeding therein, and that which I would haue appertaineth thereto. Demand then what you will, said *Galaor* for I graunt it. Faire Sonne, quoth the Gyant, heretofore you haue heard mee complaine of the Gyant *Albadan*, who by treason slewe my Father, and yet forcibly detaineth from me the Rocke of *Galteses*, which iustly doth belong to me: I pray ye to take reuenge on my behalfe, for no other then you may doe it: remember how well I haue nourished and vsed you, as also my true and vnfaied loue, which is such, as I will yeeld my person euen to

the death for safetie of yours. This matter said *Galaor*, you need not request, but command me to doe it: as for my selfe, I desire you to rest content, till with *Albadan* I haue tryed this difference, seeing it concerneth you to see. Beside, heereof you may bee perswaded, that if I escape with life, I shall continue euermore in readinesse, to accomplish any thing else for your honour and profit: in which deuotion, the whole circuit of my time is bound, as witnessse of the dutie I owe to you, therefore without any longer trifling, let vs set forward to him with whom I must try my fortune. So tooke they the way to the rocke of *Galteses*, but before they had trauailed farre, *Vrganda* overtook them, and being acquainted with each other, she said to *Galaor*. Know ye (gendre Sir) who hath this day made you Knight? That doe I Madame, answered *Galaor*, euen the best knight that euer I heard of. It is very true (quoth she) yet is hee of greater esteeme then you thinke, but I would haue you to know his name: then called she *Gandalax* the Gyant, saying. *Gandalax*, doest not thou know that this knight (whom thou hast nourished) is the Sonne to king *Perion*, and his Queene *Elisena*, and how by such like wordes I bad thee take him, since which time thou hast beene his Foster father? It is very true, answered the Gyant. Now then *Galaor*, my friend, said *Vrganda*, the man that made thee knight is thy brother and elder then thou by two yeeres: wherefore when thou seest him, giue him honour, and labour to resemble him in hardinesse and kindshipp. May it be possible? replied *Galaor*, that King *Perion* is my

my Father, and Queene *Elisena* my mother, and I the brother to so good a knight? Doubt not thereof (quoth shee) for it is so. Praised be God, said *Galaor*, now may I assure you, that I am in greater care than before: nor will I make any spare of my life, seeing it is necessary I should resemble him you talke of. Thus returned *Vrganda* the same way shee came, and the Gyant with *Galaor* rode on as they purposed, the Prince demanding of the Gyant, what the Lady was that had communed with them? It is quoth hee, *Vrganda the unknown*, as she nameth her selfe, because she often trauell formeth and maketh her selfe vnknowne. As thus they deuised together, they came to a Riuer side where they would refresh themselves, and by reason the heate of the day was very vehement, they caused a Tent to be erected: where long they had not sitten, but they beheld two Damofels comming toward them by two seuerall wayes, and met together directly before the Pavillion. So soone as they espied the Gyant, they would haue fledde, but *Galaor* came to assure them, and courteously caused them to returne, demanding afterward whether they trauailed. I goe (quoth one of them) by the commandement of my Mistresse, to see a strange fight, which one onely Knight hath enterprised in Combate, against the strong Gyant at the Rocke of *Galteses*, to the cade I may bring her true tidings thereof. When the other Damofell heard her say so, she thus replied. I am amazed at your speeches, is there any knight in the world darenter on such follie? Certes, said the first, it is most true. Beleeue me, answered the other, although

my occasions be else-where, I am content to stay and goe with you, to see a matter so incredible. Hereupon they would haue taken leaue of *Galaor*, but hee said to them. Make no hast faire Damofels, but tarry if you please, and we will beare ye companie: where-to they condescended, as well for the good grace they noted in this new Knight, as also in respect of his amiable countenance, which made them take great pleasure in beholding him: then *Galaor* walking with the Giant aside, said, Father, I could wish that you would goe no further with vs, but let me goe with these Damofels to accomplish what I haue promised: this hee spake because hee would not be knowne what hee was, or that his enterprise should be suspected by them, whereto the Gyant (vnwillingly) did accord. So rode *Galaor* with the Damofels, and three Squires: the Giant left him to beare his Armour, making such speede in their iourney, that they arriued within two Miles of the Rocke of *Galteses*, where they lodged in the little Cottage of an Hermite, to whom *Galaor* imparted some of his secret thoughts: but when hee reuealed that hee came for the Combate, the good Hermit (abashed therewith) discouraged with him in this manner.

My Sonne, who hath aduised thee to this boldnes, seeing there is not in all this Countrey ten such Knights, as dare assaile the Gyant, so fearefull and monstrous is he to behold: and you being but yong, to hazard your selfe in this danger, aduventure the losse both of bodie and soule, because such as wilfully seeke their owne death, are very homicides of themselves. Father, answered *Galaor*, God worke

his will with mee, for by no meanes may I let passe mine enterprise. Greatly was the good man moued to compassion, so that the teares be-deawed his milke-white beard, being able to make no other answer, but thus: If not my Sonne, I desire God to assist yee, seeing you will giue no better credite to me. Good Father, quoth *Galaor*, be mindfull of mee in your deuout Prayers: and thus till next morning they spent the night.

*Galaor* hauing armed himselfe, went to the Rocke which was not farre from the Hermitage, for there might be easily discerned the Fortresse & great Towers, which deliuered good marke of a most strong Castle. When one of the Damofels saw they approached so neere, she demaunded of *Galaor*, if he knew the Knight that should performe the Combate? I thinke (quoth he) I haue seene him sometime: but tell me (I pray yee) from what place are you come to behold this pastime? And what is the Lady that sent you? None must know so much, said the Damofell, but the Knight him-selfe which dealeth in the Combate. Thus continued their talke, till they arriued at the Castle of *Albadan*, the gate wherof they found fast shut, but *Galaor* stepping there-to called the Porter: at which noise, two men shewed themselves ouer the Porch, demaunding of him what he would haue. Goe,

quoth *Galaor*, and say to *Albadan*, that heere is a Knight, who is sent from *Gandalax* to defie him: and if he come not out the sodner, he will shew himselfe of lesse valour then reputation: You haue reason (said one of them in mockage) but he will quickly bring a remedie for your chollor, if you doe not helpe it your selfe by running away. So departed the Watch-men to enforce the Gyant of these Newes, and when the Damofels vnderstood, that *Galaor* him-selfe must execute the enterprise, being terrified with amazement, they sayd. Ah my Lord, you attempt a matter of ouer-much folly, would God you might speed so well, as with honor to accomplish an enterprise of such consequence: As for me (quoth one of them) I dare tarry no longer with ye, for I shall die at the sight of the Monster with whom you haue to deale.

Damofels, said hee, seeing you may not be assured heere, depart I pray ye to the Hermitage, where we lodged this last night, and if I dye not in fight, I will not be long from ye. Beleeue me, replied the other Damofell, what-soeuer happen I will not goe, for I determine to see the ende.

The boldnesse of the one made them both tarry, yet did they sunder themselves by the Forrest side, because the Gyant should not see them, and hoping the better to escape away if the Knight sped not well.



## CHAP. XIII.

*How Galaor vanquished the Giant at the Roche of Galterres.*

**S**oone was the Giant aduertised of these newes, wherefore not long after he came forth of the Castell, mounted on a horse proportionable to such a huge body: for it seemed an elephant, & he on his back made ample resemblance of a huge *Colossus*, or like a mountaine mouing, rather then a man. Armed he was in plates of iron so long, as from his throat he covered all the saddle on the horse, having on his head a bright shining Helmet, and in his hand a mighty iron Mace, being the weapon where-with hee commonly vsed to fight. Wonderfully affraide were the Squires and the Ladies that beheld him, and *Galaor* was not so assured, but hee stood some-what abashed: notwithstanding, he resolved so courageously, as the nearer he approached, the lesse account he made of his huge enemies Mace. When the Giant saw him come marching so brauely toward him, he said. I maruaile demie man, how thou darrest with such boldnesse tarry thy death: he that sent thee hither might either borow thy courage, or thou his corpulence, but he intended I should breake my fast, before the houre of dinner came. *Galaor* somewhat discontented with these despisings, thus answered. Thinkst thou huge beast that thy barking can aduantage thee, or hinder me? my confidence is in him who abated the pride of the great Philistine, and can likewise deliuer thee more base and vile then the dust. Exceeding angry was the

Giant at these words, wherefore without any more talke, he lifted vp his Mace to strike, seeming in his marching as though a Tower had beene caried about, but *Galaor* being prompt & nimble, stooped his Launce, and with a rough carriere of his horse, attained him on the stomacke so brauely, as he caused the mighty *Poliphemus* forgoe one of his stirrups, his Launce therewith shiuering in pieces in the aire. At this encounter the Giant thought to haue stroken him downe with his Mace, but he was too roughly and suddenly staied, whereby his blow was giuen in vaine: for the Mace which was heauie, and comparable to a huge beame in bignes, being deliuered with full force of both his armes: fell downe so weightily, as the Giant himselfe was not able to hold it, whereby it lighted on the head of his owne horse so peazantly, as being feld there-with, dyed presently vnder him, the Giant taryng a good while before he could recoouer himselfe againe. Yet the horse being of courage, did ostēd trīue to get vp, but *Galaor* thrusting his sword into his belly, caused him at length to lie there still enough: but in the end, the Giant did the like to *Galaor's* horse, and he seeing in what great danger now he was, by his wonted dexterity quickly got footing. Then approaching his enemy, drew the sword *Verganda* had giuen him, wherewith watching when the Giant lifted his Mace, he gaue such a stroke at it where he held his hands, as breacking the stroke in pieces, he left but little

little length for the Giant to holde it by: yet he made thist to buffet *Galaor* there-with in such sorte, as he was constrained to set one hand to the ground to sustaine himselfe. But all this did no iot astonish him, for coming to the Giant, (who yet kept play with the remainder of his Mace, which by wary escapes the Prince still preuented) he gaue a stroke at him with so full force, as cleane cut away the left arme from his shoulder, and the sword passing further with like strength, met the Giants leg so directly, that it wounded him through the flesh, with a wide gaping wound to the very bone. Feeling great paine by both these maimes, he cried out aloud: Ah unhappy wretch that I am, to be thus overcome by the strength of one man. Being in extreame rage, he sought to fasten hold on the body of *Galaor*, but the fore wound on his leg would let him stand no longer, constraining him to fall on his knees to the ground: & as the Prince approch't to him, he thought with his other arme to pull him down, but *Galaor* perceiuing his intent, stroke at him againe & smot off his hand. Now was the Giant depoyled of all force, being so wounded and ouer-trauailed withal, that he was no longer able to endure: by which meanes *Galaor* more easily parted his head fro his sholders, which he deliuered his Squires to cary with him. When the Damocels beheld this famous conquest, they left their ambush, & came to regard this maruaile, saying to *Galaor*. In sooth worthy Knight, great good nurture hath beene bestowed on you by your educator: for as we haue here-tofore heard, he hath the profit and vengeance, and you the honor exceeding all.

As they were about to rerurne, they saw ten Knights come forth of the castle chained together, who cried to him. Come my Lord, come take this place, seeing you haue done him dead that so miserably detained vs prisoners. What thinke you? said *Galaor* to the Damocels, may we sojourne here this after-noon? Truly, quoth they, we thinke nothing to the contrary. So went they into the Castle, where *Galaor* discharged the prisoners: & soone after, viands for dinner was brought him and his company by the seruants. When they had refreshed themselves, and at their pleasure visited the Fortresse, the Subiects inhabiting the Rock came all to him, and would haue done him honor as to their Lord: but he by no meanes would accept thereof, for he tolde them that what he had done, was on the behalfe of *Gandalax*, to whom that place by right appertained. And I, quoth he, as bound to him by duty, came hither to prepare his lodging: therefore I pray ye that he may be well receiued of you all, and obey him as your true and naturall Lord, for wel am I assured, that he wil intreat you with loue & gentleness. These requests were presently answered by one for the all, who said. Hither shall he be most hartely welcome, because we hope, that he to whom we shall be vassalles and Subiects, will cherish and fauour vs: in stead whereof, the other vsed vs as villaines and slaues, and you (being the conquerour) we hold for our only deliuerer. All things thus debated and accorded, *Galaor* departed thence with his company, returning to the Hermitage, where the Hermit attended for happy newes: but he was not a little glad to see *Galaor* come with such success.

celle, wherefore he thus spake. My son, daily are you bound to praise the diuine bounty, whose loue hath giuen you grace to execute this notable vengeance. On the morrow, after he had receiued the good mans benediction, he set forward on his way, & one of the Damosels intreated him, that he would suffer her to trauaile in his company, whereto right willingly he gaue consent. And I, quoth the other, must take another way, in that I had not come thus farre, but onely to behold the issue of the combat, which I haue scene with such content, as I must needs make comendable reporie thereof to other, & so shall I not faile to do in the Court of King *Lisuart*, whether now I go to finde a brother of mine gone thither before me. Faire Damosell, answered *Galaor*, if you meete a yong Knight, who beareth in his Shield a couple of Lions, I pray ye say to him, that the Gentleman, to whom not long since he gaue the order of Knight-hood, doth humbly salute him, adding this withall, how he endeouoreth to honor the order, and when they both shall meete, he will acquainte him with such matter betweene them, as yet perhaps he knoweth not. So tooke the Damosell her leaue of *Galaor*, who afterward thus began to commune with the other. You know Lady, that I haue finished the combat with the Giant, and you saide to me before I began it, how the Knight himselfe should know what she is that sent you thither. Very she answered the Damosell, but if you would be resolu'd therein, follow me, and within fise daies I will shew you her. That shall not let me, said *Galaor*: thus rode they on together so long, till at length they came to a forked way, and *Galaor*

who tid mizing before, thought she had followed him: but she arrested behind a little, and when she hoped to ouer-take him againe, it was her hap to take the wrong way. This chanced at the entrance of the Forrest of *Braganda*, which sovereth the Countries of *Claire* and *Gresca*, where long he had not erred, but he heard a voice thus calling to him. Ah good Knight, help me. *Galaor* turning his head to see what was the cause: I thinke, quoth one of his Squires, it should be the Damosell that departed from vs. What? said *Galaor*, hath she left vs? Yea truly, answered the Squire, she tooke the way leading on the left hand. Beleue me, quoth he, I had very little care of her, & hastily without taking his Helmet, hauing only his Shield and Lance, he galopped so fast as he could to the place where he heard the voice, and hard at hand he espied fise men on foote, armed with Crosslets and Halberds, and a Dwarfie on horse-back, who cruelly laied on the Damosell with a staffe. When *Galaor* approached neere them, hee came to the Dwarfie, saying. Thou villainous and deformed creature, soone shall I send thy soule to the Diuell: and running fiercely against him with his Launce, threw him against the ground maruailously amazed. Then came the other eagerly vpon him, compassing him on euery side: but to the first he gaue such a grieting with his Launce, as he lay sprangling on the earth. Another of them buckled close to him, laying load on his Shield with his Halberd, but at length he pierced his Lance quite through his body. When the other three saw this massacre, they ranne away so fast as they could ouerthwart the Forrest, and *Galaor* not

able

able to ouertake them, returned backe againe to the Dwarfie, who being gotten on horse-back, fled away after the other, crying. Accoursed Knight, in haplesse houre hast thou misused my men, for thou shalt dy an euill death. *Galaor* seeing the Dwarfie laboured so hard as he could to saue himselfe, would follow him no further, but went to see if his Launce were vnbroken, which he had left in the body of the dead man: and finding it found as it was before, gaue it to his Squire, saying to the Damosell. Ride now before me, and I will guard you better then I haue done.

So tooke they the way againe they had left, that brought them to a Riuer named *Braz*, which could not be passed at the foord: now rode the Damosell somewhat farre before *Galaor*, finding the passage for ready, as she went ouer before he came. In meane while he staid the returne of the boate, he espied the Dwarfie come after him crying. Villainous traitour thou art dead, if thou deliuer not the Damosell thou tookest from me. Little account did *Galaor* make of his words, but looking backe, he saw three Knights come after the Dwarfie well mounted, one of the three thus speaking to the rest. It were great dishonor for vs, to set all three together vpon one man: and as for my selfe, I thinke scorne to be assisted by any. Hauing so said, with a full course he ran against the Prince, who likewise was ready to entertaine him, and they encountered in such sorte, as the Knight pierced *Galaors* Armour, making him feeble the naked pointe of his Launce: but *Galaor* bad him so brauely welcome, casting him from his saddle with such might, as he lay on the ground not able to

stirre, whereat the other twaine were so abashed, that they ranne against the Prince, the one failing, and the other breaking his Lance: which *Galaor* determining to reuenge, stroke his Launce into the sight of the last Knights Helmet, as he made it fall from his head, and he (hauing lost his stirrups) ready to lye along. Meane while, the second who had not broken, returned against *Galaor*, & sped in meeting. Now albeit the encounter was with great vigour, yet escaped the armour on either side. Hauing thus galantly shiuered their stauies, they drew forth their swords, beginning a fierce and cruell combat, and while the fight endured, the Dwarfie without ceasing cryed to his men. Looke well that he escape not, but kill him least he get away. Then *Galaor* comming neere him who had lost his Helmet, reached him such a stroke on the head, as he tumbled downe dead before him. And when the third saw his companion slaine, being affraid of himselfe, he turned his back and away: but *Galaor* pursued him so neere, that he gaue him a blow betweene the neck and the shoulders, which brought off a great many platts of his Armour. Now did the run-awaies feare more & more encrease, when he felt his enemy so neere at hand, wherefore the better to saue himselfe, he cast his shield back ouer his shoulders, & fled away faster then he did before: which *Galaor* perceiuing, would follow him no longer, but hastily returned, thinking to take the Dwarfie and binde his legs to a tree, from which the Dwarfie kept himselfe wel enough, for he had gotten more ground in running away then the other. Here-upon he came to the first that he dismounted, who hauing some-  
H3 what

what recouered himselfe, *Galaor* thus spake to him. Insooth your misfortune grieueth mee more then your fellowes doth, for like a good K night you came alone to me, albeit I know not on what occasion, in respect I neuer offended ye as I remember. It is very true, answered the Knight, notwithstanding you must note what the Dwarfie sayd to vs : how you had beaten him, slaine his men, and taken a Lady perforce from him, that was in his companie.

Beleeue me, quoth *Galaor*, shewing him the Damosell on the other side of the Riuer, he falsly lyed, and were it that I had brought her away perforce, she would not carry for me, so willingly as shee doth : but she unhappily straying in this Forrest, the Dwarfie met with her, offering to lead her away against her will, and because she would not obey him, he gaue her many cruel strokes with a staff. Ah, Traitor that he is, answered the knight, for this villanie shall I reward him if euer wee meete againe. And because *Galaor* found the Knight in so good fort, he holpe to take his horse that had escaped : desiring him to punish the Dwarfie for his treason. This done, he entred the boate and past the water, afterward hee and the Damosell rode on their way, shee shewing him soone after a Castle neere at hand, which stood very brauely on the toppe of a Mountaine, saying, Here will be the best lodging we shall finde this night : and alighting from their horses, they were entertained there with maruallous cortesie, it being the dwelling of the Damosels mother. Soone after was the Prince vnarmed, and then the Damosell came to him in this manner.

To the ende (my Lord) I may keepe promise with yee, if you please to stay heere till I returne, which credite me shal be very speedily : I will bring ye newes of her whom you desire to see. I am content, answered *Galaor*, prouided that you make no tarriance, because I haue affaires of importance else-where. Let it suffice, replied the Damosell, you shall see me againe sooner then you imagine. And so she departed, vsing such diligence, as *Galaor* was not displeased with her stay. At her returne, they mounted on horse-backe, and rode together crosse the Forrest, which when they left, the night ouer-tooke them : whereupon the Damosell forsaking the out-right way, turned aside, and by time the greater part of the night was spent, they arrived at a very faire Citie, named *Grandartes*, where comming to a Castle gate, the Damosell sayd. Now let vs alight, and follow me, for here will I shew you her, I promised : but leaue not your weapons and Armour, because one can scant tell what may happen. The Damosell went before, and *Galaor* followed her till they came neere the wall. Get vp heere said the Damosell, and I will goe on the other side to attend you. With much adoe he ascended the wall, by reason of his weightie Armor, as also being troubled with his Shield and Helmet. When the Damosell saw hee was amounted, shee entred the Pallace to guide him as she begun : in meane while *Galaor* was descended, and sate hard by a Posterne that entred a Garden, where he tarried so long, till the Damosell came and opened the doore with one of her companions, but ere hee entred, they

they thus spake. Although you haue attained thus farre, yet before you passe any further, you must needs tell vs whose sonne you are. Let that alone answered *Galaor*, for I haue such a Father, as til the time of better happe, I am content not to name him. Neuerthelesse, quoth one of them, it is very necessarie we should know, for it shall not be any way to your hinderance. I am (answered *Galaor*) Sonne to King *Perion* of *Gaule*, and the Queene *Elisena*, and it is not fixe dayes past since I could not tell yee so much. Stay then, said the Damosell : so they caused him to be vnarmed, casting a Mantle about his shoulders, and afterward went on, the first Damosell going before, and the other comming behinde him. In this manner they entred the Pallace, passing through a chamber, where many Ladies and Gentlewomen were in bed : and if any one demaunded who went by so late, the Damosels (his guides) made answer for him. Thus not perceiued by any, they came to another Chamber, wherein when *Galaor* entred, he saw sitting on a gorgeous bedde a most beautifull Ladie, with an Ivory combe kembering her faire locks : but when she espied *Galaor*, she presently cast off her head a Chaplet of Flowers, and came to meete him whom the Damosels had brought, saying. My Friend, you are right heartily welcome, being the best knight in the world that I know. And you, Madame, quoth he, are most happily found, being the fairest Ladie that euer I saw. Then the Damosell that had guided him thither, thus spake. My Lord, see here my Mistresse, now am I discharged of the promise I made ye, and if you would haue me say any more : she

is named *Aldena*, daughter to king *Serolys*, and because the wife to the Duke of *Bristoya*, is sister to her mother, she nourisheth her here, as her owne daughter. And you Madame, (quoth shee to the young Princeesse, haue here present (as I can assure yee) the Sonne to King *Perion* of *Gaule* : wherefore you being both the children of Kings, excelling in beantie and natures perfections, if ye loue together no one dare blame ye. Here-with she went presently forth of the chamber, and making fast the doore after her, left the two lous alone : by which meanes they spent this night so amorously, as they that haue tasted like fortune may conceiue, and therefore need I make no further talke thereof.

But the houre being come when *Galaor* should depart, he was warily aduised thereof by the Damosels, who brought him to the place where ouer-night hee had left his Armour : and after hee was inuested therein (as hee ought to be) he went along the Garden againe where-through he came in. And as neuer any good chance, without some mishap attending thereon, so nowe came it to passe : for there found he the Dwarfie ambushed, that had so misused him before, as you haue heard, who no sooner espied him, but hee cryed out. Beleeue me, Sir Royster, vnwise wast thou to enter heere, for thou dyest, and the traitresse that did conduct thee. Come forth Knights, come forth, here is a man that secretly came out of the Dukes Chamber. It was no time then for *Galaor* to sleepe, but lightly getting vp the wall, cast himselfe on the other side, where finding his horse readie, he presently mounted : notwithstanding, the

Dwarffe and the rest (well acquainted with the secret issues of the Castle) with all speed pursued him, and perceiuing how this villainous Dwarffe was cause of all this trouble, stayed, saying to himselfe. Either I will die, or bee reuenged on this ridiculous creature, if I catch him. Then came the other and set vpon him, but so brauely did he defend himselfe, as none of them durst be bold to tary neere him: for he being moued to exceeding impatience, thrust himselfe in the midst among them, laying about with courage, as well they found who they dealt withall. *Galaor* seeing the Dwarffe still kept aloofe, determining to die, but he would lay hold on him, and entering among the thickest of them, before his Launce brake he slew two out-right: then drawing his Sword, made them so soundly acquainted with the sharpe edge thereof, as he that thought himselfe hardyest, was glad to giue him way, for no one medled with him but was layd along. At length they compassed him in such sort, as they found meanes to kill his horse, which made him fall to the ground in very great danger, for now they verily intended to murder him, and the Dwarffe perfwading himselfe that hee could not escape, came neere to shew some part of his man-hood: but when he saw *Galaor* had in spight of them recovered his feet, and happy was he which kept furthest from him, hee turned his horse to escape away, yet by chaunce *Galaor* got hold on the reines of his bridle, giuing him such a blowe on the stomacke with the hilts of his Sword, that he fell to the ground so loutishly, as the blood gushed forth at all the conduits of his

head. Then lightly mounted hee on the Dwarffes horse, and the Beast seeming to storme at this change, from an euill-fauoured Dwarffe to one of the best knights in the world, made prooffe whether his Rider could sit fast, or no, running violently with him a good distance from his enemies. And turning to make an ende of his worke, as by chaunce he lifted his eyes to the Castle, he saw in one of the windowes the Ladie whom he had chosen as his friend, shee shaking a white hand-kercher to him, meaning he should be gone with all possible speed, which hee did, because hee perceived more enemies at hand. With nimble pace he hyed him away, not tarrying till hee recovered the Forrest, where to refresh himselfe a while, he gaue his Helmet to his Squire.

Now shall ye vnderstand, how when the Dukes Knights saw him make such haste away, some were of the opinion to follow him, the rest said it was in vaine, seeing hee had gotten into the wood, & thus debating, they went no further, but stood as men confounded, with maruailing howe one man could be able to vanquish so many. Meane while the Dwarffe was come to himselfe againe, but hee felt his body so sore and bruised, as very hardly could he stand on his feet, yet still he cryed to them in this manner.

My friends, cary me to my Lord the Duke, for I will let him know what hee must needes reuenge. Through these importunate acclamations, he was brought by them before the Duke, to whom he declared, how he met the Damofell in the Forrest, & because he would haue accompany her home, shee cryed out till a Knight came to aid her,

her, who killed his men, and bore him likewise very cruely. Afterward, how hee followed him againe with three Knights to haue her from him, and they in like manner were also confounded.

Lastly, that shee brought the same Knight to his Honours Castle, and suffered him to bee with her in the Dukes owne Chamber. The Duke being highly offended hereat, demanded if he knew the Damofell he thus complained on. Yea, my Lord, quoth the Dwarffe, if I see her againe. Here-upon all the Ladyes, and Gentle-women were sent for, and so soone as the Dwarffe beheld her he sayd. This is shee (my Lord) by whom your Pallace is dishonoured. Ah Tray-tour, answered the Damofell, thou lyest falsly, for had not the Knight come to rescue mee in the For-

rest, thou wouldest haue abused mee: & thus shee did. Heate me, because I would not consoort thee. Vpon much inchaunce with anger, was the Duke against the Damofell, and sayd thus. Hee shall mine Honour (false woman) looke make the port to be the more afterward he sent her to close prisons, yet noo-wild standing all the paine she endured, shee would not discover any thing touching her Ladyes secret: albeit shee was there very long tormented to the no little griefe and sorrow of *Amadis* that dearly loued her, and knew not by any other how to vnderstand of her. But the Duke, thinking he had kept ye too long from *Amadis*, returneth to him: intending when place & matter shall serue, to finish that which after ward happened to *Galaor*, and

## CHAP. XIII.

How after *Amadis* departed from *Vergande* he vnknewled, he arrived at a Castle, where it chanced to him as you shall read in this discourse.

**G**reat ioy had *Amadis* at his departure from *Vergande*, as well for vnderstanding that the man whom hee had Knighted, was his owne Brother, as also because he approached neer the place where his *Orisane* sojourned, hoping ere-long to haue a sight of her. And so long trauielled he through a Forrest where into he had entred, as he was surprized with darke night before he could finde any house for lodging, yet notwithstanding the obscuritie of the night, he espied in the wood a great fire: wherefore he rode thitherward, and by the way chanced on a faire Fortresse, as he gathered

by the light he beheld through the glasse windowes, and coming neere thereto, he heard the voyces of men and women singing, tunable to sweet Musick, that consoorted with them. When he came to the gate, he knocked and called for some to open it: but the harmony of the Musick, and other noyse in the Castle, made such hinderance, as hee was not heard. Notwithstanding, hee still more loud knocked and called, till certaine came and opened forth a small crevice in the gate, and seeing him, one of them demanded what he would haue there so late. Sir, answered *Amadis*, I am a strange Knight that seeks for lod-

ging. Strange? quoth he within the Castell, it appeareth so by thy language, but more by thy manner of walking so late: our country-men define the day time, and thou shunest it, fearing to be seen, or least thou shouldest haue occasion to *Combate*, and at such an hour as this is, none traualle the way except they be *Dinels*. Beleeue me, answered *Amadis*, little courtesie dost you know or show, what vse these words, seeing without further knowledge what I am, you not only rebuke but condemne me: and I thinke if you are possessed either with fence or man-hood, you haue sometime bene in like distresse as I am, and hauing found it in your selfe, neuer reprove it in another. Thou maist make triall thereof if thou wilt, quoth he in the Castell: but get thee walking, for here shalt thou set no foote this night. Now trust me, said *Amadis*, I thinke thou wouldest haue no man of vallew in thy company: yet before we part, I am desirous to know what thou art. That will I tel thee, quoth the other, on this condition, that when so euer we meete, thou shalt *combate* with me. I will not stick for that, answered *Amadis*. Know then, said he within, how I am *Dardan*, who commands thee not to stay so late this night, but that I may find thee to morrow morning. Thou vauntest of thy selfe very much, quoth *Amadis*, but if thou wilt cause *Torches* to be brought hither to giue vs light, and come forth presently without longer stay, we shall soone see who ought to haue the worse lodging this night. What said *Dardan*, to *combate* with an *Orke*, the enemy of the day, must bring *Torches*, and this night take Armes? what is he, that so late to gaine such simple

honor, will either put on spurre or Cuyrate: and with these words he went from the gate.

Heere may the Reader by himselfe discourse awhile, what fruit ouer-braining commonly bringeth with it, & contrariwise, what perfection (among all other vertues) is in modestie. No well-grounded courage, or gallant disposed body, can duely put in exercise the benefit of the one or other, if moderation & temperance be not their guides therein. And albeit valiance & hardines is a great gift of God: yet are they so pernicious in such as haue them, (who are transported with passions, or the glory of ambition,) as they be euen no better then cowardise & presumption. Eloquence, and the facultie of well speaking, is a rich and precious gift of nature, augmented and encreased by long vse and study, to giue light and decking to the faire conceptions of the spirit: but it is there a more hurtfull pestilence in a common wealth, then when a well spoken Oratour will misuse his art & sweetnes of language. Haue not some bin knowne to persuade simple people, to enterpise things which afterward haue brought their ruine and subuersion? I leaue the confidence of the wife, and the opinitive in their owne beauty, the one procuring to many the losse of their soules, and the other to infinite number the destruction of honor: so hurtfull in all things it too much vsurpatio of ouer-weening, and immoderate estimation of our selues. I will not heere compare the wisdom of *Ulysses*, with the arrogancie of furious *Ajax*, or the violence of *Turnus*, with the temperance of *Aeneas*: nor make other remonstrances by the successe of great matters, happening to mighty

mighty personages both *Greekes* & *Latines*. It shall content me, to set for example this only accident of indiscreete *Dardan*, to the end that yong Gentlemen, who take delight to read this History: seeing on the one side the patient magnanimity of *Amadis*, and on the other the furious brutality of *Dardan*, may propose the vertues to be imitated, & the vices to be detested and punished.

*Amadis* then somewhat displeased with the outrageous speeches of *Dardan*, departed, nor so much caring for his lodging, as how to be reuenged: & concluded, sometime in walking about, and other while in resting by a bush, to passe the incommodity of this night in the Forrest, thus to beguile the time till day rising. As there hee traced vp and downe, he heard the speech of some body nere him, and looking about, espied two *Damosels* on horse-back accompanied with a Squire: after they had saluted him, and he them, they demanded from whence he came so late armed, wherewith *Amadis* thoroughly reported, all that had happened to him at the Castell. Know you, said the *Damosels*, the name of the Knight? That doe I, quoth he, for he tolde me his name is *Dardan*. Very true, said they, hee is called *Dardan the proud*, the most audacious Knight in this country. I beleeue it well, answered *Amadis*. Sir Knight, quoth they, seeing you are so vnprovided of lodging, if you will take patience to remaine this night in our tentes, which are pitched heere hard at hand, you shall be welcome. He glad of this courtesie, rode with them, and being there alighted, *Amadis* caused his Squire to vnarme him. When the *Damosels* saw him so faire, and

of such honest conuersation, they were well pleased with his company: and so they supped together merily, afterward they gaue him a pallad to rest vpon. Neuertheless, before they parted, they demanded of him whether he traualled. To the Court of King *Lisuart*, answered *Amadis*. And so do we replied the *Damosels*, to see what shall happen to a Lady, one of the best and most noble in the Country, who hath committed her welwar to the triall of a *Combate*, and it must be within few dayes following be performed before King *Lisuart*: but yet wee know not who will be the man, for he against whom the cause must be defended, is one of the best Knights in all great *Brittaine*. What is, said *Amadis*, the Knight so much esteemed, especially among so many good? It is the same *Dardan*, answered the *Damosels*, from whence so lately you came. And on what cause, said *Amadis*, ariseth the *Combate*? I pray ye (faire Ladies) if you know, let mee vnderstand it. Sir, quoth one of them, this *Dardan* loueth a Knights daughter of the Country, who at his second nuptials married her I am to speake of: now hath this *Damosell* the beloued of *Dardan*, conceived such hatred against her faire mother, that she hath said to her friend, how she will neuer loue him, except he bring her to King *Lisuart*s Court, and there openly maintaine, that all the poore Ladies goods appertaineth to her, and if any gain-say it, hee will iustifie the same in *Combate*. These news were highly pleasing to *Amadis*, for by these meanes he intended to compasse occasion to be reuenged of the wrong he did him: and that in the presence of *Orlans*, who should there perceiue what her Knight



Knight was, which made him enter into such thoughts, as the Damofels well noting it, one of them thus spake. I pray ye Sir, for courtesie, acquaint vs with the reason of your sudden musing, if it may without offence be knowne. Faire Ladies, answered *Amadis*, if you will promise me as loyall Gentlewomen, to keepe it secret and reueale it to no one, willingly shall I tell ye: all which they solemnly sware to performe. I intend (quoth he) to combat for the Dame you spake of, and minde not to faile: but I would haue it concealed from any but your selues. When they heard what he sayd, they were much abashed, notwithstanding they made great esteeme of him: seeing what they had vttered in praise of *Dardan*, could not affray him, but hee would hazard the Combate, and therefore thee that already had broken the matter, thus replied. Gentle Sir, your intent proceedeth fro a high resolved minde, and wee will pray for your prosperous successe. So gaue they ech to other the good night, and went to rest till the morning, when they dislodged together. Then entreated the Damofels, that seeing hee went to the same place they did, and in the Forrest kept men of euill behauiour: therefore hee would not forsake their company, whereof he made them promise.

Along they ride with sundrie discourings, where among other talke, they desired, in respect they met so happily together, that he would bee content to let them know his name. My name, quoth he is *Amadis*, but I pray you keepe it onely to your selues. Proceeding on by vaste and vnfrequented places, one day, when furthest

they were from doubt, they beheld before them vnder a tree, two Armed Knights prepared for the Ioust: who seeing them comming, stepped into the midst of the way, the one saying to his companion. Which of these two Damofels wouldst thou haue, and the other I meane to take my selfe? I will said (the other) haue the first. And I her companion, answered the other: so without more words they came to lay hands on them. *Amadis* who misliked such dealing, without the Damofels consent, addressed himselfe to the Knights: demaunding what manner of behauiour this was, to Ladyes comming from honest place? Such, quoth they, as becometh women of their age. What answered *Amadis*, would you then force them? Who shall let vs (quoth they) if wee please? Marie, that will I replied *Amadis*: then lacing his Helmet, he tooke his shield & Lance, saying. Let the Damofels alone you shamelesse men, and defend your selues. Without any more talke they gaue their spurres to their Horses, meeting together with such puissance, as the Knight brake his Launce, and *Amadis* gaue him such an attaint, that hee carryed him from his horse to the ground, with his head vnder, and his heeles vpward: breaking the laces of his Helmet in the fall, so that his head remained without shelter.

When the other saw his companion downe, he would reuenge him, and couching his Launce against *Amadis*, met him so full, as piercing his Armour, wounded him a little, and his staffe was shiuered all in pieces: but the Prince failing with his Launce, encountered him so fiercely with his body and

and Horse, as he lay tumbling hard by his fellow, the comming to the Damofels, he said. I pray ye heereafter come no more behinde, but for your better surety keepe ye before. A while he taried to see if they would rise againe, but perceiuing they made no shew thereof, he forbore to charge them any further, & so rode on with his company. Soone after they came to a faire plaine, whereby a pleasant Riuer had his course, and there they caused their Tents to be erected: as well to regard the hurt of *Amadis*, as also to refresh themselves. But as they sat at meat, the two dismounted Knights came riding thither, saying to *Amadis*. Sir Knight, you haue won the Ladies at the Lance, now must ye defend them by the sword, otherwise we will cary them hence in despite of you. But you shall not, quoth he, if I can let it: so drawing his sword against him that first made offer, in short time he brought him into such distresse, as without the succour of his companion, he was vnable to hold out any longer: which *Amadis* perceiuing, said. Ah Knight, the Ladyes make slender account of you, that you must come both vpon one man. Yet notwithstanding he wold not forbare, but as the patterne of vnconquerable valour, gaue him likewise worke enough to doe, so that all their wrong turned to his honor: for he gaue the last such strokes on the helmet, as the sword glaunfing on his shoulders, cut in twaine the cuyrates of his armour, & sliced his flesh to the very bone, which made him let fall his sword, and run away halfe dead. Then turning to the other, he cut off his hand vnder his Shield, the paine whereof was so yrkesome to him, as he cryed. Ah I am slaine. Thus

speaking, he threw his sword to the ground, and the Shield from about his neck. All this auailed not, said *Amadis*, for I wil not leaue thee, except first thou sware, neuer to offend Lady against her will. Alas, quoth he, I promise faithfully, and will performe it. Here with *Gandalin* came, who gaue him his sword and Shield againe, permitting him to go for helpe whether he would: and *Amadis* returned to the Tent, where the Damofels reioysing for his safe returne, said. In sooth Sir, we had bene dishonored without your aide, which is much better then we expected, and such, as not onely assureth your reuenge for *Dardans* iniurie, but the Ladyes also, if fortune permit, you doe vndertake her quarrell. Then was hee vnarmed, and after his wound was drest, he sat downe to meat againe.

At their departure thence, they lodged at a good Ladies Castle, where they were most courteously entertained, and on the morrow trauailed all day, without any aduenture worthy rehearsal, arriuing neere *Windfore* where King *Lisuart* lay, when *Amadis* thus spake to the Damofels. Faire Friends, I would not be known to any one, therefore til such time as the knight come to the combate, I intend to withhold my selfe from the place: and when the houre is, let your Squire bring me tydings thereof hither. Sir, quoth the Damofels, as yet there wants two daies of the assignation, therefore if you please we wil tarry with you: and our Squire shall goe into the Towne, and bring vs word when the Knight is arriued. I am well content, said he: whereupon they pitched their Tent betwene a little wood and a Riuer, and *Amadis* presently put off his armour.

Now did the Damofels change their opinion, and thought it better for them to go into the Towne, to see how things were in preparation, saying, they might returne when they pleased. *Amadis* not misliking thereof, willed them to do so, in meane while (being vnarmed) he mounted on horse-backe, intending to stray abroad a little for his pleasure, & *Gandalin* guided him through the wood, Riding along, as they were on the side of a little mountaine, he might easily behold the Towne, and when they were at the highest, they alighted from their horses: when *Amadis* sitting downe vnder a tree, cast his eye toward that part where he iudged the Princeesse *Oriana* should be, then regarding the walles, the Towers, and the whole Castle, breaching forth a vehement sigh, hee sayd. Ah happy Towers, within you is the onely flower of the world: and thou faire Towne, how fortunate art thou in containing that, which all the harts and practices of men cannot comprehend? High in diuine grace were he, who for maintenance of this quarrell should spend his life: but much happy he, that without other combat then his small desert, should reach a blisse so incomparable. Then resting his head on his arme, he entred into a deepe conceit, which prouoked him to sudden silence, and in this melancholly the teares trilled downe his cheekes: in mean while *Gandalin* who knew his complexion, standing where he was vnseene of any, espied a goodly troupe of Lords and Ladies comming toward them, whereof he made hast to aduertise the Prince, but he was so perplexed, as he could not answer, wherefore *Gandalin* tooke him by the arme,

saying. My Lord, see you not what a great traine maketh toward vs? At these words he came to himselfe, beginning to sigh, and lifting his eyes to heauen, said. *Gandalin*, if in this loue I were maister of my strength, as I am in diuers other actions: neither shouldest thou haue neede to aduertise me, nor my selfe be without councell so much as I am. But I feele my selfe so oppressed, as all the enemies in the world cannot bring me to such extremity, as this ouer ruling passion doth: therefore I pray thee talke to me, of the felicity a man shall enioy in death, for other may I not taste, and practise no meanes of my life, seeing the contrary doth surmount it. What my Lord? answered *Gandalin*, esteeme you the victory over your selfe so difficult, after so many conquests of stout and bold strangers? Why do you not think, that peraduenture she leueth you well, for whom you endure such assaults, and happily by as great reason as you loue her? your perfoage, prowess, beauty, and nobility of knage, can they deserue lesse, then the good grace of the most rare & excellent Lady in the world? For these humours (my Lord) repell your desperations. Further hee would haue proceeded, but *Amadis* brake him off in anget, saying. Wretch darrest thou blaspheme so much, as to say, that he who hath merited no conditio in the world, may be equalled with so perfect a thing as is my Lady? yet nei no more into such tearmes, if thou wilt not haue me thine enemy, and so loose my conuersation. Well, well, said *Gandalin*, I pray ye wipe your eyes, least those that come hitherward perceiue you haue wept. What? answered *Amadis*, comes their any body? Yea mary, quoth *Gandalin*, and

and now they be at hand: here-with he shewed him the Knights & the Ladies, who were hard by them, by time *Amadis* was mounted. Then (as though hee had stayed for their companie) hee saluted them, and riding among the traine hee beheld a Ladie (very comely and beautifull) who wept very grievously, where-upon hee left the rest, and rode with her, saying. Madame, God comfort yee, and giue you ioy. In sooth, answered the Lady, and thereof haue I need, in that (as now) it is very farre from mee, which except Heauen fauour me with better grace, I am utterly out of hope euer to see againe. And so high a Maiestie, said *Amadis* can prouide therefore when he pleaseth: Not-withstanding, if you were so contented, I gladly would know the cause of your sadnesse.

Beleeue mee my friend, quoth she, all that euer I enioy in this world, consisteth in the tryall of a Combate. By these wordes hee knew this to be the Lady of whom the Damofels had tolde him before, wherefore hee enquired further, if as yet shee had found a knight on her behalfe? No truly, sayd the Lady, and (which grieueth mee most of all) to morrow must my delay bee exterminate. What will ye then doe? answered *Amadis*. What would you that I should doe? quoth shee, but lament and loose all, vnlesse (by hap) I finde one in the Kings Court, who moued thereto by charitable compassion, will courteously defend the right of a desolate widow. Such fortune sayd *Amadis*, shall I pray may befall yee, for I should not be a little glad thereof, as well for your owne sake, as also because I neuer thought well of

your aduersarie. I thanke ye gentle Sir, quoth she, to God, I commit the reuenge of my wrong. So passed on the Ladie, and *Amadis* turning bridle, rode backe to the Pauillion, where he found the Damofels, who were already returned from the town: and presently they told him, how *Dardan* was come into the field, with full resolution to doe his deuoire. And trust me, sayd *Amadis*, it was my happe to meet the distressed Lady, euen the same whom the case concerneth: heere-with hee declared all the talke they had together.

But now is the houre of quiet come, and each one went to rest till the point of day, when the Damofels being risen, came to tell *Amadis*, how they would goe before to the Towne, and send him worde when *Dardan* was readie. Not so, quoth *Amadis*, I will not bee farre behinde yee, but let one ride before, to aduertise me when *Dardan* shews himselfe in the field. After he was armed, they went all to horse-backe, and being come to the issue of the Forrest, he sayd to the Damofels. Now may you goe (if you please) for I will not depart this place till I heare some newes from you. Away they went, when *Amadis* alighting, tooke off his Helmet to refresh himselfe.

No sooner did the Sunne appeare in the East, but the King came to the place appointed for the Combate (which was without the Towne, hard by the Walles) where *Dardan* not long after shewed himselfe, in such manner and equipage, as an ambitious man vseth to gaine goods & honour, also like an amorous Champion to maintaine the quarrell of his beloued: who to countenance him with the greater fauor, was queindly led

by the reines of his Palfray, the presenting himselfe before the king on his knees, he sayd. My Lord, according to the ordinance by you appointed, this Ladie and I humbly beseech ye, that the goods may be deliuered her, as is no more then reason: for if any Knight oppose him-selfe against her, heere am I readie for the Combate. The king then called for the Ladyes defendant, but she (poore soule) appeared alone. Why Lady, quoth the King, are you vnprovided of a Champion, that you come without any to defend your right? So helpe me God (answered she weeping) I am (my Lord) forsaken of all, except you grant me mercie. Great compassion had the King on her, for he knew her to be very vertuous: but he could not together order reason and the Law. In the meane while, *Dardan* who thought no resistace would come, fate downe in the middest of the field, attending the third houre, which was the time according to the custome, when the King would pronounce sentence to the Conquerour: but one of the Damofels seeing nowe the needefull time, made haste to let *Amadis* vnderstand, what want of his presence was in the field. For this cause he immediately mounted on horsebacke, and being armed as appertained, commanded the Damofell and his Squire to goe some other way, for he would not be seene by any from whence he came: assuring them, that if he were Victor, hee would returne againe to the Tent. So departed *Amadis* alone, (as he promised the Damofell of *Denmarke* in *Gaule*) and arriued at the place where *Dardan* held the world in wonder of him. The king

and his Nobles seeing him come from the Forrest, stood somewhat in doubt of him, for hee carryed such a gallant and Knightly countenance, as promised a-farre off that his enemy should finde him of haucie disposition: which made the King (about all other) desirous to know him, and thinking she for whose cause hee came knew his name, he called and demanded of her the question.

Dread Lord (answered the Ladie) I neuer saw the man before, nor doe I know what he is. By this time was *Amadis* entred the field, when doing reuerence to the king and the Ladyes, without longer stay he came to *Dardan*: demaunding if hee were the man, that would maintaine the quarrell of her, for whom the poore Ladie was put to such trouble; because, quoth hee, I am come in her defence, and also to keepe promise with thee. What didst thou promise me? replied *Dardan*. That I would see thee in the day-time, said *Amadis*, & wettest thou when? It was at such a time, as thou being whittled with wine, or glorie, or else the trust thou hadst in thy strong Castle, spakest so out-ragiously to me standing without, wearied both with trauaile & hunger. And therefore doe I make the lesse account of thee, answered *Dardan*: but cause her to come hither, for whom thou wilt doe such a doubtie deed, to know if she will accept thee as her Champion, and afterward doe the viter-most thou canst. When the King saw they talked so long together, he would haue heard what they said: but the good Widdow came, and to her, *Dardan* thus spake. Dame, this Knight would maintaine thy right, wilt thou submit all to what he can doe?

doe? With all my heart (quoth she) seeing it pleaseth him to stand so much my Friend, and God speed him no otherwise then my cause is iust. Whē the two knights were at the very point to combat, the King perceiued that *Amadis* Shield was bruised in two places, both with strokes of the Sword, and point of the Launce, wherefore he sayd to such as stood neere him, that if the Knight demanded another shield, he would gladly giue him one: but *Amadis* was so hot in desire to reuenge himselfe and the Ladie, that he listened to nothing but the Combate. Thus the Ladyes accord being receiued, the two Champions tooke their carriere against each other so roughly, as their Launces pierced their Armour and flew in pieces, without any other harme as yet: but when their bodies met, *Dardan* was sent to the ground, yet it happened so wel for him, as holding fast the reines of his horse, he recovered himselfe more nimbly, and mounted againe, as one both valiant and brancely disposed, boldly setting hand to his Sword. Whē *Amadis* saw him so quickly vp againe, & in such readinesse for his owne defence: hee approached to him, when began such a battaile betwene the, as euery one present maruailed thereat. On all sides were placed the inhabitants of the Towne, and many other that came farre off, as well on mightie Scaffoldes in the fildes, as also on the towers and walles of the Castle: but about the rest, the Queene was there present with her Ladies, most desirous to behold who should beare away the honour of this cruell Combate; for they sedmed two so gallant companions, as it was hard at first sight to iudge

the better. Such were the rigorous strokes deliuered on either side, that sparkes of fire flew forth of their Helmes and Armour, their Shields cut in pieces, and their blood colouring the ground, which moued exceeding compassion in the Regardants, who seemed co-partners in their danger, according as ech one fauoured the welfare of his Friend: but the two Champions gaue no respect thereto, because their desire was to make knowne both to the Ladyes and themselves, the man deseruing highest account.

When King *Lisuart* saw them endure so long, he sayd aloud, that hee neuer beheld a more singular Combate, pursued with greater courage and man-hood: wherefore he determined not to depart, vntill he had seene the finall issue thereof, permitting them to proceed as themselves pleased. And to the ende (quoth he) that the Conquerour may be dignified with more then accustomed honour, I will cause his deserts to be liuely caued in Marble; at the entrance of my Pallace, to proue the like perfection in all other, that are desirous to follow Armes. In such manner as you haue heard continued the two Knights a long time, the standers by being not able to discerne who had the better: for without taking breath or rest their fury continued, as though their strength had more and more encreased. But *Amadis* who by chance turning his head to the place where the Ladies stood, espied his faire Mistress, lovely *Orsiana*, whereby hee felt his verue augmented in such sort, that hee was as fresh and lustie, as if but then hee entered the field, imagining he was become more then a man.

Now followed hee the fight with such cruell extreames, as in short time he dissolued the doubt who should be superiour: for *Dardan* (notwithstanding all his defence) was constrained to draw backe, seeking how to escape the wreakefull strokes of his enemy, which without ceasing wounded his bodie in many places: his horse likewise no longer able to endure, stumbled so often, till at length he set both his knees to the ground, which made *Dardan* thinke it better to fight on foot, wherefore he layd to *Amadis*. Knight, our horses are wearie, and faile vs, by reason we cannot doe as we would: and if we were on foot (me thinks) in short time the doubt would be decided. These wordes did *Dardan* speake so loud, as the King and his Lords easily heard them: where *Amadis* seemed ashamed, thus answering. Although it be vnhonourable in a Knight, to forsake his horse so long as he can keepe him: yet since thou thinkest to combat better on foot then on horse back, we will a light and defend thy selfe well, for thou shalt haue need.

Here with they dismounted, assisting each other so furiously, as if they now began the combat, shewing more sharpe cruelty then before they had done: yet *Amadis* ever more kept the advantage, commonly deliuering two strokes for one, which made *Amadis* doe nothing, but defend his enemies blows, who compelled him to stime & squeale, as himselfe pleased, so through once counted him very much requited, blaming him because hee kept not still on horse back. But as he turned here and there, flying the flying sword of *Amadis*, he was driuen vnder the Ladies Scaffold, which made

them cry: *Dardan* can hold out no longer, he is ouer-come if he enter the Combate againe. Yet for all this *Amadis* would not leaue him, but pressed him still with such pursuite, as hee brought him hard by the Queens Scaffold, when she and all the Ladies sayd. Without question, *Dardan* is dead.

At this clamour, *Amadis* vnderstood the voyce of the Damosell of *Denmarke*, and lifting vp his head, espied her standing by the Princeesse *Oriana*: by means whereof, he became so farre beside himselfe, as hee set the point of his sword to the ground, forgetting not onely the daunger wherein he was, but also stood amazed at the sight of his Mistres. Which when *Dardan* beheld, he tooke heart afresh, and charged his enemy so brauely, that if he had longer continued, he would haue gone away Conquerour: but the Damosell of *Denmarke* noting this change, spake out aloud. In an vnhappy houre did the Knight behold any Lady in this company, whereby he hath lost what hee wun of *Dardan*: it is no time now for his heart to faint. These wordes confounded *Amadis* with shame, that gladly could he haue giuen entertainment to death, fearing least his Lady would suspect cowardize in him: For this cause lifting vp his sword, he gaue *Dardan* such a stroke on the Helmet, as made him set both his hands to the ground: then falling vpon him, he rent the Helmet from off his head, & trampled in such sort on him with his feet, as he fell downe like vnder-pressed of his fences. Afterward, taking him by the locks of his haire he beate him on the face with the pummell of his sword, saying. Thou dyest *Dardan*, if thou confesse

esse not the Lady free. When *Dardan* saw himselfe in such estate: he replied: Ah gentle Knight, for Gods sake mercy, kill me not, I will acquit her.

Now approached the King and the other Lords to heare what hee said, and while they stood consentering with him, *Amadis* as yet ashamed of his fault committed, drew backe through the throng: and seeing hee had gotten behinde them all, so couertly as he could he ran toward the Forrest, leaning them all musing at *Dardan*, who filled the empty arie with his complaints. In meane while his beautifull friend came to him, who in sted of giuing comfort for the foile he sustained through her, began to detest and despise him, saying. *Dardan*, hereafter seeke thee some other friend then me, for while I liue, will I neither loue thee, or any other, then the good Knight who valiantly ouercame thee. How now Lady? quoth he, is this the reward of my honor & life aduentured for you? you then are not the friend to *Dardan*, but to fortune, who is no sooner contrary to me, but presently you are mine enemy. Haue I then escaped death by the mercy of my foe, to endure worse then death by the cruelty of my friend? Heauen suffereth me to liue, and yet you repine at my infortunate life: now shal I make knowe to all wo-

men by your example, that ingratitude is no lesse hurtfull to such as exercise it, then to any one offended therewith. Hereupon he tooke his sword, and before it could bee imagined what he meant to do, he smote her head quite from her shoulders: then as a man transported with madnes, staring euery where round about him, declared by his angry countenance, that high and not vulgare, was the enterprise he imbraced in such an extremity.

The King sent his archers to conuay him thence, but ere they came to him, he stroke himselfe so violently to the heart, as the blood spouted in the archers faces, and then he cryed out, saying. Now friend art thou reuenged by my vengeance, and thine enemy satisfied with the despised life thou test me. So falling downe, he deliuered the last signe of his death, whereat each one was confounded with maruaile, as well for the novelty of the case, as pitting the very last words he breathed: but when they remembered his passed life, wholly addicted to ouer-weening folly, they repented this vnfortunate end happened to him, not so much by accident, as the diuine ordernance, which made them sorrow no more, but couerted their thoughts to commend the conquerour.

## CHAP. XV.

How King Liluart caused a Sepulchre to be made for *Dardan* and his friends with an Epitaph in remembrance of their death: and the honor hee did to *Amadis* after he was found and knowne.



For the vnfortunate end of these ill aduised Louers, the King in memory of this strange accident, commanded that in the felds where

they lay dead, should be erected a sumptuous Sepulchre of blacke Marble stone, fashioned like a *Romaine* Obelisque, and thereon was engrauen in the *Brittain* language an Epitaph, declaring the whole

matter as it happened. And when he had knowledge of the conquest (as hereafter the manner how is declared,) his name was placed thereon, and foure great Lyons at the foure corners of the sepulchre, importing the deuise which *Amadis* bare in his Shield.

But now the rumour being appeased, and they returned to the Pallace, he called for the stranger that won the honor of the day: but after long enquiry, no one could certainly tell what was become of him, albeit certaine coming from the wood, reported how they saw a Knight returne from the field thitherward, being alone and making great hast. He that is worthy, saide the King, to beare him company, may imagine himselfe happy enough: for seeing he hath shewed himselfe so braue a combatant, it is impossible but he should be a wise and vertuous Knight. And for no lesse each one reputed him, who vnderstood the iniuries of *Dardan* vnto him, and saw how he requited them with gentleness and courtesie: albeit I make no doubt but he knew right well, that if *Dardan* had got the better, he would not haue pardoned him. Such as you haue heard were the words of king *Lisuart*, but *Oriana*, who day by day expected the arriual of *Amadis*, seeing the incomparable valour of him that fought against *Dardan*, began to suspect that it was he: for (quoth she to the Damofell of *Denmarke*) I am sure he would not send me a fabulous message, and this is the iust time he assured you of his coming. In good sooth Madame, answered the Damofell, you say very true, & which makes me conceiue the better hope, is, that he promised me to ride on a white courser, with the like armes

he had when he combated against King *Abies*: and I remember how the knight who ouercame *Dardan*, had the like horse. But did you, (quoth *Oriana*) take no regard of his Armes? Yea mary did I, replied the Damofell, albeit the cruell strokes receiued thereon, made me hardly perceiue what deuise was there figured: yet me thought the ground was a golden field, and the like I told ye he bare in *Gaule*, with two azured Lions rampant portrayed therein, which being battered all in peeces, he presently made him such another, assuring me to weare no other when he came into this country, and therefore I will doubt no further but it is he. Sweete friend, said *Oriana*, if it be he, either he will shortly come, or send into the Towne, therefore you must be watchfull & diligent to heare thereof. Madame, quoth the Damofell, reserve these matters to my charge. This conference caused *Oriana* to remaine very pensieue, and breathing forth many bitter sighs, she saide: Ah gracious heavens, what fauour haue you done me if this be *Amadis*? now shall I compasse the meanes (better then euer I could) to speake with him.

So attended the Princeesse for tidings from her friend, who returned as he promised to the Damofells Tent, yet was it somewhat late ere he came thither, finding them ready to sit downe to supper. After he had vnarmed himselfe, they told him the misfortune of *Dardan* and his friend, as also the whole circumstance of their deaths, at which he was very much abashed: then falling to their cheer, they begiled the time with sundry pleasant deuises, yet *Amadis* could thinke of nothing else, but how he might make

make his arriual knowne to *Oriana*, wherefore they were no sooner risen from the table, but he tooke *Gandalin* aside, and thus began. My friend, thou must of necessity goe to the Court, and labour secretly to finde the Damofel of *Denmarke*, to whom thou shalt report that I am here, attending to heare from her what I shall do. *Gandalin* with all possible speed departed, and the better to execute his enterprize, he went on foote, when being come to the Pallace, not long had hee stayed till he saw her he looked for, who was as busie as he in the selfesame cause: yet at the first she knew him not, but quickly remembred she had seene him in *Gaule* with *Amadis*, and embracing him, demanded where his Maister was. Why Lady? quoth *Gandalin*, did not you see him to day? it was hee that vanquished proud *Dardan*, and hath with-drawne himselfe to the Forrest to heare from his mistresse, desiring you by me, to let him vnderstand what he must do. Right welcome, said the Damofell, is he into this Country, being the man desired aboue all othes: but my Lady must needs see thee, therefore follow me. If any one aske who thou art, say thou bringest letters to *Oriana* from the Queen of *Scots*, and likewise thou art come to look for *Amadis*, who is arriued heere as thou hast heard: by these meanes thou mayest come to her without heere-after suspicion.

Thus was *Gandalin* conducted into the Queenes chamber, where the Princeesse *Oriana* was, to whom the Damofell of *Denmarke* came, and speaking some-what loude, sayd. Madame, heere is a Squire sent to you from the Queene of *Scots*. *Oriana* weening she had said true, arose to wel-come him: but

when she knew *Gandalin*, the vermillion collour arose in her cheeks and was so ouer-come with ioy, as shee knew not well what countenance to vse: yet *Gandalin* (as well aduised) set his knee to the ground saying. Madame, the Queene my Mistresse heartily salureth you, as the Lady she loueth and esteemeth aboue all other of her Kinred, desiring to heare some newes from you, for here she greetes you with all that she doth know.

Then gaue he her a Letter, which he had feigned, hauing nothing written therein, but the superscription on the out-side: where-upon she went aside with *Gandalin* to one of the Windowes, making shewe to heare the rest of his charge, but she demanded where he had left his master? Madame, answered *Gandalin*, he with-drew himselfe into the Forrest, so soone as he had conquered *Dardan*. Good friend, said *Oriana*, tell me, by the faith thou bearest to him, how he fareth? Euen so (saide Princeesse) quoth *Gandalin*, as the man that is altogether yours, he liueth onely by remembrance of you, and yet suffereth such anguish in his soule as neuer Knight endured: by the onely feare he susteineth least hee should not be yours: mistrusting his owne deserts for so high a seruice. His greatest hope is in your princely kindnesse, and knowing him so long, as alowhat he is, that you will not forget him. Wherefore, I beseech yee Madame, take compassion on him, appoint a meeting together, then resolue him, make me a happie messenger, and discharge your selfe of your deuoir: for hitherto hath hee endured such sorrow, as no man is able to suffer the like. Often haue I seene him (thinking on you) so farre



farre beyond himselfe, as he hath fallen downe dead in (a manner) before mee, so that I haue imagined (noring the abundance of his teares) his poore heart to be distilled into water, through the conduits of his eyes. If he should die ye offered him great wrong: for he is yours, & easily can ye not finde another so worthy of you. Nor need you doubt, but if you graunt the houre of lengthning his life, he will surpasse in Chiuallrie the best Knight that euer bare Armes: wherein if he be happy by his vertue, yet hath he mishap to counterpoise the same, onely through the passions he endureth for you. If now you will not deigne to afford him remedy, much better had it beene for him, that fortune had let him preish in the sea, to the mercy whereof in his cradle coffin he was committed: then after his preseruati- on by such strange meanes, to suffer him dye by a worse shipwrack then the other. But if his small starres wil not diuert this danger, happy might he haue accounted himselfe, if he had neuer come to the knowledge of his parents, whose griefe likewise he greatly increaseth, to see him so consume & dye before his day, being vnable to diuine or vnderstand the cause thereof.

*Gandalin* all this while accompanied his words with such teares, and often among breathed forth so many mournfull sighes, as would haue enforced the very Rocks to weep: but perceiuing *Oriana* was touched to the quicke, he began againe in this manner. Ah, gentle Madame, consent not to the death of such a Seruant of yours, and so good a Maister of mine: for beside the common losse which will be great, in you a-

lone shall consist the fault, moreouer you shall maculate that perfect beautie, with the high condemned staine of crueltie and ingratitude. Here did he knit vp his perswasion, attending an answere from the Princessse, but shee was not able to deliuer one word, so vehemently was her heart surprized and ouer-come: and holding downe her head, let fall wonderfull streames of teares downe her daintie cheekes, which enforced her to turne on the other side, least she should be discried: then when as *Gandalin* would haue begun againe, she stayed him with a piercing sigh, saying. Ah, my friend, I pray thee say no more, vnlesse thou be willing to see me die here presently. Now stood shee silent a prettie while, often wringing and straining her fingers with griefe, then setting apart all dissimulation, she softly thus spake. The assurance thou giuest me of thy masters loue, is highly pleasing and agreeable to me: but the passion thou sayest he endureth, tormenteth me to the very death, so that I feeble both his paine & mine owne. Ah God, let me not be the occasion of death, to a man so high and precious of desert as hee is, rather let me worke mine owne death, for if he die, I may not liue one houre. Thou art come to tell me his painefull trauaile, & now thou mayest goe to let him vnderstand mine, which if thou knewest so well as thou doest thy maisters, instead of blaming me with crueltie, thou wouldst rather iudge me vnfortunate, and if I vse any crueltie, it is against my selfe, whom I haue depriued of rest, pleasure, and well-neere life it selfe. The lesse succour can I giue to mine owne distresse, because (as it often happeneth

to our sects, when thinking to draw neere such as we desire, we are furthest off, and seeking for a harbour of contentment, glaunce into a place of torment and vexation: so falleth it out with mee by thy maister, whom fortune hath euer kept mee farthest from, but God knowes my good wil hath alway beene with him: and gladly would I prouide for his griefs and mine owne, if I were able to compass the meanes.

Doe then, Madame, what you may, answered *Gandalin*, if you loue him (as I am sure he doth you) and begin at this instant to let him know how hee shall behaue himselfe in this Countrey. *Oriana* then shewed him a Garden, which was vnder the window where they talked, saying. Returne to thy maister, and tell him, that this night he must secretly come to the place thou seest, & remember this with all, how the chamber (vnder where we stand) is the same that *Mabius* and I lodge in, and there is a crosse barred window netre the ground, where-through we may easily discerne ech other, and talk together: for his Cozin is acquainted with mine affaires, nor is it necessarie they should bee concealed from her. Then taking a costly Ring off her finger, shee thus proceeded. Deliuer him this token from mee, as the onely Iewell I most esteem, and ere thou goest thou shalt see the Princessse *Mabius*, who is so wise and discrete, as she will easily vnderstand thee: yet thou must say some what loud to her, that thou hast brought her tydings from her mother. Here-upon *Oriana* called her to talke with the Squire, whom the Queene of Scots (her mother) had sent to her: but when she saw it was *Gandalin*, she then suspected

how matters went: wherefore *Oriana* went to the Queene, leaving them in deepe talke together. In meane while the Queene demaunded of her daughter, if the Gentleman were to returne shortly, or no: For, quoth she, I would send a token to the Queene of Scots by him. Madame, answered *Oriana*, the chiefe cause of his coming into this Countrey, was to seeke for the good Knight *Amadis*, Son to the King of Gaule, of whom you haue heard such famous report. And where is he? said the Queen. The Squire saith, quoth *Oriana*, it is more then ten moneths since hee heard that he was heere, and now he maruaileth to misse of him in this Court. Now trust me, answered the Queene, right glad would I be, to see so good a Knight in the Kings company, for it would be a great comfort to him many wayes hauing to deale with so many Countreys: wherefore I assure ye, if he doe come hither, hee shall finde here such honourable entertainment, as hee shall haue no cause to depart in haste. Of this Prowesse Madame, replied *Oriana*, I know little, but what common bruit hath blazed abroad: but heereof I am certaine, how hee was one of the most braue yong Gentle-men that euer I saw, when in the King of Scots Court he serued *Mabius* and me. All this while *Mabius* continued with *Gandalin*, enquiring if his master were as yet arrived. Yea Madame, answered *Gandalin*, the same was he that vanquished *Dardanus*, and expresse charge hee gave me to saue you on his behalfe. The name of Heaven be for euer praised, quoth shee, hauing proferred our Kinsman from such exceeding danger, and now sent him hither so honourably. Ah Madame, said

said *Gandalin*, hee were happy indeed, if the force of loue made him not in worse case then dead: for Gods sake therefore doe you assist him, being thus fully perswaded, that if he finde no ease to cure his afflictions, you shall loose the best Knight in the world, and the vp-holder of your fathers fame. He may be well assured, answered *Mabila*, how hee cannot with greater desire employ mee, then I haue to doe him pleasure: and will him not to faile in what the Princeesse hath commanded him: as for thy selfe, being iudged to come from the Queene, my mother, thou mayest come and speak with vs at all times as need shall require.

*Gandalin* tooke his leaue for that time, returning toward *Amadis*, who attended the answere of life or death, and into such debilitie was he brought by these extreame as hee had scant force enough to support himselfe: for the short fight hee had of his Ladie at the Combate, encreased such a desire in him to see her at more libertie, as euery houre seemed to him longer then a yeare. When hee saw that *Gandalin* was returned, in hope of happy newes, hee came and embraced him, not daring to demaund any thing of him, fearing least matters should not fall out to his contentation: but *Gandalin* with a cheerfull countenance, told him that he brought no sadde tydings, and rushing into the matter at first, said. My Lord, God make yee as constant, as you haue cause to be content, for if you haue that vertue, you are the most happy and accomplished Knight in the world.ouerwhelmed with ioy, *Amadis* caught him in his armes, demaunding what he had done, scene, and heard? I haue

scene and heard, answered *Gandalin* the felicities of Paradise, and know that they are prouided for you, if you hinder it not your selfe. Ah *Gandalin*, quoth *Amadis*, ielt not with me, but tell me the very trueth. Then *Gandalin* declared word by word, how euery thing happened, first of the counterfeit Letter, and next the appointed meeting at the window: and (by the way) reported some part of his owne speeches, moouing a change of countenance in *Oriana*, then her answere, euen to the conclusion before rehearsed: likewise how he talked with *Mabila*, and how willing she was to assist him with her vttermoost habilitie. *Amadis* was so fed with content by these reports, that hee made him rehearse one thing ten times, and I cannot tell which of them was most affectionate: either *Gandalin* in reporting, or *Amadis* in hearing, for both the one and the other seemed insatiable, in the end *Amadis* thus spake.

My faithfull Companion, I thought my self altogether indebted to thy Father, who saued me from the daunger of drowning in the Sea, but I confesse, that duty belongs more necessarily to thee: because (by thy diligence and discretion) thou hast giuen me a better life then he preserved. But tell me now, didst thou take good marke of the place to which she commuanded me? Assure your selfe thereof, quoth *Gandalin*. for she her self shewed it me. Ah God, sayd *Amadis*, how shall I deserue the great good she doth for me? Away from me now all sorrowe and complaining. Yet this is not all my Lord, quoth *Gandalin*, See here a token she hath sent ye, as a testimonie of her honourable loue to

to you: so he gaue him the Ring which came from *Oriana*, and after he had long beheld it, kissing it a thousand times, put it on his finger, saying. Faire Ring, that hast beene so happy, as to be caried and accounted deere by the most accomplished creature in the world, albeit thou be now in a place of much inferiour honor yet hast thou not changed thy mistresse, for both thou and I are hers, and she doth compass my heart with greater force, then thou canst possibly binde in my finger. Let vs leaue this talk, answered *Gandalin*, and returne to the Damosels, who tarry for vs in the Tent: but you must dissemble conningly, for if they see you altered from your wonted mellancholie. it may be some hinderance to your determination.

So they brake off communication, and went into the Pauillion, where *Amadis* (notwithstanding) *Gandalins* counsell) could not but shew himselfe pleasantly disposed, whereat the Damosels were verie glad, because such behauiour, better becomed him then his former peniuenes.

When the houre of rest was come, each one went to his accustomed lodging, and soone after *Amadis* seeing the time commodious for his enterprise, arose and found *Gandalin*, who had already prepared for their iourney: wherefore being armed, they mounted on horse-backe, taking the most conuenient way for their purpose to the Towne. When they came to the Garden, which *Oriana* had before shewed *Gandalin*, they alighted, and tied their horses at a tuft of trees nere adioyning, afterward they went through a hole which a water-course had made in the Garden wall, and approached the win-

dow where *Oriana* lay: faire and softly did *Amadis* knock thereon with his finger, she not yet sleeping who expected his comming, and when she heard the louing signall of her friend, she awaked *Mabila*, saying. Sweete sister, I thinke your cosin knocketh at the window. My cosin? answered *Mabila*, it may be so, but you haue greater intrest in him then I, or all other of his linage together. *Mabila* presently arose, and lighted a waxe taper which she had hid for the nonce, when *Oriana* likewise was got out of bed, they came together and opened the casement, where they found *Amadis* no more attending then hee was attended. If they were then well pleased, it were folly to inquire, for all the contentments in the world, might not be compared to the ioy of seeing each other. And without question, they had two inducing reasons thereto, for beside the nourishment they receiued together in their younger yeeres, and their first amity, continued by the remembrance and good opinion they had of each other: their beauty and perfections were so correspondent, as if they had neuer scene one another till that very instant, yet had they cause enough to loue together. *Oriana* had on such braue attire becomming the night, as set the heart of her loue on fire, for vnder a fine & dainty white frontlet, appeared the rarest golden tresses of haire that euer nature made, and about her shoulders she had a mantle of figured cloth of gold, imbroidered all ouer with rich and costly flowrets, as it might becomed the greatest Maiestie in the world. And for her selfe, a thing more faire was impossible to be found, the inward conceits of her present comfort, de-

ked her face with such a heauenly beauty, as it seemed that nature in pride of her art, made this piece to excell all other in perfection. I will leaue you then to consider on the iudgement of *Amadis*, who (when she was nothing so glorious in fairenes) thought her worthy the loue of the best Knight in the world: now if he stood mute, blame him not, hauing the only iewell of his heart before him, and therefore she to breake off this silence, first spake in this manner. My Lord, if I haue giuen you the liberty (contrary to my duty and custome) to see me in this place at an houre so vnfitting, you must commit the offence to the security, which our former nurturing together loyally promised, and likewise to the good opinion of your great vertues since that time encreased: which hath conquered no lesse fauour in me, then honor and renoune in all other places. *Amadis* to auoide further silence, thought it better to let his speeches passe at aduenture, then (by holding his peace) to be reputed vnworthy this happines, or not so feruently touched with loue as she was, to exclude all which doubts, he thus replied. Madame, I account my selfe not so much fauoured by fortune in any thing else, as honored at my first entrance into your seruice, euen the very highest tipe of grace she could afford me: nor do I feele my selfe so beholding to my vertues, as I rest double bound to the that report so wel of me. But when both these benefits shall be excluded, yet is my loue and seruice to you so affectionate, as they can deserue no lesse then this secret gentleness: and when you shall allow me more ample courtesie, it may command a stricter bond of duty, but not affection,

for that is already so substantially grounded, that the vttermost good you can do me, is neither able to augment it, or the sharpest vnkindnes diminish it. I know not whether it be seemely for a man, to confesse the extremities he hath infinite times endured by this passion, the very least griefe I receiued, hath bene the losse of rest, and banishment of sleepe from mine eyes: and yet to afflicte me with greater torment, my spirit hath scene in a dreame what it vncessantly desired. How many times hath it happened to me, in thinking on you to be so confounded, that such as haue scene me, reputed me not only deprived of common sense, but euen of very life it selfe? What woman, what child well beaten, hath euer powred forth so many teares, as I poore Knight haue done? yea my very chiefest enterprises haue I sprinkled withall for your sake: not as feeling my selfe a happy subiect in loue, but rather too little merit of my selfe, and much lesse hope. This fauour proceeding from you in deigning to heare me, is greater then euer I durst hope for, and so farre doth it surmount my passions, as I cannot expresse the least part of my ioy: my tongue likewise seemeth as vnprofitable & ignorant of his office, hauing bin so long from seruing me to you. But aboue all, this impuissance in speech, shall on my behalfe testifie to you, what all the words in the world cannot deliuer with sufficient truth: for as all other beauty in comparison of yours is nothing, so before mine affection, all the other habilities of my soule vanish away, and become of no reckoning. Will you the (good madame) with your courtesie supply my insufficiencie, and (with pittie) giue me both life and

and my selfe: and conferue that which else cannot be, vnlesse it be yours onely. These words vttered *Amadis* with such interruption of sighes and teares, as witnessed he had no intent of feigning, but rather knew how to suffer then speake: wherewith *Oriana* moued to compassion, thus answered. I make no doubt (deere friend) but you loue me, in respect of the pains you haue taken for me, as also by what you haue now tolde me: and though I should haue no signe thereof by speech or ought else, yet am I content to beleue, because my heart hath no other desire, but heerein conceiue the greatest contentment. And yet the torment I see you in with impacience, troubleth my quiet, for you being assured by sufficient proues, and especially this, that I loue ye: me thinks you should haue no further cause of so seuerer affliction, but rather ought to temper your paines, in that (through the vnion of our spirits) I feele no lesse then you do your selfe. If you will not appease them for your owne sake, I pray ye let it be done for mine, the rather, that we may the oftner meete (if you please) publicly: when such sadnes will but discover, what wee most willingly would keepe vnknowne, whereby may arise two great inconueniences, and be a meane to hinder the thing we chiefest desire. Sweete Lady answered *Amadis*, I haue such felicitie in seeing and hearing you, as wanting strength enough to vnderprop the burden of so especiall contentation: I am faine to fall downe vnder it, experimenting no lesse the paine of not accustomed pleasure, then the other beside of continuall pensiuenes, which makes me wonder that I cannot dye heere in this

solace. If then I haue offended you by this transportation, pardon it in your owne selfe, who brought me to this happy misfortune, and likewise gaue me this hurtfull medicine: suffer me then yet longer to vse it, that in the assurance of your grace, I may by little and little learne to support it, and attaine the knowledge of liuing content: excusing my apprenticeshood in this felicity, being yet scant skilfull enough how to vse it. Loue is sickness, and be it fauourable or contrary, it cannot be without passion, working the like affect in other, which you reprove in me. Well haue you said my friend, answered *Oriana*, how you are as yet but an Apprentice: and so you shew very well by your words, prouing that loue cannot be without passion. I hope to see the time, when you (attaining greater and more perfect knowledge therein, then yet you haue) shall be in higher tranquillity of minde, which (it may be) you thinke cannot be had in this world. Nor shall it not happen to you by admiration of that which now you most loue, and is likewise offarre more lesse account: but by the fruition of the thing wherein felicity consisteth, the knowledge whereof vniteth and listeth the spirits so high as heauen. And albeit I am yet so yong in yeeres and discretion, as I cannot be exempt from the ill you complaine on: yet am I not vnprovided of desire to hasten the time, when we shall liue together merry & contented. Ah Madame, said *Amadis*, the hope of that happy day, shall make mee passe this mournfull life in patience, supporting for your front my inward paines so couertly as I can, & bearing the outward with what courage possible I may: but I beseech

ye do me the fauour, as to tell mee when it will be. Well perceiued *Oriana*, that he had not thorowly vnderstood her meaning, wherefore in smiling she said. It is already begun, but the da ling of your eyes will not let you see it. Heere-with *Amadis* became very pensieue, holding his eyes stedfastly fixed on her, and she to change his sadnes, tooke him by the hand thorow the window: which *Amadis* kissed a thousand times, without any word passing betweene them, and *Mabilia* noting it, she came to them saying. Gentles you forgot your selues. *Amadis* lifting vp his head, courteously saluted her, she doing the like to him, and after sundry speeches of wellcome, as also how long they desired to see him: *Mabilia* demâded, what length of time he intended to stay in the Court. So long as it shall please Madame *Oriana*, answered *Amadis*. It must be then continually, quoth *Oriana*, and you shall grant it if the King request it. Sweete Madame, answered *Amadis*, if it please his Maieftie so much to honor me, I will

obey both him and you: yet will I dissemble strangenes awhile. All the better, replied *Mabilia*, and in the meane time I pray ye visit vs often. Longer they would haue continued in talke, but *Gandalin* gaue them warning how the day appeared, wherefore he said to *Amadis*. My Lord, me thinks you are importunate, but then you must needs accuse the day. *Amadis* gaue no eare to him, for he proceeded on still with his deuise: but *Oriana* perceiuing *Gandalin* said true, thus spake to *Amadis*. Now goe my Lord if you please, for it is time, & forget not your promise. Then taking her by the hand, and kissing it, he went to horse-backe, returning to the wood where he left the Damofels, who had by entreaty earnestly perswaded him, to goe deliuer their cosin that the King held captiue, vntill such time shee presented her Champion, as you haue heard: wherefore after they had rested till morning, they returned to the Towne, in the greatest fauour and expectation of the world.

## CHAP. XVI.

*How Amadis made himselfe knowne to King Lisuarte, as also the Princes and Lords of his Court, of whom he was honorably receiued and feasted.*



Early the next morning, *Amadis* armed himselfe, and mounting on horse backe, rode presently to the Towne accompanied with the two Damofels: where being arriued, they brought him to their cosins lodging, when the good Lady knowing her worthy châpion, falling on her knees before him, sayd My

Lord, all the goods I haue you gaue me, for of you I hold them and no other, dispose therefore of them as you please: but *Amadis* brake her off in this maner. Come Lady, let vs goe before the King, to the end he may acquit you, and I returne where vrgent affaires call me: so taking off his Helmet, hee rode on to the Pallace with the three Ladyes. The people knowing him

him to be the man that ouer-came *Dardan* made such thronging in the streetes to see him, as the king was giuen to vnderstand thereof: and he reioycing at his comming, honored him so much, as he came to meete and receiue him on the way, thus speaking to him. Wor thy knight, hither are you so welcome, as may be deuised, because we haue beene very desirous to see you. *Amadis* noting this gracious entertainment, setting his knee to the ground, thus answered. The God of Heauen giue your Maieftie a long and happie life: then the king taking him by the hand, caused him to arise, saying. Right glad am I to haue knowledge of you, being a knight of so excellent deseruing: these wordes enforced *Amadis* to blush, yet he replied in this manner. My Lord, to desire the Ladyes discharge whom you caused to be detained, I am bold to come before your Highnesse: and seeing she hath answered the Law according to your appointment, (hereafter) I hope she may enjoy her libertie: yet till this present, she knew not who maintained her quarrell against *Dardan*.

While the King & *Amadis* thus conferred together, a great number of people gathered about the; some commending his beautie, other his gallant youth, and all in generall his famous Chiuallrie: in that hee being so young, had the power to vanquish *Dardan*, who was redoubted & feared through all *Brittaine*. By this time, sundry speeches past betweene him and the King, where-among he dissembled his speedie departure, to provoke a desire in him to stay him, and thus spake *Amadis*.

Dread Lord, seeing the Ladie is free, I desire leaue for my returne

again: but if in ought I may doe your Maieftie any seruice, I am the man readie to bee commaunded: and you the Prince whom most I desire to honour. Good Friend, quoth the King, your departure must not be so soone, except you delight to displease me. God forbid, answered *Amadis*, in respect my endeuour is altogether to obey you. Doe you thinke, sayd the King, it is any obedience, if I may not entreat a longer stay? In sooth, my Lord, quoth *Amadis*, you may and shall command, for in greater matters then this I will not offend ye. Goe then and vn-arme you, replied the King; and speaking these wordes, him-selfe tooke him by the hand conducting him to a sumptuous chamber, where he left him to take some refectiō, with *Arban* King of *Norgalles*, and the Duke of *Gloucester*, whom he commanded to keepe him companie: for King *Lisuart* was a Prince, that especially fauoured and honoured strange Knights. Hauing left *Amadis* thus worthily accompanied, he went to the Queene, and tolde her in what manner hee had stayed the good Knight who ouercame *Dardan*. But doe yee (my Lord, quoth she) know his name? No verily, answered the King, for in respect of the promise I made him I durst not demaund that question of him. It may be, sayd the Queen, he is the Sonne to King *Perion* of *Gaule*. I would it might fall out so well, answered the King. Doe you know, quoth the Queene, who may put vs out of this doubt? euen the Squire that talked with *Mabilia*, who came to search him in your Court, and said, how hee was aduertised of his arriual in this Countrey long before. Immediately the King caused *Gandalin* to

be called, and with-out declaring any thing to him, thus spake: Follow me, for I must shew a Knight to thee, that I may bee resolu'd if thou know him or no. *Gandalin* attended on the King, entring the chamber where *Amadis* was, and *Gandalin* viewing him very earnestly, feigned to haue scene him long-time since, then setting his knee to the ground, sayd. Ah my Lord, great trauaile haue I endured to finde you, since I departed from the *Scottish* Court. *Gandalin*, my good friend, right heartily art thou will-come to mee, what newes doest thou bring? None but good, my Lord, answered *Gandalin*, all your noble Friendes are in perfect health, commending themselves to your Excellencie, but hence-forth Sir, you must con-ceale your selfe no longer: then turning to the King he thus proceeded. Mightie King, hee that hath beene so long time vnknown, is this braue Prince, the famous *Amadis*, Sonne to the inuincible king *Perion* of *Gaule*: and then came his Father to vnderstand so much, when he slewe in combate the puissant King *Abies* of *Ireland*, by meanes whereof he recouered his Realme which was well-neere lost. By these deuises was *Amadis* discouered, and better wel-comm'd then before: for till the he was not knowne, but through his famous deedes, the renowne whereof was euery-where blazed abroad, and now was hee so well honoured for his vertue as his Noblenesse required. So spent they the whole day in honourable Feasting, vntill such time as each one with-drew himselfe, when king *Lisuart* commanded the King of *Norgalles*, that he should lodge in *Amadis* chamber: afterward when they were alone,

to sound his minde, & vnderstand by all meanes possible, if he would consent to remaine in his seruice. Thus leauing them together, hee returned to the Queene, and to her thus spake. Madame, hardly shall I cause *Amadis* to stay (as mine) nor can I tell which way to compasse it, albeit, I neuer had greater desire to any Gentle-man of long time, for the high account is helde of him, would cause mee to bee much more feared and redoubted. My Lord, quoth the Queene, graunt him any thing he shall demaund, and doe your selfe present him what you imagine will best please him. Hee requesteth nothing of me, replied the king, for if he did, I would consent thereto more willingly then he could desire. Me-thinks it were good, sayd the Queene, to entreat him first, by some other of our Court, & if they cannot preuaile, will him to come see mee, your daughter, and our Cozin *Mabila*: they likewise shall solícite the matter, for they knew him when hee serued them as a Squire. Then shall we let him vnderstand, how all the Knights here are yours, and none but thinks him-selfe honoured thereby: him will we desire to be one of the Company, that you may enioy his seruice when need shall require. This will be a good meane, answered the king to procure his stay, and if he will not be wonne by you, we may well iudge him of lesse ciuility the Chiuallry. Now because it waxed some-what late, the King bade his Queene good-night, & went to his Chamber. On the other-side, the king of *Norgalles* perswaded his new-come guest, that he would abide in the Court of king *Lisuart*: but *Amadis* could so cunningly dis-

semble,

that he altogether disguised the chiefe point of his desire, and might not by all these entreaties be wonne. When he perceiued he laboured in vaine, on the Morrow-morning hee brought him to the king, of whom *Amadis* made offer to take his leaue: But the king answered him in this manner. My good friend, you should haue done me pleasure not to depart so soone, yet can I not constraine ye to tarrie against your will, but my Queene would gladly see you before your departure. Nor will I goe my Lord, answered *Amadis*, before I haue done my durie to her: where-upon taking him by the hand, he brought him into her Chamber, and thus spake to her. See heere, Madam, king *Perions* Sonne of *Gaule*, who is come to salute you before his departure. In sooth my Lord, answered the Queene, he doth mee great honour, and he is very heartily wel-come hither.

Then *Amadis* stepping to her, fell on his knee to kisse her hand, but she caused him to rise and sit downe by her: when the king perceiuing they would enter into further talke, with drew himselfe to discourse with his knights, while they conferred together. In mean while the Queene courteously entertained *Amadis*, but the other Ladies and Gentle-women, who had heard such fame of his beautie and excellent perfections, beganne to eye him very diligently, maruailing that Nature had so enriched him, with the onely thing they most desired. Now knew *Amadis* by their countenances what iudgement they held of him, yet durst he not turne his head aside, fearing least seeing his *Oriana*, by some sudden mutation, hee might

reueale what carefully he couerted to hide. And as he continued in this perplexitie, the Princesse *Mabila* came and did him reuerence, where-upon the Queene (the better to compasse her intent) called her daughter, who dissembled as if she scant knew him, and thus shee spake to her. Faire daughter, remember you not the sonne of king *Perion* of *Gaule*, who serued you well while he was your Squire, and yet may doe (if it please him) now he is a Knight? in sooth, you must al assist me in desiring him to grant mee one request. And know ye what it is? quoth she to *Amadis*, the king earnestly entreateth you to remaine in his Court, and yet as I vnderstand, you haue no wil to asford him so samll a fauor. We shall see anon, if Ladies hold greater Priuiledge in knights, then men doe, therefore wee all ioyne together in one suite, that you would be knight to my daughter and my self, & likewise to whom them you see in this faire cōpanie. And if you will doe so much for vs, you shall deliuer vs from seeking support in any other, who happily cannot be so agreeable to vs: for wel we know if you be our knight, we shall surpasse all them that attend on the king. The Ladies were before aduertised, what they should doe in this case, wherefore they flocked about him altogether, and with signes of earnest Supplication, confirmed the Queenes request: especially *Oriana*, who gaue him a signe that he should consent, but very wisely dissembled it, although he had no other desire in the world: wherefore the Queene seeing him so slow in answering, as if she would haue pressed him thereto, said. Well, Sir *Amadis*, what? shall we be denyed? Madame, replied



plied *Amadis*, what is he that dare do otherwise, then grant your will and these Ladies present, seeing you are the most honorable Queen of the world, and they likewise deserve the highest point of service? therefore madame, by your commandment and the Princess *Oriana*, as also these other Ladies who are loth to be denied, I am content to tarry with you; yet vnder this condition, that I will doe nothing but for you onely, and if I accomplish any service for the King, it shall be yours and none of his. Then as our Champion, answered the Queene, all we accept you: & these glad tidings she soone sent to the King, who was so highly pleased therewith, that he commanded the King of *Norwales* to goe and beare him company, and himselfe for ioy went presently to him, whē taking him in his armes, he sayd. Gentle Knight, right glad am I of your consent to the Queene, and for my part be you well assured, that my desire is to entreat you according to your deserts. *Amadis* on his knee humble thanked him, albeit he only staied by the commandment of *Oriana*, and no such other matter as he feigned to the Queene.

For this time the author leaueth *Amadis*, returning where he left the Prince *Galaor*, who being departed from the Duke of *Brytanyes* Castle, where the villainous Dwarfie unhappily discovered him: all that day he wandered in the Forrest of *Arisida*, not meeting any one to direct him a more ready way, yet toward euening, he saw a Squire come toward him, mounted on a right good Courser. Now had *Galaor* receiued a certaine wound, by one of the three Knights that assailed him as you haue heard, which

by reason of dallying with his new friend the night past, began to fester and ranckle very much, and feeling himselfe not halfe currant, he said to the Squire. My friend, knowest thou where I may finde cure for a small wound I haue? What if I do? answered the Squire, yet will I not company any such coward as thou art, because it were to my shame and discredit if I should. Enough of that, said *Galaor*, tell mee where I may finde helpe for my wound? Rather, quoth the Squire, would I seeke one to giue thee another. Shew me the way, answered *Galaor*, and I will adventure what thou fearest me withall, I may chuse, said the Squire, except I list. Nay thou shalt do it, quoth *Galaor*, by friendship or force. By force, replied the Squire, thinkest thou I will do any thing for so bad and false a Knight as thou art? Whē *Galaor* heard him speake so imperiously, he drew his sword, making shew as if he would smite off his head, saying. Villaine thou shalt conduct me, else will I send thy soule to all the Deuils. The Squire being affraid, thus answered. Seeing thou enforcest me, I will bring thee to a place where thy folly shall be chastised, and my outrage reuenged. Heere-with he rode before, leauing the right way, *Galaor* following some distance behinde him, and by time they had ridden the length of a mile, they came to a Fortresse seated in a pleasant vally, brauely enuironed about with trees: the Squire the pointing him to the place, said. Now mayst thou let me goe, for here I hope will be reuenged the iniury thou hast done me. Go thy way to al the Deuils, replied *Galaor*, for I haue enough of thy company. Scant wilt thou like my conducting, said the Squire, before

before thou departest from this castell: wherewith he turned bridle and away, but *Galaor* followed the path that guided to the Castle, which in his iudgement was but newly edified, and being come to the gate, he saw within a Knight armed mounted on horsebacke, attended on by siue halberders, provided to forbid entrance into the Castle: who comming to him, demanded if he were the man that abused their Squire. I know not, answered *Galaor*, whether he be your Squire or no, but hither am I come by the conduct of a varlet, the most audacious rogue that euer I knew, It may be so, replied the Knight of the Castell: but what would you haue in this place? Sir, quoth *Galaor*, I am sore wounded, and seeke for one to giue me helpe. Enter then, said the Knight. *Galaor* rode in, but presently the Knight & his souldiers very fiercely assailed him, yet the first that came before him, thinking to strike at his head with his halberd, was folowed so neer, as *Galaor* snatched his weapon out of his hand, giuing the Knight such a wound therewith, that he fell down dead. Then entring among the other, he gaue them so many rough and sharpe charges, as in the end three of them were slaine outright, the other two fled so fast as they could into the Castle: and *Galaor* would haue pursued them, but that his Squire cryed to him: My Lord take your Armes, for within mee thinkes I heare a great rumour of people, my selfe will take this hatchet to assist ye if ye stand in need: and although I am vnworthy the order of Chivalry, yet will I defend my Lord to my vttermost hability: so threw he downe the hatchet, taking vp a halberd and a Shield belonging to one of them

that were slaine. Assure thy selfe, answered *Galaor*, so soone as I finde him that gaue me Knight-hood, thou shalt for thy forwardnes likewise haue thine. So passing further, they saw two other armed Knights come forth, and ten Souldiers with them, who were brought out at the gate by the other that fled away. Now was the Squire that conducted *Galaor* to this Castle, standing shewing himselfe at one of the casements, and he cryed aloud to this fresh supply. Kill him, kill him, but saue his horse to do me service. *Galaor* looking vp, presently knew him, at whose words his heart was so enraged, that he fiercely ran to meete the new assaylants: in which encounter their Launces brake, especially *Galaor* on him that gaue the first charge, as he made him sure enough from ouer bearing armes afterward. The scolding hand to sword aduanced himselfe to the other, deliuering him so sound a greeting, that he tumbled from his horse with his heeles vpward: and turning to the halberders on foot, he saw his Squire had dispatched two of them, wherefore to hartten him the more, he thus cryed to him. My friend thou hast begun very well, not one of the rest shall escape vs, because such villaines are vnworthy to liue. Whē the Squire that was in the window saw this bloody confict, he hastily ranne vp a ladder into a high Tower, crying out so loud as he could in this manner. My Lord, arme yout selfe vnlesse you meane to be slaine. By chance *Galaor* vnderstood him, whereupon he stepped aside to behold what should ensue, whē presently he saw a Knight come forth armed, and one bringing a horse for him ready to mount: but *Galaor* stepping betwene, laid hand on the

the bridle, giuing these speeches to the Knight. Another time Sir, learne to mount your horse sooner, for I haue occasiō to vse this horse, & mean to keep him til you can get him from me. Greatly astonied was the knight when he heard him, because all this while he had not seen him, wherefore he returned this answer. Are you he that haue slaine my two Nephewes, & the other heere in the Castle? I know not who you aske for, replied *Galaor*, but this I can assure ye, how I found here the most disloyall & bad minded people, that euer I delt withal. I tel thee, said the Knight, they whō thou hast slaine were better then thou art, & deerely shalt thou pay for thy boldenes. Heerewith they began a fierce and cruell combate on foot, for the Knight of the Castle was a man of great valour, and such as had seene this dangerous fight, would haue maruailed that they could endure halfe so many blows. Yet in the end, the Knight found himselfe too weake for *Galaor*, wherefore he thought to saue himselfe by flight: but he was followed so neere, as hauing entered a porch, he was constrained to leap out at a window, and falling on a great heape of stones, with weight of his armour brake his neck. When *Galaor* saw his desparate end, hee returned backe cursing the Castle & the wicked inhabitants, and passing by a chamber, he heard a very dolefull voice crying. Ah my Lord, leaue me not to suffer any more. *Galaor* stepping neere, said. Open the dore then. Ah Sir, I cannot, answered the voice, for I am tied with a strong chaine. By these words, *Galaor* knew well it was some prisoner, wherefore he ranne against the dore with his foote so strongly, that he made it flye from

off the hindges, & entring, beheld a faire Damofell tied by the neck with a great chaine, who thus spake to *Galaor*. Alas my Lord, what is become of the maister of this Castle and his company? They be all dead, quoth he, for coming hither to seeke cure for a wound I receiued in fight, they caused me to enter, and afterward set vpon me: but by the helpe of God I haue so well defended my selfe, as they shall neuer doe more harme to any liuing body. Heauen be praised, answered the Damofell, for your happy successe, and leaue me not in this misery, for being deliuered, right soone shall I make whole and found your wounds. Presētly did *Galaor* breake the chaine, and the Damofel tooke out of a cōfer two little bottles, with other pretious things belonging to the Lord of the Castle, and so came downe together into the Court: where *Galaor* perceiued how the first Knight hee iousted withall was not yet dead, but trauiailing to his end, wherefore to let him languish no longer, he so trāpled on his brest with his horse feete, as quickly his soule forsooke the body, afterward they rode away deuising on many matters.

This Damofell was wise, well gouerned, & of good grace, whereby she could so queintly answer & intreate *Galaor*, that he became highly enamoured of her: and being able to endure no longer this kindled fire of affection, thought good to make some prooffe if shee would loue him, whereupon hee thus began. You know (faire Damofell and my friend) that I haue deliuered you from prison, but in giuing you liberty, I am become my selfe captiue, and brought into great danger vnlesse you helpe me.

You

You may be well assured my Lord, quoth she, that the matter were verie difficult, wherein I would not obey you, standing so deeply bounden to you as I do: for otherwife I might be reckoned among the most ingratefull women of the world, considering the misery you so lately deliuered me from, and therefore doe I remaine at your disposition. In these familiar conferences they proceeded so far, as the execution of this hotte loue soone after followed, tasting together the benefit of such content, as other may do the like that haue so good fortune: & thus merily they passe this night, in the Pavilion of certaine Hunturs they met withal in the Forrest. So *Galaor* receiued by this Damofell, ease of his new wound loue had made, & cure of the other he got in fight.

For certain daies they remained in this wood, during which time the damofel told him, how she was daughter to *Theobald* the Fleming, not long since Countrey of *Clare* by the gift of King *Ismaert*, and a Lady whom he had often entreated as his friend. But one day, quoth she, being with my mother in a Monastery not far hence, the Lord of this Castle (whom you haue slaine) demanded me in mariage, and because my parents misliked thereof, by reason of his vngracious behaviour: he watched a day when I was sporting among other Damofels, from whom he forcibly caried me away, furiously thrusting me in-

to the prison where ye found me, saying. Be well assured Damofell, that seeing thou hast disdained to match with me in mariage, and made so little account of my great renowne: while thou liuest thou shalt not depart hence, til thy mother and the rest of thy kindred come entreate me to take thee as my wife. Perceiuing how seuerely he was bent against me, I set downe my rest on patient hope, thinking it better for a time to endure that captivity, then by making him my husband suffer a worse. Great reason had ye therein, answered *Galaor*, but tell me now I pray ye, at parting hence what shall become of you? for I am constrained to make little stay, and must trauiile very farre, being too much trouble for you to follow me. I desire yee, quoth she, conduct me to the Monasterie from whence I was taken, for my mother is there, who will be right ioyfull to see me at liberty. With all my heart, replied *Galaor*: so mounting on horseback, about Sun setting they arrived at the monasterie, where they were receiued with great ioy, especially when the Damofell had declared his worthy deeds of Chivalry done for her: and albeit he determined a speedy departure, yet at the request of the faire sisters, he taried there longer then before he intended. Heere paused the Author on this matter, to tell ye what happened to the Prince *Aguaies*, since his returne frō the warres in *Gaulles*.

## CHAP. XVII.

What were the adventures of the Prince Agrais, since his returne from Gaule, where he left Amadis.



**A**grais returned from his enterprise in Gaule, after Amadis had vanquished king Abies of Ireland, and was knowne to his father and mother as you haue heard: addressed his journey toward Norway, where he hoped to finde his Lady Olimia. Riding one day along somewhat neere the sea side, on a sudden hee had a Hart in chase, which when he had some prittie while pursued, he gained at length the top of a mountaine, from whence he might easily descerne the raging bellowes of the sea. Suddenly arose an exceeding great tempest, which with mighty windes so troubled the water, and the thunder raled with such violedce, as if heauen and the neather religion would haue met together. At length he espied a ship tossed in the tempest, vterly destitute of any safety, and (which was worse) subiect to the mercy of a darke comfortlesse night insuing: wherewith he being moued to pittie, commanded his Squires (as a signall) to make certaine blazes of fire, that they in the ship might chuse their best lading place, without perishing in the darke, himselfe minding to stay to see the end, which happened so well, by the helpe of God and dilligence of the mariners, as the ship tooke safe harbour nere where Agrais was, when they landed certaine Ladies, who were greatly affrighted with the maruailous tempast, thinking they could not haue escaped so long, Agrais being one of the

most courteous Princes in the world, seeing them so well landed and free from danger, sent one of his Squires, to will them come, and refresh themselues in his pauillion: which gentlenes they refused not, and because he was loth to be troublesome to them, knowing they had now neede of nothing more then rest, he concluded this night not to see them, keeping himselfe close in his chamber. The Ladies being seperated to their owne cōtenmēt, the mariners made great fire on the shoare to dry their garments, and afterward fell to sleeping, that they wakened not till next morning. Agrais desirous to see strange women, yet more to serue and honor them, then to remove his affection from where it was settled: priuily pried in to behold their countenances, they being round set about a fire, reciting to each other pleasantly their passed danger. As thus he listened their discourses, among the rest he knew the Princeesse Olimia, toward whom he was trauieling by vertue of her message: and you must imagine him so intirely addicted to her seruice, as also she in affection to him, that they might well be termed happy in their loue. No sooner had Agrais espied her, but he was so overcome therewith, as being no longer able to dissemble, hauing before his eyes her so late perill of ship-wracke, he breathed forth a vehement sigh, saying. Ah diuine comfort, helpe me. When the Ladies heard this cry, especially Olimia, thinking some one of their com-

company was not well, commanded her women to open the dore, which presently they did, when Agrais told one of the who he was, that shee might secretly imparee the same to her mistresse, the news whereof were so welcome to her, as immediatly she commanded him to enter. Then were embracings & kissings freely entercoursed, with all other gracious fauours so kind louers could deuise, euen the very point wherein loue triumpheth: so that the faire Princeesse lost the name of a maiden, with like contentmēt as other who haue assaied, and can more then imagine what I meane. So pleasing was this happy meeting, as they sojourned there six dayes together, beguiling the time with reciprocall courtesies; yet so secretly, as none in the company (except her Damosels) perceiued.

Meane while the sea became nauigable, the weather faire, and the waters calm: which made the Princeesse determine to goe aboard her ship, that she might passe into great Brittain, whither the King her father had sent her, to be nourished by the Queene Brisena. Which being vnderstood by Agrais, after he had acquainted her with the cause of his journey, hee gaue her assurance: that very shortly he would come to her, as well to shew her his faithfull seruice, as also to seeke his cosin Amadis in king Lisuarts Court, according as hee made him promise; wherewith she was not a little contented, desiring him earnestly not to tary long from her. Thus courteously taking leaue of each other, the Princeesse Olimia departed vnder sayle, and in fewe dayes after they landed in great Brittain, when comming to Windsor, where King Lisuart kept his

Court: both by him, the Queene, Oriana, and all the other Ladyes, was the Princeesse and her trayne graciously welcommed, as well to honor the King her father, as also in respect of her excellent beauty.

Now remained Agrais on the sea shore, giuing many a long look after the ship which caried away the iewel of his heart; and hauing lost the sight of it, he tooke his way to Briantes, a right good towne in Scotland, where the King his father sojourned, and his Vncle Galuanes without land, in whose company he intended shortly to visit King Lisuarts Court. For there, quoth hee to Galuanes, shall we finde more good Knights, then in any other Court of King Christian, there likewise may we gaine honor and renowne better then in Scotland: where we haue none to trye our selues against, vnlesse some fewe that slenderly follow Armes. This Galuanes was of gentle heart and a good Knight, desirous among other to reach the top of honor, yet of simple habilitie, as you haue heard before: now the enterprise of these twaine thus concluded, after they had obtained licence of the King, they went on boord with their horse & armour, ech one likewise a Squire attending on him. Hauing wind at wil, in short time they landed at Bristow, where they made no long aboad, but riding through a Forrest, they met a Damosell who demaied of them, if that way would conduct her to the Rock of Galeres. No, quoth they, but tell vs Damosell why you trauaile thither? To see if I can finde the good Knight, sayd shee, who knoweth how to remedy a grieffe I endure at this present. You abuse your selfe Damosell, answered Agrais, for at the Rock you demanded, you shall

shal finde no other Knight then the great Gyant *Albadan*, to whom if you bring any cause of sorow, he wil quickly doubleit on your own head. If you knew so much as I doe, quoth the Damosell, you would not imagine me to be abused: because the Knight I aske for, hath vanquished the Gyant, and killed him in battaile hand to hand. Belceue me virgin, replied *Galuanes*, you tell vs matter of great maruaile, in respect neuer any Knight dealt alone with a Giant, vnlesse it was King *Abies* of *Ireland*, who combated with one, himselte being armed, and the Giant naked, which was the cause of his death; and yet this attempt of the King, is thought the greatest stratageme that euer was heard of: then found not your speeches, to any likelyhood, for this Gyant surpasseth all other in strength & cruelty. Gentleman, answered the Damosell, the Knight I speake of hath done no lesse then I told ye: wherewith she rehearsed the whole manner thereof; they reputing it strange, and almost incredible: which caused *Agrais* to aske her, if she knew the Knights name. His name (quoth she) is *Galaor*, son to King *Person* of *Gaule*. Ah Lady, said *Agrais*, you declare the only newes of the world to content me withal, naming my Cofin, who more commonly was reputed dead then liuing. Hereupon he reported to *Galuanes*, what he had heard concerning *Galaor*, how he was taken away by the Gyant, and till this instant he neuer heard of him. By my faith, answered *Galuanes*, the life of him and his brother is miraculous, and their beginning of Chivalrie so famous, as I thinke their like is not to be found through the world; but Damosell, what would

you haue with that Knight? My Lord, quoth she, I seeke his ayde on the behalfe of a Damosell, who is imprisoned by the accusation of a Dwarfie, the most villainous creature that euer was born: here to she added the whole discourse of *Galaor* and the Dwarfie, as hath beene already declared to you, yet she cōcealed the louely pranke of *Aldena*. And because Sir, sayde she, the Damosell will not confirme what the Dwarfie hath auouched, the Duke of *Bristoya* hath sworne, that within ten dayes she shall be burned aliuie: which is an occasion of great griefe to the other Ladyes, doubting least shee through feare of death will accuse some of them, and tell withall to what end *Galaor* came into the Dukes Castle: moreouer, of the ten dayes, foure are already expired. Seeing it falleth out so, answered *Agrais*, you neede trauaile no further, for we will performe what *Galaor* should doe, if not in strength, yet in good will, and therefore be you our guide to the place. The Damosell turned her haqueney, and led them with such speede to the Dukes Castle, that they arriued there the day before the execution should be. Now was the Duke set down to dinner, when the two Knights entring the great hall, humbly saluted him, & when he saw them, he requested they would sit downe to dinner with him: but they answered, that hee should presently know the cause of their comming, where-upon, *Galuanes* thus began. My Lord, you detaine a Damosell prisoner, by the false and disloyall accusation of a traiterous Dwarfie; we desire that she may be deliuered seeing she hath no way mis-done: and if it be needfull to proue her innocency

gency by battaile, let come two other to maintaine the quarrell, for we are ready as her defēders. Well haue you sayd, replied the Duke: and calling for the Dwarfie, thus spake to him. What answerest thou to these Knights challenge, who say that falsely thou hast caused me to imprison the Damosell, and will proue it against thee in open battaile? it behoueth thee to find some defence for thy selfe. For that I am not to seek my Lord, quoth the Dwarfie, I haue such on my behalfe, who shall make known the truth of what I haue said. Here with he called a frolick Knight his Nephew, so like him in pitch and proportion, as one would haue thought he had no other father, to him he sayd. I pray ye Nephew maintain my quarrell against these two Knights. Scarfe had he thus spoken, but his Nephew returned this answer to *Galuanes* and his companion. Well Gentlemen, what will you say against this loyal Dwarfie, who was so iniured by the Knight the false Damosell brought hither? It may be one of you is the man I speake off; but whether it be or no, I will proue in Combate he dealt villainously, & the Damosell ought to dy, because she brought him into my Lord the Dukes Chamber. *Agrais* who found himselte most touched in his owne conceite, stepped forth with this answer. In sooth, neither of vs is the man, albeit we desire to imitate his vertues; but wee auouch he hath done no wrong, & if the Duke please, this difference shall be soone decided: for on his behalfe will I maintaine, that the damosell ought to be deliuered, & the Dwarfie in her stead burned as a traiterous villaine. I iustifie the contrary, replied the Dwarfies Cham-

pion: then calling for his armour, full soone was he mounted on a gentle Courser, and turning to *Agrais* who presented him, the Dwarfie thus spake. Would God Knight thou wert the man by who this quarrell began, too high a price should I set on thy folly. We shall quickly see, quoth *Agrais*, what thou canst doe; but I am assured if he were present, he would make no account of two such braggetts as thou art; how iust or vniust the cause were on his side, by greater reason then do I leave thee to iudge, how notably he would handle thee in this, consisting on truth and equitie. While these menaces thus passed on either side, the Duke stirred not from the table till dinner was done, when seeing the Knights prepared to execute their speeches, he conducted them with a braue company of Gentlemen, to the place appointed to end such controuersies, where all accustomed ceremonies being observed, the Duke thus spake to *Agrais*. Performe the vndermost of your habilitie, yet shall not the Damosell be deliuered: for to the Dwarfie hath not been offered iniury alone, but so much beside as art of higher reckoning then your selfe. My Lord, quoth *Agrais*, you caused her to be apprehended only by his false accusation, and he hath deceived your judgement with a lye: wherfore if my fortune make mee conquerour, you ought by good reason to deliuer her. I haue toldc you what I meane to doe, said the Duke, and otherwise it shall not be. *Agrais* tarrying for no more wordes, wound his horse, running a braue carriere against the Dwarfies Knight, and in the encounter brake their staves gallantly, meeting likewise so furiously with their bodies,

as they were both laide along on the ground: yet quickly they recovered themselves, and vnheating their weapons, deliuered fierce and cruell strokes to each other; their Swordes being verie sharpe, the Knights valiant and hauidly disposed, by means whereof, their Armour, Helmetts and sheeldes, were in short time made of slender resistance: yet *Galuanes* well saw, how his Nephew had stil the better of his enemy; if then he had before esteemed him a good Knight, farre greater reason had he so to doe: notwithstanding, hee was so hot and vigorous, as oftentimes he seemed out of breath, which made euery one imagine (regarding his violence) that hee could not long endure. But in him it proved farr otherwise, for the longer the Combate endured, his courage and strength the more increased, by reason whereof he became the Conquerour, as shall hereafter be declared. The Nephew to the Dwarfie found himselfe so hardly handled, as he drew back a litle, thus speaking to *Agrais*. Me thinkes Sir Knight wee haue made prooffe enough, of what we are able to performe in these affaires, wherefore I am of the opinion, that he whose quarrell I undertake, & the other for whom you entred fight, are not faulty in any thing wherewith they are charged; otherwise our combat could not thus long haue endured, but victory would fall soone of vs. *Ve* hast thou sayd; answered *Agrais*, that the Knight for whom I venture is iust and loyall, but the Dwarfie is a villaine and a traitour: nor will I suffer thee to rest, till with thine own mouth thou confesse as much defend thy selfe therfore better then thou hast done. These angry

wordes did somewhat eleuate the Dwarfies Knights courage, but he had lost so much bloud, that he was no longer able to holde out; by meanes whereof *Agrais* took his pleasure on him, because the other did nothing but defend his strokes: which when the Duke beheld, by reason he fauoured him, he was highly displeased, and to shun the sight of his death, departed toward his Castle, swearing thence forward to worke reuenge for him on all Knights errant, by doing them all the shame he could possibly deuise. He being in this furie spake so loud, as *Galuanes* overheard him, wherefore he thus answered: Duke thou doost enterprise a great war, especially against such as are known to more worthy Lords then thou art, seeking thus to smother vp the blame of others. As thus he contended with the Duke, the Dwarfies champion fell at *Agrais* feete, who immediately snatching off his Helmet, caught him by the head, giuing him many blowes with the hilt of his Sword on the face, saying: Confesse the disloyalty of the Dwarfie, otherwise thy life is at an end. Ah gentle Knight, quoth he, giue me my life, for I truly confesse, that hee who you fight for is vertuous and loyall, & promise withall to gaine the Damosell release from imprisonment: but for Gods sake I desire ye, let me not reprocue the Dwarfie mine Vnckle with treason. These wordes were by all the assistance easily vnderstood, which mouing *Agrais* to pittie, he thus answered: For the Dwarfie I will do nothing, but for you being a good Knight, I grant the fauour of your discharge: provided that you labour to your vntermost for the Damosells release from prison, according

ding as you haue faithfully promised.

All this while the Duke heard none of these words, because hee was gone somewhat further off: but *Galuanes* laid hold on his horse bridle, saying: By God (Duke) you shall not departe hence, vntill you haue seene the extremitie of your Champion: for he is either dead or vanquished; what answer then make ye concerning the Damosells right, & the treacherous iniury offered her by the Dwarfie? What? saide the Duke, thinkest thou I will breake mine oath, or do any otherwise then I haue determined? I know not, quoth *Galuanes*, what conclusion you haue appointed. Mary this, replied the duke, that she shalbe to morrow morning burn'd, if she tell not what moued her, to cause the Knight come hither who she conducted. Why? quoth *Galuanes*, will ye not then deliuer her? No, said the Duke, and if thou prouide not for thy speedy departure out of my Country, thou shalt well know that thou hast displeased me. Is it true? answered *Galuanes*, doe ye threaten me contrarie to all equity, and will not discharge the Damosell so honourably iustified? By heauen henceforth I desie thee, as well on mine own behalfe, as all other Knights errant whatsoever. Very well, quoth the Duke, the like do I to thee, and al such as thou resemblest. So went the Duke into his Castle, and *Galuanes* returned in an exceeding chase to *Agrais*, but reioycing at his Nephewes glorious victory, he somewhat quallified his angry choller: yet did he tel him all the Dukes menaces, and what defiance had passed on either side, wherewith *Agrais* was very much moued, chiefly for the wrong he threatned to the

Damosell, whereupon he thus replied: In sooth my Lord, and Vnckle, it is against all reason, that such a palliard as the Duke, possessed of so great a signorie, should cary so vile, and bad a minde. Hard vying thus spoken, he called for his horse, which being brought him, he moued thereon, speaking thus to the vanquished Knight: My friend remember your promise, & accomplish it so, soon as you can, that the Damosell may be released from her imprisonment. In good faith, quoth he, I will performe my vntermost hability therein. So tode away *Agrais* and *Galuanes*, toward the Forrest of *Arinide*, where when they entred, *Galuanes* thus began: You know Nephew, that I haue defied the Duke, in respect of the iniurie he offered vs: but if I might giue aduise, I would thinke it good for vs, to ambush our selues, while in this wood, where we may easily take him or some of his. I promise ye, saide *Agrais*, I like well your counsell: wherefore without passing any further, they made choyce of a little thicket, where they alighted, sending their Squires to the Towne to prouide them victuals.

On the other side, the Duke (as you haue heard) being with-drawn to his Castle, grewe into such displeasure against the Damosell, as he thought presently to send her to the fire: where-upon he called for her, & willed her for to haue minde of her soule, because the next morning shee should bee burned, if quickly she declared not the truth of the Knight: but all these threatnings could not drawe one word from her. Now because the vanquished Knight had promised *Agrais*, to labour for her deliuerance to the Duke, so soone as hee retur-



ned from the field, hee came and fell on his knees before the Duke: beseeching him most instantly to graunt what he had promised on the Ladies behalfe. But the Duke by all meanes excused the matter, saying, he had solemnely vowed she should dye, if she revealed not the thing he was desirous to know. Therefore (quoth he) I will rather consent to the ruine of my whole Estate, then in one iorte to the breach of my oath. In this manner was the Knight denied, and the next morning, very early he sent for the Damosell, to whom hee spake thus as followeth:

Thou lewd and disobedient woman, now make choice of the fire, or redde me in the matter I haue demanded, for one of them thou must doe. My Lord, quoth shee, you may appoint what you thinke good, but if I die in this manner, it will be against all law and reason. Presently he committed her to two Sergeants at Armes, accompanied with ten Knights well provided for their defence: and for the more suretie that shee should not be rescued, himselfe mounted in person on a goodly great horse; then leaving the towne, along they ride thorow the fieldes by the Forrest side, and being come to the place prepared for execution, he commanded forth with she should be throwne into the fire, saying: Let the stubborn Strumpet die in her obstinacie. But *Agrais* and *Galuanes* being ready armed to aduerture their fortune, discerned when the troupe came from the towne toward the Forrest; wherefore without longer tarrying, (hauing giuen expresse charge to one of their Squires, to haue a speciall care of the Damosells safety) slyly left their ambush, beholding the poore mai-

den ready for the fire, when shee perceiuing her present danger, cryed to the Duke, that she would tell what he desired, onely to delay the time of her death. The Duke beleeuing shee intended as she sayd, came to her; when suddenly he espied *Agrais* and *Galuanes* galloping toward him, calling so lowd that hee might easily heare them; Duke, now shalt thou be forced to deliuer the Damosell. At these words were all the Dukes Knights greatly astonished, yet prepared they for their owne defence, where-upon began between them a fierce and cruel fight. Now though *Agrais* and *Galuanes* were alone against so many, yet did they so brauely behaue themselves, as at the first on-set they quailed the greater part of them, before they could deuise which way to turne themselves: whereat the Duke was so amazed, that fearing his owne death was neere at hand, he withdrew himselfe behind his men; yet *Galuanes* perceiued it, wherefore he cryed to him: Trayterous Duke, This day thou beginnest to feele the warre thou didst enterprise against Knights errant: then rushing through the preasse, hee minded to charge the Duke, but hee retired aside, willing his Knights to kill their enemies horses, which they on foote might easily compassse. In brieft, these two Champions shewed such chiuallrie on their foot-men, as they were vanquished and driuen to flight, the most of them so cruelly wounded, that they were scant able to keepe themselves on horse-backe in their escaping away: and the Duke who was better mounted then any of them, made such haste, as hee brought the first newes hereof to the towne, being eagerly pursued awhile

awhile by *Galuanes*: but when hee saw it was in vaine, he returned to the Forrest, where hee found his Nephew and the Squires with the Damosell.

Such was the rescue of the poore mayden, & shamefull foyle of the Duke, who being arrived at the Towne, caused with all speed a great number to arme themselves, returning to the Forrest to reuenge their late iniurie, thinking to finde the Knights there as yet, but they were dislodged: wherefore failing of their purpose, they disperfed themselves in severall troupes, by fise and fise in a company to secke them, the Duke likewise (being one in the search) halug foure of the best knights hee could make choyce off. And as they rode along in a valley, he espied the Knights conducting the Damosell, wherefore hee sayd to his men: Behold (my Friends) the Traytours wee haue to deale withall, let vs set on them before they get leysure to escape: for if they gaine but a sight of vs, they will run away faster then euer wee did. But *Galuanes* espied them ere they came neere, and shewed them to his Nephew *Agrais*, who hee thought was ouer-wearyed with the last assault, which made him say: Wee already haue felt what these villaines can doe, but now must we warily defend our selues, that we may be no more followed in this sort. I know the Duke to be he comes formost, if good hap befall vs, I hope he shall haue his payment first of all: be now (good Nephew) mindfull of your wonted courage, hauing passed through greater dangers then this can bee. Why Vncle? quoth *Agrais*, in time of perill doe you thinke I will forget my selfe? especially being in

your companie? Dreame of no such matter I pray yee, but let vs serue these as we did their companions. By time hee had thus spoken, the Duke gaue the spurres to his horse, and comming neere them sayd: I am sorry (villaines) you should dye so honourably, but afterward I meane to hang yee by the heeles on the toppes of these trees. *Galuanes* and *Agrais* buckled close with them, shewing how much they despised such shamefull buriall: on the other side, the Duke and his knights stucke to it closely, especially himselfe, to whom *Agrais* came, and angrily reached him such a blow with his sword, beneath the sight of his helmet, as quite cut away the nostrills from his face. The Duke imagining himselfe wounded to the death, turned his backe and fled, *Agrais* following him, but seeing he could not ouer-take him, hee commended him to all the deuils, returning to succour *Galuanes*, whom the other foure had very sore laboured, yet did he hold out so courageously, as none of them durst come neere him; for one was tumbled head-long from his horse not shewing any motion of life was left in him. *Agrais* being now come from pursuing the Duke, buckled so closely with the first he met, as he fell downe deprived of life: so that there remained but two, who found themselves too weake to vphold the honour of the vanquished, and therefore trusted to the speede of their horses, following the first run-away toward the Forrest, by which meanes they escaped the fury of *Agrais* and *Galuanes*, they suffering them to enjoy that benefit, & returned where the Damosell attended for them, of whom they demanded, if any

Towne or place of lodging were neere. Gentlemen, quoth shee, I know the dwelling of a Knight hard by, named *Olinas*, who is a mortall enemy to the Duke, by reason he slew a cosin of his, which makes me thinke he will the better welcome vs. Be you our guide thither, said *Galuanes*, and so she was, they being very kindly entertained there, especially when he knew what had happened. On the morrow they tooke their leaue of *Olinas*, but calling them aside, he thus spake. Gentlemen, the Duke treacherously killed a cosin germaine of mine, who was a good Knight, wherefore I am determined to accuse and combate with him before King *Lisuart*. Now since I vnderstand you are Knights errant, and such as know how, or else your

selues can redresse the wrongs offered to the vnable, yea, by them who (without care of God or their honor) durst proceed so farre. In sooth, answered *Galuanes*, you are deeply bound to prosecute the murder, being committed in such shamefull manner, & we will assist ye in your quarrel on so iust a cause: if the Duke wil bring any Knights to maintaine his wrong, we will be for you; for so little account makes he of vs, that he hath openly giuen vs defiance. Most heartily I thank ye, replied the Knight; and for this cause I will goe with yee if you please. Content quoth they. Hereupon *Olinas* armed himselfe, and so they rode together to *Windsore*, where they had good hope to find King *Lisuart*.

### CHAP. XVIII.

*How Amadis taryng with his good will in the Court of King Lisuart, heard tidings of his brother Galaor.*

**B**Y the discourse past you haue vnderstood how *Amadis* (after he had in open field foyled & ouer-come the audacious proud *Dardan*) was stayed in King *Lisuart* Court by the Ladies request, expressly to be the Queenes Knight: his entertainment by the King, fauour and manifolde other courtesies, you haue likewise heard. It now came so to passe, that as he was one day among the Ladyes, a Damofel entered the Queenes Chamber, who falling on her knees before the Queene, said. Madame, is not a Knight heere that beareth azured Lyons in his Armes? The Queene perceiuing she meant *Amadis*, an-

swered, Damofell, what would you with him? Madame, quoth she, I haue brought him tidings of a new Knight, who hath begun in deeds of Armes so rarely as euer did any. You speake very much, answered the Queene: but you perhaps being acquainted with none but him, thinke therefore he is beyond all other. It may be so, replied the Damofell, yet when you vnderstand what he hath accomplished, I thinke your selfe will agree to my saying. I pray ye then, quoth the Queene, tell vs what he is. When I see the good Knight, answered the Damofell; hee who carryeth such estimation from all other: I will tell him in your presence, and other news which I am charged to acquaint

him withall. The Queene was now more desirous to know him then before, wherefore shewing her *Amadis*, she sayd: See here (Damofell) the man you aske for. Madame, quoth she, in respect you speake it, I beleue it, for a Queene of such state as you are, is free from beguiling: then comming to *Amadis*, she thus proceeded. My Lord, the young Gentleman whom not long since you knighted before the castle of *Bredoid*, when you vanquished the two Knights on the bridge, and the other on the cawsey, where you took the Maister thereof prisoner, and deliuered by force of armes the friend to *Vrgande*: most humbly saluteh you by me, being the man whom he reputeth as his Lord, & giueth you to know, how he endeuoureth to reach the height of honor, which he will attaine, or dye in the attempt: likewise when he shall performe some what worthy the name of Chiuallrie, he will acquaint you with more then yet you know, vntill which time hee shrowds it in silence. *Amadis* soon remembered the spake of his brother, wherefore with ioy the teares dewed his cheekes, and the Ladies well noting this alteration, maruailed thereat, especially *Oriana*: who (as you haue heard heretofore) was grounded in such affection toward him, as she was well neer deprived of power to dissemble it. In meane while, the Queene desirous to heare what deedes of prowesse the new Knight had performed, sayd to the Damofell, I pray ye continue your message, & tell vs the braue beginning of chiuallrie you speake of. Madame, quoth she, the first place where he made prooffe of himselfe, was at the Rock of *Galteres*, where hee

combated with the great and terrible Gyant *Albedan*, whom (in open field hand to hand) he ouercame and slew: hence she added the manner of the fight, assisting her that she had seene the same. Greatly were all the heere assembled at these newes, but above all the rest the Queene: who demanded of the Damofell, if shee knew whither he trauailed from thence. Madame, quoth she, I parted from him soone after, leauing him in the company of a Damofell, who came from her mistresse to seeke him, because she was desirous to know him; at which time he went with her, & since I neuer saw him. What thinke you heereof Sir? *Amadis* sayd the Queene, do not you know of whence he is? Yes truly Madame, answered *Amadis*, although I can say but little heerein: I thinke he be mine owne brother, for so *Vrgande* not long since assured me. Doubtlesse, quoth the Queene, the fortune of you both is admirable, & I maruaile how you could come to the knowledge of your Parentes, or they of you? yet would I be glad to see that Knight in the Kings service. While these speeches endured, *Oriana* who stode farre from the Queene, and heard none of these newes, was in such greefe to see *Amadis* shed teares, as being vnable to conceale the same, she sayd to *Mahile*: I pray ye (faire friend) call your cosin *Amadis*, that we may know what hath happened to cause him to mourne. *Mahile* made a signe to *Amadis* to come, and when he was with them, *Oriana* shewing her selfe soe what grieved, thus began. Sir *Amadis*, it may full well be sayd, that by some Lady you are now moued to pittie, I pray ye tell vs what she is, and from whence this Damofell

mosell brought you these tydings. *Amadis* quickly perceiued his Mistresses disease, wherefore hee declared all that the Damofell told the Queene: which appeased the ieaiousie of her hote Loner, and made this shew more amiable countenance, thus speaking to *Amadis*. Alas, my Lord, I must intreat you to pardon the fault, raised onely by false suspicion against you. I promise ye Madame, quoth he, there is no cause of pardon, nor did my heart euer thinke amisse against you: but could you like thereof, that I should goe seeke him the Damofell departed from, and bring him hither with me to serue you? for this I am assured, if I bring him not, it will be very hard to get him hither. Belieue mee, answered *Oriana*, I would gladly wish so good a knight in his company, and therefore you shal doe well to goe seeke him: yet before you depart, acquaint the Queene herewith, that she may imagine, how by her commandement onely, you enterprised this iourney. Humbly did *Amadis* regratiate his Mistress: and according to her counsell hee went to the Queene, to whom he began in this manner. It were good (in mine opinion) Madame, that the King had this knight likewise, to attend on his seruice. Certes, quoth shee, I would it might be so if it were possible. If you will grant me leave, said *Amadis*, to goe finde him, I haue no doubt of bringing him hither: otherwise I know you shall hardly see him, till hee haue made himselfe knowne in many other places. You doe very much for the king, quoth she, if hee doe come; neuertheless, I referre it to your owne discretion.

Thus *Amadis* obtained licence

to depart, which hee did very early the next Morning, hauing no other company then *Gandatin*; and spending most part of the day riding through the Forrest, he saw a Lady come toward him, accompanied with two Damofels and foure Squires: who weeping very grievously, conducted a knight in a Litter, whereto *Amadis* being abashed, demaunded what moued them to be so sorrowfull, and what he was they had in the Litter. He is, quoth the Ladie, the onely cause of my care and pensiuenesse, my Lord and Husband, who is wounded in such sort as I feare his death. *Amadis* aduanced himselfe to behold the man, and lifting vp the couerture of the Litter, saw a Knight lye there, of goodly personage: but of his face hee could make no iudgement, by reason it was cruelly cut and mangled; whereupon hee called to him, saying. My friend, who hath thus wronged thee? yet did the Knight make no answer, which made him goe to the Lady againe, and aske her the question. Gentle Sir, quoth shee, a knight that keepeth a Bridge not farre hence, did it, who as we passed by sayd to my Lord, how hee must sweare whether he were of king *Lisuarte's* court or no: which made my husband demand why he would know. Because, said the knight, no friend of his shall passe here, but I will kill him. What is the occasion of your hatred, replied my husband? I wish so much ill, quoth the knight, to that vngracious king, as I would gladly haue him in my power, to take vengeance on him at my pleasure: and in despite of him, henceforth shall I slay all such as are belonging to him. Because he keepeth a knight that killed the valiant

ant *Daadan*, for whose sake I meane to deale in such sort, as the king and his wel-willers shall receiue by me infinite displeasures and dishonours. When my husband heard him, as one agreed at his villainous speeches, he answered. Know thou that I am one of his Court, & his vowed seruant, who neither for thee or any other will deny him. Highly displeased was the knight of the Bridge with this answer, and without any more wordes charged my husband, so that betweene them grew a cruell combat: but in the end, my Lord was brought into this hard extremitie, and farre more worse in the knights opinion; for hee reputed him to be slaine out-right, commanding vs within three dayes to carry him before king *Lisuart*, to despight him withall. Lady, quoth *Amadis*, I pray you lend me one of your Squires, who can shew me the knight when I come where he is: for seeing your husband hath been so wronged for my sake, it behoofeth me (more then any other) to reuenge the same. What? said the Lady, are you hee for whose cause he so hateth the king? Yea verily, answered *Amadis*, and if my hap prooue so good, hee shall neuer hereafter abuse any other. Ah, gentle Knight, quoth shee, I will pray for your prosperous success. Afterward shee gaue him one of her Squires, and committing him to GOD, rode on with her husband; and *Amadis* neuer stayed till hee came to the Bridge, where hee sawe the knight playing at Tables with another: but quickly leauing his pastime, being ready armed, hee mounted on horse-backe, calling for *Amadis* in this manner. Holla, holla Sirra, I forbid ye to passe any fur-

ther till yee haue sworne. What shall I sweare? answered *Amadis*. Whether thou be of king *Lisuarte's* Court, or no, said the Knight: for if thou belong to him, heere must thou leaue thy head behinde thee. It is a question, quoth *Amadis*, if thou canst doe so much: but I assure thee, I belong to the Queene his wife, euer since not long agoe. Since when? replied the knight. Since a disinherited Lady, sayd *Amadis*, came hither for her right. But thou art not hee, quoth the knight, that foughtest the Combat for her? I am the man, answered *Amadis*, who wonne her peace. By my head, said the knight, now shalt thou loose thine, if I can; for thou didst kill the onely honour of my linage. I killed him not, said *Amadis*, but made him discharge her of his outrageous demand, and afterward he became a murderer of himselfe. All this cannot profit thee, quoth the knight, for by thee and no other he dyed: now for his sake, shalt thou loose thy life. Hereupon they gaue the spurres to their horses, and breaking their Lances brauely, met so furiously with their bodies, as the knight of the Bridge was thrown to the ground; whereof he was not a little ashamed: but by reason the helmet of *Amadis* was vnclad in the running, while hee amended it, the knight had leifure to mount himselfe againe, and to giue his enemy two or three strokes with the sword, before he had time to draw out his. All which afterward hee very well requited; for striking full at his head, hee brake away the skirts of his helmet, and redoubling his blow, mette so directly with his necke, as his head hung downe behinde his shoulders, his soule

soule passing to the Author of his pride and cruelty. When his gardants of the bridge sawe him thus slaine, they trusted to their heeles, yet *Amadis* would not follow the, but returned to the Squire that conducted him thither: willing him to make haste to his Lady, and let her vnderstand how he had reuenged her husbands iniurie: which he immediately did, not sparing the worthy attaints at Sword and Launce, which he had scene *Amadis* bestow on the Knight of the bridge.

*Amadis* hauing there no more to do, issuing forth of the Forrest, entred on a large & goodly plaine, brauely beautified with violers, sweete hearbs, and all other deuices of natures rapistrie, which presently prouoked the remembrance of his *Oriana*: riding on in diuers amorous thoughts, he saw come toward him an euill fauoured Dwarfie, on a simple Palfrey, who he called to know from whence he came. My Lord, quoth the dwarfie, I come from the house of the countie of *Claire*. Hast thou not scene a young Knight, sayd *Amadis*, named *Galaor*? No truely, answered the Dwarfie, but I know where (within three dayes) I can shew you the best Knight that euer bare Armes in these parts. When *Amadis* heard this, thinking hee had meant his brother, he sayd: I pray thee my friend conduct me to the place where I may see him. With all my heart, replied the Dwarfie, on condition you will graunt me one request, and goe with me whither I shall guide ye. The great desire he had to finde his brother, made him soone consent. Come with me then, quoth the Dwarfie, and I will bring ye where you shall behold the good Knight. So rode

they on till darke night ouertooke them, which the Dwarfie perceiuing, he sayd to *Amadis*, My Lord, hard by is a Castle where we may lodge this night, for there is a Lady who will friendly welcome vs. Thither they rode, and had kinde entertainment, when supper being ended, *Amadis* was brought to lodge in a sumptuous bed: but he could take no rest, his thoughts so hammered on the perfection of his mistresse. And taking leave the next morning of their friendly hostesse, continued on their journey till about mid-day, when they saw two Knights fighting against one, then *Amadis* approaching to them, said: Gentlemen, may it please ye to pause a while, and tell mee on what occasion your quarrell arises? At these words they ceased, & one of the two thus replied: It is because this Knight maintaineth, that he alone is as able as we two together, to bring a hauty enterprise to end. In sooth, sayd *Amadis*, your difference is very slender, for the bounty of the one diminisheth no iot of the other. The Knights perceiuing he spake the truth, ended their strife, demanding of *Amadis*, if hee knew the Knight in King *Lisuarte* Court, who cōbated for the iniured widow, whereby the good Knight *Dardan* was slaine. Why aske ye? quoth *Amadis*. Because, said the Knights, we would gladly meete with him. I know not, answered *Amadis*, whether your meaning be good or bad, yet is it not long since I saw him in the Court of King *Lisuart*. Hauing so sayd, he rode on his way, when the three Knights hauing conferred a little together, they began to gallop after him: & he no sooner heard them, but turned againe; then doubting they intended

ded some harme to him, he clasped on his Helmet and his Shield, yet had he no Lance, nor they likewise. Alas my Lord, quoth the Dwarfie, what will ye doe? consider you not they be three, and you alone? What matters that? answered *Amadis*, if they assaile me without reason why; by good right I must assay for mine owne defence.

On these speeches, they came to him in this manner. Sir knight, we would demaund one thing of you, which we desire ye not to denie, otherwise you may not so easily escape vs. The sooner shall I grant it, quoth *Amadis*, if it bee reasonable. Tell vs then, as you are a loyall Gentleman, where you imagine we may find him that slew *Dardan*? Hee who could doe no lesse then speake the truth, thus replied. I am mee, albeit I would haue you thinke, that I doe not so soone fulfill your request, in respect of adding any praise to my selfe. When the knights heard him, they cryed altogether: Ah traytour, thou dyest; and drawing their swords set violently vpon him. *Amadis* offended to see himselfe thus assailed, by them whom ere-while he had so friendly pacified: resisted them with such resolute courage, as at the first stroke he smote one of their armes from the body, the griefe whereof made him fall beside his horse: the second also felt his sword so peizantly, that hee cleft his head to the very teeth, and sent to keepe his fellow company. When the third beheld their bad successe, hee put the spurres to his horse and got him away, but *Amadis* being not so well mouated, let him escape, returning to *Gandalin* and the Dwarfie, who thus spake. Credite

me my Lord, hence forth will I trust better to your wordes then I did: let vs therefore make haste hence if you please. So riding along, at length the Dwarfie shewed him in a pleasant valley two high Pine-trees, neere which was a Knight mounted on a lustie Courser, and two other whom not long before hee had conquered, they turning to watch their horses there strayed about the field. And looking againe, he espied another knight lay leaning on his helmet, hauing his shield by him, and twentie Launces reared against the Pines, with two spare horses likewise ready furnished. My Lord, quoth the dwarfie, doe you see the Gentleman that leaneth on his Helmet? What then? sayd *Amadis*. He is, replied the Dwarfie, the good Knight I promised to shew you. Knowest thou his name? quoth *Amadis*. He nameth himselfe, answered the Dwarfie, *Angrius disraucous*, and is the best knight that I haue heard report of. Tell mee then, said *Amadis*, why he keepeth there so many Launces? I can therein, answered the Dwarfie, full well resolute ye, listen then awhile. He loveth a Ladie of this countrey, who hateth him aboue all other: neuertheless, he hath preuailed so much by fight, as her parents were constrained to giue him her. After he had gotten her into his power, he thought himselfe the happiest man in the world: but shee tolde him, he should wade into no such fond opinion, because hee tooke a yong Ladie against his will. And albeit, quoth shee, perforce you haue enioyed me, yet while I liue neuer shall I loue, yea if you doe performe one thing for me. What Lady answered *Angrius*, is it within

within compasse of my puissance? That is it, said she. Comand then sweete Madame, replied *Angrise*, for I will accomplish it even to the death. The Lady whose will was toward him exceeding great, thinking to appoint him a place most convenient for his death, or else to get him there so many enemies, as her Parents might enjoy better assistance to take her from him: intreated him and his brother to guard this vale of Pines, against all knights errant that should passe this way, causing them by force of Armes to take an oath, how they should afterward trausile to King *Lisuart's* Court, there to confesse her more beautifull the the Ladyes they loued. And if it so fell out, that the brother to *Angrise* (whome you see on horseback) were vanquished, and could endure the combate no further: then *Angrise* should keepe this passage alone, during the space of one whole yeere. For this cause they depart not hence till the day time, and at night returne to a Castle on the mountaine you see at hand: having already maintained their enterprife three moneths, in all which time *Angrise* never set hand to Sword against any Knight, because his brother hath stil beene

conquerour. Trust me, said *Amadis*, I beleue thou sayest true, and so I heard in the Court of King *Lisuart*, where not long since a Knight arrived, who confessed *Angrise's* Lady to be more faire then his friend, and me thought he called her name *Gronowise*. Very true, quoth the Dwarfie: but now seeing you are resolu'd, remember your promise to me, and bare me company as you sayd you would. With right good will, answered *Amadis*, which is the way? Euen vnder this vale, replied the Dwarfie, but because of this hinderance, as yet I thinke wee shall very hardly passe. Care not thou for that, sayd *Amadis*: so giving his horse the spurres, he rode on, and soone after he met a Squire, who thus spake to him. Go no further Gendeman, if you will not grant the Lady vnder the Pine, to be more beautifull then your Mistresse. Neuer will I yeelde to such a slander, replied *Amadis*, without force or extreame constraint. Returne thou, sayd the Squire, otherwise you must combate with the twaine you see before. If they assaile me, quoth *Amadis*, I must defend my selfe so well as I can: so vsing no more words, he rode on forward.

## CHAP. XIX.

How Amadis combated against Angrise and his brother, who guarded the passage of the valley, against such as would not confesse, that their Ladyes were inferior in beauty to Angrise's choyce.



Then *Angrise's* brother saw him coming, he tooke vp his weapons and met him, saying: Beleue me Knight, you haue committed folly, in not

graunting what our Squires gaue you warning of, you must therefore enter combate with me. As for the combate, answered *Amadis*, I like it much better, then to confesse the greatest lye in the world. I know well,

well, sayd the Knight, you must do it with disaduantage in an other place. And trust me, quoth *Amadis*, I thinke not so. Stand on your owne defence then, replied the Knight: wherewith they gaue the carriere against each other, meeting together so furiously, as the knight was unhorsed: yet held he fast the raines of his bridle, till they brake in his hand, which caused him to fall on his necke to the ground, where hee lay without remembrance of himselfe or any other. Heereupon *Amadis* alighted, and pulling the Helmet from his head, perceiuing that he was in a sound, wherfore he buffetted him in such sorte, as he came to himselfe againe. Thou art but dead, sayd *Amadis*, if thou yeeld not thy selfe my prisoner. When the Knight saw the naked sword ouer his head, fearing his death, he yeelded. Then *Amadis* mounted againe, perceiving *Angrise* already on horsebacke, ready to reuenge his brothers iniurie: and a Squire came to the Prince, bringing him a Launce, which he presented him withall from *Angrise*. Soone after they encountered so galantly, as their Launces flew in pieces without any further harme, and ending their carriere, *Amadis* quickly drew his sword, turning to *Angrise*, who thus spake. Make not such hast (Knight) to combate with the sword, because thou shalt haue time enough for that anon, (this he sayd, in respect he reputed himselfe the best at the sword that might be found: ) But I pray thee, quoth he, let vs iust till our Launces faile, or one of vs be sent to the earth. Knight, answered *Amadis*, I haue weighty businesse else where, and may not trifle time with tarrying heere. What? said *Angrise*,

thinkest thou so? of some delightly? I promise thee it is the least part of my thought: yet I pray thee let vs try one combat more, *Amadis* was content, and taking such Launces as each of them liked, finished the iust with such violence, as *Angrise* was cast downe, and his horse vpon him. *Amadis* leaping from his saddle, saw that a small cruncheon of a Launce had a little entered his body, yet fearing any shame should be deferred on his side, fighting for the honor and beauty of his Goddesse *Orlane's* snatching forth the cruncheon, and marched with his sword drawne against *Angrise*, who seeing him come, sayd. I see Sir Knight thou art very young, and me thinkes before it be worse with thee, thou wert better to confesse my Lady fairer then thine. Then should I lye very fowly, answered *Amadis*, and (by my will) I shall not dissent so farre from the truth. These speeches enkindled collor on either side, which made them charge each other with such vigour, as not one of them they that beheld them, but euen themselves were driuen into doubts, thinking it impossible to endure so extreamely. And to say sooth the cause was hard, for *Amadis* vnderdroke the honor of his Lady, for which hee could rather chuse a thousand deathes, then she should loose one of her excellences: and this opinion still whetted on his courage, that *Angrise* was compelled to diuers simple shifts, to auoyde the fierce assaults of his valiant enemy, who had wounded him in twenty several places, and he perceiuing his death at hand, stepped aside, thus speaking to *Amadis*. Beleue mee Sir Knight, there is more valour in thee then I imagined. Yeelde thy selfe:



selfe, sayd *Amadis*, so shalt thou do wisely, seeing thou art already brought into such danger, for with the finishing of our combate, thy life will likewise end: which can be no pleasure at all to me, in that I esteeme of thee better then thou wouldest. These words he vsed, as well for the braue Chiuallrie he noted in *Angriote*, as also the great honestie he shewed to the Lady in his possession: whereupon *Angriote* returned this answer. It is reason I should yeeld my selfe to the best Knight in the world, and the like all other to doe that beare armes: Beleue me then gentle Knight, I not so much sorrow for my foyle, as the wrackfull chance threatned to me, by loosing this day the onely thing in the world I most loue. That shall you not, quoth *Amadis*, if I can helpe it, beside, the Lady should shew her selfe very ingratefull, if she acknowledge not your honorable paines in her defence, and it cannot be, but she will requite ye with the good you haue deserued. As for me, I promise ye to imploy my vttermost habillity, in causing her consent thereto, to soone as I shall returne from a search I haue now in hand. My Lord, sayd *Angriote*, in what place may I hereafter finde you? In the Court of King *Lisuart*, answered *Amadis*, where (by Gods helpe) I meane shortly to be. So tooke he leave of *Angriote*, who gladly would haue had him in his Castle, but he might not be hindered of his journey.

Thus doth *Amadis* followe the Dwarf, who guided him fise daies without any aduenture, shewing him at length a meruailous strong and pleasant Castle, saying: Sir, within yonder hold you must performe the promise you made me.

And I will doe it for thee, answered *Amadis*, if it consist in my power. I am in good hope thereof, quoth the Dwarf, in respect I haue seene some prooffe of your fortune: but know ye Sir how the place is named? No verily, sayd *Amadis*, for till now I was neuer in thi. Cbuntry: It is called *Valderin*, replied the Dwarf: and thus deuising, they came neere the Castle, when the Dwarf willed him to take his Armes. Why? saide *Amadis*, shall we haue any such neede? Yea mary, quoth the Dwarf, for they suffer none to come forth that enter so lightly. *Amadis* buckled on his helmet, riding in before, the Dwarf and *Gandalin* following after, then looking on euery side they could see no creature. This place sayd *Amadis* is not inhabited, where is the request thou saidst I should do for thee? Credit me Sir, sayd the Dwarf, I haue sometime seene heere a most braue Knight, and the strongest in Chiuallrie that euer I saw, who in that porch killed two Knights, one of them being my maister, him hee put to death very cruelly, without regard of fauour or mercy: In reuenge whereof, I would desire that traytors head, which I haue long failed in obtaining, because all such as I brought hither, haue lost their liues or remaine here in captiuitie. Thou doest the part of a loyall seruant, answered *Amadis*: yet oughtest thou to bring no Knight hither, before thou tell him against whom he shall fight. My Lord, quoth the Dwarf, the man is knowne well enough, and reputed for one of the best Knights in the world: therefore when I haue named him, I could not meet with any so hardy as to reuenge my cause. Belike then thou knowest his

his name, said *Amadis*. Yea my Lord, replied the Dwarf, he calleth himselfe *Arcaulus* the enchanter, *Amadis* hereupon went further in, looking round about if hee might see any body: but all was in vaine, wherefore to rest his horse, he staid there till euening, saying to the Dwarf. What wilt thou I shall doe now it is so late? Alas my Lord, quoth he, the night being so neere at hand, me thinkes it were good wee departed hence. Nay trust me, answered *Amadis*. I wil not budge hence till the knight come, or some other that can tell me tidings of him. But I dare not tarry, sayd the Dwarf, least *Arcaulus* chance to know me, and imagine I practise the meanes of his death. Yet shalt thou beare me company, replied *Amadis*, as I will not excuse my selfe from the promise I haue made thee. As thus they comuned, *Amadis* espied a Court somewhat more backward, whereinto he entred and found no body: but he saw a darke place vnderneath, and certaine steps leading into the earth. *Gandalin* got holde on the Dwarf, who would haue run away, and *Amadis* tooke great pleasure to beholde his trembling, speaking thus merily to him. Feare not tall fellow, but let vs go down these staires, to see who is beneath. My Lord, quoth the Dwarf, for Gods sake spare me, nothing in the world can make mee goe into such a fearfull place. If thou goe hence, said *Amadis*, how wilt thou enjoy the thing I promised thee, or know that I do my indeuor therein? Ah Sir, quoth he, I acquite you, and holde my selfe fully satisfied. But so do not I, answered *Amadis*, because hereafter thou shalt not say I brake my promise. On my faith Sir, sayd the Dwarf, I freely

discharge ye, and if you please to let me go, I will carry for you in the way as we came hither. Get thee gone then, replied *Amadis*, for heere will I abide till to morrow morning attending the Knight.

In this manner the poore dwarf escaped thence, and *Amadis* went downe the staires, comming into a plaine place so darke, that hee could not imagine where he was: yet he proceeded on, and by groping on a wall felt a barre of iron, whereat hong a key which he took, opening therewith a chaine that locked a port-cullis, then heard he a lamentable voyce thus complaining. Ah God, how long shall we remaine in this miserie? sweete death why stayest thou from succouring vs, who call to thee as our last refuge? Soone after the voyce ceased, which made him holde on his way, and enter a vault, hauing his sword and Shield ready: then passing further, he came into a great Pallace, at the entrance whereof hung a lampe burning, & six men laide along asleepe, with their Shields and Hatchets lying by them, the best of which hee took himselfe. They not awaking hee went on by them, and soone after heard another grievous lamentation in this manner. Ah God full of pittie and mercy, send death if it please thee to deliver vs from this hell. Now was *Amadis* in worse case then before, for one of the six souldiers suddenly awaking, sayd to his fellow: Arise, take these rods and make that cursed creature sing another kinde of song, who hath thus disturbed vs in our sleepe. Mary and I shall, answered the other: so hee arose and smote the rods, but as he went hee chanced to see *Amadis* before him, whereat he was somewhat affraid,

yet to be better assured, he demanded, who is there? I, quoth *Amadis*. What art thou? said the other. I am, quoth he, a strange Knight. Who brought thee hither, sayde the Souldier, without any licence? No body, answered *Amadis*, but my selfe alone. The worse for thee, replied the Souldier, now must thou be enclosed among these infortunate people, who cry as thou hearest. Then stepping back, he shut the dore against *Amadis*, and waking his companions, said. My friends I haue found a strange knight, who to his harme hath entred on his good will. Let me talke with him, answered the Iaylor, and if I lodge him not worse then the rest, then blame me. So taking his hatchet and Shield, he came to *Amadis* with these words. Caitife, if thou wilt not die, throw downe thy weapons, lest with my hatchet I slice thy flesh, & make carbonadoes of it. Very angry was *Amadis* to be thus threatened, wherefore he returned this answer. Slender is thy reason in thinking to feare me with thy words, but the Devils shall affright thee a great deal more: for I will make them a present with thy soule, which so long hath giuen power to thy wicked body in doing euill. Presently they smote at each other with their hatchets, the iaylor deliuering his stroke on the helmet of *Amadis*, so that it entred very far therein, & *Amadis* cutting through the iaylors Shield, enforced him to throw both it and his hatchet downe to stand to the only defence of his sword: which endured not long likewise, wherefore he minded to grapple. *Amadis* about the body, because he was a man of maruailous strength, yet could he not do so much as hee

meant, in respect *Amadis* was a Knight both stiffe and sturdy. Neuerthelesse, the iaylor griped him very cruelly, till the Prince gaue him such a blow on the face, as brake his iaw bones, which compelling him to fall downe amazed, *Amadis* had the meane to accomplish his promise, seperating with his sword the body from the soule.

The other Souldiours that beheld this fight, not thinking the iaylor was dead indeede, cryed to *Amadis*: how on perill of his life he should not kill him, least they likewise should send him after. I know not, answered *Amadis*, what may become of me, but I am certaine he is safe enough for doing any more harme: herewith hee drew his sword, and taking up his hatchet againe, marched toward them that came against him, who charged him very sharpe and roughly: yet the first he encountered with, followed the iaylor, so did the second, and the fourth being smitten on his knees to the ground, had dyed, but he appealed for mercy, the other twaine bearing him company in the same suite. Cast downe your weapons, sayd *Amadis*, and shew mee them that complained so woefully: which they did, guiding him the way to the captiues, when *Amadis* hearing another voice somewhat neer him, demanded what he was. My Lord, replied the Souldier, it is a Lady in extreame anguish. Open the dore, quoth *Amadis*, that I may see her. Then one of them ran where the iaylor lay dead, and taking two keyes from his girdle, opened the dungeon where the Lady was enclosed: but she imagining the iaylor entred, cryed. Alas man, take pittie on me, and oppress me with no more torments.

Ah

Ah King, quoth she, breathing forth a bitter sigh: hard was my lot to be beloued of thee, seeing I buy my affection so deere. Her grievous moanes moued such compassion in *Amadis*, as the teares trickled downe his cheekes, returned her this answer. Lady, I am not the iaylor that locked you heere, but the man who meanes to deliuer you hence if I can, a strange Knight, seeking my fortune euery where. Alas my Lord, sayde she, what is become of the iaylor and his companions? He and some of them, answered *Amadis*, are sent to hell to looke their copes-mares: then one of the Souldiers having brought a light, the Prince saw how the Lady was tied by the neck with a great chaine, which had so worne & displayed her garments, as the naked flesh appeared in many places, and when she beheld that *Amadis* pittied her, shee thus spake. Although (my Lord) I am at this present sequestred from all my lihood, yet time hath been, when I was the wealthy daughter to a King, and for a King you finde me in this misery. Lady, quoth *Amadis*, it behooueth you to embrace patience, these are but the mutabilities of fortune, which no one is able to preuent or escape: and if the man for whom you haue thus suffered, be of any account, or lo- ueth you, I am sure he will conuert right soone this poore estate into rich abundance, and remunerate your long sorrowes with ioy and gladnes. So he caused the chaine to be taken from her neck, commanding garments to be brought and put about her: wherefore hee that brought the lights, ran for a scarlet mantle, which *Arcalaus* not long before gaue the iaylor, and cast it about the Ladies shoulders.

This being done, *Amadis* took her by the hand, conducting her forth of the darke prison, saying, Sh should neuer returne thither againe, but he would loose his life before: and passing by where the iaylor and the other lay slain, the Lady began thus to complaine. Ah cruell hands, how many wiles and torments haue you giuen me, and diuers in this Castle without desert? although your bodies at this instant cannot receiue condign vengeance, your damned soules may euermore abide in suffering. Madame, saide *Amadis*, while I go to deliuer the rest of the prisoners, I leaue ye in my Squires custody: so passing on to the port-cullis, he met the Souldier that brought the lights, saying, Sir, *Arcalaus* demandeth where the Knight is that entred heere, whether he be dead or taken. He who carryed the torch before the Prince, was so affraid at these words, that he let it fall, which *Amadis* made him take up againe, thus speaking to him. Villaine, fear lest thou being in my guard, goe on. The attending the states, they came into the open Court, where they sawe the greater part of the night was spent, the Moone shining cleare, and the weather faire, but the Lady feeling the site, and beholding the heavens, was sore pleat with ioy, that she fell on her knees before *Amadis*, saying. Ah gentle Knight, the Almighty protect thee, and requite the good I haue receiued by thee, deliuer me from comfortlesse darkness. *Amadis* looking round about for *Gondwin*, and finding him not, fearing he had lost him, wherefore he saide. If the batt Squire in the world be dead, I will take such revenge for his death, may I but find him and derer, as neuer was the first.

M 4 heard

heard before. Being thus ouercome with griefe, hee heard one crie, wherefore hee ran which way he thought best, and found the Dwarfie (that parted from him the night before) hanging by one leg on high at a great piece of wood, hauing a fire vnderneath him full of filthy stinking saouours: & neere him he espied *Gandalin* tied to a tree, toward whom hee was going to vnbinde him, but hee saw the Dwarfie had greatest need of help, wherefore he cut the cords in twaine that held him vp, catching him in his armes to set him on his feete, afterward he vnloosed *Gandalin*, saying: In sooth my friend, whosoever entreated thee thus, made little reckoning of thy good deserts. Now because he would deliuer the other prisoners, he met the Lady comming forth of the Castle, as he returned back againe, but going on, he found the gates fast shut against him: whereupon he staid til day light in a corner of the Court, sitting downe by the Lady, accompanied with two of the Souldiers, the Dwarfie and *Gandalin*. And as they communed together, *Gandalin* shewed the Prince a place where into he saw a horse led, which *Amadis* being desirous to see, came to the dore and found it shut: but he ran so strongly against it with his force, that he made it fly open, finding the horse there ready saddled and bridled, whereon he mounted, attending the day and sight of *Arcalaus*, who he knew was already arrived at the Castle, by matters he heard of *Gandalin* and the Dwarfie. In meane while he conferred with the Lady, demanding what the King was the loued so dearly, and for whom she had sustained such injury. Worthy Lord, quoth she, *Arcalaus* getting

intelligence, of the Princes affection toward me whom I loue so loyally, this diuelish enchanter being his mortall enemy: thought he could be no better reuenged on him, then by depriving me of his presence, imagining the griefe hereof would be greater to him then any other. Being thus perswaded, he stole me away, at what time I was with many great personages, who were not able to giue me any succor, by reason of the traiterous villainous sorceries: for they could not deuise what was become of me, because a wonderfull darke cloud enuironed me, which hindered them from following mee to this place, since when, I neuer saw light till now you brought mee forth. The disloyall wretch said by the way as he brought me, that he would be reuenged on my loue & my selfe by these meanes: I poore soule enduring the torments, and my loue the griefe of my absence, yet ignorant where. Madame, said *Amadis*, I pray ye name the man you spake of. It is King *Arban* of *Normales*, answered the Lady, whom it may be you know: I know him right well, replied *Amadis*, for he is one whom I dearly loue, and now do I lesse pittie your sufferings then before: because they haue bin for one of the best men in the world, who will so well recompence them, as by rendring you incomparable ioy, your loue and honor shall both be satisfied.

While thus they communed together, faire day appeared, when *Amadis* saw a Knight leaning in a window, who thus demanded. Art thou he that didst kill my iaylor & my seruants? Art thou he, answered *Amadis*, that so treacherously puttest knights to death, abusing likewise both Ladyes and Gentlewomen?

ment by heauen thou art one of the vilest villaines that euer I heard of. As yet thou knowest not, said *Arcalaus*, the vttermost of any power, but soone shalt thou haue experience thereof, to rid thee of such boldnes in asking me what I can do, whether it bee wrong or right. Herewith hee went from the window, and not long after came downe into the Court, being well armed, & mounted on a lusty bay courser. Now you must note that this *Arcalaus*, was one of the mightiest Knights in the world, yet no Gyant, wherefore when *Amadis* behelde him of such stature, hee doubted not of his great force and strength. *Arcalaus* perceiuing hee eyed him so much, demanded what moued him so to doe? I imagine, answered *Amadis*, that according to thy large proportion, thou shouldst be a man of exquisite Chivalrie: but thy peruerse and humane actions are a foule blemish thereto. Now trust me sayde *Arcalaus* I thinke my selfe highly beholding to fortune, who hath brought thee hither to make mee such a smooth fozmon: but all this will not helpe thee, therefore defend thy selfe. So charging their Launces, they brake so brauely on their Shields, as the shiuets flew vp into the aire, and with such violence met their horses and bodies, that they were both laide along on the ground. Quickly they arose, & with their swordes began a bloody combat, wherein desire of vitorie, and haury resolution of vncouerable courage, made the continue a long time, till *Arcalaus* retiring aside, thus spake to *Amadis*. Knight, thou art in danger of death, and because I know not who thou art, tell me, that when I haue slaine thee, I may yet commend

thy boldnes in entring heere. My death, answered *Amadis*, is in the hand of God whom I reuerence, and thine in the power of the Deuill, who is weary of helping thee: and bequeatheth thy body to so innumerable mischises, as a present perishing of soule and altogether. But seeing thou wouldst so gladly know my name, I am commonly called *Amadis* of *Gaule*, Knight to the Queene *Brihana*: let vs now then chat no longer but fall to the combate, for on my parte I promise no more resting. *Arcalaus* aduancing his Shield, came with forming fury against *Amadis*, who knew full well how to welcome him: and such eager strokes past on either side, as their Shields were scattered in pieces about them, & likewise many plates of their Armour. Now was it about the third houre, when *Arcalaus* hauing sustained great losse of his blood, was forced to send vp and down before his enemy, and seeing the imminent death before his eyes, fled to that part of the Castle where he came out: yet *Amadis* by close pursuit still continued his feare, whereupon he slept into a chamber, at the dore whereof stood a Lady beholding the combate, and he was no sooner entred the roome, but he caught vp another sword, turning his face to *Amadis*, saying. Enter this chaber to make an end of our combate. The open Court, answered *Amadis*, is more spacious and convenient. I will not come forth, quoth *Arcalaus*, for thy pleasure. What? saide *Amadis*, thinkest thou so slyly to escape? so placing his shield before, he entred the chamber: but as hee lifted vp his sword to strike, he was deprived of strength and the vse of his members, so that hee fell to the

the ground as he had bene dead. Yea mary, said *Arcalaus*, this is the way to make thee dye as I desired; sleepe then till I wake thee. How say you Lady? quoth he to her that stood by, am I not (in your opinion) well reuenged on him? Indeede saide she, he is now altogether at your commandement. Presently he ynnarmed him, *Amadis* not feeling any thing was done to him: afterward *Arcalaus* put on himselfe the Princes Armour, thus speaking to the Lady. Madame, looke (on perill of your life) that no one remoue him hence, vntill his foule haue forsaken his body: then hee intended to iourney to the court, where each one seeing him in the Armour of *Amadis*, might thinke he had slaine him.

But now the sorrowfull Lady so lately deliuered from prison, made such moane as would haue melted a heart of Adamant, and what *Gandalin* countenance was, you may easily iudge: when *Arcalaus* sawe the Lady lament, he sayde. Dame, seeke some other to deliuer you from prison, for I haue dispatched your hardy Champion. These wordes made *Gandalin* in such despayre, as he fell downe like one sencelesse, and *Arcalaus* called the Lady to him in this manner. Come hither mistresse, and you shall see him dead that durst so boldly combat with me. When he had shewed him to her, he demaied if he were not now quiet enough, The comfortlesse Lady seeing him in such estate, wanted no teares to

expresse the aboundance of her griefe, and withall: Ah God, quoth she, how yrksome will the reporte of his death be to many? then *Arcalaus* calling his wife, sayde. So soone as this wretch is dead, imprison this Lady where she was before, for I will go to the Court of King *Lisuart*, and there declare how I combated with *Amadis*, by couenant, that the conqueror should cut off the head of the vanquished, and within fiftene daies following, to publish his victory openly in great *Brittaine*. By these meanes none shal quarrel with me about his death, and I shall obtain the greatest glory in the world, hauing ouercome him that conquered euery one. The went he where he left *Gandalin* and the Dwarfie, commanding them to be locked vp in a prison: but *Gandalin* who wished death, thinking his maister was dead indeede, would not goe with him, desiring some one to tell him: and to enforce *Arcalaus* doe him so much fauour, reuiled him with names of traitour & villaine, hauing slaine the most loyal knight in the world, *Arcalaus* made no account of his words, but because he would not goe willingly, he dragged him by the eares, and thrust him into the dungeon, saying. If I presently kill thee, thou shouldest endure no more paine, but heere thou shalt suffer worse then death. So mounted *Arcalaus* on the horse of *Amadis*, and accompanied with three Squires, rode toward the Court of King *Lisuart*.

## CHAP.

CHAP. XL. How Amadis was entertained by Arcalaus, when he would haue deliuered the Lady Grindaloya, and after from prison: and how afterward escaped the enchantments by the ayde of Virganda.

**G**RINDALOYA the Lady deliuered by *Amadis* from prison, made such excellent lamentations for him, as euery one pittied her, shee thus speaking to the wife of *Arcalaus*, and the rest in the company. Ah faire Ladies, beholde yee not the beauty of this braue Gentleman, who in so young yeeres was the onely Knight in the world? mischance attend on such, who by enchantment, iniurie men of vertue: O soueraigne creator, why dost thou suffer so bad minded people to liue? The wife of *Arcalaus*, who though her husband was addicted to shamelesse crueltie, yet she being of gracious and pittifull disposition, grieved in her very soule to beholde his dealings, and continually praied for his amendement, comforting the wofull Lady so well as she could. As thus they were deuising together, they saw two other Ladyes enter the chamber, each one bringing in her hand good store of candles lighted, which they set round about on the cantons of the chamber: finding *Amadis* thus lying before the wife of *Arcalaus* and the rest, they being not able to lift or stirre him. Then one of the Ladyes so lately there arrived, tooke (out of a little casket she carried) a Booke, whereon she began to reade, and diuers times another voyse answered her. As thus she continued her lecture, many other voyces were heard, as they imagined them more then an

hundred: then came another booke flying into the chamber, landing as if she winde carryed it, and fell downe at her feete: shee read it, the palling it in some parts, burned it at the foure corners of the chamber where the candles stood. This done, she returned to *Amadis*, and taking him by the right hand, said. Lord *Amadis* arise, you haue slept too long vanaillly: immediately *Amadis* awaked, and rising vp, thus spake. Alas where am I? I maruaile that I am alive. Beloued mistresse, answered the Lady, such a one as you are must not dye in this sort, rather wil the heavens permit, than they who haue deforced it shall dy by your hand. Herewith the two strange Ladyes, not saying any more, returned the same way they came, leaving *Amadis* much amazed at this adventure, and looking about for *Arcalaus*: but he was aduertised by *Grindaloya*, how he was gone to the court of King *Lisuart*, clad in his Armour, and mounted on his horse, to repute that he had slaine him in combat. Indeede I felt, quoth *Amadis*, when he ynnarmed me, but on my faith, me thought I dreamed: and seeing he is gone with my armour, I will make his to serue me in this time. Having put on the armor of *Arcalaus*, he demaied of *Grindaloya*, what was become of *Gandalin* and the Dwarfie: she tolde him they were imprisoned. Euill befall the villaine that so hardily vsed them, sayde *Amadis*: and Lady, quoth he to *Amadis* wife, vpon your life looke

looke to the safetie of this noble woman till I returne. Combing fourth into the Court, it was a paltine to see how *Arcaus* servants fled his sight: but *Amadis* let them run, and went to the darke vncomfortable prisons which were filled with captives.

Now to telye in what distressed manner they were, you must note, the place was a vault of an hundred toyses long, yet no more the one foote and a halfe in breadth, without aire or light, and (which was worst of all) so full of prisoners, as they could scantly stand one by another. *Amadis* called *Gandalin*, who being in a manner dead, hearing his maisters voyce, began to tremble: yet thinking it was not he, because he verily imagined him to be dead, entred into diuers doubts of himselfe, whether hee dreamed, or was enchanted. All this while *Amadis* greatly grieved, because *Gandalin* made no answer, wherefore he called aloud againe: *Gandalin* where art thou? why dost thou make me trauaile so much? speaks I pray thee. When he saw (for all this) *Gandalin* answered not, he asked the other prisoners, if a Squire so lately brought in there, was dead or aliue: but the Dwarfie remembering the voyce of *Amadis*, cryed out. Alas my Lord, we ate both heere together aliue as yet, albeit we haue often enough wished for death. Then *Amadis* caused candles to bee lighted at the lamp, which hung at the entrance of the dungeon, commanding them all to come forth, to their no little ioy and comfort, seeing themselves deliuered from such miserable seruitude: and when they came into the open Court, they fell on their knees before the Prince, thanking God and him for

this happie benefit. *Amadis* beholding their faces so pale, wan, and ouer-spent, seeming rather bloudlesse ghosts then liuing creatures, was moued to exceeding compassion, especially they being an hundred and fifty prisoners in all, and thirty of them were Knights. *Amadis* as he cast his eye whereamong the, hee made account of one then all the rest, who notwithstanding his sickness and debility, seemed of braue and comely constitution, and he perceiuing that *Amadis* noted him so much, stepped to him in this manner. Who shall we say (my Lord) hath done vs this grace, by deliuering vs frō so long wretched thraldome? Such as know me, answered the Prince, doe call me *Amadis* of Gaule, Sonne to King *Perid*, Knight to the Queene *Brisant*, and domestickall seruant to king *Lisuar* her husband: in searce of a Knight I was brought hither by this Dwarfie, to whom I made promise in a fute he had. In sooth my Lord, replied the other, I am a Knight likewise, and seruant to the same King, who knoweth me full well, as likewise the most in his Court doe, with whom I haue been scene in greater honor then now I am: because euer since my departure from the Court, I haue liued in the miserie from which you redeemed me. How may I call your name? saide *Amadis*. *Brandoyas*, answered the Knight. Full well did the Prince remember, that he had heard report of him in the Court, wherefore courteously embracing him, he sayde. Right glad am I, my star so fauoured me, to deliuer you & these other frō such a hellish place: and though I neuer saw you til this present, yet oft haue I heard the King and his Barrons talke of your Chiuallrie

Chiuallrie, your long absence being no little grieft to them. The rest of the prisoners cōfessed their bounden dutie to him, desiring him to appoint them what they should doe: hee willing them to shape their course whether they thought best. My Lord, quoth they, albeit we know not what seuerall Countreys may harbour vs, yet will we still continue your deuoted seruants, to attend on you when and wherefoeuer need shall require. So each one kissing his hand, they tooke their leane, limiting their iournys as they thought good, not any of them tarying with *Amadis*, but *Brandoyas*.

Now go they to the wife of *Arcaus*, *Amadis* thus speaking to her. Lady, for your sake and these other Gentlewomen, I forbear to set this Castle on fire, albeit the euill behaviour of your husband is sufficient warrant therefore: but in regarde of the courtlesse Knights owe to Ladies, I am content to remit all at this time. Alas my Lord, quoth she, heauen beareth record of the grieft my foule hath endured, through the behaviour of *Arcaus* my husband: yet could I do nothing but shew obedience, as befeemed a wife to her wedded Lord, with intercession for his change, notwithstanding, I remaine at your disposition. What I will doe, answered *Amadis*, I haue already tolde ye, it now remaineth, that at my request you giue this Lady *Grindaloya* honorable attirements, because her birth and behaviour deserueth no lesse: in like manner, I would haue an Armour for this Knight, to require his own which was taken from him, and a horse as befeemeth one of his profession. If you mislike of my demand, doe more or lesse as you

thinke good, but for mine owne part, I will haue hence the armour of *Arcaus* in lieu of mine, and his horse, by reason mine own was better: yet must I tell ye withall, that hee hath taken a sword from me more worth then all the rest. Sir, answered the Lady, your request is so reasonable, that beyond the power you alone haue heere, I stand bound in dutie to fulfill your commandement. Then sent she for the same armour belonged to *Brandoyas*, and caused a horse to be deliuered him: as for the Lady, she brought her into her chamber, where she clothed her in most sumptuous accoustrements, and returning to *Amadis*, desired him to eate somewhat before he departed, whereto he willingly condescended. Now was the best viandes brought forth, so short warning might afford, but *Grindaloya* was in such hast to be gone, as she was loth to be troubled with any: wherat *Amadis* and *Brandoyas* merily smiled, especially at the Dwarfie, who looked so pale and wan with feare, that it was impossible for him to offer one word, which made *Amadis*, thus to iest with him. Tell mee Dwarfie, wilt thou that we tarry heere till *Arcaus* come, and I to giue thee the suite thou desirest? In sooth, my Lord, quoth the Dwarfie, so deere hath the request cost me I made to you, as (while I liue) neither of you or any other will I craue the like: for Gods sake then let vs be gone ere the Diuell come againe, for I cannot stand on the leg hee hung me by, beside, my nose is so full of sulphurous and stinking smells, as neuer shall I giue ouer sneezing till I die. The Dwarfies words made them all laugh hartely, and after they had repasted, *Amadis*



bidding *Arcalaus* wife farwel, mounted on horse-back with his company, the Lady thus speaking at his departure. I shall pray Sir Knight, that God may send peace between my husband and you. Beleeue me Lady, quoth he, though I neuer care for it with him, yet shall it remaine twixt you and me, because you deserue it. So fortun'd it afterward these words tooke effect, and highly profited the good Lady, as in some part of this history you shall heare recited.

Now are they departed from the Castle of *Arcalaus*, riding till the night ouer-tooke them, lodging at a Ladyes place fve leagues thence, where they were entertained with very gracious welcome: and on the morrow, after they had thanked their friendly host, as they rode together, *Amadis* thus communed with *Brandoyus*. Courteous Sir, I trauaile in search of a Knight, as here-tofore I told ye, & imagining it will be little pleasure to you to follow me, it were not amisse then if we parted. In sooth Sir, answered *Brandoyus*, I gladly would goe to King *Lisuarte* court, notwithstanding, if you thinke it good, I will keepe ye company. Little neede shall I haue thereof, answered *Amadis*, I thanke ye, because I must be constrained to wander alone, so soone as I haue brought this Lady into such safety as she thinkes meete. My Lord, quoth she, I will accompany this Gentleman if you please, seeing he trauaileth to the Court of King *Lisuarte*: and there I hope to finde him for whom I was prisoner, who I am assured will be glad of my deliuerance. Now trust me, answered *Amadis*, very well sayde, goe then together, and God be your guide. Thus are they seperated, now

remaining none with *Amadis*, *Gandalin* & the Dwarfie, of whom the Prince likewise demanded what he meant to do. Mary be your trusty seruant, sayde the Dwarfie, if you like so well as I. I am well pleased, replied *Amadis*, and thou shalt doe what thou wilt thy selfe. In sooth my Lord, quoth the Dwarfie, seeing you released me, I would gladly remaine in your seruice, for I know not where I may be halfe so well: the man and the maister being both agreed: they tooke their way as fortune liked to condu& them.

Not farre had they trauailed, but they met one of the Ladyes, that rescued him from enchantment at *Arcalaus* Castle, shee weeping and mourning very grievously: which mouing *Amadis* to pity her complaints, made him demand the cause thereof. A Knight who rideth not farre before, quoth she, hath taken from me a little casket, wherein is matter of great consequence, yet no way able to pleasure him: for such things are therein, as within these three dayes one in my company and my selfe, restored from death the best Knight in the world, and shee likewise of whom I tell ye, is violently caryed away by another Knight, who is ridden before intending to force her. Heere you must obserue, that the Damosell now talking with *Amadis*, knew him not, by reason his helmet beuer couered his face: but when he heard how her casket was taken from her, hee neuer left galloping till he ouer-tooke him, to whom hee thus spake, Knight, you deale not courteously, giuing this Lady cause thus to complaine of you, and me-thinks you should do a great deale better, to deliuer the casket againe you tooke from her:

her: but when the Knight heard him, hee fell in a great laughter. Why do ye thus laugh Sir? sayd *Amadis*. I laugh at you, answered the Knight, whom I thinke scant-wife in giuing conncell to him that demands it not, the lesse hope may you haue in speeding in your suite. it may be, quoth *Amadis*, you care not for my words, yet it were good to deliuer the thing is none of yours. Belike yon threaten me the? sayde the Knight. Not you Sir, answered *Amadis*, but your ouer-much boldnes in vsing force where it ought not to be. Is it true, quoth the Knight: with these words hee set the casket aside in a tree, and returning to *Amadis*, sayd. If your brauery be such in deedes as it seemeth in words, come teach mee know it and receiue the law. So giuing the spurres to their horses, they encountered together in such sorte, as the Knight being dismounted, his horse fel so heauily on him, that he was not able to rise againe: in meane while *Amadis* fetched the cofet, and deliuering it to the Damosell, sayd. Take your owne faire Lady, & tarry here till I bring your companion. Presently he posted after the other Knight, ouertaking him at a thicket of trees, where he had ryed both his horse and the Ladies, trayling her by the haire of the head into the wood, there to commit his villainous desire, but *Amadis* cryed to him aloude in this manner. Of an euill death maist thou dye traytor, that wrongest a Lady in this sorte without offending thee. As the Knight strougl'd with her to get her into the wood, hee looked vp and saw *Amadis*, whereupon he left her, making speede to his weapons and mounted on horseback, then approaching neere the Prince, hee

sayd. By my hand Knight, in haplesse time for thee didst thou hinder me of my will. Such a will, answered *Amadis*, as disstained honor, both men and beasts despise. If I take not reuenge for it, quoth the knight then let me neuer weare armour againe. The world therein shall sustaine a great losse, replied *Amadis*, of one addicted to such villainy, that seeks to force Ladies, who ought in all liberty and honour to be defended; and so they bee by all loyall Knights: With a braue course they met together; when though the knight brake his lance, yet was hee hurled against the ground so violently, as the weight of his armour and strength of his fall, made him lye trembling in a trance. Which *Amadis* perceiving, to rid him out of his paine altogether, he trampled on his belly with his horse scote, saying. Thus shalt thou loose thy desire of forcing Ladies. And as for you faire soule, I hope heereafter you are rid from any danger of him. The more am I to thank you my Lord, quoth she, would God my companion who hath lost her casket, were as well deliuered as I am. Shee was the first, I met withall, answered *Amadis*, wherefore first of all I succored her so well, as shee hath recovered what was taken from her, and beholde where my Squire conducteth her hither-ward.

Now because the heat was somewhat violent, *Amadis* put off his helmet to take the ayre, when the Damosell immediately knew him: for it was shee that at his returne from *Gaule*, conducted him to *Prigand the unknowne*, when by Chivalry he deliuered her friend at the Castle of *Brandoyd*, which made her remember him, and so did *Amadis* her, when alighting they embraced

ced each other, the like courtesie he shewed to the other Damofell. Alas! quoth they, had we but dreamed on such a defender, no villain could haue wronged vs halfe so much. On my faith, said *Amadis*, the help you gaue me within these three daies, may not be compared with this matter of no validitie: for I was in greater extremitie the you, but how could you possibly vnderstand thereof? My Lord, (quoth she that tooke him by the hand when hee was enchanted) mine Aunt *Friganda* sent me to the Castle of *Arcaleus*, by whose meanes we came thither, and you were recovered. Heauen shielde from euill that good Lady, answere-

red *Amadis*, who hath so many waies bound me her obedient servant: and you faire Damofels, the messengers of this fauour, haue you any thing else wherein to command me? No my Lord, said they, take you the way you left, and we wil returne from whence we came. Farewell sweet Virgins, replied *Amadis*, remember my humble duty to the health of your Mistresse, telling her, she knowes right well I am her Knight. In this manner rode the Damozels one way, and *Amadis* another: wherefore we must now tell what happened to *Arcaleus*, since his departure from the Castle of *Valderin*.

## CHAP. XXI.

*How Arcaleus brought newes to the Court of King Lisuart, that Amadis was dead, which caused his friends to make manifold lamentations and regrets, especially the Princeesse Oriana.*

**S**uch speede made *Arcaleus* after his departure from *Valderin*, where he left *Amadis* enchanted, hee being (as I haue saide) clad in his armor, and mounted on his horse: that the tenth day following, hee arriued neer the court of king *Lisuart*, who was riding abroad in the fields to take the aire, accompanied with his Lords along the forrest side. They seeing *Arcaleus* come a far off, hauing on the armor of *Amadis*, imagining it was hee indeede, diuers rode before to welcome him: but when they came more neere, they found themselves deceived, by reason *Arcaleus* had his head and hands vnarmed, wherefore without saluting the Gentlemen, he stepped to the King with these words. Sir, I

come to acquite a promise wherein I stand bound, namely to let you vnderstand, how I haue slaine a Knight in bataille, that sometime bare these armes. And albeit I must be content to declare mine owne prayse, which were more honorable for me, being reported by another in mine absence: yet am I constrained to do no lesse, seeing the couenant was betwene me & him whom I haue slaine: viz. that the conquerour should dispoyle the vanquished of his head, and present it before you as this day. Full loth was I to be so cruell, because hee tolde mee hee was your Queenes Knight, commonly called *Amadis of Gaule*, and so hee named himselfe whom I vanquished. As for me Sir, I tolde him in truth that I was *Arcaleus*, whom fortune hath

hath graced with such singuler fauour: for I haue slaine the man, some-time owner of this armour and horse, which as a testimony of my victory I brought with mee. Ah God, sayde the King, is then the most vertuous and accomplished Knight in the world dead? you lowring heauens, why began ye so braue to course in him, and now on such a sudden to cut it off? These sorrowfull newes prouoked sighes and teares, both in the King and his royall company, which *Arcaleus* perceiuing, not speaking any thing else, returned the same way he came, feigning himselfe likewise very sad and grieved: but you must thinke he went not without great store of curses, euery one instantly desiring God, to send him an euill and speedy death, which with their Swordes they could gladly haue bestowed on him themselves, but that they heard howe *Amadis* was slaine by an accorded battaile.

The King being overcome with pensiuensse and sorrow, returned to the Towne, where these newes were so opened to euery one, that at length the Queene and her Ladies heard thereof, which presently conuerted their former pleasures in to mourning. At this time was the Princeesse *Oriana* in her chamber with the Damofell of *Denmarke*, where hearing the sudden clamour and noyse, she commanded her to goe vnderstand the cause thereof. Alas good Lady, too soone was it brought to her, for no sooner was she acquainted with the death of *Amadis*, but her immoderate passions expressed the anguish of her heart: and more to afflict this gentle Princeesse, the other Ladies came weeping into her chamber, laying. Ah Madame,

what tongue can deliuer this wonderfull mishap? yet durst she not (good Lady) bee too forward in enquiring the manner thereof, least the cinders of her affection might be discovered: and as if she had beheld *Amadis* dead before her, she sayde. Alas! he is dead, it can not be otherwise. It is true madame, answered the Damofell, but what remedy? you must not likewise dy for company. These words made *Oriana* fall into a swoone, which the Damofell of *Denmarke* beholding, thought shee had too indiscreetly brought her these bad tidings, whereupon she called the Princeesse *Mabila*, saying. Helpe Madame, my mistresse dyeth. She being come, saw that shee neither moved or breathed, doubted least life had taken leaue indeed, wherefore she commanded the Damofell to shut the dore, to the end her loue all this while so well concealed, might not breake forth into open suspition. Then vnclasing her garments to giue her more libertie, as also bashing her temples and pulses with vineger & cold water, she recovered againe, when desiring a faint sigh, with a feeble voice she thus spake. Ah sweet friends, hinder me not in the way of death, if you desire my rest, and would haue God find him another world, who knew not how to liue one day without me. Ah flower and mirror of chiuallrie, thy death is insupportable not to me alone, but to the whole world, who is repleate with griefe for thee, because they haue lost him who in bouny, prudence, hardines, and all other vertues, did honor them above the compasse of all desire. And were yet any feeling in thee, I am certaine thou wouldst not sorrow for thy lost life, but for my love, enduring

during by thy misse marvailous afflictions: for thou hast left such honor in the world behinde thee, conquering so incomparable reputation in this short time of thy life, that (reckoning thy merites) thou diedst possessed with many yeeres. Thus liuest thou in place immortall, I remaining heere alone after thee, can giue but wounding and vnthankfull speeches. Ah cruell death, sufficed it not that mighty loue murdered him with his feathered Steele, but thou must kill him out-right with thy curelesse stroke? well, in respect it is so, offend not thy selfe my loue; for thou shalt soone see reason proceede from her that did thee wrong, who being the cause, will beare thee company in death. And I may iustly challenge him of wrong, seeing equall loue had vnted our willes to seporate our persons in this sorte: where hauing afforded our ending together, wee likewise might haue inioyed one sepulchre. After these words she swounded againe in *Mabils* armes, and in such manner altered her countenance, as they reputed her verily dead, her faire and golden lockes being discheueled, her armes and legges deprived of vitall motion, euen as when the soule hath taken his flight, from the body. *Mabila* despairing of any life left in her, was so surpris'd with griefe, that shee was constrained to leaue the Damosell alone with the Princeesse, & walking some-what aside by her selfe thus lamented. Incomprehensible wisdom, let mee not liue to endure these trauailes, seeing thou hast taken these two from me whom I loued as my life. But when the Damosell of *Denmarke* saw her selfe thus alone betwene two extremes, shee was marvailously a-

bashed: yet as one wise and well gouerned, shee spake in this manner to the Princeesse *Mabila*. Why Madame? when were you wont to abuse your honourable vertues? is it now time to forget your selfe? will you thus consent to the death of my Lady? you rather ought to aide and comfort her, then thus to forsake her, and procure her further danger if shee reuiue againe. Come I pray yee succour her, for now is the time of greatest neede, and let these lamentations be referred till another time. *Mabila* perceiving the Damosell saide true, wherefore she came to *Oriana*, and feeling by her warmnesse some hope of life to bee expected, they lifted her vpon the bed, when soon after her spirites returned to their office: and to qualifie this agonie, they could deuise no better meane, then to busie her cares with some or other speeches. Why Madame? quoth one, will ye leaue vs? at least yet speake to vs. Madame saide the other, your *Amadis* is yet aliue and well. At the name of *Amadis*, shee opened her eyes, turning her head here and there as if she looked for him: which good humour *Mabila* desirous to continue, proceeded thus. *Amadis* commeth Madame, and shortly you shall see him. *Oriana* giuing a great sigh, started vp, saying. Alas sweete friend, where is he? We vnderstand, quoth shee, that he is in very good health, and how the Knight who brought these bad tidings, is wont to vaunt of himselfe without cause, feeding himselfe with false praise of deceiuing Knights. Why? saide *Oriana*, haue I not heard that hee brought his horse and armour? A matter of nothing, answered *Mabila*, they may as well be borrowed or stolne, or he (happily) sent with that false

allarme,

to try our constancy: then finding vs thus weakely disposed, hee should haue had the thing he desired. I would not haue you thinke so simply Madame, that *Amadis* could be overcome by one and no better a knight then he, nor were it reason to credit a commander of himselfe, bringing his owne glory for testimony and no other approbation: I am assured that *Amadis* will come ere long, and if he finde you not onely dead in a manner, but thus giuen ouer to griefe: it will cost his life, so shall you deliuer vnhappy prooffe, what wicked feigning by malice can do, and thus you both shall die one for another. When *Oriana* remembered, how by this meane she might be the death of her friend, if by good hap he yet enioyed life, and imagined likewise that *Mabila* spake the truth: she tooke courage, casting her eye on the window, where many times *Amadis* and she had amorously conferred, when first he arriued at her fathers Court, and intercepting a number of forced sighes, thus spake. Ah window, the witness of my abandoned pleasures, how piercing is the doubt of him whom thou caulest me remember, and by whose gracious words both thou and I were made happy? Of this I am certaine, that neuer canst thou indure so long as two so loyall louers might (by thee) enioy such delight as he and I haue done: which sayling mee now, giue me strange and insupportable torments to bee my companions, and hence-forth shall my sad spirit remaine in bitter sadness, vntill the comming of him or my death. *Mabila* perceiving the cheefest danger was past, laboured to confirme her opinion more strongly then shee had done, in

this manner. Why Madame? thinke you if I held these babbling newes for truth, I could haue the power to comfort you in this sort, the loue I beare to my Cousin is not so little, but rather I should incke all the world to weep: then want consolation for you, who stand in such neede thereof. But I see so slender appearance of beleefe, as I will not before time require, repute you vnfortunate, because discomforting our selues without assurance: The still hereby may be amended, and the good made much more worse, especially it will be the meane of discovering, what hath so long time bene shadowed in secret. Alas, quoth *Oriana*, if he bee dead, I care not though our loue were openly knowne for all our mishaps in respect of it are nothing.

Thus debating and deniying together, the two Ladies all that day kept their chamber, not suffering any other to come in, for which the Damosell of *Denmarke* (who passed often in and out) was demanded for *Oriana*, she answered that she accompanied *Mabila*, whom she would not suffer to part from her, by reason of her griefe for her Cousin *Amadis*. Thus was the princeesse secret sadness covered, all night she being vnable to take any rest, such were her assaults between doubt and despair, not forgetting any thing that past betweene her and *Amadis* since their younger yeeres. But on the morrow about dinner time, *Bradyas* entered the palace, leading *Orindalos* in his hand, which gave great ioy to such as knew them, for of long time they could not imagine what was become of them: they falling on their knees before the King, were quickly called to re-

N 4

mem-

membrance, his maiesty thus speaking. Sir *Brandeynas*, how chaunce you haue carryed so long from vs? Alas my Lord, quoth he, imprisonment hath bin the cause, whereout (had not the good Knight *Amadis* of *Gaule*, given liberty to me, this Lady and many more, by such deedes of Armes as are vnspeakable) we could neuer haue been deliuered. Yet was he once in danger of tarying there himselfe, by the villainous coniurations and force-ries of *Arcalaus*; but he was succoured by two Damofels, who deliuered him from all the exorcismes. When the King heard him name *Amadis*, whom hee verily thought to be dead? What my friend? quoth he, by the faith thou owest to God and me, is *Amadis* liuing? Yea my good Lord, answered *Brandeynas*, it is not ten dayes since I left him in good disposition: but may it like you to tell me, why you demanded such a questiō? Because, sayd the King, *Arcalaus* yesterday tolde vs he had slaine him: heere-with he declared his speeches, and the manner how. What a traitorous villaine is that? replied *Brandeynas*, but worse is befallne him then he weeneth as yet: hereto he added what passed betwene *Amadis* & *Arcalaus*, as already you haue heard, whereby each one forsooke the sorrow of the former false newes, the King presently commanding, that *Grindaleya* should be conducted to the Queene, that shee might vnderstand these happy tidings.

Into the Queenes chamber is she brought, and the Damofell of *Denmarke* hearing her reporte, ran with all speede to the Princesse *Oriana*, who hearing by her the truth of all, the passage of her speech was stopt for a long time, seeming

as one confounded with enchantment, thinking in these newes she gaue her the bag, or that she dreamed them, but when she recovered the vse of her tongue, she thus answered the Damofell. Alas my friend, did I raue? or toldest thou me that *Grindaleya* testified to the Queene, how *Amadis* is not dead? In good faith, quoth the Damofel, I came but euen now from her highnes chamber, where *Grindaleya* declared how *Arcalaus* had deceived the. Happy bee this houre, sayde *Oriana*, but I pray thee goe tell my mother, that *Mabila* entreats her to sende the Lady to comfort her: which she did, returning right soone with *Grindaleya* to *Oriana*. I leaue to imagine whether shee were well entertained or no, with all the modest courtesies so glad tidings deserued, likewise whether *Oriana* and *Mabila* gaue her audience, when she recounted *Amadis* deedes of armes at *Valdevin*, the misery of her and many other, the danger whereinto he fell afterward by the enchantments of *Arcalaus*, from which hee was deliuered by two strange Damofels. The discourse hereof so pleased & contented them, that I think *Grindaleya* had an endlesse taske in the reporting, for *Oriana* must heare euery thing often redoubled. But repeating the dangers of *Amadis*, and the misery from which he deliuered the poore captiues, caused teares so thick as winters haile to trill downe her cheekes. Thus taried *Grindaleya* all day with the two Princesses, and had not so soone departed, but that shee was aduertised, how that King *Arban* of *Norwales*, (who loued her decreely) expected her returne in the Queenes chamber. Good reason had she to take leaue of *Oriana*, and seeke him from

from whom shee suffered such sorrow: But when these loyall louers met together, each one was delighted so substantially, as *Grindaleya* thought her griefes well recompensed. Now because the Queene vnderstood, how shee was daughter to King *Ardeyde* of *Serolis*, and all her miseries had been for the loue of king *Arban*: with instant intreaty shee procured her stay in the Court, doing her all the honour and fauour could be deuised. *Grindaleya* was more iurious in granting the Queenes request, because king *Arban* was partaker in the same suite: by this occasion the

Queene was aduertised, that shee had a maruailous faire sister named *Aldene*, who was nourished in the Duke of *Bristoyles* castle, which made her presently dispatch a Gentleman thither, with request that the Dutchesse would send her to the Court. This *Aldene* was the friend to *Galaor*, shee for him suffered such iniurie by the Dwarf as you haue heard before discoursed. We haue a long time continued with *Amadis*, now let vs turne againe to *Galaor*, leaving King *Lisuart* in hope to see him soone in his Court, whom *Arcalaus* said he had slaine in combat.

## CHAP. X XII.

*How Galaor came very sore wounded to a Monastery, where he finished five dayes attending his health, and at his departure thence, what happened to him shall be declared in this Chapter.*

**F**ive dayes together abode *Galaor* at the Monastery, whether he was conducted by the Damozell he deliuered from prison, attending there the recovery of his wounds: but when hee found himselfe able to weare his Armor, he tooke leaue of the sisters, and rode on his iourney, euen which way fortune pleased to guide, for he had minde to no part more then another. About mid-day he arriued in a valley, in the midst whereof stood a fayre fountain, where he found a knight armed hauing no horse: *Galaor* maruailing thereat, demanded if hee came thither on foote, the knight returning this answer. Beleeue me no, but riding through this Forrest to a Castle of mine, I met with certaine thecues that slew my Horse: thus am I brought

into the state you behold me; by reason my seruants heare not of my misfortune. Why? You shall haue my Squires monture, answered *Galaor*. I thanke you sir, quoth the Knight, yet before wee part hence, you shall know the great vertue of this fountaine, for there is no payson in the world so strong, that hath any force against this water, wherefore by reason of so soveraigne a benefit, often times envenomed beasts doe drink hereof, and are presently healed: beside, diuerse of this Countrey vse to come hither, and finde redresse for all their infirmities. In sooth you tell me meruailes, replied *Galaor*, and seeing I am now so neere it, I will aight to drinke thereof as others haue done. Good reason you should answered the Knight, because you are ignorant of coming this way againe. *Galaor* leaped

ed from his Horse, bidding his Squire alight to drinke as he did: but while they were drinking, the knight clasped on his owne head *Galaors* helmet, and taking his Launce mounted on his Horse, when leauing the Prince drinking he rode away, saying. Farewell Knight, I must be gone, tarry thou here to beguile another as I haue done thee. *Galaor* lifting his head from the water, and seeing the Knight make such hast away, thus called to him. Ah villaine, neuer did theefe such a treacherous pranck as thou hast done: for thou hast not alone deceiued me, but committed an act of great disloyalty, which thou shalt well know, if euer I meet with thee. Yea mary, answered the knight, rest your selfe there, till you recouer some other meane to combat with me.

Gone is the Knight so fast as he could gallop, leauing *Galaor* chafing like a mad man, but seeing there was no remedy, he mounted on his Squires horse and pursued him, til at length he came to a double way, when not knowing which of them to take, because he had lost the sight of him, hee stood still in great pensiuenes, till at length hee saw a Damofel come riding a pace toward him, of whom hee demanded, if she met not a knight mounted on a bay Courser, bearing in a white sheeld a vermillion flower. What would you with him? replied the Damofell. I would quoth he recouer again my horse & Armes, for they be mine, and by false villanies hee hath carried them from me. When happened this? said the Damofell: wherewith *Galaor* told her all the discourse. Well, quoth the Damofell, what can you doe to him being thus vnarmed? for I thinke hee tooke them not away to

restore them againe. I care for nothing else, said *Galaor*, but to finde him once more. Trust me, answered the Damofell, if you wil grant me one boone, soone shall I bring ye together againe, *Galaor* being very desirous hereof, agreed to any thing she would demand. Follow me then, quoth she, so turning her horse, rode the same way she came, keeping cōpany a while together: but the Damofell being better mounted then he, left him behinde with his Squire, & rid before so fast, that they had lost the sight of her, trauiailing the space of 3. miles without any news of her, but at last on a great plain they saw her returne againe, here you must note, that the cause of her riding thus before, was to aduertise the other knight (being her deere friend) of their comming, and hee had expressly sent her to fetch *Galaor*, to deceiue him of the rest of his Armour: which he imagined easily to do without danger, seeing hee had gotten the chiefest thing of his defence, and afterward he intended to kill him, or put him to some notorious shame. For this cause he tarried in a Pavillion, erected by him on the plaine, and no sooner came she to *Galaor*, but thus she spake. Gentleman, to the end I might not faile in my promise, I forsooke your cōpany a while, only to see if the man you looke for, were in the place I left him or no: there haue I found him little thinking on your coming, and in yonder Pavillion may you speake with him at pleasure. As thus they deuised together, they came to the Tent, wherfore *Galaor* alighted to euter, but the Knight meeting him at the doore, said. Sir knight, what moueth thee to come in here without licence, trust me it is but little for thy profit because

because thou must here leaue the rest of thine Armour, or die presently. Thou mayst be therein deceiued, answered *Galaor*, and the wordes of such a wretch as thou art cannot feare me.

This reply very angerly incensed the Knight, listning vp his sword to smite the Prince on the head, but *Galaor* cunningly escaped the blowe, giuing his enemy such a stroake on the top of his helmet, as made him set one knee to the ground: then quickly laying hold on him, got the helmet beside his head, spurning him so strongly with his feete, that therewith hee fell on his face to the earth. When the Knight beheld himselfe in such danger, he called with a loud voice to the Damofell for succor, whereupon she stepped to *Galaor*, saying: that hee should holde his hand, for this was the boone he promised to giue her. But he being in extreame choller, gaue no care to her speeches, bringing the Knight into such estate, as hee left no vitall motion in him: wherat the Damofell being ready to despaire, breathed forth many grievous lamentations, saying. Alas wretch that I am, too long haue I trifled time: for in seeking to beguile another, my selfe am worthily requited with deceite. And thou traytor quoth shee to *Galaor*, who hast thus cruelly put him to death, heaven send thee a more worse and haplesse end, for by thee haue I lost my only felicity in this world: for which (beewell assured) it shall cost thee thy life, because thou hast broken promise with mee, and in such a place will I demand reuenge on thee, as nothing but thy death shall expiate my anger, wert thou a Knight of greater hardinesse then thou art: if then thou make refu-

fall there, I shall haue more then iust occasion to publish in all places, the pusillanimity of thy faint hearted courage.

Faire Damofell, answered *Galaor*, if I had thought his death would haue beene so grieuous to you, I could haue spared part of my displeasure, though iustly hee deserved no lesse, but you spake when it was too late. The worse for thee, replied the Damofell, because thy death shall recompence his. *Galaor* seeing shee continued her threatening speeches, without any further answer left her, lacing on his helmet, mounting on the horse the dead Knight tooke from him: and hauing ridden a pretty while, hee looked backe to see if the Damofell followed him, when perceiuing her hard at his horse heeles, demanded of her whither shee trauiailed. With thee, answered the Damofell, and neuer will I leaue thee, till I haue found opportunity to request the boone thou didst promise me, which shall be the losse of thy head by some euill death. Me thinkes it were better, sayde *Galaor*, for you to take some other satisfaction of me, and happily might bee more pleasing to you. Not any thing else, quoth shee, thy soule shall accompany his whom thou hast slaine, else neuer shalt thou accomplish what thou hast promised mee. Well, well, answered *Galaor*, I must stand to the hazard of that as I may: thus quarreling, they rode on three dayes together, and entered the Forrest of *Angadane*, an aduēture there happening to them, wherof the Author hereafter maketh mention.

But now he returneth againe to *Amadis*, who taking his leaue of *Virgandars* Damofells, as you haue heard



heard before recited : rode on till about noone time, when issuing forth of the Forrest, hee saw on a plaine a very faire Castell, whereout came a goodly Chariot, so brauely equiped as euer he beheld any, it being drawn by two braue red steedes, which were couered with imbroydered crimson sattin, as it made a very dainty and seemely shew. The Chariot was guarded by eight armed Knights, yet *Amadis* being desirous to see who was in it, drew somewhat neere to lift vp the rich couering, but one of the Knights came to him with these rough wordes: Keepe backe Sir Knight, and bee not so bold to come thus neere. What I doe, answered *Amadis*, is for no harme. Whatsoeuer it bee replied the other, trouble your selfe no further, in respect you are not worthy to see what is here couered: for if you enterprise the like againe, it will value your life, because thou must deale with all in this troupe, and some such one is amongst vs, as is able alone to get the maistrise of thee, more easily then may wee altogether vse thee as we list. I know not, sayd *Amadis*, the Knights valour you speake of, but hap good or bad, I will see what is in the Chariot. Herewith hee tooke his Armes, which the two Knights seeing that rode formost, they ran both against him, the one breaking his Launce, and the other missing: but *Amadis* sped otherwise, for the first very easily hee cast from his saddle, & the other he threw both horse and man to the ground. Then *Amadis* went towards the Chariot, yet was he stayed by two other Knights, one of them being likewise dismounted, and with his sword hee gaue the other such a welcome on the pate, as hee was

glad to keep himselfe from falling: by catching fast holde about his horse necke, when the other foure sawe their companions so vied by one Knight, they maruailed not a little, and being willing to reuenge their iniury, altogether fiercely charged *Amadis*. With this last assault hee found himselfe sore combred, for one of them tainted him in the shield, and another in his armour, as hee escaped hardly from beeing ouerthrowne: notwithstanding hee held out valiantly, deliuering such stroakes to the first he met, as hee fell beside his horse in a swoone. The three that remayned turned their faces, seeking which way they might soonest hurt him: but hee snatched a Launce from one of them, which yet remayned whole, and met one with such a full carriere, that piercing quite thorough his throate, hee felt to the ground and gaue vp the Ghost.

After his death, he came to another of them, and with his sword smote the helmet from his head: when seeing hee was a very ancient knight, hauing his head and beard so white as snowe, moued with pittie, he friendly thus spake. Father, henceforth it were good you left the vse of armes to younger then your selfe, seeing you haue liued so long without gaying honour or commendation, marry your age doth now excuse yee. In good faith answered the Knight, your speeches are very contrary, because if it bee seemely for young men to seeke renowne and fame by armes: it is more necessarie that an auncient man should doe his endeaueur, to maintayne those affaires so long as he can. Beleeue me Father, sayd *Amadis*, your reason is good.

While

While thus they talked together, *Amadis* saw him who was first unhorsed, make great hast toward the Castle, and so did the other which were wounded: wherefore hee approached to the Chariot, and lifting vp the couering, beheld there a tombe of Marble, hauing a crowned King figured thereon, clothed in his royall ornaments, yet was his Crowne and part of his head some what seuered aloofe from the rest. Hard by far a very ancient Lady, and neere her a yong Damsell of most excellent beauty, whom very gratiouly hee saluted, speaking to the ancient Lady in this manner. I pray ye tell me Madam, what figure is this which you accompanie so carefully? What Sir Knight? quoth shee, (not knowing her gardants were discomforted) who gaue you permission to see our secrets? None other, said *Amadis*, then my desire thus to doe. In good faith, quoth the Lady, this is in you a great part of presumption, and I meruaile that my Knights would suffer it: then putting her head forth of the Chariot, shee saw some of them slaine, others flying to the Castle for their safeti, & som ran after their Horses that were escaped, whereat she was so amazed, as she thus cryed out: Ah Knight, cursed be the houre of thy birth, who hast done me this cruell outrage. Madam, answered *Amadis*, your people asayed me: but now may it please ye to satisfie my demand? Neuer shalt thou, quoth she, be resolved therein by me, hauing offered mee such monstrous abuse: so saying, shee caused the horses to be away with the Chariot. *Amadis*, beholding her so agreed, would trouble her no more but rode on his journey: then were the dead bodies

put into the Chariot, and presently conueyed into the Castle.

Now had the dwarffe heard all that passed betweene *Amadis* and the Lady, but hee knew not what was within the Chariot, wherefore he desired to know of his Master. I cannot tell thee, quoth he, for she would make no answer thereof to me. In sooth, said the Dwarffe, it is strange that women haue learned to hold their peace. As thus they rode beguiling the time, on a sudden they espied the old Knight now vnarmed, gallop apace after them, crying so loud as he could to *Amadis*, that he should stay, which hee did, when he deliuered him this message. My Lord, I come to you by commandement of the Lady whom you saw in the Chariot, and she being willing to make amends for the iniury shee did ye, desires you to take a lodging this night in her Castle. Ah Father, replied *Amadis*, I found her in such griefe for the debate betweene me and your companions, that I think my presence will rather be hurtfull then pleasing to her. Assure your selfe, said the knight, your returne will be very acceptable to her. *Amadis* thinking a knight of such yeates would haue told no leasing, was content to goe with him, seeing with what affection he coloured his speeches and by the way hee demanded of him, why the picture head was made in such sort, but he would tel him nothing; saying, the Lady would thorowly relesue him in all. Being come to the Castle, hee saw the Lady and the Damsell awayting! his comming on the bridge, wito bad him very heartily welcome. Ladies, quoth he, I would be glad to doe you good, but I must offend yee. When hee was entered, hee saw a great many

many armed men, who flocking about him, cryed. Yeeld Knight else thou art but dead. Nor shall you, said hee, with my will, keepe me your prisoner. So hee laced his Helmet, but he had no leysure as yet to take his shield, so sharply was he assailed by his enemies: yet did he worthily defend himselfe, sending them to the Earth he met withall, at length by the multitude of his assaylants, he was driuen into a corner of the Court, which he recouering, and keeping them therein all before him, endamaged them much better then hee did before. But while hee was thus combatting, he saw the Dwarfie and *Gandalin* carried into prison, whereat hee conceived such displeasure, as being exempt from feare of death, he layed such load on his enemies, that no one durst come neere him: albeit they were so many, as often times hee was in danger to fall on his knees, yet looking for no mercy at such mens hands, would deere buy his death among them, causing diuerse of them to fall dead at his feet. And the diuine bounty regarding him in pity, deliuered him from this perill by the young beautifull Damosell, who marking his braue behaviour in Chiuallrie, intended to saue him, calling one of her women to whom she said. The gallant minde of this Knight moueth me to compassion, so that I had rather all mine should die, then he; therefore follow me. Why Madam? answered the Gentlewoman, what meanes ye to doe? Let loose my Lyons, answered the Lady, that they may bee scattered, who offer wrong to the best Knight in the world: and thou (being my vassalle) I command thee presently to goe let them loose. Which she

durst not deny, but immediately sent them forth of the Gaue: then the Lady to make them retire that combatted with *Amadis* cryed to them: Looke to your selues my friends, for the Lyons are gotten loose by some mischaunce. The men being all afraide, fled vp and downe to shunne the fury of the beasts, but the Lyons made such speede after them, as diuerse they ouertooke and rent in pieces. When *Amadis* saw himselfe thus rid of his enemies, seeing the wicket of the Castle was yet open, he went out and held the doore fast to him, while the Lions deuoured the other in the Court.

In this manner *Amadis* escaped his bloody foes, yet was he so ouer-trauailed, as he could hardlie sustaine himselfe: Wherefore he fate downe on a stone, holding his Sword still ready drawne, a great part whereof was broken, and the Lions being yet so hungrie, as they ranne about the Court to seek way into the fields: nor was there any man in the Castle so hardie, that durst come downe to shut them vp againe, no, nor the Damosell who had the government of them, for they were so chafed, as no obedience was looked for in them, nor the wisest of them knew how to remedy it: Except the olde Ladie should intreate the strange Knight to let them forth, imagining because shee was a woman, hee would grant her request sooner then to the rest. But shee considering her false dealing toward him, durst not aduenture to moue the suite: Yet when she beheld it was her last refuge, she put her head forth of the window thus speaking to *Amadis*. Although (Sir Knight) wee haue intreated you very hardly, yet let your

courte

courtesie excuse what is past: and to saue our liues, open the gate that the Lyons may come forth, to the end our present feare may be qualified, and they rounge the fields as is their desire. This fauorable kindnes let vs obaine at your hands, whereby wee shall yeeld amends for the wrong wee haue done ye: and on my faith I sweare to you, our intent was no other, wise then to gaine you our prisoner, vntill you consented to be our knight. Madame, answered *Amadis*, you should haue labored your determination by a more honest way: for without constraint I would willingly haue yeelded my selfe, as I haue to diuers Ladies, who knowe full well my seruice. Will ye then Sir, quoth she, open the gate? No, replied *Amadis*: wherewith she went from the window, and the young Lady trembling shewed her selfe, thus calling to *Amadis*. Ah gentle Sir, such are within heere, who could not suffer the iniurie done to you, the better they deserue to finde some fauour. With such seemely modesty vttered the Ladie these words, as *Amadis* asked her, if she would haue the gate opened? Yea mary Sir, quoth she, I humbly desire ye. Presently he arose to obey her request, but she willed him to stay awhile, till the olde Lady warranted him assurance from the rest of her seruants: nor could he but commend her wit and discretion, who getting him security from all the Castle, made promise likewise, that *Gandalin* and the Dwarfie should be deliuered from imprisonment. Then came the ancient knight, of whom we spake before, and calling to *Amadis*, he sayd. Because me thinkes (Sir) your Shield is greatly impaired, and your sword

in like manner broken, take this shield and this mace, wherewith you may defend the Lyons when they come forth: for the giving this mace and the shield downe, *Amadis* willingly took them vp, returning this answer. Let me neuer be ingratefull to them that succor me in neede. By heauen, saide the knight, seeing you are loyal to work then beaste, no doubt is to be made of your mercy to reasonable creatures. *Amadis* opening the wicket, the Lyons furiously ran forth, and he entered the Castle, which they within perceiuing, came with the Ladies to entertaine him, desiring pardon for their offences committed, and presenting him *Gandalin* and the Dwarfie. By my soule, saide *Amadis*, neuer was I so misused vpon no occasion, but seeing all enmity is ouer-blowne, you must giue me a horse, for your seruants (I thank them) haue slaine mine. Sir knight, answered the olde Lady, it is now somewhat late, if you please to vnturne your selfe, and rest here this night, to morrow you shall haue a horse, or what else you neede. In hope you meane no worse then you say, quoth *Amadis*, I will not refuse your offer, because the time doth request no lesse.

Fourth-with was he married in a sumptuous chamber, and a costly mantle brought to wrap about him, then returning to the Ladies who attended him, comming they were stricken into admiration of his excellent beauty, but much more at his valour being so young: and casting his eye on her, at whose entreatance he let forth the Lyons, he repented her one of the fairest that euer was seene, but he spake nothing to her as yet, by reason hee promised in this

manner with the old Lady. I pray yee Madame let mee vnderstand, why the picture which I saw in the Chariot, hath his head so seperated. Sir Knight, quoth she, if you will promise to accomplish the couenants, before you be acquainted with the accident: I will tell ye, if not, I pray ye holde me excused. It were no reason Madame, replied *Amadis*, to promise any thing ouer-lightly, being ignorant to what it may relate: but if you will let me heare the couenants, they seeming reasonable, and in compasse of a Knights power to execute, feare not to tell me, for I will employ my vttermost therein. You haue reason; answered the Lady: then causing each one to withdraw, except the faire young virgin, she thus began. Vnderstand gentle Sir, that the figure of stone you behelde, was made in the remembrance of this Ladyes father, who lyeth entombed in the Chariot, being in his time a crowned King, but on an especiall festiuall day, as he helde open Court and royall, hee was assailed by his brother the vnckle to this mayden, who came to tell him, that the Crowne hee wore was his, by as good right as hee could clame it, they being both issued from one roote. Then drawing a sword, which he had hid vnder his mantle, gaue him such a stroke therewith on the head, that it parted in such sorte as you saw in the picture. Long time before did the traitour excogitate this treason, and to the end he might the better execute it, hee confederated himselfe secretly with certaine of the Kings seruants, by whose meanes he waxed the stronger in his enterprife. But the King being dead, this disloyall wretch was honoured with

the Crowne, for the murdered Prince had no other heire then this his faire daughter, whom the aged Knight that brought you hither had in guard, he shewing himselfe so faithfull to her, as he conuained her thence ere her vnckle could take her, & performed such painefull dilligence, that hee brought my orphaine Neece hither for her better safety. Afterward finding the meane to recover the body of the King her father, each day we put into our Chariot, riding there-with about the fields as you saw vs, we haue all sollemnely sworne not to shew it to any one, vnlesse by force of armes we should be compelled thereto: and though such a one happened to see it, yet would we not reueale why we conducted it so, except he would promise to reuenge this horrible treason. Now if you be a noble Knight, bound to prosecute vertue, and on so iust occasion, you will imploy the forces God hath lent ye in a matter of right: for my part, I will continue as I begun, vntill I finde two other Knights on this behalfe, that you three for vs may confound the traitour and his two sons, who will allow no combate, vnlesse they fight altogether, which they haue often published abroade: how such as will reprove their dealings, must come in this sorte. In sooth Madame, answered *Amadis*, great reason haue you to seeke meane of reuenge, for the most famous iniurie that euer I heard of, and he who hath done it, surely cannot long endure without shame and misfortune, because heauen scorneth such monstrous actions: but if you can bring it to passe, that one after another they will come to the combate, by the helpe of God

God I shall dispatch them. Ah sir, quoth she, they will neuer consent hereto. What would you haue me do then? (replied *Amadis*.) Mary if it stand with your liking, said the Lady, a yeece hance to repaire hither againe, if you liue so long, you shall finde some other here, for by that time I hope to get two knights more, and you the third to maintaine this quarrell. I promise ye, said *Amadis*, not to faile in this request, therefore neuer trouble your selfe to seeke other twaine, because I meane to bring them with mee, yea, such as shall well defend the right of this Lady, and reuenge the treason done the king her Father. These words he spake in respect he hoped ere then to find his brother *Galeor*, and intended to bring his Cozin *Agrais* with him, by whose assistance he doubted not to finish the enterprize. Right humbly the Ladies thanked him for his good will, and because, quoth they, they whom you must deale withall are valiant, rough, & expert in Arms, as any the circle of the world enioyeth: we request your choice may be made of such Knights, as shall be able to run through this worke. Beleeue me Ladies, answered *Amadis*, if I had found one I am in search of, I would not stand long studying for the third, were our enemies Diuels and no Men. Tell vs then gentle Sir, said the Lady, if you please, of what Countrey you are, and where we may finde you in time of our need? Madame, quoth he, I am of King *Lisuarte* Court, Knight and seruant to his Queene *Briana*.

By this time was supper ready, and the tables couered, wherefore they brake off talke and went into a very faire Hall, where such good cheere and honour was made him,

as might be deuised, euen vntill the house of rest came. The good night being given on all sides, by the Damsell that let loose the Lyons, hee was conducted to his chamber, where she kept him company as indifferent while, and among other speeches, she vttered this. You haue her nere you my Lord, who succoured you this day more then you imagine. Wherin faire Lady? answered *Amadis*. My selfe, quoth she by commandment of the young Princeesse, for pitying your perill and the wrong offered you, was charged to let loose the Lions from their Doune. I neuer saw, replied *Amadis*, a more wise and discrete Lady of her yeares. In sooth, said the Damsell, if she liue, she shal be endued with two extremities, the one in beauty, and the other in wisdom. I desire ye, quoth *Amadis*, to thanke her most humbly on my behalfe, and how in acknowledging the good she did me, henceforth I will remayne her Knight. I am wel content my Lord, answered the Damsell, to carry her this message, because I know it will be most welcome to her: so bidding him good night, she departed the chamber. Now was *Gandalin* and the Dwarf lodged in the next room, where they heard what had passed betwene *Amadis* and the Damsell, and because the Dwarf knew nothing as yet of his Masters loue to *Oriane*, he imagined some new affection was kindled betwene the young Princeesse and him, in respect of the offer he made to her her Knight. And to such end did he retaine this opinion, as was full *Amadis* after-ward had small ioy thereof: for hereby he thought to receiue a cruell death, as in continuance of this History shall be

be declared. The night being spent & bright day appearing, *Amadis* came to bid the Ladies farewell, requesting to know their names against whom he should combat. The Father, quoth the Lady, is named *Abiseos*, his eldest sonne, *Darison*, and the other *Dramis*, all 3. most valiant Gentlemen at arms, excelling al other in that countrey: which likewise is commonly called *Sabradisa*, confining on the Kingdome of *Serolys*. Very well replied *Amadis*, by Gods leaue we shall one day see what they can do. When he was armed, as he mounted on a lusty courser, the ancient Lady had given him, the young Princeesse presented him a goodly Sword, which sometime belonged to the King her Father, saying, Sir

Knight, I pray yehenceforth (for my sake) to weare this Sword as long as it will last, and I shall pray it may be helpfull to you in all your affaires. I assure ye faire Lady, answered *Amadis*, for your sake will I carefully keepe it, and thank you therefore with all my heart: hereof likewise ye may be persuaded, that I remaine to obey you, and shal aide you in all things concerning your estate and honour. Well might it be discerned in the Lady, how these humble thanks and his former offer, pleased her not a little, wherefore the Dwarf (who noted the gestures on eyther side) softly said to her, Madame, you haue this day made no small conquest, hauing so good a knight at your commandement.

### CHAP. XXIII.

*How Amadis departed from the Ladies Castle, and of the matters which were occurrent to him by the way.*

**A***Madis* being gone from the Ladies Castle, rode on without finding any aduenture, till he entered the Forrest of *Angaduce*, and the Dwarf riding somewhat before, saw a farre off, a Knight and a Damofel coming toward them. When the Knight came right against the Dwarf, hee drew his sword to offer him outrage: but he started aside, so that the blow lighted on his shoulders, wherewith he was in such feare, as he fell downe from his horse, crying out for help to his Maister, who seeing when he

smote him, made hast for his defence, thus speaking to the Knight. What mooues you (Sir) to wrong my Dwarf without cause: now trust mee it is but simple manhood, to lay hand on such an excrement of nature as hath no defence of himselfe, but being in my guard the presumption is great. I am sorry sir, answered the Knight, to giue you any displeasure, but I must needs take his head from his shoulders, because it is my gift to this Damofel. Sooner said *Amadis*, shalt thou loose thine own. So encountred they together, with such force, as they were both cast beside their

their horses: yet quickly recouering themselves, they began a most sharpe and cruell combat with their Swords. Now were they in greater danger of thier persons, then euer they had bene before, for their Shields being sliced in peeces, their swords coloured with their blood, their Armes broken, their helmes battered, and themselves so sore laboured: as they were constrained to draw back a while to take breath, when the knight that conducted the Damofel thus spake to *Amadis*. My friend you may iudge the danger wherewith we both may fall, if longer we continue the Combat: therefore I pray ye let mee haue my will on the Dwarf, and I will amend the offence afterward, if it may bee reamed an offence to you. What? said *Amadis*, doe you thinke me of such slender stomacke, as that I will suffer any thing of mine to be wronged in my presence? not so, I must and will defend him to the vttermost. And I must needs haue his head, answered the Knight. By Heauen quoth *Amadis*, one of ours shall first acquit him and that immediately. Herewith they charged each other againe, with such wonderfull courage appearing in eyther, as severall desire to gaine the honor of the combat, made them shew extream violence one against another: so that the best resolved of them both thought to die, by abundance of blood which issued from infinite wounds on his body, especially the Damofels champion, who thought he felt himselfe greatly impairing, yet made he no shew thereof, but held out with such braue viuacity of spirit, as his enemy found he had a hard task in hand.

At this instant as other knights

changed to passe by, who seeing the combatants in such danger, each other, determined to assist who should depart with victorie, and placing himselfe by the Damofel, demanded if shee knew them, or the cause of their quarrel, I must needs know them, answered the Damofel, because I see them together as you see, and this good hap is not a little pleasing to me, for it is impossible but one of them must die, nor doe I greatly care which of them it be, but if both end together, my joye would be the greater. Now name me, said the Knight, full well doe you manifest a wicked disposition, promising (for your pleasure) the death of two such braue men, whose health and safety you rather ought to desire, then to imagine such a silly thought toward them: but tell me I pray ye, what reason you haue to hate them so? That can I sufficiently, quoth she. He whose shield is most defaced, is the only man of the world, to whom mine Uncle *Arcales* wisheth most harme, he being named *Amadis*. And the other that combats with him, is *Galaor*, who not long since, slayd the chiefeest man I loued. It so fell out, that *Galaor* heretofore made me promise of any thing, I would request, and because this day I was most affectionate to his death, I haue brought him to death with such a one, as will hardly permit him to escape with life. For I knew the other to be one of the best Knights in the World, and whom this Dwarf (which you see) attendeth: I therefore desired *Galaor* to giue the little villaines head, being perswaded *Amadis* would rather die, then suffer it. Thus the one to deliuer me my request, and the other for his

Dwarffes defence, are fallen into the extremitie of their liues, which doth me good at the heart to behold. By my conscience Damofell, replied the Knight, I neuer thought such malice had remained in a woman of your sort, and I beleeue assuredly (being yet so yong) if longer you liue, you will accuse your self to such vilainie as this you begin withall: whereby you shall infect the ayre and the other elements, to the disadvantage of the honest and vertuous Ladies living at this day. But to shielde them from such danger, and these two good Knights, whom treacherously thou wouldest should kill each other, I will make a Sacrifice of thee according to thy deserts: then lifting vp his Sword, he smote her head quite from her shoulders, that it fell on the ground at her horse feet, saying: Take the reward of thy merits: for the loue I beare to thine Vnckle *Arcaleus*, who kept me his prisoner, till the vertuous Knight *Amadis* deliuered me: then running to the combatants, he cryed out aloud: Holde Lord *Amadis*, hold your hand, for the man you fight against is your brother *Galaor*. When *Amadis* heard these words, he threw down his Sword and Shield to the earth, and embracing *Galaor*, said. Alas my friend, my brother, rightly may I be termed the most vnhappy Knight in the world, offering you such outrage as I haue done. *Galaor* amazed at this aduerture, knew not what to say: but seeing how *Amadis* humbled himselfe on his knee, he fell downe likewise, desiring pardon, reputing himselfe wonderfull vnforgotten, in wronging thus his Lord and brother: then *Amadis* weeping with inward conceits of ioy, thus answered.

Noble brother, and my friend, I esteeme the passed perill well employed, because it beareth witness of what we are able to doe. So taking off their helmets to refresh themselves, they heartily thanked the Knight that thus caused their acquaintance: whereupon he told them all what the Damofell said, at the execution hee committed on her. Now trust me, quoth *Galaor*, neuer was false strumpet more rightly serued, and now am I discharged of the promise I made her. All the better for mee, said the Dwarf, and thereby haue I saved my head: yet I meruaile why she should hate me so much, in respect I neuer saw her till now to my knowledge. Then did *Galaor* a large discourse, what happened betwene him, the Damofell, and her friend, as you haue heard already rehearsed: but the Knight that separated them, seeing their Armour all couered with blood, thus spake to them. My Lords, your Armours deliuer testimony enough, how discourteously your Swords haue intreated your bodies, wherefore me thinks long tarrying in this place, will but endanger your wounds: let me request ye then to mount on horseback, and accompany me to the Castle, whethet you shall not onely be welcome, but finde helpe for your hurts by one skilfull therein. Vvee will not refuse your gentle offer, said *Amadis*. Let vs set forward then answered the Knight, and happy shall I thinke my selfe, in doing any seruice that may be liking to you: for you Lord *Amadis* deliuered mee from the cruell imprisonment, as neuer poor knight endured the like. Where was it I pray? replied *Amadis*. At the castle, quoth he, of *Arcaleus* the enchanter, where you resto-

restored so many to liberty. How are you named? said *Amadis*. *Balays*, answered the Knight, and because my Castle is cleped *Carfanta*, I am often termed *Balays* of *Carfanta*, therefore my Lords vse mee and mine as your owne. Brother, said *Galaor*, seeing the Knight reputeth himselfe so much bounden to you, let vs goe with him.

In short time they arriued at the Castle of *Balays*, where they found Gentlemen and Ladies that courteously entertained them: by reason *Balays* had sent them word before, how he brought with him the two best Knights in the world, *Amadis* who deliuered him from the strong prison of *Arcaleus*, and his noble brother *Galaor*. For this cause were they welcommed much more honourably, and brought into a goodly chamber to be vnarmed, where likewise stood two costly beds, and a table furnished with fouraigne medicins for their wounds, the cure whereof, two Ladies (being Nieces to *Balays*) vnderooke, for they were very learnedly skilled in Chirurgery. Now did they imploy their vttermost cunning, to recopence *Amadis* for his worthy pains, in restoring their Vnckle from the slauerie of *Arcaleus*: so that within few daies, they felt themselves indifferently amended, and almost able to beare their Armour as they did before. Hereupon, *Amadis* comming with his brother *Galaor*, declared how to seeke him, he departed, from the Court of King *Lisuart*, promising not to returne without his company: wherefore he intreated him to yeelde no deniall, in respect no

Princes Court was better frequented with Chiuallrie, nor could he finde more honour in any other place. My Lord, quoth *Galaor*, I intend to accomplish what you please to command me, albeit I desire not as yet to be knowne among men of account: first would I haue my deedes giue some witness, how desirous I am to imitate your proceedings, or else to die in this religious affection. Certes brother, answered *Amadis*, for this matter you neede not abandon the place, seeing your renown is already greater then mine, if so be I haue any at all: yea it is darkened by the illustre splendour of your Chiuallrie. Ah my Lord, replied *Galaor*, neuer disguise matters in this order with me, seeing not in deedes, no, not so much as in thought, am I able to reach the height of such honour. Leauce we then this talke, said *Amadis*, for our kingly father maketh no difference of vertue betwene vs: but will ye know what I haue presently deuised? I see well we must stay here longer for our health, then otherwise we would, for which cause I intend if you thinke good, to send my Dwarf before to King *Lisuart* Court, that he may aduertise the Queene of our stay, and so soone as we are able to trauaile, we meane not to tarry long from her. Doe as you please, answered *Galaor*. Presently was the Dwarf dispatched thence, who made such good speed in his iourney, as within few dayes he arriued at *Windsore*, where King *Lisuart* was then accompanied with many good Knights.

CHAP.



*How King Lisuart being in the chase, saw a furre off three Knights armed coming toward him, and what followed thereupon.*

**I**T chanced on a certaine day, that King *Lisuart* summoned a meeting in *Windfore* Forrest, which was well stored with red Deere, and all other game needfull for hunting. And as he was in chase of a Hart, hee espied a good distance from him, three armed Knights to crosse the way: wherefore he sent a Squire to them, with request that they would come vnto him: vpon this message they immediatly obeyed, returning with the Squire to the King, and when they drew neere him, he quickly knew *Galuanes*, because he had seen him many times before: when embracing him, the King bad him hartily welcom, and the rest in his company likewise, for he was a Prince, that most graciously entertrayned all Knights, especially strangers: then hee demanded what the other were. My Lord, quoth *Galuanes*, this young Prince is my Nephew *Agrais*, son to the king of *Scottes*, and one of the best Knights in the world I dare assure ye: the other is *Olinas*, whom your Maiesty hath well knowne heretofore. The King embraced them very louingly, saying to *Agrais*: Faire Cozin, I must needs take this gentlenesse very kindly, that you would vouchsafe to see me. As for you sir *Olinas*, I thought you had forgotten vs, considering the long time since you were here: and in sooth it is a matter very displeasing to mee, when so good a Knight as you are would so absent himselfe. Dread Lord, answered *Olinas*, my earnest affaires kept mee hence against my

will, which hath made me the more negligent in your seruice: and yet I am not free from them, as (if you please) I shall let ye vnderstand. Then he reported, how *Galuanes* and *Agrais* came to his Castle, by meanes of the Damosell that conducted them thither, whom they very worthily delivered from death: likewise how the Duke of *Bristoy* treacherously slew his Cozin, for which hee humbly craved iustice, with free liberty to combat before his Maiesty, where he doubted not to make him confesse his treason. After the King had well pondered his discourse, and vnderstood the hard dealing of the Duke: he was highly discontented for he knew *Olinas* Cozin to be a good Knight, whereupon he thus answered. Beleeue mee seeing the Duke hath committed such a fault, & you request iustice of me, assure your selfe to obtaine it, and I will send for him to come iustifie his person.

Presently the King gave ouer hunting, returning with the knights to his court, conferring on many matters by the way: among which the King demanded of *Galuanes*, why the Duke of *Bristoy* would haue burned the Damosell whom they reskued. Because Sir, quoth he, she brought a knight named *Galaor* into his pallace, and (as we vnderstand) it was in the night time, and no other reason had hee to alledge. Why? said the king, & *madis* is gone to seeke *Galaor*, but since his departure wee were put in a terrible feare, by *Arcalam*, who said hee had slaine him. But are you certaine sir, answered

*Agrais*, that he liueth? Yea indeede, quoth the king, *Brandorvas* and *Grindaloy* came hither since then, and they gaue vs such credible testimony of his welfare, as I may full well assure ye thereof: for loth am I to offend any other; because no one can desire his good and honour more then I doe. It is the argument of your good nature replied *Agrais*; likewise in respect of his bounty and valour, hee deserueth to be loued of you, euen with like affection as good men wish to their like.

By this time are they come to the Court, where these news were quickly brought to the Queene, which reioyced very many, especially faire *Olinas*, who loued *Agrais* deerer then her selfe, and the Princeesse *Mabila* his sister was not sorry: for as shee came from the Queenes chamber, she met *Olinas*, who thus spake to her. You cannot chuse (Madam), but bee well pleased with your Brothers coming. Very true, quoth *Mabila*, for I loue him as mine owne heart. Desire then I praye the Queene, said *Olinas*, to send for him to her chamber, to the end we may haue the meane to confer with him together, so shall the pleasure of you both be fully satisfied. That shall I doe, answered *Mabila*, so going to the Queenes chamber, she thus spake to her Maiesty. It were good (Madam) you should see my brother and mine Vnckle *Galuanes*, in respect they are come hither to honour you with their seruice. Sweete friend, said the Queene, I take it very gently that you haue so well aduised me, for I promise ye I am very desirous to see them: wherewith she sent one of her Ladies to the King, desiring him that they might come to her, which he

liking very well, said. Gentlemen, my Queene is desirous to see you all three, let me then request your consent herein. You must iudge if *Agrais* liked this moti6, because he certainly knew to finde there, the princeesse *Olinas*, the choice Lady and Mistresse of his heart. But when they came among the Ladies, their entertainment was good and gracious, especially by the Queene her selfe, who caused them to sit downe by her, as meaning matter of more priuate conference. Many familiar speeches were entercoursed betweene them, and practising by all meanes to welcom them honourably: for she was the onely Queene of the world that toonest could win the hearts of Gentlemen, and therein tooke no little pleasure, by means whereof, she was loued of most and least, being reputed the most vertuous Lady liuing.

Now had *Olinas* made choice of her place next *Mabila*, thinking *Agrais* would toonest come to his sister when he left the Queene: but while hee beguiled the time with her, his eye glanced on the object of his heart, which he being vnable so to dissemble, was compelled to a sodaine alteration of countenance, and could not withdraw his lookes from the Adamant of his thoughts: which the Queene somewhat noted, yet imagined his Sister *Mabila* was the cause, and that he was desirous to talke with her, wherefore she thus spake to him. My Lord *Agrais*, will ye not see your sister whom you loue so deely? Yes Madam, quoth he, so it please you to glue me leaue? Here with he arose and came to *Mabila* who stepping forward to meet him you must thinke *Olinas* was not one iote behinde her, but welcomed him

him both with semblable reuerence. But *Olinia* louing him as you haue heard, (ouermastring her will with reason, as a most wise & well aduised Princeſſe) gaue little in outward ſhew : till after ſundry amiable ſpeeches paſſing betwene them three, they had ſome leysure to ſtand a while aſunder from all the reſt. Yet did *Agrais* keep neere his Miſtreſſe, taking her by the hand, and playing with her fingers often ſent her a ſweete kiſſe in imagination : ſo that by intire regarding her, he was transported with ſuch ſinguler delight, as he neither heard or made any anſwere to his ſiſter. She being ignorant as yet of his diſeaſe, knew not well what to thinke, for notwithstanding all her courteous ſpeeches, his minde was otherwiſe buſied then on her : yet in the end ſhe diſcovered the cauſe of this ſuddaine mutation, perceiuing that *Olinia* and her brother were ſurprized with each others loue. Whereupon ſhe thought it beſt to fauor them with more liberty, feigning a deſire to ſpeake with her Vnckle *Galuanes*, which ſhe prettily coloured in this manner. Brother, quoth ſhe, I pray ye intreate the Queene that my Vnckle may come hither, becauſe it is long time ſince I ſaw him, and I haue, ſomewhat to acquaint him with all ſecretly. I hope to obtaine ſo much of her, answered *Agrais*: whereupon he went to the Queene & thus ſpoke. Madam, if you could, ſpare mine vnckle a little, you might doe his Neece a very great pleaſure, for ſhe is deſirous to talke with him. And reaſon good, ſaid the Queene : at which words *Galuanes* went with him, which *Abbiſſa* ſeeing, ſhe humbly met him, making great reuerence, when *Galuanes* vſing the like to her, began in

this manner. *Fayre Neece*, I am glad to ſee you in ſuch good diſpoſition : but tell me I pray ye, do you like *Scotland* or this Countrey better? We ſhall conſer, quoth ſhe, more conueniently at the window, becauſe I haue many things to tell ye, which were needeleſſe for my brother to vnderſtand : nor ſhall he, they being of ſuch importance as they are. Theſe words ſhee vttered ſmiling, and with a marueilous good grace : cheefely becauſe her brother might conuerſe with his friend alone. And well ſaid *Neece*, answered *Galuanes*, our ſecrets are ſo great, as they muſt needes bee kept from him. So taking her by the hand, they went aſide to one of the windowes, by meanes whereof, *Agrais* and *Olinia* were left alone : When the Prince perceiuing hee had liberty to ſpeake, trembling in abundance of affection, he began thus. Madam, to accompliſh your commandement when you parted from mee, as alſo to ſatisfie my heart which neuer enioyeth reſt, but in the gracious contentment, conueyed thereto through mine eyes by your preſence, I am come hither to ſerue and obey you : aſſuring you on my Faith, that being neere your perſon, my ſpirits ſet themſelves viuified in ſuch fort, as they ſuffer with great ſtrength the anguiſhes of continuall affliction, which makes them dead in time of your abſence. Therefore I deſire ye (if it bee your pleaſure) to limit mee ſome better place hereafter, in place where I may often ſee and doe you ſeruiſe : And as hee would haue proceeded further, *Olinia* interrupted him in this manner. Alas my Lord, I am ſo aſſured of the loue you beare me, and alſo of the griefe you endure,

we being abſent one from another: as no other prooffe is required, then what mine owne heart doth plainly teſtifie, ſmothering a diſpleaſure worſe then death it ſelfe: whereto oftentimes I could very gladly ſubmit my ſelfe, did not a cheerefull hope rebacke this deſpaire, how one day our loue ſhall meet together with happy contentation. And perſwade your ſelfe, that I daily trauaile in remembrance of our mutuall loue: meane while (ſweete friend) temporize and diſmay not. Miſtreſſe, ſayde *Agrais*, you haue already ſo bound me to you, as I muſt (in duty) temporize till time you pleaſe, but I deſire ye to conſider, how I haue no forces; but ſuch as you muſt ſortifie mee withall: ſo that if you continue your graces to me as you haue begun, I ſhall haue ſtrength to ſeeke according to your deſire. While I liue my Lord, quoth ſhe, neuer will I faile ye, be you then ſo well aduiſed, as euery one may loue and eſteeme ye : whereby I may ſtrive to loue you more then any other can, in reſpect you are none of theirs, or your owne, but mine only. And if it happen ſome to ſpeake of you, you muſt thinke I receiue incomprehenſible ioy therein, for it cannot bee without recital of your haughty courage & chivalry : yet my heart dreading the dangerous occurrences, which may enſue by ouer bold venturing, accompanieth the former pleaſure with as great a paine. *Agrais* aſhamed to heare himſelfe ſo praiſed, vailed his looks, and ſhee loath to offend him, altered her ſpeech, demanding what hee was determined to doe. On my faith, Madam, quoth he, I wil do nothing but what you pleaſe to command me I will then, ſayde *Olinia*, that hence-

forth you keep company with your Coſen *Amadis*, for I knowe hee loueth you intirely, and if he counſell you to bee one of this Court, deny it not. Beleeue me (*Maddin*) answered *Agrais*, both you and ſuch good counſelling will I obey: for ſetting your diuine ſelfe aſide, there is no man living whom I wil more credite with mine affaires, then my honourable Coſen *Amadis*.

At theſe words the Queene called him and *Galuanes* likewise, hauing knowledg of him in her fathers kingdome of *Denmark*, where hee performed many braue deedes of armes : and likewiſe in *Normy*, ſo that ſame reported him a right good Knight. They being with her, the Queene remembered *Galuanes* of her ancient acquaintance, at which inſtant the Princeſſe *Olinia* came to them, wherfore *Agrais* aroſe to ſalute her, leaſting *Galuanes* with the Queene, and ſetled himſelfe to conuerſe with *Olinia*, who entertained him maruailous kindly, as well for *Amadis* ſake whom hee loued, as alſo the curteſie hee ſhewed her in *Scotland*, when king *Edwart* left her there at his returne from *Denmark*, as you haue heard before declared : the Princeſſe then ſpeaking to *Agrais*. Coſen, we haue daily deſired your preſence I heere, eſpecially your ſiſter, who not many dayes ſince was in great grief, by ſake newes that came hither of *Amadis* death your kinſeman, as truly you would haue wondered theſe. Good reaſon had ſhe Madam, quoth *Agrais*, to be ſorrowful, and not ſhe alone, but all the reſt of his linage were bound to ſo leſſe : knowing what our Coſen dyeth, the cheife and moſt excellent of all dyeth, yea the beſt Knight that was in this

mour on his body, and you must thinke, his death would haue beene auenged and accompanied with many other. Ah, sayde she, the villaine *Arcaus* shrewdly affrighted vs, and euill death betide him, for troubling this royall Court in this sorte.

By this time the King was ready to the table, wherefore he sent for the three knights from the Queen, commanding them to sit downe by him in company of many great Lords and Barons. And as the seruice came in, two Knights entered the hall, who falling on their knees before the King, the first of the thus spake. God prosper your Maiestie with increase of ioy and honor, most humbly I desire to know, if *Amadis of Gaule* be in this Court. Not at this present, answered the King, but we could wish he were heere. Right glad would I be, sayd the Knight, to finde him, because by his meanes I hope to recouer what I am now farre from. Tell vs my friend, quoth the King, if you please, who you are. My Lord, replied the stranger, I am a sad Knight named *Angriote d'Esfranus*, and this other is my brother, when King *Arban* of *Norwales* (who was there present) heard him speake of *Angriote*, hee started from the table, and stepping to the King, sayde. Doth not your Maiestie know Sir *Angriote*? Such as haue dealt with him, wil say he is one of the best knights in your Kingdome. My friend, quoth the king to *Angriote*, I pray you arise and pardon me, if I haue not honoured you according to your desert: for the fault was only committed through ignorance, but be sure you are welcome: that with heart, but say I desire ye, how came you acquainted with *Amadis*. My

Lord, replied *Angriote*, I haue knowne him no long time, and my first acquaintance was very deedly bought, for I neuer thought to dye till I was wounded: but he that did me the harme, promised afterward to giue me help, which is very needfull now to cure me: hereupon he added the whole accident as you heard it before. In sooth, sayde the king, I would be glad these matters should haue a good end, but now come sit downe with vs to dinner, afterward we will consider thereon as we may. Next to king *Arban* was *Angriote* placed, and as they were about to rise from the table, *Dadan* the Dwarfie to *Amadis* entered the hall: whom *Angriote* knowing, called him, demanding where he had left his Maister, because he saw him last in his company. Sir, quoth the Dwarfie, wherefore I haue left him, hee maketh good account of you: then falling on his knee before the King, he thus began. *Amadis* my Lord humbly saluteth your Maiestie, and all the rest of his friends in this Court. Dwarfie, sayd the king, wheredidst thou leaue him? In such a place my Lord, quoth the dwarfie, where he is of good cheere: but if you would knowe any more, it must be in the presence of the Queene. With right good will, answered the King, and heereupon sat presently for the Queene, who quickly comming, being attended on by diuers beautifull Ladies, the most part of them the amorous friends to the knight then wayting on the king, where by they purchased leaue (during the Dwarfies discourse) to deale with them, at better leysure, then long time before they could: but the Dwarfie beholding the Queene present, thus proceeded. Madame,

my Lord and master *Amadis* in all humble reuerence saluteth your excellency, commanding mee to tell ye, that he hath found Prince *Galaor* his brother hee sought for. Now trust me, said the Queene, I am heartily glad thereof. But on my credit Madame, quoth the Dwarfie, neuer was heard of such a perillous meeting of two brethren, for if God had not the better provided, both the one and the other had neuer beene seene againe, so neere were they both at the point of death: but by hap a good Knight arrived there, who names himselfe *Balays*, and hee found the meanes to agree them. Then tolde hee all the whole accident, how *Balays* slew the Damsel that procured their quarrell, for which, *Balays* was highly commended of them all. But where hast thou left them replied the Queene? At the Castle of *Carfanta* Madame, sayde the Dwarfie, where *Balays* dwelleth, fro whence I was dispatched hither with this message. But tel me Dwarfie, quoth

the Queene, what thinkest thou of *Galaor*? I thinke Madame answered the Dwarfie, that hee is one of the goodliest knights in the world, carrying a resolution not one iot inferior to the best: and did you see him in company of my Lord, you could make litle difference between them.

I maruaile saide the Queene that they come not hither. Assure your selfe, replied the Dwarfie, no sooner shall they recouer health, but they will be here with you, for so they expressly commanded me to tell yee. So ioyfull was the King hereof, that he minded to keepe open Court after they were come: commanding his Lords & Barons not to depart his Court, whereto they all willingly cōdescended. He likewise desired the Queene, to send for all the chiefe Ladies in the Realme: For the more honorably quoth hee, you are attended on by Ladies, the more Knights shall they finde heere to deserue their loue, on whom I will bestow many rich gifts and presents.

## CHAP. X XV.

*How Amadis, Galaor, and Balays determined to trauaile to King Lisuart, and what aduentures happened by the way betwene them.*

**S**o long sojourned *Amadis* and *Galaor*, at the Castle of *Balays* of *Carfanta*, as their wounds beeing thoroughly healed: they intended to returne to King *Lisuart's* Court, before they would enterprife any other aduenture. *Balays* who desired to beare them company, for the familiar acquaintance he had now with them: intreated them to afford him so much fauour, where-

with they were very well contented. Departing thence, they rid toward *Windsor*, and after they had iourned fve dayes, they came into a foure corned way, in the midst whereof stood a tree, and vnder it a dead Knight lay on a rich bed, with great waxe tapers standing burning at the bouldier and feete, which notwithstanding any great winde could not be extinguished. The dead knight was vnarmed, & not covered with any thing, where

fore easily might a great many wounds be deferred on his head, and a trunction of a Lance, pierced with the iron quite through his necke and throte; beside, in such manner did the dead Knight holde vp his hands thereon, as if he would haue pulled forth the Lance. Greatly was *Amadis* and the rest amazed hereat, and saie they would know what the knight should bee, but they could see no body of whom they might enquire, nor any place neere that was inhabited, which moued *Amadis* thus to speake. Doubtlesse without some great occasion, this knight was not brought into this place, being alone and furnished in this strange manner: if wee stay heere awhile, some aduenture or other must needes ensue thereon. And so think I, answered *Galaor*, whereupon hee thus spake. Brother, this rash oath, some what displeaseth me, for I doubt it will be an occasion of our long tarying in this place. What I haue said, answered *Galaor*, is done: with these words he alighted from his horse, and fate downe at the dead knights feete: which the other twaine perceiuing, concluded not to leaue him, but euen to take such part as he did.

Now was it between noone and euening, when they being thus dismounted, might at more ease visite the wounds of the dead man: and *Amadis* seeing his hands on the trunction in his throte, confounded with grieve and maruaile, hee sayd. Doubtlesse hee yeelded his spirite as he now holdes his hands, because they still remaine in the place. And as they were thus communing together, they heard a great noyle of some coming toward them, when presently they espied a knight and two Squires,

the one bearing a shielde and helmet, and the other driuing a Damofell before him, the giuing many shriekes and out-cryes, because the knight smote her often with the end of his Launce: and thus they passed by the bed where the dead knight lay, when the Damofell sawe the three knights by the coate, cryed. Ah good knight who lyest on the bed, werr thou aliue, I am sure thou wouldest not suffer me to bee thus cruelly handled, if hazarding thy body in a thousand perills might defend me: would God the death of these villaines had excused thine. Sayst thou so? quoth the knight that vsed her so hardly, and thou shalt know the price of thy words: then smote her with his Lance so cruelly ouer the head, as made the blood in great abundance to trickle downe her face, and so rode on still bearing her: which *Amadis* grieuing to behold, said to his companions. In sooth, neuer did I see such a bad minded knight, to out-rage a poor Damofell in such pittifull manner: but (if God be my guide) he shall not long abuse her so. Therefore brother, quoth he to *Galaor*, if I tarry too long, set forward I praye to *Windsore* with *Balays*, and I will come thither with what speede I may: the mounting on horse-back, hee commanded *Gandalin* to follow him, and galloped after the knight, who by this time had gained a great deale of ground.

Thus remained *Galaor* and *Balays* alone there till night, which being very darke, they could not see, but heard a knight come riding the same way which *Amadis* took, who complaining of grieve in his legges, lay holding himselfe about his horse necke, but when hee espied *Galaor* and *Balays*, he demanded if they

they knew the knight that rid so fast the same way he came. Why aske you? answered *Galaor*. Because sayd the knight, I would hee might breake his necke, for hee runneth so rudely, as if hee followed some Diuell. What rudenesse hath hee offered you? answered *Galaor*. He would not tell mee, quoth the knight, neither by entreatance or other curteous meane, why hee made such haste: and I seeing him so selfe-willed, layde holde on his horse bridle, resolved to make him pay for his boldnes, and to satisfie me either by friendship or force. Well, answered *Balays*, what did hee there tell ye? Nothing to my demand replyed the knight, but peremptorily thus spake. That hee would tarry no longer to tell mee, except I first combated with him. Hereupon we charged each other, he giuing me such a shrewde push with his Lance, as I and my horse were combled quite ouer, and in the fall I brake my legges as you may beholde. When *Galaor* and *Balays* heard his reporte, knowing full well hee spake of *Amadis*, they fell into a great laughter, saying. In good faith now are you taught against another time, not to bee ouer importunate to knowe any thing against a mans will. Belike you mocke me then, answered the knight, and trust mee you may happen to repent it: then coming neere *Galaors* horse, hee gaue him such a blowe on his nose, as making him furiously to break his bridle, gaue him liberty likewise to run about the field, and thinking he was not reuenged enough, sought how to seue *Balays* horse in the same sorte, but they both stepped between with their Lances, & kept him off: which the knight perceiuing, giuing the spurs to his horse,

he rode away, saying. If I had sped the other knight so well, I would haue thought my selfe halfe repenced: learne you then to scorne me another time. Is it true, said *Balays*, and God neuer help me in my need, if I make thee wee leaue thy horse for the other thou hast some raunging. Presently he leaped from his saddle, desiring *Galaor* to stay for him til morning, for then at the vttermost he hoped to returne.

By these accidents is *Galaor* left alone, attending newes of the matter he vowed: for hee had sent his Squire to recover his horse, which by mishap rooke his way into a thicke woode. In meane while the greater part of the night is spent, & *Galaor* could enioy no rest, through extreame affliction after his emprise: but about breake of day hee found his spirits so ouer-watched, as (whether he would or no) he was compelled to take off his helmet & shield, and leaning on them forgot himselfe so much, that when hee awaked, hee neither saw the candles burning, or the dead knight which lay on the bed, whereat he became so sorrowful, as he shewed in these complaints. Well I perceiue, that I am vnworthy so high an emprise, seeing so fondly I haue sayled in such an easy matter. Now see I how Fortune (through this my sloathfulness) scorneth the little honour she shewed mee at the beginning: and well may she do so, seeing I would so carelesly fall asleep, at such a time as the commanded me to watch. But seeing I haue so wilfully offended, I will amend it by an answerable penance: for I will recover on foote with the trouble of my body, the murdered man carried from me in my sleep. Then followed he the track of their feet, whom he imagined had conuayed

thence the Knight, and walking on warily, as loth to faile thereof, he heard the neighing of a horse: which made him shape his course thitherward, albeit hee could discern no body, yet passed he further, because hee heard the like noise of other horses. Not far had he gone, but he espied two Knights armed, one of them being alighted from his horse, & reading certtine letters engrauen on a stone, afterward he sayde to his companions. In vaine did they make mee come to this place, for I vnderstand not one word of them: wherewith hee mounted againe, and they rode away not seeing *Galaor*, but hee called to them, saying. Gentlemen, can ye tell me who hath caryed away a dead knight, who not long since, lay vnder a tree in the foure cornered streete behinde? Verily, answered one of them, wee knowe nothing thereof, but about midnight we saw three Damofels passe by, and ten Squires with them conducting a litter. Which way did they take? said *Galaor*. This on the left hand, replied the knight: so giuing them thanks, he went the same way he was directed, & soon after saw a Damofell comming toward him, to whom he said. It may be (Lady) you can tell me who hath caryed away the dead knight, that lay vnder the tree not farre hence. If you wil promise me, quoth she, to reuenge his death, which is an exceeding great grieffe to many: I will resolue you therein. I will not stick for that, answered *Galaor*, for it seemeth by your words, it is an act of iustice to do it. Very true, said the Damofell, mount vp before me on my Palfary, and I shall direct ye to your desire. Whe they had ridden about two miles, shee shewed him a maruailous faire ca-

stle, and alighting at the gate, she bad him enter: But remember, quoth she, what you haue promised. And because I haue solicited you hereto, I pray yee let me vnderstand your name. I am called *Galaor*, quoth hee, and thinke you shall heereafter finde mee in king *Lisuarte's* Court, then any where else. I am satisfied, said the Damofell, to God I commend yce: then shee turned bridle and rode away, but *Galaor* entred the castle, where he found the dead laid in the midst of the Court, & by him stood many making great lamentation. Neuertheless *Galaor* approaching neere, and stepping to an anciant knight, demanded of him what the dead knight was. Sir, answered the olde man, while hee liued he was such a one, as all the world may bemoane his misfortune. Do you know his name? saide *Galaor*. He is called *Anthebon* replied the other, one of the most vertuous Gentlemen that euer liued in *Gaul*. When *Galaor* heard he was a subject to king *Perion* his father, his heart began to storme, and as hee pittied him the more, so his desire encreased to reuenge his death: whereupon hee entreated the knight to acquaint him with the truth of this tragicall accident: Sir, quoth he, this infortunate Gentleman which you see, was (in respect of his bounty and vertue) marryed to a wife, who now lamenteth for him, she being the Lady of this Castle. In time they had a very faire daughter, and she growing in yeeres, was beloued by a knight, our too neere neighbour: but the young Damofell euer hated him, and about all other could not abide him. Whereof he getting intelligence, determined by some meane or other to

steale

steale her hence, and being so resolved, (forgetting God, as also his owne honour) watched when this good knight, (as customely he vsed) should goe to the cornered street there to succour such as often were distressed, because it is the most dangerous place in this countrey.

Knowing him thus to bee from home, the disloyall wretch entred this Castle, and finding the maiden in company of her mother, with diuerse Gentlewomen heere disporting: mauer them all, forcibly hee tooke her away, before wee could fall the bridge to succor her. Hereupon (as wee afterward vnderstood) shee did nothing day and night but grievously mourne, despising all the inticing blandishments the knight vsed to her: which in the end displeased him so much, as hee began in this sort to reprocue her. Lady you know that I loue yee with all my heart, desiring onely to haue the like of you, meaning no otherwise then honourably to make you my wife: but you scornefully disdain me, albeit I am descended of a more noble house then your father is, which maketh mee maruell very much, what should moue you thus to bee mine enemy? In good faith I will tell yee, quoth shee. I heretofore made promise to my mother, and such is still my deliberation: that I would neuer match with any husband, if hee were not so good a knight, and comparable with my father in chivalry, for which shee made choyce of him among all other knights: to which wordes, he thus answered. By heauen I see you loue me now, for ere it bee long I will make sufficient prooffe, that I am a better man at armes then he. Within a while after, hee left his

Castle, being well mounted and armed, placing himselfe vnder the tree where you saw this knight dead, to what intent I cannot tell: but unhappily the Lord of this Castle came that way, having left his horse and Armour, because hee wholly intended to take the ayre. The cowardly wretch seeing what aduantage hee had of him, and remembering the promise hee made his Lady, thought it place commodious to get him reputation, and no witnesses by to report the contrary, so without giuing him warning, or speaking one word to him, stealing behinde him, smote his Launce thorough his necke, as you heere behelde.

Thus, vnprouided of defence, likewise suddenly and most villanously, was this good knight slaine: and yet the bloody traytour not satisfied, alighting from his horse, gave him many needlesse cruell woundes with his sworde, and so despitously left him there. In good faith, answered *Galaor*, the deede is monstrous, vnable to pass without common reprehension: but seeing you haue vouchsafed me this fauour, I pray ye tell me, why was he afterwarde laide on such a costly bed vnder the tree? Because it being a continuall passage for knights errant, said the olde man, to try if any would be so honourably prouoked, as to reuenge an act of such shame and contempt, after wee had acquainted them with this sad discourse. I found him alone at the tree, replied *Galaor*, what was the cause then you left him so? Your demand is not amisse, quoth the olde man, for foure Squires were euer wont to garde him: but because the knight who did the murder came and threatened to kill

P 4 them,



them, we were constrained to bring away the body hither. I maruell, sayde *Galaor*, that I heard not the noyse, it may well bee sayd I slept soundly. Are you he, replied the old man, whom we found leaning asleep on your helmet? The very same man, answered *Galaor*. Why did you rest so homely there? quoth the old man. To reuenge his death, sayd *Galaor*, if by reason I might doe so much. Ah worthy Sir, answered the old man, heauen grant the finishing thereof to your honour: then taking him by the hand, he brought him to the bed whereon the dead man lay, thus speaking to the sorrowfull Lady. Madame, this knight faith (to his power) he will reuenge the death of your Lord. Alas gentle knight quoth she, the God of heauen keepe you in that good minde, for I can finde no kinned or friend in this countrey, who will doe so much for me, because my Lord was a stranger: yet while he liuid, every one shewed great friendship in lookes, but now their kindnes is cold enough. Lady, answered *Galaor*, in respect both he and I were borne in one countrey, my desire is the greater to reuenge his death. Are you, said the Lady, the sonne to King *Perion of Gaule*, whom my deceased Lord often told me was in king *Lisuarte's*

Court? Neuer came I there Madame, replied *Galaor*, in all my life: but tell me what he is that did this treason, and in what place I may find him? Gentle Lord, quoth she, you shall be conducted thither if you please: neuertheless I stand in doubt, (considering the perill) you will mislike the enterprise, as many others haue done, who were heretofore accompanied thither. Herein Madame, said *Galaor*, is the difference between good and bad, yet if you will allow mee so much, as you did them that made refusal, happily I may speede better then they did. The Lady noting his honourable disposition, called two of her Damofels, commanding them to conduct *Galaor* to the knight that held her daughter perforce. In sooth Madame, said the Prince, little credite shall you haue by sending me on foote, my owne horse I lost (not long since) in the woode by hard fortune: I pray ye then let mee haue another on this condition, that if I reuenge not your cause, I may stand bound to deliuer him againe. You shall haue one Sir, answered the Lady, for I hope by your prowesse: not onely our possessions shall remaine at your disposing, but our selues likewise your obedient seruants.

## CHAP. XXVI.

*How Galaor reuenged the death of the Knight whom he found slaine in the bed under the tree.*



Hus departed *Galaor* in conduct of the two Damofels, who leading him the neere way through a Forrest, at the further side thereof shew-

ed him a Castle, beeing the place whither they were commanded to bring him, whereupon they thus spake to the Prince. Beholde my Lord, at this Fortresse you may reuenge the murdered Knights death.

death. Tell me his name, replied *Galaor*. Hee is called *Palingues*, answered the Damofels. Being now come hard by the Castle, they saw the gate was fast, which made *Galaor* call out aloud, whereat an armed Knight came on the battlements, demanding what he sought for. I would enter the Castle answered *Galaor*. This gate, quoth hee, is appointed to no other end, but for the comming forth of such as remaine heere within. Which way shall I enter then? said *Galaor*. I will shew you, quoth the Knight: But I doubt I shall trauell in vaine, and that you dare not come to vs. Now trust mee, replied *Galaor*, I would faine haue beene within long since. Wee shall quickly see that, sayd the Knight, if your hardinesse be such as you make shew of: alight from your horse, and come neer the Castle wall. Which *laor* did, giuing his horse to the Damofels, went to the place where hee was appointed.

Then came the Knight againe and another with him, seeming of greater stature then his companion: they two winding a winche about, ouer the wall let downe a basket with a cord, saying to the Prince. If you will enter here, the passage by the basket is this high way. But if I put my selfe therein, answered *Galaor*, will yee promise to draw me vp in safety? Yea truly, quoth they, albeit afterwarde wee will not warrant yee. Crediting their wordes, hee entered the basket, saying. Draw me vp, for on your honest promise I aduventure. Herewith they beganne to winde vp the basket, which the Damofels seeing, marueling not a little at *Galaor's* hardinesse, sayde. Ah good, Knight God shield thee from treason, for doubtlesse

thou shewest a gentle and valiant heart.

By this time the Knights had drawn him vp, taking him and the basket in at the top, afterwards the knights thus began with him. Gentleman, it is necessary you sweare to aide the Lord of this Castle, against such as would quarrell with him for the death of *Arthebon*, otherwise you neuer shall depart hence. What? sayd *Galaor*. Did one of you twaine kill him? Why demand you? replied the other. Because, quoth hee, I am come to let the murderer knowe, how hee hath committed a deed of horrible treason. Come yee for that intent? sayd they, now surely you might haue beene a great deale better aduised: Darest thou threaten vs, and art in our custody? alas, wee must haue another manner of account at thy hands, & we must chastice the folly wherewith thy braine is troubled: then drawing their swordes, they layde vpon him very furiously. When *Galaor* sawe himselfe thus wronged both in words and deeds, hee entred into such choller, as quickly hee made them feeble the edge of his sword, so that the Damofels might easily heare the clanching of the stroakes on the Armour: for the two knights were strong and vigorous, and *Galaor* well moued with hot displeasure. Ah God, quoth one of the Damofels, hark how the worthy knight dealeth with the traytors, let vs not depart hence till wee see some end thereof. All this while *Galaor* so laboured his enemies with such sharpe charges, as their hearts began somewhat to despair, for to one of them hee gaue such a blow on the helmet, as his sword entred three fingers deepe into his head: after-

afterard hee buffered him with the hilts of his sword, that hee made him fall on his knees to the ground. In meane space the other spared not *Galaor*, but layd loaden on him to reuenge his companion, whose head the Prince had now seuered from his shoulders: and comming to the other, the coward began to turne his backe, running downe the staires faster then euer hee came vp: but *Galaor* followed so nimbly, that laying holde on him, hee made him sure for euer letting downe the basket againe, to drawe vp any more knights on the wals.

Now because the Prince knewe not *Palingues*, and doubting one of these twaine to be he, he threw them ouer the battlements to the Ladies, bidding them to looke on them & afterward to resolue him: but they answered they were so mangled as they could not iudge of them, and they were perswaded that *Palingues* was neither of these twaine. Whereupon *Galaor* went downe into the Castle, and as hee looked euery where about him, he espied a faire young Lady, who cryed aloud: *Palingues, Palingues*, is this the great chualry for which thou wouldest be renowned? now thou flyest like a cowardly and faint hearted knight, yet sayest thou wert a better man at armes then my murdered father, whom thou killedst (as thou vauntest) in combat hand to hand. In sooth what euer I doubted is now come to passe: why dost thou not attend this Knight who looketh for thee? if there be any manly heart or spirit in thee, shew it now in need when thy life depends thereon. At these words *Galaor* looked more aside, and espied *Palingues* well armed, who was opening the doore

of a Tower to saue himselfe, wherefore he stepped to him, saying. Beleeue mee Knight, this flying will little aduantage thee, and lesse the strong holde thou wouldest enter into: for thou must answer the life of good *Anthebon*, whose death thou diddest compasse by monstrous villany. *Palingues* seeing there was no other remedy, turned and fiercely smote at *Galaor*, his sword entering so farre into the Princes shield, as he was not able to pull it out againe: by meanes whereof *Galaor* reached him such a blowe, that therewith his right arme was cut quite from his body, the griefe whereof so pained him, as hee ran into the chamber where the Ladie was, thinking by this poore shift to defend his life. But *Galaor* getting hold on his legges, dragged him along on his backe out againe, and with his sword smote his head from his shoulders. This is, quoth hee, the reward of thy treacheries done to *Anthebon*, and payment for thy treason in the action of his death.

The daughter of *Anthebon* being present at this deede, hauing heard *Galaor* often name her father, fell on her knees before him with these words. Alas my Lord, you haue bound me in such duty to you, as neuer shall I be able to requite your paines, my selfe being of such simple and slender ability: but the good will I haue to recompence this benefite, hath imprinted daily prayers in my heart to God for you, hauing so iustly reuenged the death of my father, and the wrongfull forcing of this traytour. *Galaor* curteously taking her vp, embracing her in his armes, thus answered. On my faith faire friend, hee were a man of little sence, that would offer dis-

displeasure to such a one as you are, seeing you much better deserve to be loued and ferted, then with griefe or fauour to bee offended: but tell mee, haue you any more enemies in this Castle? No Sir, replied the Damofell, those which remaine, are to doe you honour and obeysance. Let vs goe then, quoth hee, to let in two Damofels, who were my guides hither from your Lady mother. So taking him by the hand, shee commanded the gate to bee opened, & the two Damofels entered leading *Galaor*'s horse: but when they sawe their yong Mistresse, they humbly made her reuerence, demanding if her fathers death were reuenged to her desire. Yea verily, quoth shee, I thanke God and this knight, who hath done that many other could not doe.

It was now the vehement hot time of the day, wherefore *Galaor* tooke off his helme to refresh himselfe, when the Lady seeing him so young and beautifull, as also so valiant in deedes of armes: began to bee touched with loue, and setting aside both feare and bashfulness, shee began to imbrace and kisse him, saying. My honorable Lord & friend, more cause haue I to loue you then any other creature liuing. In good faith, quoth he, and I loue you likewise, as well in respect of your beauty and good grace, as also for your deceased fathers sake, he and I being borne in one Countrie. May it please ye Sir, sayde shee, to tell mee your name? Such as are acquainted with mee, answered the Prince, tearme mee *Galaor*. In sooth my Lord, quoth shee, often haue I heard my father speake of Sir *Amadis* your brother, and of you likewise, saying you were the sons

to the King of *Gaul*, his liege Lord and Soueraigne. As thus they deuised, they entered alone into a chamber, while the Damofels with the rest were pouding viands: wherefore *Galaor* seeing time and place so commodious, to request the loue of her that vsed him so kindly, shee being a Lady, young, fresh and faire, named *Branducta*: himselfe likewise active and desirous of such sweete baytes, thus spake. Madame, if *Palingues* loued you as I haue heard, hee had great reason for it, knowing you to bee such a one as I see you are: for my selfe, who haue so little acquaintance with you, am already so deepe in deuotion to your gracious nature, as I would repete my selfe happy, if you granted me the fauour I desire, accepting mee as your friend and seruant.

The Lady not one iot behinde him in amorous affection, shapod him this answer. I haue tolde yee my Lord, that I loue you more then any other liuing creature: therefore you may be certainly assured, how my desire is to please you in all things whatsoever. During these speeches, *Galaor* still held his loue in his armes, kissing and roying with her so pleasantly, as *Diana* soone after lost her interest in the maiden, whereunto *Branducta* yeilded with greater contentment, then all her former resistances to *Palingues*: from whom shee kept her virginity so long, that shee was now content to bestow it on the French Prince, and hee hauing a good stomacke to such dainty dyet, made her loue him the better for it while shee liued. But see an unhappy inconuenience, after many embracings and amorous conferences, as they would once more haue be-

besieged the Fortresse of loue: the Damofels came to tell them that dinner was ready, wherefore (though loath) they were forced to leaue off, accompanying the Damofels to the place where the tables were covered, which was vnder a Gallery inuironed with trees.

As they sate at the table, and discoursed of many matters, among other things *Brandesta* declared to him, how *Palingues* (standing in feare of him and his brother *Amadis*) caused this Castle to be kept so strongly: considering that her Father *Anthebon* was of *Gaule*, and king *Perions* subiect, the sooner would they assay to worke reuenge for his death. For this reason, quoth she, hee allowed no other entrance then by the basket into this Castle, where I haue liued in maruailous grieve and sorrowe, as neuer shall I desire to tarry here longer: therefore right gentle Lord and friend, might it so like you, without any longer stay I would gladly see my mother, who will not bee a little glad of my returne, and yours likewise. *Galaor* was very well contented, and though it were late, yet got they to horse-backe, departing from the Castle: but for all their haste they were two houres benighted;

which brake no square in respect of the good newes, the good Lady with all her family ioyfully receiving them, with all honourable meanes could bee deuised, besides the comforted widow cast herself at his feete, vsing these speeches. Worthy Lord, both I and mine are bound to you for euer, referring to your disposition whatsoeuer wee enioy, because you are the restorer & confirmer of all. I thank you Madame, answered *Galaor*, for your friendly offers, but where no desert is, the requirall must of force be farre more easie. Now the greater part of the night being spent, they brake off talke and requathed themselves to rest, and *Galaor* being alone in his chamber, remembered his louely breakfast before dinner with his new friend, who likewise was so deepe in consideration thereof, that shee could wish such another ere supper, and whether she did or no, iudge you. For no sooner knew she euery one to bee in bedde, but secretly shee came to *Galaors* chamber, where shee had no churlish speeches to driue her away, but most daintie, sweete, and gracious entertainment: what else they did I know not, but shee tarried there all morning, and then returned without scene of any.

## CHAP. XXVII.

*How Amadis pursuing the Knight that misused the Damofel, met another Knight with whom he combated, and what happened to him afterwards.*

**Y**OU haue heard what haste *Amadis* made after the Damofell, whom the knight led away perforce, beating and misusing her very cruelly:

but hee happened to meet with another Knight, who demanded of him why he rid so fast. What haue you to do? answered *Amadis*, whether it be my pleasure to ride fast or soft. In good faith, said the knight,

Ispeake it as one willing to helpe you, if you be offered wrong by any, that you may goe in better assurance if you be affraid. Truly you may spare this labour, replied *Amadis*, for at this time I haue no neede of your helpe. When the other heard this answer, hee imagined that *Amadis* mocked him, which made him come and lay holde on the bridle of his horse, saying. By God Sir, you shall answer me my demand, otherwise, I meane to breake your pate. I know not what thou canst doe, quoth *Amadis*, but I will dispatch my selfe of thee by combat, and that way resolueth thee in thy request: for rash mindes must haue rough medicines, and such as seeke to knowe more then they neede, often feelee more then they would. So fetching their carrie, the Knight shivering his Launce in peece: but *Amadis* sent both horse and man to the ground, and with such violence, as the Knights legges were broken in the fall, and *Amadis* had leasure to follow his iourney: this was the man you heard of before, that made *Galaors* Squire goe looke his maisters horse.

But now to proceede with *Amadis*, who tarried not to helpe the Knight vp againe, such speed made he after his intent, as at length hee ouer-tooke him that led away the Damofell, & comming neere him, thus spake. Forbear Sir I pray ye, and wrong the Ladie no more. What wrong haue I done her? answered the Knight. The most shamefullest, sayde *Amadis*, could be deuised. What? quoth the Knight, you would then chastise me? No Sir, answered *Amadis*, but aduise ye by reason for your owne benefit. I heare yee well enough, said the Knight, but you may re-

turne as wise as you came. It is true, quoth *Amadis*, then stepping to the Squire that led the Damofels Palfrey, he sternely sayd. Villaine, let the woman alone, or thou dyest the death. The Squire being affraid, fled away, which the knight seeing, and being very angry thereat, hee came to *Amadis* with these words. Beleeue me Sir, you command very audaciously: but if I knowe no how to chaunge such brauers, let armour neuer come on my backe againe. So placing their Lawnces in their nests, they brake their stauces in the encounter: but the knight was cast headlong out of his saddle, and before hee could recover him selfe againe, *Amadis* stood ready with his sword to take his life, which hee perceiuing, and that hee must bee forced to beg his pardon, thus spake. Good Sir take pittie on mee, and looke what offence I haue committed by any hard dealing, shall be amended by better vsage. Swear then, sayde *Amadis*, neuer to wrong Lady or Damofell against her will. With all my heart, replied the Knight, and as *Amadis* was saying so receiue his oath, hee cast his sword into his horse belly, which made him presently fall downe dead, and *Amadis* stood neath in very great danger, so that before hee could get vp againe, the knight deliuered him many cruel strokes, saying. By God Sir, now shall I deerey teach you how you enterprised another time to correct your better. At length *Amadis* recovered footing, and gaue him such my such a blow through the right of his helme, as cut the right side of his face cleane away, whereupon he was so astonied, that hee fell on the ground, where *Amadis* setting his foot on him, quickly separated

besieged the Fortresse of loue: the Damofels came to tell them that dinner was ready, wherefore (though loath) they were forced to leaue off, accompanying the Damofels to the place where the tables were couered, which was vnder a Gallery inuironed with trees.

As they sate at the table, and discoursed of many matters, among other things *Brandus* declared to him, how *Palingues* (standing in feare of him and his brother *Amadis*) caused this Castle to be kept so strongly: considering that her Father *Anthebon* was of *Gaule*, and king *Perions* subiect, the sooner would they assaye to worke reuenge for his death. For this reason, quoth she, hee allowed no other entrance then by the basket into this Castle, where I haue liued in maruailous grieve and sorrowe, as neuer shall I desire to tarry here longer: therefore right gentle Lord and friend, might it so like you, without any longer stay I would gladly see my mother, who will not bee a little glad of my returne, and yours likewise. *Galant* was very well contented, and though it were late, yet got they to horse-backe, departing from the Castle: but for all their haste they were two houres benighted,

which brake no square in respect of the good newes, the good Lady with all her family ioyfully receiving them, with all honourable meanes could bee deuised, beside the comforted widow cast herselfe at his feete, vsing these speeches. Worthy Lord, both I and mine are bound to you for euer, referring to your disposition whatfoeuer wee enioy, because you are the restorer & confirmer of all. I thank you Madame, answered *Galant*, for your friendly offers, but where no desert is, the requitall must of force be farre more easie. Now the greater part of the night being spent, they brake off talke and bequeathed themselves to rest, and *Galant* being alone in his chamber, remembered his louely breakfast before dinner with his new friend: who likewise was so deepe in consideration thereof, that shee could wish such another ere supper, and whether shee did or no, iudge you. For no sooner knew shee euery one to bee in bedde, but secretly shee came to *Galant*'s chamber, where shee had no churlish speeches to driue her away, but most dainy, sweete, and gracious entertainment: what else they did I know not, but shee carryed there till morning, and then returned without secne of any.

## CHAP. XXVII.

*How Amadis pursuing the Knight that misused the Damofel, met another Knight with whom he combated, and what happened to him afterward.*

**Y**OU haue heard what haste *Amadis* made after the Damofell, whom the knight led away perforce, beating and misusing her very cruelly:

but hee happened to meet with another Knight, who demanded of him why he rid so fast. What haue you to do? answered *Amadis*, whether it be my pleasure to ride fast or soft. In good faith, said the knight,

I speake it as one willing to helpe you, if you be offered wrong by any, that you may goe in better assurance if you bee affraid. Truly you may spare this labour, replied *Amadis*, for at this time I haue no neede of your helpe. When the other heard this answer, hee imagined that *Amadis* mocked him, which made him come and lay holde on the bridle of his horse, saying. By God Sir, you shall answer my demand, otherwise, I meane to breake your pate. I know not what thou canst doe, quoth *Amadis*, but I will dispatch my selfe of thee by combat, and that way resoluethee in thy request: for rash mindes must haue rough medicines, and such as seeke to knowe more then they neede, often feelee more then they would. So fetching their carriere, the Knight shivering his Launce in peece: but *Amadis* sent both horse and man to the ground, and with such violence, as the Knights legges were broken in the fall, and *Amadis* had leasure to follow his journey: this was the man you heard of before, that made *Galant*'s Squire goe looke his maisters horse.

But now to proceede with *Amadis*, who carryed not to helpe the Knight vp againe, such speed made he after his intent, as at length hee out-tooke him that led away the Damofell, & comming neere him, thus spake. Forbeare Sir I pray ye, and wrong the Ladie no more. What wrong haue I done her? answered the Knight. The most shamefullest, sayde *Amadis*, could be deuised. What? quoth the Knight, you would then chastise me? No Sir, answered *Amadis*, but aduise ye by reason for your owne benefit. I heare yee well enough, said the Knight, but you may re-

turne as wife as you came. It is true, quoth *Amadis*, then stepping to the Squire that led the Damofels Palfrey, he steamely sayd. Villaine, let the woman alone, or thou dyest the death. The Squire being affraid, fled away, which the knight seeing, and being very angry therat, hee came to *Amadis* with these words. Beleeue me Sir, you command very audaciously: but if I knowe no how to charme such brauers, let armour neuer come on my backe againe. So placing their Launces in their rests, they brake their stauces in the encounter: but the knight was cast headlong out of his saddle, and before hee could recouer him selfe againe, *Amadis* stood ready with his sword to take his life, which hee perceiving, and that hee must bee forced to beg his pardon, thus spake. Gentle Sir, take pittie on mee, and looke what offence I haue committed by any hard dealing, shall be amended by better vfrage. Swear me then, *Amadis*, neuer to wrong Lady or Damofell against her will. With all my heart, replied the Knight, and as *Amadis* was ready to receiue his oath, the villain thrust his sword into his horse's belly, which made him presently fall downe dead, and *Amadis* underneath in very great danger: so that before hee could get vp againe, the knight deliuered him many cruel strokes, saying. By God Sir, now shall I deerey teach you how you enterprised another time to correct your better. At length *Amadis* recovered footing, and with his own my such a blow through the right of his helme, as cut the top of his face cleane away; whereupon he was so astonied, that he fell on the ground; where *Amadis* seeing his foot on him, quickly separated

ted his heade from his shoulders. The night induring all this while, yet comfortably lightened by faire *Cynthia*, whereby the Damosell sawe the death of her aduersary, which made her fall at the princes feete with these wordes. Alas worthy knight, the God of heauen (not I) must require this honourable kindnesse, for without your helpe, much better had death beene to mee then life: yet let mee request this further curtesie, no more but your company to a Castle not far hence, where I shall be in safety to my owne desire, and to trauell alone thither will be dangerous for mee. Nor shall you faire Damosell, sayd *Amadis*, be in such feare, for I will not leaue yee till you be where you would: so hee willed *Gandalin* to bring him the knights horse, and to helpe the Damosell on her palfray, afterward they rode as shee conducted them. Of many matters they conferred by the way, shee acquainting him with the whole history of the dead knight, whose death you haue heard how *Galun* reuenged. And coming into a meddowe by a riuers side, they alighted from their horses, betaking themselues to sleepe a little, because it was night, shee lying on a mantle that *Gandalin* spread for her, and *Amadis* leaning on his helmet as his best pillowe. But as they all thus slept, it chanced a knight came riding by, who sawe them, and without making any noyse, with the great end of his lance, hee jogged the Damosell till shee awaked. When shee beheld him on horse-backe, thincking it was *Amadis* that conducted her, shee started vp as one halfe asleepe, demanding if it pleased him to departe. Yea marry, quoth the knight, and taking her

by the hand mounted her vp behinde him. Why doe ye so? said the Damosell, your Squire might helpe mee to mine owne horse, without troubling you in this manner. It were needlesse, answered the knight, for seeing a booty is so well offered, I meane to haue the carriage of it my selfe. These wordes made the Damosell suspect her selfe deceived, and looking backe, shee behelde where *Amadis* lay fast asleepe, wherefore shee cried out so loud as shee could. Ah helpe me Sir, quoth shee, for heere is one I knowe not will forcibly carry mee away. When the knight heard what a noyse shee made, hee gaue the spurres to his horse, riding away in a maine gallop: but *Amadis* awaking and not seeing the Damosell, was greatly displeased, hastily calling *Gandalin* to bring him his horse, afterward hee posted the same way the knight had taken. At length hee got a sight of them, marking their entrance into a thicket of trees where he mistooke his way in such sort, as hee knew not which side of the woode to take: when (though hee was one of the most patient men in the world) hee conceived this griefe marueilous vnkindly, saying to himselfe. Now may the Damosell well report, that I haue done her as much shame as succour: for if I defended her from one forcer, by my sloathfulness I haue left her in the power of one worse then hee.

Thus riding in and out among the brambles, offering much iniurie to his horse, at length he heard the winding of a horn, which made him follow the sound thereof, imagining the knight did it for his pleasure. Soone after he espied a strong Castle on the top

\*of

of a mountayne, and approaching neere perceiued it was begirt with a high wall, whereon were many great Towers, and the gate made sure with mighty barres. As hee was seeking some place of entrance, the watch discrying him, said. What man at so late an houre commeth armed so neere? I am a strange knight, answered *Amadis*. What would you haue? sayde the watch. I seeke for one, quoth *Amadis*, who not long since tooke a Damosell from mee. Wee sawe none such, answered the watch. Hereupon *Amadis* passed further, and discerned a little doore open, and the Damosell with the knight to enter thereat on foot, because they could not come neere it on horse-backe: then *Amadis* calling to the knight, thus spake. Stay a while I pray you Sir, and tell mee before you shut the gate, if you be the man that tooke a Damosell from mee? If I tooke her from you, answered the knight, you had the lesse care of her keeping. And the lesse manhood, sayde *Amadis*, was in you, to steale her from mee while I slept, being assured you could no otherwise haue carryed her from me so lightly. My friend, quoth the knight, I haue her indeede, and of her owne good will she came with mee, without any manner of soliciting or forcing. In good faith, answered *Amadis*, if you shew her me, and shee affirme as much, I shall rest contented. It is not long to morning, sayde the knight, and then I will let yee see her here, if you will enter vpon the custome of the Castle? What is the custome? replied *Amadis*. You shall be tolde it, quoth the knight, and I thinke you will finde it too hard for your enterprising. If I would presenly agree thereto?

said *Amadis*, might I now enter? Not as yet, answered the knight, but if you tarry till day light, wee shall behold what you can doe. So going in, hee clapped too the doore, wherefore *Amadis* was contented to awaite the breake of day, vnder a tuft of trees hard by the Castle; and when the Sunne began to appeare, hee heard the gate open, which made him quickly mount on horse-backe: then coming forward, hee saw a knight armed at all points, and vnder him a lusty courser, whereupon the Porter called *Amadis*, demanding if he would enter. Why haue I tarried heere else, answered *Amadis*, all this while? But first, quoth the Porter, you must vnderstand our custome, to the ende you may not say afterwards that you were deceived. I therefore thus aduise ye, how whi you shall be entered here, you must enter combate with this knight; and if he get the victory, you must sweare to doe the commandement of a Lady heere within, or else be committed to a miserable prison. If hee chance to be vanquished, it is nothing in respect, for you must be commanded to another gate, and there enter combate with another, whom if your fortune likewise be so good as to ouer come: you haue then to deale with three other, they being right valiant and tryed men at armes, and all these you must fight against vnder the first condition: but if you beare away the honour in each of these attempts, right shall bee done in whatsoeuer you demand. On these conditions, replied *Amadis*, I am well content to enter, and the rather because I would see the man, who tooke the Damosell from me this night past.

So soon as hee was entered, the first



first Knight and he encountered together: but *Amadis* overthrew his enemy so furiously, as his right arme was broken in the fall, which made him glad to yeelde for safety of his life. At the second gate hee found the other two ready tarrying for him, threatening him with prison, if he did not well defend himselfe: I must buy my libertie, quoth *Amadis*, with your dearest blood, keepe it therefore from me so well as you can. Then couering themselves with their shields, hee met one of them so directly, that he fell to the ground, and his horse vpon him, very sore shaken and brused with his fall, then comming to the other with his sword drawne, hee smote the helmet quite beside his head, when being loth to proceed any further with him, he said. Now trust me knight, it is the greatest folly in the world to fight, thy head being bare. Care not you for that, answered the knight, I will keepe as safe as you shall do yours. And I will trie your cunning, quoth *Amadis*: then striking a full blow at him, which the knight shifting his body aside to escape, lost his stirrups and fell beside his horse, when *Amadis* quickly stepping to him, got holde of him by the necke, saying. See knight how well thou defendest thy head, art thou not well worthy to loose it for thy wordes? When the knight saw what danger he was in, he fell on his knee, and thus spake to the Prince. Ah worthy Sir, for Gods sake mercy, and seeing you haue so well aduised me, neuer will I hereafter bee so rash in folly, therefore I yeeld my selfe to your mercy.

*Amadis* being thus pacified, took a fresh Lance & mounted on horse-back againe, riding now to the last gate, where hee spied La-

dyes and Gentlewomen on the wales, who said to each other: If he passe the bridge in despite of our guardants, hee shall performe a most rare deede of Chiuakie? While thus they communed, the three knights came forth to assault *Amadis*, the first of them vsing these words. Knight yeeld thy selfe, or sweare to doe the commandment of this Lady. These are but wordes, answered *Amadis*, from which I can defend my selfe well enough: I cannot put on the mind to yeeld my selfe, or accomplish the Ladyes will you speake of, because I know not what she is. Here, upon a fierce combat began betwene the Prince and the three, who showing themselves to be right hardy knights, and *Amadis* full loth to receiue the foyle, made a long doubtfull iudgement of victory: till at length by many wounds & great losse of blood, the knights were able to holde out no longer, flying into the castle for safety of themselves, yet one of them fell downe by the way, whom *Amadis* swore should die if hee yeelded not presently. Alas my Lord, quoth he, with all my heart I submit my selfe, and so ought all other to do that combat against you, considering your happy fortune since you came to this Castle. With these words hee deliuered his sword to the Prince, who gaue it him againe, and followed the other twaine into the Pallace, where hee met diuers Ladies and Damosels, when the choyce of them all in beauty, thus spake to him. Stay awhile Sir knight if you please, for already you haue done so much, as you shall obtaine what you demand. Lady, quoth *Amadis*, command then your Champions to yeelde themselves vanquished.

quished. And what shall you bee the better for that? said she. When I accepted the conditions of entrance here, answered *Amadis*, it was saide, that I must either be killed, or vanquish him that I combated withall: otherwise I haue not the right was promised. You misvnderstood it replied the Lady, for it was tolde ye, that if perforce you entered thus farre, you should haue reason in what you demanded: say now therefore what is your pleasure? I demand a Damosell, quoth hee, which a Knight tooke from mee this last night past, while I slept by the riuers side not farre hence, and hither hee brought her against her will. I pray ye Sir, said the Lady to sit downe and rest ye: in meane while I will send for the Knight who shall answer ye. Then sat they downe together, and she proceeded on this manner. I entreate yee Sir to resolve me, if you know a Knight that is named *Amadis*? Why aske ye Lady? quoth hee. Because, replied shee, all the guard you found in this Castle was appointed for him, and assure your selfe if hee entered heere, hee neuer should depart hence againe, if first hee denied not a promise that he made. What was it? answered *Amadis*. I will tel ye Sir, said she on this condition, that with your utmost indeauor you will cause him to acquite it, either by Armes or otherwise, by reason hee hath not done it iustly. In sooth Madam, quoth hee, if *Amadis* hath promised any thing wherein hee is

to bee touched, I will (if I can) cause him to discharge it. Shee who vnderstood not to what end hee thus spake, answered as followeth. I heartily thank ye Sir, wherefore vnderstand that *Amadis* promised *Angriote d'Esfrance*, how hee would procure his Ladies liking to him, and yet shee neuer could loue him in all her life: this is a matter against all right, seeing forced affection is no loue, but dolour and misery, then according to your promise, you must labour to cause *Amadis* reuoke this vnreasonable offer.

Now trust mee Madame, replied the Prince, you say right well I will endeauour to make him acquite you. These wordes procured many thanks from her, shee not comprehending his meaning heerein: for hee hoped to accomplish his promise both to *Angriote* and her, without derogating either to one or other, as you hereafter shall vnderstand. But Madame, saide hee, are you shee whom *Angriote* loueth so? Yea truly, quoth shee. I know him very well answered *Amadis*, that hee is one of the best Knights in the world, and one thinkes there is no Lady or Gentlewoman so rich or faire, but might thinke herselfe happy and fortunate to haue such a Knight as he. Neuertheless, what I say, is not to exempt my selfe from the promise I made ye, for I will performe it if I can, because hee is a much better Knight then *Amadis*, albeit he made him that gentle offer.

## CHAP. XXXIII.

*How Amadis combated with the Knight, that did steale the Damosell from him when he slept, and vanquished him.*

**H**ile thus they were deuising together, there entred another Knight of large proportion and strong, all armed except with his helmet and gauntlets, who thus spake to Amadis. It is tolde me Sir knight, that you demaund a Damosell which I brought hither yester night, and how I did it against her will: but assure your self, she would more willingly goe with mee then stay with you, therefore you may be ashamed thus to quarrel, nor haue I any reason to deliuer her againe to you. I would faine see her, answered Amadis. It must bee then, saide the Knight, whether I will or no: but if you will maintaine that I haue wronged her, and she ought not to be mine, I presently will approue the contrarie on your petition by combat. Thou canst not please mee better, quoth Amadis, and in this cause will I stand not onely against thee, but resolutely against all other: that by right the appertayneth not to thee, if willingly she gaue not her consent. Let vs see then, saide the Knight, which of vs shall haue her. This man of whom we speake, was Vncle germaine to Angriotes Ladie, named Gafinan, shee louing and honouring him aboue all her other kinred: for hee was the best Knight of his race, wise and discrete, so that shee was altogether gouerned by his counsell. A goodly horse beeing brought forth for him, hee laced on his helmet, and stood provided to enter the combat: which Gromensla the Lady

perceiuing, she came to her Vncle with these wordes. Certes my Lord, it were better you should forbear this difference, because I would bee sory any harme should come to either of you, in respect you Vncle are the only man of the world, whom I am most bound to loue: and this knight I haue greatest hope in, for he hath promised to deale with Amadis, as hee shall acquite the offer made to Angriotes. What Neece? answered Gafinan, thinke you that hee or any his like, can disswade the most gentle Knight on the earth from accomplishing his promise? I know not quoth shee, what you imagine of him, but I repute him one of the best in the worlde: otherwise hee could not haue entered here by strength of Armes as hee did. Say you so? replied Gafinan, you praise him ouer much, for passing the defended gates, when men of such mean account had their in charge. I say not this, but that hee may be a gentle Knight, yet I hope to take him forth a new lesson, and a better then he if he were here: in witness of my wordes, your selfe shall presently be iudge, seeing him vanquished, and my selfe peaceably possessed of the Damosell we quarrell for. Herewith the Lady left them, and they giuing the spurres to their horses, brake their Lances gallantly in the encounter, and with such fury met their bodies, that Gafinan was dismounted, hauing a shrewd fall against the ground: yet he arose quickly, and drawing his sworde, stood by a Marble pillar in the midst of the

Court

Court, thinking Amadis could there little endomge him being on horse backe, and hee on foot. When Amadis sawe how his enemy dallied with him, he waxed very angry, and striking fiercely at him, by mishap his sworde lighted short on the pillar, and so was broken in three peeces: now grew he into greater choller, and seeing in what danger hee was, vnprovided of a weapon to defend himselfe withall, hee leaped from his horse so quickly as hee could, when Gafinan thus spake to him. Knight, thou seest thy death at hand, if thou grant not the Damosell to be mine. Nor will I yeelde thereto, saide Amadis: vnlesse herselfe doe first consent. Thou shalt see, quoth Gafinan, how deere this foolish humour will cost thee. With these wordes hee deliuered him many sharpe strokes, but Amadis awarded them very cunningly, so that the most of them were bestowed in vaine rather wounding his enemy, then doing him any harme. And so long endured the combat, as the beholders were not a little amazed thereat, wondering that Gafinan got not the victorie all the while, considering what aduantage hee had of the Prince: but Amadis concluded with himselfe (being thus extremely handled) to hazard rather a speedy conquest, then a lingering shame, and therefore ranne violently vpon Gafinan, getting fast holde about his body so suddenly, as he had scant leasure to lift his armes for resistance, but was constrained to let fall his sworde and struggle with Amadis, who griped him terribly, so stroue they to overthrow each other. But Amadis threw him with such might against the Marble pillar, that hee

was not able to stirre hand or foot; and afterwarde taking vp Gafinans sworde, brake the buckles of his helmet, then catching him by the head, hee said. Knight thou hast offered mee great wrong since my sworde brake, now shall I bee reuenged on thee, when I haue made thee a proffer to smite off his head, which Gromensla seeing, cryed Alas gentle Knight, haue pittie on him and mee together. With abundance of teares trickling downe her cheekes, shee came and fell at the feete of Amadis, shewing the affection of her request, and her inwarde griefe to beholde her Vncles death: all which Amadis well noting, feigned himselfe moued willing to kill him then before saying. If your suite were reasonable, I would consent thereto: but hee hath so wronged mee and without occasion, as I cannot be satisfied but with the losse of his head. Alas my Lord, quoth shee, for Gods sake demand for me other satisfaction, for I will doe whatsoever you please, to redeeme his life. Lady, answered Amadis, there be but two things which may saue his life: first the deliuerance of the Damosell againe to mee, secondly, that you sweare to me as a loyall Lady, to mee meane the first night hee held by king Bisart, and to graunt a boone to me, which I will require of you. Gafinan beholding the danger of his life, saide to his Niece, suffer me not shorrough your default to die, but take compassion on mee, and promise the knight faithfully what he shall demand, which shee presently did, wherefore Amadis permitted him to arise, & said to the Lady, I assure yee Madame, the suite I must obtrayne of you, gaine faith nothing of my promise concerning Amadis.

Q 4

for

for I will accomplish it to my vertuost, see then no default bee made on your behalfe. In sooth my Lord, quoth shee, I will performe my duty effectually, knowing well, such men ought to bee honoured for vertue, in whom so singular prowesse is apparant: much lesse they neede any doubt be made, of any thing preiudiciall to my vntayned report. Be bolde thereof sayd *Amadis*: then was the *Damosell* sent for, and shee being come, *Amadis* demanded if shee would accompany him any further? Worthy Sir, answered the *Damosell*, I will doe what you please to command mee, in respect I haue bene so painefull to you, as while I liue I am yours in all obedience. But were it your liking, considering the affection *Galeor* beares mee, as hee would rather hazard the combate, then deliuer mee, albeit by treachery hee carried mee away: I gladly could afford to stay with him. By heauen

saie *Damosell*, replied *Galeor*, most true and sincere is my affection towards you, and as I request yee not to forsake mee, so doe I desire your good opinion. You haue chosen (*Damosell*) one of the best knights in the worlde, sayd *Amadis*, and seeing you like each other so well, with all my heart I leaue yee together. They both thanked him very humbly, intreating hee would rest himselfe there certaine dayes: but hee would returne to his brother *Galeor*, whom hee left vnder the tree by the dead knight, by meanes wherof he excused his departure, and mounting on horse-backe, commanded *Gadalin* to carry the broken peeces of his sword with him. By hap *Galeor* over-heard him, wherfore hee presented him with his sword, which hee accepted, and a Launce that *Galeor* gave him: then leauiug the Castle, hee took the way againe toward the tree, where hee hoped to finde *Galeor* and *Balays*.

## CHAP. XXIX.

*How Balays belimed himselfe in his enterprife, pursuing the Knight that made Galeor lose his horse.*

**B**alays of Carfantu offended as you haue heard, with the Knights inuiolous prances to *Galeor*'s horse, followed him so fast as possibly hee could: but the other had gotten so farre before, as *Balays* heard no tydings of him, neither the lesse hee rode on till about midnight, when hee heard a voyce a long by a River's side. And shaping his course thither, hee found there five theues well armed with Crosses and Hatchets, who vil-

lainously would force a *Damosell*: one of them dradging her by the hayre of the head in a straite way on the mountaine, and the other beating her forward with great staves, *Balays* seeing them vilely abuse her, entred among them saying: Trayterous murderers, dare you so boldly lay holde on a *Damosell*? let her alone, else shall you die according to your deserts. Then running fiercely at one of them, his Launce passed quite thorow his body, so that he fell downe dead without any mouing. Whereupon

upon the other foure, would reuenge their companions death: & altogether inuiolous *Balays* with such sharp assaults, as one of them smote downe his horse vnder him: yet *Balays* dismayed nothing thereat, but being courageously resolved, quickly recovered footing, and drawing his sword, layde so fiercely about him, that another of them fell downe headlesse at his feet. In brieft, two more of them accompanied their fellows in like fortune, when the last seeing hee could not preuent like doome, fell on his knees before *Balays*, saying. Good my Lord haue compassion on me, for if I die in this wicked life I haue so long vsed, vndoubtedly both body and soule will perishe together. Since thou doest, answered *Balays*, so willingly acknowledge thy fault, thy life I giue thee, to the ende thy repentance hereafter may make amends for all: & faithfully hee kept promise with *Balays*, for soone after he became a religious Hermit, spending the rest of his dayes in great deuotion.

But now returneth *Balays* to the *Damosell*, who being not a little glad she was so happily deliuered, gaue him thanks for the succour shee found in such necessity, and hee requesting to know how shee happened into this daunger, shee thus begun. Having occasion (*Sir*) to trauell in these parts, in the narrow way on the mountaine they staid mee, it being the common place for their theeuish assaults: and after they had slaine my seruante, they brought mee into this place, all of them swearing to force me one after another, but God and you haue graciously deliuered me. Her modest behaviour in speech and comely beauty, made *Balays* to waxe somewhat enamoured, which

made him thus to disparage her in sooths saie *Damosell*: I perceiue they haue dealt with ye vngently, for they were very foolish to part with ye: but seeing some chaunce allowed such a convenient meeting, each where was may day a foundation of love, hee requested this faworable kinde office, that hee may not lose so good an opportunity. I must not *Sir*, quoth shee, how you are misinformed, but had they compelled mee to do their laste wishes, both God and hee would might holde mee excused: and contrariwise, if I should willingly grant you such an vngodly request, what excuse might I haue for either you or me? Hitherto you haue showed your selfe a well disposed knight; I giue therefore yee to accompany chiballrie, with continence and vertue; as by duty you are bound. *Amadis* *Balays* heard her answer so soberly, hee repented that hee had offered her such vnderstand wordes, saying. With reason (*faine virgin*) you haue fully satisfied mee, yet pardon me for attempting so bad a suite: in respect it is no lesse seemely for knights to moue Ladies with long; then for them modestly to deny as you haue done. And albeit we first we imagine it a great conquest to obtayne of them what we most desire: yet when wisely and discreetly they resist our inordinate appetites, keeping the thing (without which) they are worthy no praise: they bee euen of our selues more reuerenced and commended. This is the cause, quoth shee, why I more esteeme your succour to mine honour then my life, because the difference betwene the is farre incōparable. Well, said *Balays*, what will you now I shall do for you? Let vs leaue these dead car-

carcasses, replied the Damosell, and goe where wee may stay till day-light. I like your counsell, answered *Balays*, if I had another horse, but being now destitute, I know not what to doe. We will ride on my horse, saide the Damosell, till wee finde further remedy: so he mounting vp before the Damosell, they rode till they came to a pleasant meadow, where they rested themselves till Sunne rising, and then they went to horse backe againe. Now because *Balays*, intended to seeke the knight, who caused *Galaors* horse to escape away from him, hee asked the Damosell what should become of her. My Lord, quoth shee, not farre hence is a house, whither when you haue brought mee, you may depart to what place you please.

As thus they rode communing together, he sawe a knight come towards him, carrying his legge on his horses necke, but drawing nether, he put foote in stirrop, couching his Lance against *Balays*, and running at him, threwe him, and the Damosell both from the horse, afterward he vsed these speeches. In sooth Lady, I am sorrie for your fall, but to amend the wrong I haue done ye, I will bring you where you shall be contented, because he that hath the charge of you, is vnworthy to haue so faire a creature in his custody. Ere this had *Balays* recovered himselfe, and knowing him to bee the knight he sought for, hee drew his sworde saying. By thee villaine haue I lost my horse, and my companion thou hast in like sorte abused, now finding mee vnprovided, thou takest delight in offering me wrong: but both for him and my selfe will I be reuenged on thee, else let mee be thought vnworthy of my order.

What? quoth the knight, art thou one of them that mocked mee as I rid in the darke? I hope now I haue put the mockerie on thee. Hereupon they presently fell to combate, and many sharpe blowes were giuen on either side, till *Balays* at length fastning holde on his enemy, got him vnder foot, when renting his helmet from his head, hee tooke his life as ranfome for his villany: and breaking his sword in peeces, layd them by him, then mounting on his horse, and the Damosell on her owne, they took their way toward the tree wherche left *Galaor*.

But because their stomachs well serued them to meat, they alighted at a little Lodge, where dwelt two women of austere and holy life, who bestowed on them such cheer as they had: the Damosell acquainting them with all her mishap, and how *Balays* deliuered her from the thecues, at what time they intended to dishonor her hauing slaine her seruants, and shee destitute of helpe, whereof the holy women were very glad, by reason those thecues did much harme in that countrey. After they had refreshed themselves, *Balays* and the Damosell took their leaue, and comming to the tree, met *Amadis* therenewly returned from his enterprise: wherefore they concluded no more to sunder themselves, vntill they arrived at King *Lisuart* Court. By this time the night drew on apace, whereupon the Damosell earnestly intreated them, to lodge that night at her Fathers which was not farre off: they liking well of her friendly offer, went with her, beeing there entertained and vsed very honourably. Early in the morning arming themselves, they thanked their gentle

host

host & his daughter, framing their course towards *Windsore*, but by the way you must note, how *Balays* (according to his promise) pre-

sented his horse to *Galaor* which he won from the knight, and he refused it because he had another, so that *Balays* saued his oath thereby.

### CHAP. XXX.

*How King Lisuart held open Court most royally, and of that which happened in the meane time.*



Have heretofore declared, the ioy and content of good king *Lisuart*, for the newes brought by the Dwarfie, concerning the health of *Amadis* and *Galaor*: but the more to shew his princely minde, hee concluded at their comming to keepe a most royall and magnificent Court, as all his ancestors in Great Brittain neuer did the like. Which *Olinas* perceiuing, who came (as you haue heard) to make his complaint on the wrong done him by the duke of *Brisfroya*, in putting to death trayterously his Cosen germaine: fell on his knee againe before the King, desiring hee might haue iustice in the cause.

When the King had considered thereon with them of his blood, as also diuers other knights and auncient Gentlemen: he decreed that within one moneth (all excuses set apart) the Duke should come in person to answer *Olinas*, and if with two knights more beside himselfe hee would iustifie his cause, *Olinas* should likewise prepare two other knights. Warning hereof was presently sent to the Duke, and open Proclamation made the same day: that all Gentlemen following Armes, should bee ready at the City of *London*, on the day of our Lady

following in September. Like summons was sent abroad by the Queene, to aduertise the Ladies and Gentlewomen of the countrey, by which means great resort came to the Court, where all kindes of pastimes and sportes were inuented: without respect of fortunes malice any way, who commonly in great assemblie of states, when least they thinke of her variable changings, often telleth them, that men purpose, but she will dispose.

All this royall company being in ioy and pleasure, a Damosell strangely attyred entered the Pallace, and a Gentleman: that bare her company, demanding where the King was: whereof being resolued by his Majesty himselfe, the Damosell thus spake. In sooth (my Lord) well do you see a King by your porte and countenance, yet may it bee doubted what your heart is. Damosell, quoth the King, you must iudge of what you see, and hereafter knowe the rest when you haue occasion to prooue. Mee thinks my Lord, answered the Damosell, you speake according to the magnanimitie of your minde, and euen as I my selfe doe desire: remember therefore what you haue spoken before so many great persons, for seeing you make us such a librell offer, I hope one day

day to try the matter I doubted. Neuerthelesse I will deferre it till the feast of September, because I heare you will then keepe Court at *London*, where must bee assembled many valiant men, who shall know by the promise you haue made me, how worthy you are to gouerne such a noble Realme, and how highly Chiuallry is honoured by you. Damosell, sayde the King, so much as effects may better my wordes, so much the more will it glad me, to see good store of hardy knights there present. My Lord, quoth shee, if effects answere your wordes, I shall haue great reason to bee contented. So tooke shee leaue of him, returning the same way shee came, whereto every one was much abashed, and displeased with the Kings rash promise, not knowing any reason for it: and now they began to misdoubt, that the enterprise of this woman would bring the Kings person into some danger. But his heart was so addicted to magnanimity, as (whatsoeuer happened) hee would not be reprooued with cowardice: and so dearly did his subiects loue him, that they rather desired a thousand deaths, then to see him suffer any mishap or iniury. Whereupon the Lords and Barons perswaded him, (greatly fearing some threatened inconuenience) to alter the promise, hee had so lightly made: shewing it was not befitting his Maiesty, to deale with father of knights and Gentlemen, he being placed in authoritie ouer them.

While they stood on these termes, there entred thre knights, two of them being very well armed, and the third hauing on no Armour at all, for hee was a man of ancient years, as seemed by

his white head: yet in his countenance appeared a more cheerefull colour, then commonly hath been noted in a man of age, who likewise was of tall and comely stature. This knight carried in his armes a very costly Cofer, and demanding for the King, the Gentlemen shewed where hee sat, making him way to his Maiesty, before whom hee fell on his knees, thus speaking. God blesse so good a Prince as is king *Lisuart*, for within these few dayes, hee hath made the most worthy promise, that euer King did, if he intend to keepe it. Beloeue me knight, answered the King, I neuer promised ought, but it was in my power, & and therefore the easier to be performed: but I would faine know your meaning heerein. I vnderstand Sir, quoth the knight, that you intend to maintaine chiuallrie in the very highest honour, a matter wherein (now a dayes) few Princes delight, therefore as you to bee commended about all other.

Heerein you were tolde truth, sayde the King, and you may be well assured, that I will doe my veriest to aduance the cause of vertue, while I liue. Long may you continue in this minde replied the knight, and because I haue likewise heard, how you haue summoned the Princes and Lords of your countrie, to be ready at your Court the next feast of September: I haue brought you heere a thing with mee, which such asking as you are ought most royally to receiue. Then opening the Cofer, hee took forth a Crowne of gold, so sumptuously embellished with Orientall Pearles, and precious stones, as neuer was seene a more costlier Jewell: every one being

of the minde, that it was to impale the head of some especiall mighty Lord.

When the king had long and earnestly beheld it, he was very desirous to haue it, at what price soeuer, which the knight perceiving, saide. This Crowne my Lord is of such workmanship, as no jeweller in the world can make the like, and beside, the vnualueable riches thereof, it hath a vertue highly to be esteemed: for the king that keepeth it in his power, shall encrease in all felicitie and honor. So will it happen to the king who must enioy it while he liueth, and long time haue I kept it, no king but you that euer saw it: but if you like it so well, I will make ye a present thereof, provided, you helpe to saue my head, which I am in some danger to lose. All this while was the Queene in place, earnestly wishing that the king her husband might haue it, whereupon she saide to the king. Me-thinkes (my Lord) it would full well become your Maiesty, if you may haue it at so easie a rate as he demandeth. Madame, quoth the knight, I haue a better thing for you if you please to buy it, it is this mantle, the richest and fairest that euer was seene: for beside, the precious stones wherewith it is beautified, it is imbroyded with all sorts of beasts and birds, which nature hath given life to. On my faith, answered the Queene, it is a most rare and curious piece of worke, not wrought (as I thinke) by humaine capacity. You say true, Madame, replied the knight, for the like hercof is not to bee found, yet may not the riches compare with the property, and great vertue of this mantle, which is such, as it rather belongeth to married Ladies,

then any other: because shee that weareth it, shall neuer be offended with her husband. A vertue of cheerefull regard, answered the Queene, if it haue any such indeede: I haue tolde ye true, Madame, quoth the knight, if you will buy it, you may proue. Now grew she maruillous desirous of it, whatsoeuer price should be paid for it, especially to conserue peace and loue betwene the king and her, wherefore she sayde to the knight: Say Sir, how do you estimate this mantle and the Crowne? My Lord, quoth he, and you good Madame, I beseech you to vnderstand my fortune. I am but lately escaped the hands of him, who long time kept me prisoner on a strange condition, which is no little cause of griefe to me, for I am out of all hope to finde remedy while I liue: and because I know not well the value of these Jewels, I will leave them in your custody, until the day you holde open Court at *Paris*, where you shall deliuer them againe to me, or give so much for them as I then demand. In meane while you may make all of them if you please, for hauing experienced what I haue sayd, you may the more willingly pay well for them. Now trust me, sayde the king, seeing you repose such confidence in mee, assure your selfe to haue whatsoeuer you request, or else they shall bee restored againe. It sufficeth, quoth the knight, returning to the Lords, he thus proceeded. Worthy Lords, you haue all heard what the king hath promised me, that he will restore the mantle & the crown, which I leaue in your presence, or give me whatsoeuer I shall demand. So much his Maiesty hath said, replied the Lords, & we are witnesses thereto. Adieu then,



answered the ancient Knight, for perforce I must returne to the most cruell prison, that euer poore Knight was enclosed in. But here you must note, how during the time of this conference, the two armed Knights, which conducted the old man, was still in presence, the one of them hauing the beuer of his helmet open, and see-

med a young man, the other held downe his head as loth to be knowne, being of so tall and mighty stature, as no Knight in the Kings Court might bee equaled with him. So departed they againe all three together, leauing the Mantle and the Crowne in the Kings custody.

## CHAP. XXXI.

*How Amadis, Galaor, and Balays arrived at the Court of King Lisuart, and what happened to them afterward.*



Amadis, Galaor, and Balays, being all happily met together, rode on without any occasion to trouble them, vntill they came to the Court of King Lisuart, where they were welcomed with exceeding ioy, because Galaor was knowne there before, nor knowne but by renowne of his famous Chivalry. Beside, each one of them to see Amadis, who by the false report of Ariadus was thought to be dead: and graciously did the King entertaine them all, conducting them to a chamber where they were warmed, blaming the villanous inuention of Ariadus and the Damsell that caused their Combat together, praising the death of two so noble Princes, who were but euen now in the prime and flower of their youth. Right soone did the King aduertise the Queene of their arrival, when accompanied with Agrius, Galaor, and King Achus, he went with them among the Ladies: but Amadis casting his eye on Oriana, and she on him, let their ioyfull passions to your iudgment, remembering that when long

absent louers meete, looks, sighs, and teares are familiarly entercounted, being the only meanes to content each others heart. Yet Amadis thought it not best to stand still thus musing, lest euerie eye should grow cunning in considering the cause: which to auoid, he fell on his knee before the Queene, saying, Madam, according to your charge at my departure from the Court, I have brought this Knight, whom I present as onelle yours. I thanke ye Sir Amadis, quoth the Queene, both he and you are welcome to our presence. In good faith Madam, said the King, you doe me wrong if you take them both: Amadis already is yours, no thinks you should be content with him, and leaue Lord Galaor for mee. You aske no small matter, answered the Queene, but if he be so pleased, I am not against it, albeit such a present was neuer giuen in great Brittain: Notwithstanding, seeing you are the best King that euer reigned here, so good a Knight is well bestowed on you. But what say you Lord Galaor, the King is desirous to haue you, will ye then be his Madam,

Madame, quoth Galaor, no thinks that any thing so great a private demereth, should be granted if it were possible: here am I to obey you in euery respect, so please my Lord and brother to like thereof, because he hath greatest authority ouer me. It contents me very well, said the Queene, that you should doe as your brother commandeth, for through him shall I haue title in you, by reason he is mine. I am yours indeede Madam, answered Amadis, and brother you must be my fellowseruant to the Queene. With all my heart replied Galaor, I am content, and seeing you haue giuen mee to her seruice, for euer I shall remaine at her disposition. I thanke you sir, quoth the Queene, now may I boldly giue you to the King, for I see he would be glad of so good a friend: then stepping to the King, she said, My Lord you are desirous of this knight, I giue him you, on this condition, that your loue and treat him according to his deserts, which may not be valued at any meane rate. Belceue me Madam, answered the King, I take this gift most kindly at your hand, assuring you, he shall soone perceiue how I loue and esteeme him: nor can I be so affectionate to him, as he hath noble vertues whereby to induce me, which none can value or compare withall. But if Amadis durst haue spoken, he gladlie would haue maintained the contrary, for he perswaded himselfe, that he loued his Oriana, beyond his brothers desert, or any other whatsoever. So remained Galaor in the Kings seruice, from which he could not be separated, for any quarrell concerning Amadis, as wee shall haue occasion to declare hereafter.

All this while Oriana, Madam, and Olinia, had withdrawned themselves from the other Ladies, likewise. Graies and Amadis were talking together, when Galaor was thus graciously entertained by the King and Queene, wherefore Amadis called his brother, saying, I pray ye cause the knight to come hither that standeth with you conferring, because we are desirous to see him. Agrius returned where he left Amadis, who was dissembled as if hee thought not on the Ladies, till the Prince thus spake: My Lord, these Gentlewomen would faine speake with you, and desire you to eadgid a little more of the time which hee present he did. But Amadis being wise and discreetly, not ignorant what medicines should be applied to passionate minde, after the first three had labored thereby, Amadis took Amadis by the hand, desiring him to sit between Oriana and her, leauing Agrius to court his Olinia, they being for the most part durt began. Although I am now among those four friends, whom I haue most cause to loue and regard: yet haue I such present business elsewhere, as I must of necessity leaue you a while. This deuised she bring the louers together and by a pretty wile gaue them opportunity to confer their thoughts with secret communication.

Now beginneith Amadis to confer with his Ladie, and thinking to declare the great affection, which vnder good hope gaue him life and essence: extreme loue took him from the facultie of speech, yet his eyes not vnmindefull of their office, supplied the defect of the tongue, deliuering testimony to their diuine object, how farre the sad and languishing heart was

transported by ease and pleasure. Which *Oriana* perceiving, she secretly tooke his hand vnder her mantle, and wringing him by the fingers sighing thus spake. My lord and friend, what do thou and griefe did the traytor procure in me, who brought hither tidings of your death? neuer was poore maiden in greater perill, and not without cause: for neuer did woman sustain such a losse, as I should haue done in loosing you. And as I am better loued then any other, so hath my fortune graciously fauoured mee, that it should be by him who is of higher desert then any other. Here with *Amadis* cast downe his lookes as hathfull to heart himselfe so praised, by her to whom all commendation was due: and feeling his spirits altered, stroue to make answer, but the words died in his mouth, which caused *Oriana* thus to proceede. How can it be otherwise my Lord, but I must needs loue you aboue all other, when they that neuer saw you, do highly loue, honor, and esteeme you? and I being shee whom you affect most secretly, haue I not great reason to loue you better then my selfe? On my faith Madam, answered *Amadis*, your sweete and gentle words, are sufficient to make mee die a thousand deaths, & as many times to reuiue me againe: but how? I pray you at this time onely to excuse my extremity with pittie, endearing worse then death by louing you too vehemently: for if I had died as *Arcalaus* reported, euen then had begun my rest and quier, if I had not known you before. And albeit the hours of your acquaintance is my intire felicity, yet am I assaulted with such violent passions, as my heart would altogether consume in griefe, without the

pleasure it receiweth in doing you seruice, and the good it sustaineth by your remembrance of me. But necessity constraineth me, to craue the mercy as yet vnderused, by such intreatance as no defect may value, onely to increase my hability in seruing you, which if you grant me not, a sudden and cruell death will take hold on me. These words were accompanied with such abundance of teares, as was no small griefe to her to behold. Alas my Lord, quoth she, forbear these often repetitions of your death, the thought thereof is insupportable to mee, for should you die, I were vnable to liue one houre after: considering all the pleasure I haue in this world, is in the ioy of your health and welfare. Nor can I but be assured of your words, by reason mine owne case is sufficient therein, being copartner with you in euery torment: but if yours seeme more violent, this is the reason, my will being equall with yours, wanteth the strength you haue in suffering, & cannot effect the desire of our hearts, which vttereth loue and griefe more in you then me, albeit my share is not one iote the lesse. But this I promise you on my faith, if fortune or our owne endeauour, can compasse no meane to yeelde vs content, my selfe will search some way whatsoeuer happen, bee it hate of Father, Mother, Kinde, & Friends: for we may not thus procrastinate our ioy, and groane vnder the weighty burden of desire the flame whereof climeth so high, as the martyrdome of our hearts may easily bee discovered. No doubt these wordes were pleasing to *Amadis*, and gaue such cheerefull life to his hope, that hee was rauished with inwarde con-

ceit thereof: when shee seeing him mute, trode vpon his foote, saying. Discomfort not your selfe my Lord, for I will not fayle what I haue promised, nor shall you depart till you perceiue it: and shortly will the King hold open Court, when both he and the Queen must depend on your assistance, knowing well that your presence shall honour the company.

As they would haue continued in longer talke, the Queene called *Amadis*, causing him to sit downe by *Galeor*, for the King was gone to his chamber. Then began the Ladies to censure on the brethren, but they resembled each other so like, as little difference could bee discerned betweene them: every one being of the opinion, that these twaine were the most perfect amongst all Knights, both in beauty, noblenesse, bounty, and good

grace: but *Galeor* was somewhat whiter in complexion, and *Amadis* of bigger bone, his locks more crispe and faire, and hauing a little more red in his face then *Galeor* had. Soone after, the Queene willed *Galeor* to go see her daughter and the other Ladies, when he regarding the excellent beauty of *Oriana*, imagined such another was not to be found in the world, and by her often sighing with alteration of colour, he suspected her to be the onely cause, that his brother liked so well to stay in King *Lisuart's* Court. Right courteously was hee welcomed among the Ladies, and diuerse familiar speeches passed betweene them: till the King being set to meate, sent for *Amadis* and *Galeor* to beare him company, as also *Agrais* and his vnckle *Galuanes*.

## CHAP. XXXII.

How King *Lisuart* departed from Windsor to the Cittie of London, there to hold open and royall Court.

**I**N the beginning of this booke it hath been declared, how the diuine bountie calling *Lisuart* to the Realme of great *Brittaine*, soone after of a disinherited Prince, made him the peaceable King of such a Monarchy, by the death of his elder brother *Falangris*, who dyed without any heire of his body begotten. Likewise how he was reputed such a great Lord through the world, as many Knights came from strange Countries to serue him, nor thinking themselves happy, except they might bee named Knights of his Court. But within a while after,

whether this fortunate king forgot the author of his good, or else it happened by diuine permission: this happy Realme fell into perfection, and the illustrious state of King *Lisuart* was troubled and obscured, that all men might know: how he onely is Lord and King of all liuing creatures, who exalteth and abaseth when him pleaseth, according as you shall here vnderstand. For King *Lisuart* hauing concluded, to hold the most royall and stately Court, that euer king did in the Realme of great *Brittaine*, commanded that on the 5. day following, all the Lords of his Kingdom should appeare personally at

London, there to determine on matters of chivalrie, which he intended to maintaine with all honour might be deuised. But in the selfe same place, where he thought the greater part of the world should yelde him obeyfance, began the first mutabilities of Fortune, bringing his estate and person in danger of utter ruine, according as you shall vnderstand at large.

King *Lisuart* departing with all his traine from *Windsore*, to keepe his Court at the famous Cittie of *London*, it was wonderfull to behold the Lords, Ladies, and Gentlewomen that gaue their attendance, especially so many young Gentlewomen being there present: some to regard the magnificence of the Court, other to do service to their louely mistresses, and nothing now generally minded but pastime and pleasure. The King likewise (for greater maiestie of his Court) ordained that none of this assembly should lodge in the Cittie, but to erect their Pavilions in the fields and meddowes, along the bankes that hemmed in the faire riuer of *Thames*, least the extreame heate might be hurtfull to them: all which being done according to appointment, the fields seemed as a most royall Camp, or as if the greater part of the world were there assembled. But because the king arrived there two or three daies before the feast, he went to his Pallace, accompanied onely with his Queene, *Amadis*, *Galaor*, *Agrais*, *Don Galaunes*, and certaine other his most fauoured: the rest kept themselves in their tents, according as the herbingers had in quarters limited them. With sundry sorts of pastimes was the King entertained, which continued till

fortune (enuying his felicitie) changed them into griefe & tears by the meanes of a Lord, no subject to the King, but his neere neighbour then friend, named *Barfinan*, a man opulent in riches, and endued with few vertues, as may be gathered by the matter ensuing.

This *Barfinan* was Lord of a Countrey, called *Sansuegua*, and very familiar with *Arcalaus* the chanter, who not long before came to him, and conferred with him in this manner. My Lord, quoth hee, the great desire I haue to doe you seruice, hath made me inuent the meane (if you like thereof) to deliuer in short time the Realme of great *Brittaine* quietly into your hands, without much hazarding your person, or any great expence. When *Barfinan* (who was a very ambitious man) heard the wordes of *Arcalaus*, who promised to make him King if he would: he thus replied. In good faith, my deere friend *Arcalaus*, if thou canst performe the thing thou vauntest of, no feare shall hinder me to hazard my person, much lesse will I reckon of expence, if I see any likely-hood in the compassing. It is a thing, saide *Arcalaus*, very easie to bee done, and presently shall you vnderstand by what meanes: prouided, that you swear to me, after you are seated in the regiment, to make me super-intendent and cheefe maister of your house-holde. That will I, answered *Barfinan*, with any thing else thou shalt desire. Marke then the platforme, quoth *Arcalaus*. You know how King *Lisuart* hath openly published, this feast of September to holde open Court, whether you must goe well accompanied with knights, then shall I order the matter in such sort, that I will

will carry away the King prisoner, no man aliue being able to succour him: in like manner will I carry thence his Daughter, whom you shall take to wife, and afterward will I send ye the Kings head. Thus in respect the Princesse is right heire to the Crowne, and you enioying her in Mariage, being well accompanied with Knights as I tolde ye: easily may you make seizure on the Realme, nor shall you finde any to speake against it. In sooth, answered *Barfinan*, if such an enterprize might fort to effect, I would make thee more rich and mighty then euer were any of thy linage, as also the cheefe commander my house. It sufficeth said *Arcalaus*, your selfe shall soone perceiue that seldom I enterprize any thing but it comes to passe: then faile not to bee present in the assembly at *London*. So came the traytour *Barfinan* to King *Lisuart*, feigning his intent to do him honor, wherefore the King sent many of his knights, entertaining him as a most noble friend, appointing his lodging, and all things else necessary for him, and being with the King in his pallace, he entred into these speeches. My Lord, vnderstanding what royall magnificence you meane to keepe in your Court, as also the good Knights and braue men were here to be scene, this day I intended to honour you with my person: not as your vassalle or subject, holding my Countrey of God and by the Sword, but as your good neighbour and friend, if you please. Trust me, quoth the King, you do me very great pleasure and honour, and I thanke you for this gentle paines, that you would bee scene in so good company: assuring you Lord *Barfinan* and my friend, this courtisie shall bee re-

membered in what I may, for I make very especiall account of you. Your Maiesty dealeth very kindly with me, replied *Barfinan*, and I protest on my faith, to bee ready in counselling your affaires for the best, according as I haue a long time desired. See how the traytor lied in every word, but the good king misdoubting nothing, requited his offer with many shankes, and to do him the greater honour, appointed his lodging in his owne Palace, himselfe and his Queene going forth of the City with their Tents and Pavilions, imagining he could not do too much for the traitour. And first he acquainted him with the whole enterprize, and wherefore he caused this great assembly, declaring the names & Sir names of the best commended Knights, their haughty prowesse and resolutions, among whom hee forgot not *Amadis* and *Galaor*, whose hardines was impossible to be equalled, they two being accomplished with all the vertues required in Chivalrie. When the king was withdrawn to his Tents, and *Barfinan* to the Pallace, he began to consider on the strength of his Maiesty, as also the loue and obeyfance so many great Princes shewed him: which made him vnable to enioy any rest, and often times he repented his foolish enterprize, seeing how hard it would proue in execution.

Now he minded to alter his determination, when suddenly another opinion entred his braine, so that wauering vp and downe in his thoughts, he could not resolue on any certaintie. On the next morning he came to the King, who was now clothed in his royall ornaments, because it was the first day of open Court; and he comman-

ded one to goe to the Queene; willing her to send him the Crown he had of the Knight, and shee to clothe her selfe in the sumptuous mantle. Hereupon she presently sent for the Cofer, and opening it, found nothing therein, whereat she was greatly amazed, considering shee trusted no body with the key thereof, but her owne selfe, and euermore carried it about her. But knowing not how to remedie this mishap, shee acquainted the King therewith, who in great displeasure came to her, saying. I meruaile Madam you haue kept so badly, the lewel which would haue so greatly honoured this time, considering vnder what condition it was left with vs. On my faith my Lord, quoth she, I know not what to say, I found the Cofer fast lockt, and none but my selfe hath kept the key of it. But in a dreame this last night, me thought a Damofell willed mee to shew it her, which I did: afterward she demanded the key, and I gaue it her, when opening the Cofer, shee tooke forth the Mantle and the Crowne, locking it againe, and laying the key where I tooke it. This done, she put the Mantle about her, and the Crowne on her head, they be- seeming her so well, as I received great pleasure in beholding her, and thus she spake. That her selfe, or she from whom she came, before fise dayes, should rule in the Countrie of a mighty King, who at this time laboured to defend it, and to conquer it from other. Hereupon I demanded what shee was, and she answered: You shall know at the time I haue spoken of. So she vanished from me with the Crowne and the Mantle: but on my faith I know not if this vision came to me sleeping, or whether it

be of truth. The King was now in greater meruaile then before, wil- ling her to dissemble the matter, and not to reueale it to any body, then taking her by the hand, they left the chamber, comming among the knights and Ladies in the place appointed for the ceremonies of the Day, where sitting down in the 2. chayres of state, the King called his Knights about him, and the Queene her Ladies, with whom she communed. Now had his Ma- iesty giuen order, that neerest his person should be *Amadis, Galon, Agrais* and *Don Galuances*, and at his back King *Arban of Normales*, well armed, holding his Sword ready drawne, and two hundred Knights for his guard, then by a Herald hee commanded silence. But as the King began to speake, there entred a most beautifull La- dy vere richly attired, and with her twelue other Damofells in like brauery: for in those dayes, the great Lords and Ladies were wont to bring their people to such as- semblies, clothed according to their owne persons, without any difference at all betweene them: this fayre Lady adressed her spee- ches to the King, deliuering them in forme following. My Lord, most humbly I beseech you to grant me audience, and giue mee reason in a matter of difference, which I haue against the Knight that standeth by your Maicesty, meaning *Amadis*. Long time haue I bene requested by *Angriet d'Es- traneus* to be his wife, who I am as- sured is in this royall presence: hereto she added how euery thing happened, the cause why hee kept the vale of the Pines, and how *A- madis* trauiailing that way, made him perforce to abandon Armes. Neuer thelesse, quoth she, they de-

departed friends, and *Amadis* fol- lemnely promised *Angriet*, that he should enioy me as his Wife: wherof when I attained knowledge, I withdrew my selfe to a Castle of mine, where I kept such a strong garde and custome, as it was thought impossible for any strange knight to enter there, without li- cence: but that knight comming thither, vanquished my guardians, and hath vtterly abolished the drift I intended. Yet afterward of his owne good will he promised mee, to cause *Amadis* recall his offer to *Angriet*: then chanced an vnhap- py combat betweene him and this knight mine Vnckle, who being at the latest extremity of his life, at my request he was spared, on this condition: that on the first day your Maicesty held open Court, I should here present my selfe, to graue a request he must demand of me. To satisfie my promise I am come hither, and desire to know what he will command me: At which words *Amadis* stepped for- ward, saying. My Lord, the La- dy hath told ye nothing but truth, concerning the seuerall promises at the Combats: therefore am I ready here to accomplish, that *A- madis* shall call back his word to *Angriet*, provided, she performe her owne promise. On my con- science, quoth shee, if you effect what you haue said, you pleasure me more then you can imagine: and to let you know I am ready to fulfill my offer, demand what you please, for if it be in my power you shall preuaile. I request nothing else answered *Amadis*, but that you would accept *Angriet* as your hus- band, he louing you so deere as he doth. Out alas, cryed the La- dy, what maner of demand is this? I wish Madame said *Amadis*, that

you would marry with such a one, as is well worthy to haue so faire a Lady. In sooth knight, quoth shee, this is not according to the pro- mise you made me. I promised nothing, replied *Amadis*, but I will performe it; for if I stand bound to you, so cause *Amadis* discharge his word to *Angriet*, herein I accom- plish it. I am *Amadis*, and I re- uoke the promise I made him, wherein you must needs confesse your selfe satisfied: hee gladly would enioy you as his Wife, and I ioyne with him in the same re- quest, thus stand I free discharged to you both. May it be possible? quoth she, that you are the man so highly renowned? Credix me Lady, answered the King, this is *Amadis*. Ah wretch that I am, said she, now do I wel perceiue, that art not cun- ing can prevent what God hath appointed, for I haue done my vt- termost to escape *Angriet*, not onely for the euill I wish him, dis- daining his good and vertuous de- serts: but carying this resolution, that keeping my selfe chaste and sin- gle, I would not bring my liberty into subiection: and now when I thought to be furthest from him, I am come neerer then euer I in- tended.

Lady, quoth the King, you haue great occasion to reioyce, for you being faire and rich, he is a young and brave disposed knight: as you are rich in goods and possessions, euen so is he in bounty and vertue, not onely in deedes of Armes, but in all other good qualities becom- ing a knight, therefore your ma- rriage together is very requisite, and I thinke all in this presence are of mine opinion: heereupon, shee stepped to the Queene, saying. Madam, you are esteemed one of the most vertuous Princeesses in the world,

world, most humbly I desire your counsell what I shall do.

Faire friend, answered the Queene, according to the reputation *Angriote* had gotten among the good, he well deserueth, not onely to bee abundant in riches, but to bee loued of any Lady he shall chuse.

Why Lady? said *Amadis*, think you not that by accident or affection, my promise was made to *Angriote*, for had he compelled me to one of these twaine, then might you well haue condemned mee of folly: but making tryall of his valour and hardinesse, yea, to mine owne cost I dare assure ye, and knowing likewise his earnest love to you: me thinkes the iustice of the cause commands, that not onely my selfe, but all such as are acquainted with him, ought to labour in seeking remedy for you both: in him, the extreame passions hee endureth through your loue, in you, by making his restless griefes known to you.

Now trust me Sir, quoth shee, such prayse haue I heard of your valage to euery one, as I imagine you would not say (before such an assembly) otherwise then truth: wherefore following your counsell, as also the pleasure of the King and Queene, I will forget my former stubborne opinion, and am ready to accomplish what you shall command mee. Then

*Amadis* taking her by the hand, called *Angriote*, and presenting him his lorie, said: Sir *Angriote*, I promised to be my vettermost in this matter, say now, is this the Lady you would haue? Euen the quoth *Angriote*, is the life and essence of my Soule, and I am bound to none but her. Then said I giue her you, replied *Amadis* on this condition, that you shall be forthwith married together, and continue in honourable lorie to her as she deserueth.

I thanke you my Lord, quoth he with all my heart, and will obseue your gentle commandement. Presently the King called for the Bishoppe of *Salerne*, who conducted them to the Church, where they were espoused in the presence of many great Lords. Afterward they returned to the City, and there the wedding was solemnized with great ioy and Triumphs: wherefore wee may well say, that for men, but God appoynted marriage, who perceived the honest and continent loue, which *Angriote* euer more bare to this selfe-willed Lady. For albeit hee had her in his custodie, neuer did he meane dishonorable against her, but by vertuous cogitations bridled unlawfull desire: onely to expresse how intirely he loued her, and by obeying her seuere charge, lost his life wel-neare when he combated with *Amadis*.

## CHAP. XXXIIL

How King Lisuart would haue the aduise of his Princes and Lords, concerning his former determination, for the high exalting and chatering of Chivalrie.



After the end of this marriage, which by diversity of opinions caused much talke, as commonly it happeneth in such cases: the King commanded silence againe by his Herald, when euery one being attentive to heare what he would say, he thus began. My friends, no one of you is ignorant of the heavenly fauour toward me, by appointing me the greatest earthly Lord, that liueth this day in the likes of the *Oger*: Wherefore I thinke it convenient, that as wee in this countrey are the chiefe, so should we be second to no other Prince, in rendering immortal thanks by good and vertuous workes, whereon we are now minded to determine. In this respect I intreate & command all our Kings, as the heads of their Monarchies, & you the members, that you would altogether take aduise, and giue mee counsell, even from your consciences, what you thinke most expedient for mee to do, as well for the benefit of my Subiects, as also for our estate. And I assure ye, I am minded to beleue your opinions, as proceeding from loyall and faithfull subiects: wherefore againe I desire ye, that without feare, each one would in particular and generally aduise, what we ought to doe as matter most commendable. Herewith he held his peace, and *Barfina*, Lord of *Sansuega* was intreated by all the assistants to speake his opinion, which they did for no other reason

but because the King would haue euery one honour him: whereupon, after many excuses on his own behalfe, he arose from his seate, & making humble reuerence, thus spake: seeing it liketh you I should first declare my censure, I desire the King and this company to pardon my ignorance, being vnworthy of this honorable and gracious fauor. But me thinks (vnder submission to his pleasure, and better aduise of all you my Lords) that wee should with-draw our selues a while from the presence of his Maiesty, where we may more freely conceiue our severall humors. This answer was generally well liked, wherefore the King and Queene left them together, walking into another of their Pavillions: then *Seralys*, the *Flaming*, Countie of *Clare*, began in this manner. You haue all heard my Lords, the good zeale the King hath to the gouernement, not only of the comon weale in his Realm, but particularly to the honorable encrease of Chivalrie, which he desireth to continue in greater preeminence then euer it hath bene. And therefore my Lords humbling my selfe to better opinion, I thinke it good (to supply the intent of our King) that wee all ought to counsell him, to strengthen himselfe with men and money: for they are the sinews of warre and peace, whereby all Kings on the earth are maintained in their puissant authority. For it is most certaine, that treasure is for Souldiers and men at



at armes, by whome Kings reigne, nor ought it for any cause to bee else-where dispended, without committing of true sacrilidge: for these affairs are termed holy, causing the state to liue in tranquility, and winne glorious conquests of such as seeke to inuade them. Beside, to attaine the better thereto, his Maiestie must seeke meanes to get all the knights he can heare of, as well strangers as other: entreating them with liberality, to send his renoune on winges through the world, which will fetch from the furthest parts men to his seruice, in hope of condigne recompence to their labour. By their aid he may easily make himselfe Monarch of al the Princes by East and West, for it hath neuer beene read or heard, that any Prince could make himselfe great, except by the assistance of valiant and hardy Knights, having bought their valour in brave attempts. I teame it bought, by fauouring honoring, and distributing their treasures among them: that they may receiue no occasion of dislike, but with vnconquerable resolution to pursue victorie. As he would haue proceeded in further perswasion, the greater part of the Lords seemed to allow of his opinion, asserting that better counsell could not bee given: which when *Basilius* heard, he requested audience for himselfe, and hauing grante thereof, he intended to reuerse this first aduise, because he might very hardlye goe forward with his secret purpose: the silence being made, *Basilius* thus begins. It seemeth by your countenance my Lords, that the County of *Clare* opinion is a grounded truth, for I see the most part of you auerre the same, not hauing heard any thing to the

contrary: notwithstanding, I hope to make it knowne to you all, and to the king himselfe hereafter, how much I desire to be friend him, you and the whole Realme. The County of *Clare* hath laid before you, that the King your maister ought to strengthen himselfe, by the multitude & force of strange knights, whom he would haue called from all parts of the world: in sooth if his opinion were to bee credited, and you your selues bound to follow it, I am certaine in short time their number would be such, as your king, who is a good Prince and liberall: would not only congratulate them with what he was wont to bestow on you, but likewise take your owne from you, and giue to them, for naturally, maner of nouelty and neuer seene before, is most pleasing. Hereupon it followeth, that whatsoever seruice you performe, bee it of never so high estimation, yet shall you fall into his disdain and obliuion, and strangers lift you from the seats, which now do promise you security quiet. Therefore my Lords, before you conclude, this matter is of so great importance, as you all ought to bee aduised by good and discrete deliberation in your graue iudgements. I hope there is no one in all this assembly, that will presume I speake otherwise, then reason and the good loue I beare yee doth admonish me, for I thanke God I am such a one, as neede to regard the greatest Prince my neighbor, no more then he doth me: but considering I am in so noble company, and haue here receiued such fauour and honour, I rather desire (God is my witnesse) I had neuer bene borne, then to flatter men with vaine perswasions: You must therefore (my Lords)

Lords) diligently fore-see, least afterward you repent with too much leysure. And heere he paused, for the murmour was so great among them, as they hardly gaue him time to conclude, because the most part of them that accorded to the first opinion, were now changed and helde with *Basilius*, by meanes whereof, they could determine nothing, but it was appointed how the king should bee acquainted with this controuersie, that hee might let downe some better order: and after it had againe bene debated in his presence, hee thus spake vnto them all.

My honourable friends, I am sure that the loue you beare me, & your forward desire in doing mee seruice, hath brought you into these intricate difficulties: and I thinke there is no one of you all, but hath spoken so neere to truth as is possible, whereby your iudgements are so sound and good, as better cannot bee heard from any. Notwithstanding, it is a thing most sure and certaine, that the Kings of the earth are not esteemed great, by the number of places in their possession, but by the quantity and multitude of their people, ouer whom they rule and command. For what can one king alone doe it may be much lesse the simplest of his subiects: and beside, it shal seem a matter aboue his power, to gouerne & maintain his estate without people, let him abound in neuer so much wealth: nor can these transitorie gifts of fortune be better imployed, then distributed among such as well deserve them. Whereby I gather, how euery man of good iudgement will say, that good counsell and strength of men, is the very treasure indeede. If yet you will

haue better instance hereof, looke on the liues of great *Alexander*, strong *Julius Caesar*, gentle *Hannibal*, and many other, whose names beare the title of immortality: they by the treasure of men, and not money, were made Kings, Emperours & Monarchs, for they could bountifully distribute their coyne, to such as they well knew had best deserved it, and likewise would vse them with gracious behaviour, as they might be termed Lords both in heart and hand, the only meane that made them be serued with fidelity. Therefore my good friends, I desire you all, euen in the most intire affection I can vse, that you assist me to your vitermost, in recouery of good Knights, either of our owne or strangers: promising you by the faith and word of a king, so honorably to entreate and esteeme of them, as both they and you shall remaine contented. Nor are you ignorant my noble friends, that the better we bee accompanied, the more we shall be feared of our enemies, our state in greater safety, and your selues more securely defended and looped. If then any vertue at all abide in vs, you may easily iudge, how new friends cannot make vs forgetfull of our olde: let none then differ from the request I haue made, but rather yeelde and consent thereto. Again I entreat ye, and expressly command, that each of you presently name such to me as you know, happily they being yet vknowne to me: to the end if any be in this Court, they may receiue such fauour of vs, as the absent may bee the better affected to our seruice, likewise we entreat them, not to depart our company, without giuing vs some aduertisement. All which was presently done, many  
S openly

openly called, and their names set downe: but because the tables were couered for dinner, the King arose from his chaire, withdrawing himselfe into the appointed Hall, where many Tables were provided, which he commanded to bee well furnished with Knights. You may easily coniecture, that during the service, they diuersly communed together, some on the kings deliberation, and other, of his magnificence, vntill the Tables were withdrawn againe: when the King caused them all to be called, and thus spake. You see my good friends, how earnestly I loue and desire your company, wherefore you must grant me one request, not to depart this Court without my leave: for I would particularly know the service you haue done me, and you tast such reward of my treasure, as may continue your loue to me. Hereupon they were seuerally called by name againe, and euery one confirmed the kings request, except *Amadis*, because he was the Queenes knight: and al this while was the present at these matters, wherefore after the noise was somewhat appeased, she framed her speeches to the King in this manner. My Lord, seeing it hath pleased you so to fauour and honour your Knights, me thinks it were reasonable that I should doe the like to the Ladies and Gentlewomen, of what part soeuer they be. Wherefore I humbly desire one boone, with assurance likewise if you consent, these Gentlemen after you shall not deny mee:

considering that in semblable company, good things deserue to bee demanded and granted. Then the King looked on all the knights, saying: What answer (my friends) shall we make the Queene? Shall we agree to her demand? Yes Sir, if it be your pleasure, answered they. What said *Calan*, were it possible to deny a princeesse so vertuous? Seeing you are all so well content, quoth the King, she shall obtaine whatsoever she asketh. At these words the Queene arose, and thanking her Lord, said. Steem it pleaseth you to give place and fauour to my request, I desire henceforth you would doe such honour to Ladies and Gentlewomen, as to take them into your protection and defence: maintayning their quarrells against all such as would molest them any manner of way. Beside, if you haue made promise of some suite to a man, and the like to any Lady or Gentlewoman: you first shall accomplish the womans request, as being the weakest person, and who hath most neede to be holpen. This granted, hereafter they shall be better fauoured and defended then euer they were: for villaynes that are wont to do them iniurie, meeting them in the fields, and knowing they haue such knights as you are for their protectours, dare no way wrong them. In sooth Madame, said the King, your request is reasonable, and I thinke none will gaine-say it: wee will haue it therefore registered and set downe as a law inuolable.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. XXXIII.

*How while this great and ioyfull assembly endured, a Damosell came to the Court clothed in mourning, requesting ayde of King Lisuarte, in a cause whereby she had bene wronged.*

**M**EANE while this honorable company thus continued, free from all danger and mishap, thinking on nothing but pleasure and delights: there entred a Damosell clad in mourning, who falling on her knees before the King, thus spake. My Lord, each one is merry but my poore selfe, who am so crossed with griefe and sorrow, as death were the best friend could come to me: yet would your Maiestie take compassion on me; I easily might recouer my ioy againe. These wordes were dipt in such abundance of teares, as the King being moued therewith to pittie, thus answered. Lady, I would be very glad to relieue your sadnesse, but tell me who is the cause thereof? Dread Lord, quoth she, my Father and Vncle are detained prisoners, by a Lady who hath vowed neuer to release them vntill they deliuer her two so good knights as one was whom they killed in fight. On what occasion did they kill him? said the King. Because he wanted, replied the Damosell, that he alone would combat with them, and so proud he grew in speeches, as at length he defied them. Not long after they meeting one day together, the knight vsed such reproouing termes of cowardise, as my Father and vncle could not indure the iniurie: but falling to the combat, the knight was slaine in the presence of a Lady, named *Golden-de*, who, as she said, procured his coming to maintain a difference,

which she had with a neighbour of hers, being her great enemy: wherefore seeing him dead, she caused the conquerors to be taken, & put them into the most miserable prison in the world: albeit my father, and vncle often told her, that they would performe for her what the knight should haue done. But she answered, how shée well knew they were not sufficient for the cause, & therefore should neuer be released, vntill they deliuered her two knights of like account, each of them valuing him in strength who they had slaine, to finish the attempt himselfe was able to doe. Know you not Damosell, said the King, against whom they shoulde combat, or the place where it is appointed? No truly Sir, answered the Damosell, but I haue seene my father and vncle cruelly put in prison, where their friends can compass no meanes to see them. Herewith she began again to weep, that euery one pittied to behold her, which made the king aske her, if the place were far off: In five daies my Lord, quoth she; it may easily be gone & returned. Now trust me, said the king, you shall not want your ioy for two knights, wherefore looke among at these gallants, and chuse such as you best fancy. My Lord, replied the Damosell, I am a stranger, and know not any one in this Court: But if you please, I will intreat the Queene to doe me so much grace, as so appoint me to some place, where I may see the Damosell that I haue seene.

and falling at the Queenes feete, proceeded thus. Madame, you are sayde to be one of the wisest and most vertuous dames in the world, you vnderstand the cause of my mourning, and the gracious offer the King hath made me: most humbly I beseech ye the, for the honor of God, to take compassion on a poore Gentlewoman, and counsel me which two knights I shall chuse, that are best able to support my want. Beleeue me Damosell, answered the Queen, you demand a matter of great importance, yet in such sort doe I pittie your cause, as I am the more willing to giue you aduise: albeit I would be loth to forgoe them twaine, whome I could name in this company. The shee shewed her *Amadis*, saying: This is my knight. And pointing to *Galaor*, sayde. This other is the Kings, yet be they both bretheren, and the best Knights (as I haue heard) this day liuing. I desire your Maestie, quoth the Damosell, to tell me their names. The one, sayd the Queene, is called *Amadis*, and the other *Galaor*. But by your fauour, replied the Damosell, is this *Amadis*, the knight so much renowned? I am very certaine, Madame, so soone as hee and his brother shall arriue where I can bring them, my cause will be sufficiently executed, therefore I desire you to obtaine mee their company. Hereupon the Queen called them, saying: I beseech yee both to succour this woman, who standeth in neede of your assistance. *Amadis* was somewhat slow in answering, for he cast his eye on the Princesse *Oriana*, to note if she would like of his departure: and she who likewise pittied the womans cause, let fall her gloues, which was an appointed signall betwene them,

and thereby he was certified of her consent, wherefore hee thus spake to the Queene. I am at your disposition, Madame, to do whatsoeuer you shall command me. Go then, in Gods name, quoth she, and returne again with all possible speed, without tarying for any thing that may happen. Hereto they willingly condescended, and taking leaue of her, *Amadis* fained hee would speake to *Mabilla*, when coming neere her and *Oriana*, hee sayde to his Goddesse. Madame, well may I say that the fairest Lady in the world, sends mee to succour the most wofull woman I euer did behold. Sweete friend, quoth *Oriana*, I repēt that I gaue you so much libertie, because my mind telled me, this attempt will proue somewhat dangerous to you, which I hope the heauens will powerfully defend. I am perswaded Madame, answered *Amadis*, that as the wonderfull worke-man of the world, hath enriched you with beauty beyond all other women, he will not suffer you to feeble displeasure, by any misfortune happening to mee: for being yours as I am, I imagine my selfe so happy, as I thinke no euill can chance to mee, if I continue in your gracious fauour. If it lay in my power, replied *Oriana*, I would reuoke your licence of departure: but seeing it may not bee, I will remaine in prayer for your prosperous successe. So taking leaue of her, hee and *Galaor* went to arme themselves, then doing their humble duty to the king, they rode away in company of the Damosell. As thus they traualled about mid-day they entered the Forrest, which commonly was called the *unfortunate Forrest*, be-  
cause

cause neuer any knight errant entered into it, that could escape without some mischief: and so these two bretheren deerely experimented, for such mishap befell them, as they verily thought to lose their liues. Still rode they on without any aduventure, till the Moone began to grace the euening, yet would not the Damosell shew any signe of stay, which made *Amadis* aske this question: Gentlewoman, shall we rest our selues here awhile? Yea mary, quoth shee, here before wee shall finde tents ready prouided, and people in them who expect your coming: make then a little hast I pray you, because I will goe before to aduertise them. They were very well content therewith, and so the Damosell left them, till soone after they espied the tents, where they saw her among other Ladyes and knights, who had the welcome at their arriual: and being alighted from their horses, they were conducted into a Pauillion, hauing seruants standing ready to take their armour, which they had no sooner put off, but was caryed by them into another roome, where-upon *Amadis* demanded why they did so. Because, replied the Damosell, you must lodge where they haue caryed your armour. He imagining shee sayde true, made no further enquirie, but sat downe with his brother on stooles that stood ready for them, attending the houre of supper. Not long had they sitten there, but such knights well armed entered furiously vpon them, saying: Yelde your selues, else you are slaine. When *Amadis* heard and saw their bad behauiour, he knew right well they were betrayed, and starting vp, saide to *Galaor*. By God brother, wee are treacherously decei-

ued. Then finding no remedy but present death, after they had struggled with the knights, who easily might haue taken their liues, *Amadis* thus spake. Ah villaines, you haue vs now at too much aduantage, deliuer vs our armes, and this quarrell shall be otherwise decided. These wordes will little profit yee, answered the Knights, yelde your selues our prisoners, or we will kill ye. So may you doe, sayd *Galaor*, like traitours as you are, and I will maintaine my wordes against two or three of you, if you dare deliuer me mine armes. We need no such prooffe, replied the knights, but if you contend in further speeches, you shall deerely buy them with the losse of your liues. Now trust me, quoth *Amadis*, wee rather will dye, then be prisoners to such villaines as you are. Herewith one of the knights went forth, and coming to a Lady, he said. Madame, they will not yelde, shall wee kill them? Stay awhile, quoth she, and if they graunt not my will, deale as you please with the. Then came the Lady (who was maruailous beautiful) into the tent, and shewing the countenance of a very angry woman, thus spake to *Amadis* and *Galaor*: Knights yelde your selues my prisoners, otherwise you must die. Brother, answered *Galaor*, it may bee shee will pittie vs, let vs yelde our selues to her. And Madame, quoth hee, wee beseech yee deliuer our horses and armour, when if all your seruants can conquer vs, wee will be content to submit our selues: but if you denie vs this reasonable request, wee must esteeme the lesse of you, and they that deale with vs so discourteously. I will giue no credence to you at this time, re-  
plied

plied the Lady, but would counsell ye to yeeld your selues to mee. Whereat at length they accorded, seeing they could no way else saue their liues: yet knew she not their names, for the Damosell that conducted them thither, would not tell her, because if her Mistresse vnderstood what they were, she knew they might not escape the death. Wherefore shee was content to conceale them, in respect of the offence she should commit, by causing the death of two so good knights: beside, shee repented her vn honorable iourney, which now she could no way remedie, but only by keping their names vknown. They being thus prisoners to the Lady, she entred into these speeches. Knights, you may see in what estate I hold ye, and there is no meane but one for deliuerance, which I will acquaint ye withall: may if you doe not fulfill it, in stead of giuing you liberty, I will cause you to be inclosed in such a dolorous prison, as shall be worse to you then death it selfe. Lady, answered *Amadis*, the matter may be such, that we shall easily consent thereto: and in some sort againe, we will rather die then obey you. I know not (quoth the Lady) how you may conceiue thereof, but I can assure ye, that if you promise mee not to forsake the seruice of King *Lisuart*, and to go tell him at your departure hence, how you do it by commandement of *Madafima* Lady of *Gawest*, who enuies his welfare, because he keepeth one in his court, that slew the most renowned Knight *Dardan*: you neuer shal escape this merueille captiuitie. Madame, said *Galaor*, if you do this, thinking thereby to offend King *Lisuart*, you much abuse your selfe: for we are two poore knights,

who haue no other riches then our Armour and Horse, and hee hath such store of redoubted Seruants, as he will little care whether you imprison vs or no: yet shall it bee such a shame to vs, as you can neuer imagine the like, because wee are vnable to do it. What? quoth she, loue you better to spend your life time in a most miserable prison then to forsake the seruice of the most disloyall king liuing? Now trust me Madame, answered *Galaor*, but ill be seems you these bad speeches: for he is one of the best Princes in the World, and against any knight I will maintaine, that neuer was disloyalty found in him. In lucklesse time for thee, said *Madafima*, hast thou vttered thy loue: wherewith shee commanded their hands to be bound. That shall I do, replied a knight, and cut off their heads, if you please. Hereupon he laid hold on *Amadis*, who was so offended thereat, as he lifted his fist to giue him a blow on the eare: but the knight escaping, *Amadis* caught him about the middle, throwing him so violently against the ground, that he thought his heart was broken, for he lay still and moued not. Now grew the Lady and her knights into such anger with *Amadis*, as presently they would haue slaine him, and he had not escaped, but that an ancient knight stepped before him with his Sword drawne, vsing such threatnings and other behaviour, as he caused them all to goe forth of the Pauillion: yet could he not defend him so well, but *Amadis* was wounded on the right shoulder. Then stepped the auncient knight to *Madafima*, with these wordes. By God Madame you deale like a very vnreasonable Woman, causing your people

people in your presence to murder two knights, after they haue yeelded themselves your prisoners. Why Sir? quoth she, did you not see their presumptuous boldnesse? especially this varlet, who before my face hath so vsed this Man, as he is not able to rise againe? Madame, replied *Galaor*, we rather chuse to die, then any other but your selfe shall binde vs: for you by nature are gentle and courteous, and we as prisoners will shew obeyfance to you. Seeing you say so, answered *Madafima*, I will binde you my selfe: hereupon she bound their hands with strong cords, and presently taking downe the Tents, they departed thence, *Amadis* and *Galaor* being set on horses without Saddles, and led along by two Sergeants: as for *Gandalin* and *Galaors* Squire, they followed on foot, hauing their hands bound behinde them, in manner as if they had gone to hanging, and thus were they constrained to trauaile al night through the Forrest.

But *Amadis* was weary of his life, not so much for his hard vsage, in respect he could gouerne himselfe with wonderfull patience: but for the matter *Madafima* would enforce them to, the refusal whereof, gaue hope of no better vsage at her hand, but for euer to be deprived of his faire *Oriana*. And contrarywise, if he consented, he should in like manner be banished from her presence, being compelled to serue King *Lisuart* no longer: these two extremities troubled his thoughts, which the ancient knight well perceived that saued their liues, yet he imagined the cause to proceede from his hurt, and was moued to pity him, for the Damosell had told him, that he was one of the best knights in the world.

Here you must observe, how the Damosell was the ancient knights Daughter, and repented her treason in deceiuing them, seeing how discourteously they were intreated which made her earnestly to perswade her father to practise some meane for their safety: for, quoth she, if they be put to death, perpetuall shame will attend on my life. Haue pity then (good father) on them and me, in respect the one is famous *Amadis* of *Gaule*, and the other his brother *Galaor*, who slew the Giant at the Rock of *Quiterres*. Full wel knew the knight the cause why his Daughter brought them, and therefore pittied their vsage the more, deuising how he might compasse the meanes to shielde them from death, which was nere at hand, so comming to *Amadis* he thus spake. Be of good cheere, Sir Knight, for I hope by (the helpe of God) ere long to deliuer you from this cruel Lady: and if your wound offend ye, I will perswade her to let you haue some cure. When *Amadis* heard him speake so friendly, knowing likewise it was the Man, who deliuered him from them, that would haue slaine him, hee thus answered. Father, I haue no Wound, which greatly annoyeth me, but I haue more cause to complaine of the Damosell, she hath brought vs hither by the falsest treachery in the World. I know very well, saide the Knight, you haue bene deceived, and can tell what you are better then you weene, which makes mee the more careful in seeking your good. Therefore I shall giue you profitable counsell if you will accept it. But did the Lady know you, you should die without any remedie, because nothing might serue else to expiate

ate her wrath : beleue then what I say, and put it in practise. You are fayre, young, and of gallant stature, beside, *Madafima* hath bene told, how you are one of the best Knights in the World, whereby shee conceiueth good opinion of you : now must you cunningly close with her : requesting shee would accept you as her husband or perpetuall friend : for she is a woman not to refuse you, if you can neuer so little dissemble with her. But what you doe, do quickly, because at that place whither we are now going, she intends to send one of her seruants to King *Lisuart* Court, whose errand is onely to enquire your names : for she that conducted you hither, (perceiuing you should assuredly die, if her mistresse knew the names of you both) disguised the matter so with her, as she said, she forgot to aske your names : onely thus perswading her, that you were two of the very best Knights in the World. The danger thorowly considered, I sweare to you by the faith of a Christian, that I can deuise no better meane for your deliuerance, then this I haue told ye : and shall I say more ? If you do it not, worse will come to you then you suspect. But *Amadis* loued the Princeesse *Oriana* so deere,ly as he rather desired death, then to hazard himselfe in such a composition, whereupon he thus replied. I thanke you Sir hartily for your great kindnesse, but I haue no such authoritie ouer my selfe, as will permit me to proceede so far : though your Lady her selfe intreated neuer so deeply, yet liberty nor life can perswade me. Alas Sir, answered the Knight, I wonder you will not consider how more your death is ? It is all one

to me, quoth *Amadis*, but if you will deale hertin with my brother, he is a knight more braue and beautifull then I am : happely hee wil consent to follow your deuise. Presently he left *Amadis*, and coming to *Galaor*, deliuered the whole discourse he did to his brother : Which he liking very well, made this reply. Good Father, if you could bring it to passe, that the Lady would accept me as her friend, my companion and I were for euer at your command. Referre the matter to me, quoth the Knight, immediately will I goe to her, and hope to strike it dead on her behalfe. So departing from *Galaor*, hee went to *Madafima*, who rode formost, and thus began to breake with her.

Madame, you carry two prisoners with you, but you doe not know what they are. Why aske you me such a question ? answered *Madafima*. Because the one of them, quoth the knight, is esteemed the best knight that euer bare Armes, and the most accomplished in all other good gifts. Is he not then named *Amadis* ? said she, whose death I haue so long desired ? No Madame, answered the Knight, I speake of him which ri-deth next vs, whose youth and beauty had you well regarded, your selfe would say you haue been too outragious in iniurie. What though he be your prisoner, it is not for any offence committed against you, but onely through the hatred you beare to another : all which you may yet redresse in much better sort then you began, considering if he conceiued liking of you, you may thereby easily induce him to loue, and vnder that ceremony, draw him to do what your selfe shall desire. In sooth,

re-

plied *Madafima*, I will assay, to know if he be such a one as you report him to be. Do Madame, quoth he, and you shall finde him one of the fairest Knights that euer you beheld.

Here you must note, that the Knight no sooner left *Galaor* when he went to the Ladies, but he tooke occasion thus to talke with his brother. You see (my Lord) the estate wherein we are, which requirerh some notable dissimulation at our hands : I beseech ye therefore moderate their anger, because already it endangereth our liues, and for a while follow my direction. By Meauces brother, answered *Amadis*, death had bene very welcome to mee : but since you wish me to be gouerned by you, I am content, desiring the conseruation of our honours, which being lost, we are vnworthie to liue. Further they could not proceede, because *Madafima* came and interrupted them, when calling him aside, and faire day was displayed on the earth : his beautie and good grace so especially contented her, as she became surprized with his loue, which she shaddowed vnder demanding how he fared. Madame, said *Galaor*, I fare worse then you should, were you in my power as I am in yours, for I would do you what seruice and pleasure possible I could, and you vse the contrarie to me, I hauing giuen no occasion of offence : reason willethe I should rather be your knight, to loue and honour you, then your prisoner thus vnkindelic bound as I am.

And surelie I cannot but meruaile hereat, considering the simple conquest you haue thereby : vnder such rigor to vs, as women so diuinelie adorned are wont to

do. *Madafima* hearing his gentle language, was more and more enamored with his loue, yet strining to dissemble it, the matriellie said. Tell me faire Sir, if I chuse you as my friend, and deliuer you from prison, will you (for my sake) leaue the seruice of King *Lisuart*, and afterward tell him how you did it by my meanes ? With all my heart Lady, answered *Galaor*, and to performe it, you shall haue what oath you please, both of mee and my companion, for he will doe no more then I request him. Credic me, quoth *Madafima*, if before this company you wil promise to obey me, presentlie you shall enioy your libertie.

Behold me ready, replied *Galaor*. Yet is not this enough, answered *Madafima*, for you shall sweare it in the presenee of a Lady where I am intended to lodge this night : In meane while you must assure me, not to depart my company. We will not on my faith Madame, quoth *Galaor* : and calling *Amadis*, caused him to asseure as much, wherespon they were vnbound and set at libertie, their Squires likewise as friendlie vnto, and mounting on their owne horses, rode at their ease as they did before.

But *Madafima* and *Galaor* still continued their amorous discourses, till they arrived at a Castle named *Albies*, the Lady whereof receiued them very honourably, in respect of great friendship betweene *Madafima* and her. Needeleffe were it to tell you of their good chere, it could not but be answerable to the time and company, but after supper *Madafima* demanded of *Galaor*, if he meant to keepe his promise he made her by the way. What else Madame ? quoth



ate her wrath : beleue then what I say, and put it in practise. You are fayre, young, and of gallant stature, beside, *Madafima* hath bene told, how you are one of the best Knights in the World, whereby shee conceiueth good opinion of you: now must you cunningly close with her, requesting shee would accept you as her husband or perpetuall friend: for she is a woman not to refuse you, if you can neuer so little dissemble with her. But what you doe, do quickly, because at that place whither we are now going, she intends to send one of her seruants to King *Lisuart* Court, whose errand is onely to enquire your names: for she that conducted you hither, (perceiuing you should assuredly die, if her mistresse knew the names of you both) disguised the matter so with her, as she said, she forgot to aske your names: onely thus perswading her, that you were two of the very best Knights in the World. The danger thorowly considered, I sweare to you by the faith of a Christian, that I can deuise no better meane for your deliuerance, then this I haue told ye: and shall I say more? If you do it not, worse will come to you then you suspect. But *Amadis* loued the Princeesse *Oriana* so deere,ly as he rather desired death, then to hazard himselfe in such a composition, whereupon he thus replied. I thanke you Sir hartly for your great kindnesse, but I haue no such authoritie ouer my selfe, as will permit me to proccede so far: though your Lady her selfe intreated neuer so deeply, yet liberty nor life can perswade me. Alas Sir, answered the Knight, I wonder you will not consider how nere your death is? It is all one

to me, quoth *Amadis*, but if you will deale herein with my brother, he is a knight more braue and beautifull then I am: happily hee wil consent to follow your deuise. Presently he left *Amadis*, and coming to *Galaor*, deliuered the whole discourse he did to his brother: Which he liking very well, made this reply. Good Father, if you could bring it to passe, that the Lady would accept me as her friend, my companion and I were for euer at your command. Referre the matter to me, quoth the Knight, immediatly will I goe to her, and hope to strike it dead on her behalfe. So departing from *Galaor*, hee went to *Madafima*, who rode formost, and thus began to breake with her.

Madame, you carry two prisoners with you, but you doe not know what they are. Why aske you me such a question? answered *Madafima*. Because the one of them, quoth the knight, is esteemed the best knight that euer bare Armes, and the most accomplished in all other good gifts. Is he not then named *Amadis*? said she, whose death I haue so long desired? No Madame, answered the Knight, I speake of him which rideth next vs, whose youth and beauty had you well regarded, your selfe would say you haue been too outrageous in iniurie. What though he be your prisoner, it is not for any offence committed against you, but onely through the hatred you beare to another: all which you may yet redresse in much better sort then you began, considering if he conceiued liking of you, you may thereby easily induce him to loue, and vnder that ceremony, draw him to do what your selfe shall desire. In sooth,

plyed *Madafima*, I will assay, to know if he be such a one as you report him to be. Do Madame, quoth he, and you shall finde him one of the fairest Knights that euer you beheld.

Here you must note, that the Knight no sooner left *Galaor* when he went to the Ladie, but he tooke occasion thus to talke with his brother. You see (my Lord) the estate wherein we are, which requirerh some notable dissimulation at our hands: I beseech ye therefore moderate their anger, because already it endangereth our liues, and for a while follow my direction. By Heauens brother, answered *Amadis*, death had bene very welcome to mee: but since you wish me to be gouerned by you, I am content, desiring the conseruation of our honours, which being lost, we are vnworthie to liue. Further they could not proccede, because *Madafima* came and interrupted them, when calling him aside, and faire day was displayed on the earth: his beautie and good grace so especially contented her, as she became surprized with his loue, which she shaddowed vnder demanding how he fared. Madame, said *Galaor*, I fare worse then you should, were you in my power as I am in yours, for I would do you what seruice and pleasure possible I could, and you vse the contrarie to me, I hauing giuen no occasion of offence: reason willethe I should rather be your knight, to loue and honour you, then your prisoner thus vnkindelic bound as I am.

And surelie I cannot but meruaile hereat, considering the simple conquest you haue thereby: vnder such rigor to vs, as women so diuinelie adorned are wont to

do. *Madafima* hearing his gentle language, was more and more enamored with his loue, yet striming to dissemble it, she mottillie said. Tell me faire Sir, if I chuse you as my friend, and deliuer you from prison, will you (for my sake) leave the seruice of King *Lisuart*, and afterward tell him how you did it by my meanes? With all my heart Lady, answered *Galaor*, and to performe it, you shall haue what oath you please, both of mee and my companion, for he will doe no more then I request him. Credic me, quoth *Madafima*, if before this company you wil promise to obey me, presentlie you shall enioy your libertie.

Behold me ready, replied *Galaor*. Yet is not this enough, answered *Madafima*, for you shall sweare it in the presence of a Ladie where I am intended to lodge this night: In meane while you shall assure me, not to depart my company. We will not on my faith Madame, quoth *Galaor*: and calling *Amadis*, caused him to asseure as much, wherespon they were vnbound and set at libertie, their Squires likewise as friendlie vssh, and mounting on their owne horses, rode at their ease as they did before.

But *Madafima* and *Galaor* still continued their amorous discourses, till they arrived at a Castle named *Albies*, the Lady whereof receiued them very honourably, in respect of great friendship betweene *Madafima* and her. Needelesse were it to tell you of their good cheere, it could not but be answerable to the time and company, but after supper *Madafima* demanded of *Galaor*, if he meant to keepe his promise he made her by the way. What else Madame? quoth

quothe he, provided you be so good as your worde to me. Make no doubt thereof, replied *Madafma*: then framing her speeches to the Lady of the Castle, and also to two knights that were her Sonnes, she proceeded in this manner, My good friends, I pray you heare a covenant betweene me and these two Gentlemen, because hereafter you may be my witneses. They are my prisoners, and vnder these conditions I haue released them, that one of them shall continue my friend, and both of them forsake the seruice of King *Lisuart*, telling him: how for my sake, and in despight of him they haue done it. Hereupon I intreate this fauour at your hands, as to meete meat the Court of that wretched King, on the day they must declare this message, to see how contentedly he will take it: But if they fullfill not their promise, henceforth you shall publish in all places the heynous offence by them committed, and ten dayes I giue them to execute this charge. I am well pleased, said the Lady of the Castle, to doe a greater matter for you then this, if they as willingly consent thereto. We pray you, quoth *Galaor*, not to faile herein, for we haue promised and will performe it. Receiue then your libertie, answered *Madafma*, yet must you not depart this

night: These words she spake, because she intended to scale the bargain with *Galaor*.

When the time came that summoned them to rest, *Amadis* was conducted to one chamber, and *Galaor* to another, whither soone after *Madafma* repaired, she being young, beautifull, and aduenturously giuen: *Galaor* likewise, a man forward to such fortunes, when *Loue* had erected his scaling-ladders to the walls, quickly got possession of the Forte. And so well liked these these amorous skirmishes, as afterward she reported in many places, how she neuer tasted a more pleasant night, and had she not promised him departure, hardly would she haue let him goe so soone, nor did shee but in hope of his speedie returne.

Thus was she enclined to voluptuous desire, as without care of her honour, she often fell in this sort. By these meanes escaped *Amadis*, and *Galaor*, vnder the conditions you haue heard, which they hoped to procure without impeach, as hereafter shall be declared vnto you. All that day they rode, not hindered by any thing, and at night were friendly entertained in an hermitage, setting forward the next morning to the Court of King *Lisuart*.

## CHAP. XXXV

How King *Lisuart* was in danger of his person, and his state, by the unfaithfull promises he made too rashly and rashly.



Our dayes after *Amadis* and *Galaor* departed from the Court, the ancient Knight came to the Citie of *London*, who left the Crowne and the mantle with the Queene, as you haue heard: when falling on his knee before the King, he began in this manner. I marvell my Lord, that in a time of such honor, you weare not the Crowne I left with you. And you *Madame*, quoth he to the Queene, is it possible you should make so slender account of the sumptuous mantle I gaue you in charge, nor designing anyer to prouert, or how it will become ye? When the King heard his words, knowing they were lost, he sat a good while without any answer, which made the knight thus begin againe. On my faith I am glad you like the not, for had you pleased to keepe them, you must likewise haue granted my demand, and happely it would proue greater then you expect: otherwise, in falsifying your promise, you might procure the losse of my head. Most humbly therefore I beseech ye my Lord, to will them be deliuered me againe, because I may tarry no longer here.

At which words the King seemed much offended, and not being able any longer time to conceale his hidden anger; earnestly fixing his eyes vpon him (which were then ouerclouded with a discontented brow) he brake forth

into these following speeches, Know knight, that whatsoever promises I haue made to thee, are (like those decrees, which stand registered in the booke of Fate), immutable, and thou shalt finde that I will keepe them inuolable. Although I must confesse, (for the which I am heartily sorry, not so much for my selfe, who am a partner with thee in the losse: as for thy sake who committed them to my trust) that both the Crowne and Mantle are utterly lost, how, or by what means I cannot relate, would heauens would please to be so propitious as to bring to light this deepe of darknesse; then should my now troubled heart, finde comfort, and you, your wished desire: Which till then cannot rest contented, my much perplexed minde would then bee at peace, which now is at ciuill Warres, and intestine contention within me. At which words, not being able any further by his tongue, (the hearts best interpreter both for ioy and griefe) to expresse himselfe, he abruptly paused, partlie moued thereunto by the knight who gaue a loud shriek, saying,

Ah wretched and miserable old man, now comes the time I so much feared, bringing with it, my latest and vnluckie exigent; haue I not long enough endured torments, but now must after all those miseries, finish mine old age in the most sore, cruell death was

was euer heard of, hauing by no offence deferred it? While thus he complained, the teares abundantly trickled downe his white beard, which moued the most constant to pittie his grieve, and the King himself ouercom with compassion, returned this answer. Feare not (Knight) to speede any thing the worse for my losse, you must be satisfied whatsoeuer it cost me, according as I faithfully promised. At these words the Knight would haue kissed his feete, but the King restrained him, saying: Demand what thou wilt, for thou shalt haue it. I know my Lord, quoth the Knight, you remember your promise to deliuer my Crowne and Mantle, or whatsoeuer I requested for them: God is my witnesse, I intended not to desire what now I must needes, by reason I haue no other meane whereby to bee deliuered, if I had, I would acquit you of the grieve I know you will endure, granting me the thing I must of necessitie demand: but now it may not be otherwise, except you infringe your faith & loyaltie. Rather will I lose my Kingdome, replied the King, then make a promise and not fulfill it, say boldly therefore thy minde. I thanke your Maiessty, quoth the knight, there now remaineth nothing, but to haue assurance from the Lords of your Court, that they seeke not to take from me the gift you must deliuer: otherwise your promise cannot be perform'd, or I satisfied, hauing a reward now, and taken from me anon. Great reason, said the King, my word shall stand for their warrant. Seeing my Lord, quoth the knight, Fortune hath so permitted, that you haue lost my Mantle and the Crowne, it is impossible to saue my head, except

you giue me Madame Oriana your Daughter. Be therefore now satisfied, either restore my Jewells, or giue me her, albeit I loue the one better then the other: for neuer can I haue so much good by her, as I sustaine harme by your unhappie losse. Now began all the Lords and Barons to murmur against the knight, perswading the king to deny his word, but he rather desired death, he was such a good and all Prince, and this answer he made them. Be not offended by good friends, the losse of my Daughter will not be so preiudiciall to me, as the breach of my promise: for if the one be enuious, the other is iniurious, and to be shunned euery way. The proofe is ready, if Subjects finde not their Prince faithfull, and his word honorable, what care will they haue of the loue and fidelitie they owe him? much better vborne than my such blemish: this knight therefore must haue my daughter, and will deliuer her according to my promise. Hereupon he sent for her, but the Queene being present all this while, little thought the king would so forget his fatherlie loue: and when she heard this rigorous sentence pronounced against her Daughter, shee good Lady fell at the kings feete, when weeping (as a Mother for the losse of her Childe) she said. What will ye doe my My Lord? will ye bee more inhumane to your owne blood, then the brute Beasts are to their contraries? Notwithstanding all their brutish qualities, yet be they neuer so vnnatural to shew any violence to their young ones. May it then be thought reasonable vnder shadow of an accorded promise (without knowledg thereof) to commit so great wrong, not

only

only against your selfe inipitious father, or mee a wretched and vnforgotten mother, but likewise against the whole common weale of this Realme? Alas Sir, let my incessant teares perswade you, to bethinke some other meane for your discharge, and also to content the knight. Madame, quoth the King, my word is past, I pray you talke no more thereof to me. Thus speaking, the teares streamed downe his cheekes, whereat the Lords were not a little agrieved, and that which most troubled him, was the acclamations of the Ladies, wherefore the King commanded them to their chambers. The Queene seeing she might not preuaile, fell in a swoone, but by her Ladies she was conueighed thence, the King giuing charge on paine of death, that no one should seeke to alter his promise. My daughter, quoth hee, I commit to the pleasure of God, but my promise shall not be broken if I can help it.

By this time the newes came to Oriana, how her Father had consented to her departure, whereat shee fell downe in such a traunce, as they neuer expected life in her againe: when *Mabils* and the Ladies reputing her dead indeede, thought best to acquaint the King therewith, yet by forced remedies shee reuiued againe, breathing forth many dolorous sighes. Now the most of the women scuered themselves, some neare, and some further from her, because shee should not heare their complaining: and such compassion tooke they on her, as would haue conuerted a stony heart into teares, especially, when the Princess recovered the power of speech, and faintly vttered these regrets. Full well, quoth shee, doe I well beholde

mine owne ruine. Ah sweete friend, wert thou heere, easily wouldst thou deliuer me from this paine: but thus much my heart forgetteth mee, euen at the very houre of thy departure. Ah cursed bee that houre, because I consented to it. When thou shalt heare of these rydings, I feare (being vnable to endure them) thou wilt die immediately: yet this is the best hope, we shall not be long one after another. Ah death, the onely refuge to the vnforgotten, seest thou not me foremost in this ranke? why stayest thou? Fortune will triumph ouer thee, in dealing so extreemely as shee can with me, albeit I knowe thou art able to reuenge thy selfe: make haste therefore, and let her not get such preeminence on mee, in despight (as it were) of thy authority. Adieu then sweete friend, for neuer shall wee see each other more in this life: at these wordes shee fell in a swoone againe. When the King saw shee tarried so long, hee sent to comend her make more speed: but the messenger found her in the deadly agony, and staying till she was recovered againe, as shee began to renew her moanes, he thus spake to her. Madame, the King is offended because you come not to him.

When shee heard this message, shee arose, hauing her heart so sealed vp with grieve, as it seemed to enable her vitall forces, and being followed by none of her women, but the Damosell of *Demarket*, shee came before the King, and casting her selfe at his feete, sayde. My Lord and Father, what is your pleasure with mee? Faire Daughter, quoth hee, I must accomplish my promise. These speeches provoked her found paine,

T

when

when the King grieuing to behold the sight therof, turned his head aside, saying to the knight. See my friend, here is the gift you demand, and the onely thing in the world I most loue: but intend you to carry her hence alone? My Lord, sayd the knight, she shall be accompanied with two Gentlemen and their Squires, which were in my company when you made mee this promise at *Windsore*: & more may I not allowe, vntill hee haue her, vnto whom I am constrained to deliuer her. Yet let her haue the company of this Damofell, saide the King, for it were vnseemely, she should bee alone among so many men. Well, quoth the knight, for one woman it matters not. So taking the Princeesse in his armes, shee being scant reuiued from her swoone, he set her vp on horse-backe, & caused a Squire to sit behind her on the horse, who might hold her fast lest she should fall: and a very sad countenance shewed the knight, saying, there was none in the Court more sorrowfull then himselfe. After the Damofell of *Denmarke* was mounted, the King intreated her not to leaue his daughter whatsoever happened. And while they were thus preparing, the Princeesse looking woefully about her: a tall knight well armed came among them, who not taking off his helmet, or saluting the company, tooke *Orianaes* horse by the bridle. This was *Arcalaus* the enchanter, and came in this sort lest he should beeknownen: soone after he commanded the Squire to ride away with her, which the Princeesse perceiuing, and seeing there was no other remedy, deliuering a sigh as if her heart would haue split, shee sayde. Ah my deere friend, in a

happlesse houre for you was the boone granted, because it will bee both your death and mine. Here in shee meant *Amadis*, whom shee gaue leaue to depart with the Damofell, yet the standers by vnderstood it of her father and her selfe.

Thus departed *Oriana* with them that conducted her, who rode apace till they were entred the Forrest neere at hand: and the King himselfe was mounted on horse-backe, to conduct his daughter somewhat on the way, as also to forbid any rescue from following, according to his former promise. But the Princeesse *Mabila* standing at a windowe, to see this sad and pensiue separation, could come no nearer to *Oriana*, her heart was so surprisid with griefe: yet by hap shee espyed *Dardan* the Dwarfie that serued *Amadis*, making speed after the Princeesse on horse-backe, when calling him to her, she saide. *Dardan*, if thou loue thy Master, stay not any where till thou acquaint him with this mishappe: if now thou faile him, it may returne to thine owne daunger, for this is the time of greatest necessity. By God Madame, answered the Dwarfie, I will with all diligence performe my duty. So giving the spurres to his horse, hee galloped the same way his Master rode with the Damofell.

But leaue wee him posting, and tell what now happened to King *Lisuart*, who accompanied his Daughter to the entrance of the Forrest, causing all such to returne as followed him. Euen in the houre of his trouble, a Damofell came to him mounted on a swift Palfrey, with a sworde hanging about her neck, and a Launce richly painted, hauing the point gilded ouer: af

ter shee had saluted him, she thus spake. My Lord, God increase your ioy, and make you willing to performe what you haue promised me at *Windsore*, in the presence of all your worthy knights. At these wordes the King knew her, remembering it was she that sayde, how she would prooue the vertue of his heart, whereupon hee thus answered. In good faith Damofel, I haue now more neede of ioy then euer I had: notwithstanding, I am readie to accomplish any thing I promised you. It is the only thing my Lord, quoth she, of my returne to you, being the most loyall King in the world, wherefore humbly I intreate yee, presently to reuenge my cause on a knight that passed through this Forrest, who not long since slew my father, by the most horrible treason that euer was heard of: yet not content therewith, the villaine violently tooke mee away, and perforce made me yeeld to his vnlawfull will. But in such sort is hee enchanted, as hee cannot bee done to death, except the most vertuous man in the Realme of Great *Brittaine*, giue him a wound with this Launce, and another with this sword: both which he gaue in keeping to a Ladie, of whom hee had good hope to be loued, yet therein he was deceiued, for shee hateth him aboue all others, for which cause she gaue mee this sword and Lance, whereby we might both be reuenged on him. Nor can it bee done but by you onely, who are the chiefe and most vertuous man in this countrey: wherefore as you promised mee before so valiant men, may it please ye to execute this iust action of vengeance. And because I haue often tolde him, that by this day I would bee prouided of a

knight to combate with him; he is come alone into this Forrest, attending onely for my Champion. It is likewise ordered, how you must haue no company but my selfe, for hee little thinketh that I haue the Sworde and Launce so hurtfull to him: and this is our agreement together, if hee remaine conquerour, I must pardon him mine iniury, but if he be vanquished, hee must doe what I command him. Presently the King sent a Gentleman for his Armour, which when hee had put on, he mounted on a braue Courser, girding the Damofels sworde about him, leauing his owne that was one of the best in the world: then without any other company hee rode on with her, shee carrying his helmet. Not farre had they ridden, but shee caused him to forsake the high beaten way, conducting him by a little path among the shrubs, where not long before they had past that led away *Oriana*: then the Damofell shewed him a huge knight armed, mounted on a black Courser, whereupon she sayde. My Lord, take your helmet, for this is he you must deale withall: which the King quickly did, & approaching neere the knight, sayd. Proud Traytour, defend thy selfe, and thy lawlesse lust. So couching their Launces, they encountred together, when the King perceiued how his painted Launce brake like a stalk of hempe, hauing no strength at all in it: which made him drawe his sword to charge the knight, but at the first strok, the blade broke close to the hilt, whereby hee imagined himselfe betrayed, for the knight did what he pleased to him. But as hee would haue killed his horse, the King being quick & nimble caught holde by his gorget, and in such

fort they struggled together, as they both fell to the ground, the knight vnderneath, and the King vpon him, by meanes whereof, hee got his sword from him, and unlacing his helmet to smite off his head, the Damosell cryed out so loude as shee could: Sir *Arcalaus*, helpe your Cosen quickly, or else hee dies. When the King heard her name *Arcalaus*, hee looked vp, and sawe ten braue knights come running vnto him, the one of them vsing these wordes: King *Lisuart*, spare the knight, otherwise thou shalt not reigne one houre. If I die, answered the King, so shall you all for mee, like traytours as you are. Then one of them gaue him such a blowe with his Launce, as not onely fore hurt him, but made him fall on his face to the ground: yet did hee recouer himselfe very quickly, like one resolu'd to defend his life, albeit hee sawe death present before his eyes. But being vnable to resist so many, at length they got sure holde on him, when renting off his helmet & his shield, they bound him fast with a double chaine. Afterward they set him on a simple horse, two knights still holding the ends of the chain, and so leading him along, fought where they might finde *Arcalaus*, *Oriana*, and the Damosell of *Demmark*: but the knight against whom the King first fought, rode before apace, and waving his gauntlet aloft to *Arcalaus*, sayde, Beholde Cosen, kin *Lisuart* is ours. A very good prize, answered *Arcalaus*, henceforth shall his enemies haue no cause to dread him. Villaine, quoth the King, well know I thou wast neuer other then a traytour, and though I am wounded, yet will I maintayne my words if thou darest combare with me. By God,

sayde *Arcalaus*, neuer should I make reckoning of my selfe, to vanquish such a Lord as thou art.

Thus contending as they rode, they came to a double way, where *Arcalaus* stayed, thus speaking to his Page. Sirra, ride with all speed to *London*, and say to Lord *Bastiman*, that hee must execute what I willed him, for I haue begonne indifferently, if hee can make an end as well. Gone is the Page toward the Citie, in meane while *Arcalaus* deuised, to send the King one way, and *Oriana* another, wherefore hee sayde to his Cosen. Take tenne knights with you, and conduct *Lisuart* to my prison at *Duguanell*: these other foure shall keepe mee companie, for I will leade *Oriana* to mount *Aldin*, where I will shew her strange and wonderfull things. This mount *Aldin* was the place of his most vsuall abode, beeing one of the strongest and fairest in the worlde: thus the ten knights carried away the King, and *Arcalaus* with therest had charge of the Princeesse. But certainly, if heere wee consider the properties of fortune, we may easily repute her as mutable, or rather more, towardes great Princes and Lords, then the meaner sort: as well shee witnessed by king *Lisuart*, even in the time when hee intended most honourably, to be thwarted with such a contrary chance. For at one instant, hee sawe himselfe in the hands of his greatest enemies, his Daughter (and heire to his kingdome) taken from him, and all his estate in danger of ruine. Hee that was wont to be honored of all, was now iniuriously despised, bound and led as a theefe, by a villainous chanter, a meane Gentleman, and

out

out of any other hope then death. Is not this then a faire example for such, as at this day are called to the greatest honours in the world? wherewith oftentimes they are so blinded, that they forget both God and themselves. King *Lisuart* was a right good, vertuous, and wise Prince, yet the diuine or-

denance suffred him to fall in these dangers: to the end hee might remember, how all creatures remaine at his heavenly disposition. This lesson he taught him, for in short time hee was brought to lowe as might be, and afterwarde restored againe, as you shall presently vnderstand.

## CHAP. XXXVI.

How Amadis and Galaor vnderstood, that King *Lisuart* and his Daughter were carried away prisoners, wherefore they made haste to giue them succour.



I haue before declared, by what meanes *Amadis* and *Galaor* escaped from *Madafis*, the Lady of *Gauzasi*, who would haue put them to death if shee had knowne their names: likewise how they took their way toward *London*, as men right ioyful of their good success. But by the way, they met *Dardan* the Dwarfie, so fast as horse could gallop, whereupon *Amadis* thus spake to *Galaor*. Brother, trie thinke my seruant *Dardan* cometh toward vs, and doubtlesse about some matter of importance, for do you not see what speed he maketh? By this time *Dardan* brake off their talke, rehearsing euery thing that happened since their departure: but when hee tolde how the Princeesse *Oriana* was carried from the Court against her will, and what sorowfull lamentations she made: *Amadis* entered into a despairing fury, demanding, which way they went that had her in charge? I soothe my Lord, answered *Dardan*, they rode thorough the Forrest, which lieth on the other side of the City. Without more words *Am-*

*dis* gaue the spurres to his horse, galloping amaine toward *London*, so confounded with the terror of these newes, as he could not speake to his brother *Galaor*, who following not but followed at hand. Thorough the City they ride not making any stay, enquiring which way they took that led away the Princeesse: so euery one shewed it him very readily: As *Gandalin* came posting after his Lord, it was his hap to passe by the Queenes lodging, where shee standing at a window, sawe comewith griefer: espied *Gandalin*, whom she called to her, and asked where he left his Master *Madame*, quoth he, he is gone after the than haue away the Princeesse. Stay a little, I pray thee, said the Queen: she sent she for the Kings sword, which was accounted one of the best in the world, saying. I desire thee carrie this sword to *Amadis*, and tell him the King forfooke it this morning, he being gone with a Damosell to combare for her, & she hath giuen him another sword: as yet we heare no tidings of him, either when he will returne, or whether he is gone. *Gandalin* hauing receiued the sword, set away with speed after his



his maister, whose impatience vrging him to more hast, then care of his journey, made him ride so faste into a foule slough, as he was faine to alight ere hee could get forth againe. And leading his horse by the bridle to escape the mire, *Galeor* & *Gandalin* ouer-took him, acquainting him with the Queenes message, and deliuering the sword she sent him. When hee heard how the King was likewise gone, his desire of speede encreased to giue him succour, but his horse was so wearied with struing in the bogge, as hee was constrained to take *Gandalins*: which traualled much worse then his owne, yet with the helpe of his spurres he made him goe. At length they found the tracke of horses, and by good hap met with certaine poore labouring men, whom they asked if they meane any by the way? Yes my Lord, quoth one of them, wee meet certaine men leading a knight and two Ladies, albeit wee durst not shew our selues, but kept vs hidden in the thickest of the wood, for doubtesse they be some bad people: hereto they added such a description of the prisoners, as they easily gathered them to be the King and *Oriana* betrayed. But tell me good friends, saide *Amadis*, know you none of the other? for the prisoners are the King and his daughter. In sooth, replied the poore man, wee are altogether ignorant what they are, yet we heard one that led the horse of the fairest Lady, oftentimes name *Arcalaus*, Now trust mee, quoth *Amadis* to his brother, it is the villaine that enchanted me: Oh that it might be my hap to finde him. Gentlemen, saide the man, few of them went this way on the right hand, with the knight prisoner, and fiew

more this way on the left hand, with the Ladies. Brother, quoth *Amadis* to *Galeor*, I beseech ye to follow the King, least worse befall him then we can remedy, and I will after the Princeesse *Oriana*. So shaking hands in equall resolution, they parted the severall waies: but *Amadis* found his horse so over labored, as he was able to hold out no longer. Being thus hindered, by chance he looked aside, and saw where a Knight lay slaine, with a Squire standing by holding his horse: whereupon *Amadis* stepped to him, demanding who committed that murther. A traitour hath done it, answered the Squire, who is not yet gone very farre, and lea- deth with him the fairest Lady in the world: no other reason had he for my maisters death, but because he asked what the Lady was. What wilt thou do, sayd *Amadis*, tarrying heere? I stay Sir, quoth he, till some one come, who may helpe me with my maisters body to some buriall, and afterward I intend to seeke my fortune. If thou, answered *Amadis*, wilt giue me the horse thou holdest, I will leaue thee mine, and my Squire to helpe thee, and one day will I giue thee two better beside. The squire was content, where *Amadis* mounting on the horse, commanded *Gandalin* to help him bury his maisters body, and afterward to follow him the same way he rode.

Thus *Amadis* hies so fast as horse can run, and espying an hermitage, went to see if any body were within: as he call, the hermit came forth to see whom he asked, if he saw not fiew knights passe by, leading two Ladies. No verily, answered the olde father: but do you not enquire for a Castle, which is not far from this place? Why aske you such

such a question? quoth *Amadis*. Because a Nephew of mine tolde mee, saide the Hermit, how *Arcalaus* the enchanter is going thither, and two Ladies with him, whom hee carryeth perforce. Ah Father, replied *Amadis*, you name the traytour I looke for. Trust me Sir, quoth the Hermit, hee hath done many mischieues in this countrey, would God wee were either rid of him, or else his life amended: but have you no bodie to helpe you? Nobody, but God and my selfe, answered *Amadis*. Why Sir? sayd the Hermit, you tell mee they be fiew in company, and you but one: beside, *Arcalaus* is counted one of the best knights in the world, and with whom few or none dare meddle. Whatsoever hee be, quoth *Amadis*, I am certaine hee is a disloyall traytour, and they no lesse cause then have I to seare him: for God is iust, in whom is onely my confidence. I pray you Sir, replied the Hermit, knowe you of whence the Ladies be? One of them, saide *Amadis*, is the Princeesse *Oriana*, daughter and heire to the vertuous king *Lisuarte*: the other is a Lady attending on her. The God of heauen, answered the Hermit, further your intent, that so good a Princeesse may not be long in such a wretches custody. If you have any propender Father, quoth *Amadis*, I desire you giue my horse a little. The Hermit brought forth such as hee hee had, and while the horse fed, *Amadis* demanded, to whom the Castle belonged: To a knight called *Grumet*, sayde the Hermit, Cousin germaine to proud *Dardan*, who was slaine at the Court of king *Lisuarte*: which makes mee the rather conjecture, that he will lodge such as are ene-

mies to so good a Prince. Good father, replied *Amadis*, I beseech you haue minde of mee in your prayers, and now shew me the nearest way to the Castle. Which the Hermit did, when *Amadis* mounting on horse-backe, tooke his leave, following the way hee was directed. Not long after he got a sight of the Castle, which was compassed with strong Towers and high wals, wherefore so closely as hee could hee approached neare it, where hee heard what joy they made for the arrivall of *Arcalaus*: where marking how many gates of issue it had, hee found there was no more but one, wherefore tying his horse, where he might not be seen, he hid himselfe so conveniently, as none could passe in and out but he must needs see them: thus was hee glad to watch there all that night. At the breake of day, doubting lest the watch of the Castle should descry him, hee entered a little thicker, where long hee had not staid, but hee sawe a knight come forth on a little hill before the Castle, looking all about if he could discern any ambusher: which done, hee went in againe, and very soon after, *Arcalaus* with his four companions issued forth well armed, conducting the two Ladies, whom *Amadis* well knew so soon as hee sawe them. Heereupon hee fell downe on his knee and prayed, that God would strengthen him in this enterprise, then looking to the well guiding of his horse, and that every part of his Armour were as it ought to be, taking his Lance, hee mounted, carrying till they passed by him. But because this place was unfit for the combat, hee intended to suffer them enter on the plaine neere at hand, still keeping himselfe in the thicker: and so neer

did *Arcalaus* with his company passe by *Amadis*, as hee heard the *Princesse Oriana* thus complaine. Alas sweet friend, quoth she, great reason haue you to bid mee adiew, when I would permit you to goe succour her, that seemed the most wofull woman in the world: for I feare this shall bee our last conge, and neuer may you see me againe, because death giueth such due attendance, as it is impossible for me to escape. These words were of such vertue, that albeit *Amadis* could not refraine from teares, yet did they so liuely inflame his heart, as ouer-reaching them ere they knew any thing, hee thus spake to them. You lye false traitours, for these Ladyes shall passe no further. The voyce of *Amadis* was quickly knowne by *Oriana* and the *Damofell of Denmarke*, when imagining themselves already reskewed, their mindes were ioyfully cheered, especially to see their conductours so suddenly amated. But *Arcalaus* perceiuing how *Amadis* out-raaged his friends, approached more neere him, and *Amadis* well knowing him from the rest, met him so brauely, as hee sent him headlong to the ground: the entering among the other foure, hee gaue such a charge to *Grawen*, the Lord of the Castle where they lodged, that his Launce passed quite through his body, and breaking therein, he fell downe dead from his horse. Now drew he the sword the *Queene* sent him, wherewith he laide so valiantly about him, as his enemies were cleane dismayed in their hope, when they beheld *Arcalaus* not yet recovered, whose power they reputed able to ouerthrow an armie. As hee continued the combat with them, the *Damofell of Denmarke*, seeing the friends of *Arcalaus* fight

so timorously, and himselfe lie still as one in a trauunce, she sayd to *Oriana*. Madame, beholde how your *Amadis* honoureth your loue, see you not how he hath vsed *Arcalaus* and our hoste? in sooth wee are already succoured, for these other villaines can holde out no longer. Ah happy *Amadis*, quoth *Oriana*, the mirrour of all vertue and chualric, heauen giue thee grace to finish our deliuerance, with victorie ouer these malicious traitours. When the Squire who had the charge of *Oriana*, as you heard, understood that shee named *Amadis*, he was in such feare, as presently hee leaped from the horse, saying. By my faith I might full well be reputed a foole, to tarry for such blowes as my companions haue: and with these words he run away so fast, that hee neuer looked behinde if any pursued him. In this time *Amadis* had dispatched three of the knights, and the fourth, doubting like lot would fall to him, trusted to his horse legges for safetie of himselfe: but as *Amadis* followed him, he heard the *Princesse* giue a loude crye, when looking backe, hee saw that *Arcalaus* had got her with him on horse backe, and galloped away so fast as hee could. Hereupon hee let goe the knight, to helpe *Oriana*, ouer-taking *Arcalaus* ere hee got much ground, and lifting his sword to strike at him, hee doubted least he should hurt the *Princesse*: but turning to the other side, he gaue him such a wound on the shoulder, as he was glad to let fall *Oriana*, that himselfe might escape more lightly: for he knew if *Amadis* laid hold on him, all the treasure in the world could not saue his life. When *Amadis* saw himselfe sure of his Lady, hee full pursued the cowardly

run-

run-away, saying: Tarry *Arcalaus*, tarry, and thou shalt see if *Amadis* be dead, according as thou lyedst not long agoe. But *Arcalaus* had no leasure to answer, hee rather tooke his shield from his neck and threw it to the ground, because nothing might hinder his horse in running. At length as *Amadis* strook at him, the blowe fell short on the horse buttock, and the beast feeling himselfe wounded, made greater haste away then hee did before, leauing *Amadis* very farre behinde, who earnestly desired the death of *Arcalaus*: but seeing all his labour was in vaine, and doubting least some harme might happen to his Mistresse, to lose her againe by negligence, hauing by hardy valour so well recovered her: he turned back againe, and attayning the place where shee stayed for him, hee alighted from his horse, then falling on his knee humbly kissed her hand, saying: Madame, heauen hath afforded mee more grace, in strengthening me to succour you, then euer it did to any other knight, for I was out of hope to see you againe. But shee good Lady remained still so passionate, in respect of her vngentle v-sage, as also affrighted with feare when *Arcalaus* let her fall: that shee could returne no answer, but gaue him thanks by many kind embracings. By this time, the *Damofell of Denmarke* came to them, and by the way found the sword of *Arcalaus*, which shee bringing to *Amadis*, thus spake. See heere (my Lord) a very faire sword. Right soone did *Amadis* know it, to bee the same was found with him on the Sea, which *Arcalaus* took from him when he lay enchanted, being not a little glad hee had recovered it.

While many affable speeches passed betweene them, *Amadis* still comforting his dismayed Mistresse, and shee reioycing in her louely friend: *Gandalin* arrived, who had sought his Master all that night, and happily found him there with his Lady. Now minded they to tarry no longer in this place, therefore making choyce of the knights horses to their owne liking, they all mounted, *Amadis* leading *Oriana*es Palfray by the bridle, and shee rehearsing to him by the way, what iniury the dead knight had done her, as in her life time she neuer endured the like: Madame, answered *Amadis*, much greater griefe haue I suffered by a living creature, yet lesse to be feared then the dead, who can doe no harme: but beauty onely hath hazarded my life. Albeit *Oriana* well knew his meaning, yet shee demanded who was the cause thereof. Euen you Madame, quoth he, who hold mee in a life more irksome then death. My Lord, said the *Princesse*, neuer with my consent did you sustaine any harme, and very forie would I be you should thinke mee so vnkinde: for rather could I afford to ease your griefe, woe it in my power to compasse the meane. Ah Madame, replied *Amadis*, as by you onely I took my hurt, so from you onely must I haue my help, and reason repunes it a matter of great inconuenience, that such rare perfections should cause so rough passions. But if you be indued with such pity, as the rest of your excellencies do plainly promise, you will not beholde that in me, which you grieue to see in your chiefest enemies: euen death, gentle *Princesse*, who in my torments awaiteth on me, forbearing to strike, being conquered with

with this hope, that did opportunity and place serve, your passed promise hold ease your thoughts, and deliver me from this weighty oppression. But see how sweete occasion fauoureth vs, and fortune stands aloofe from hindering our content: doe not you then (good Madame) let slip this gracious offer, when time and place challenge it at your hand, considering the argument is vrgent, and being now loytered, may hardly be againe so well recovered. *Oriana* (not so much for these reasons, as because her pain was equall with his, & had not he begun the motion, her selfe would haue solicited the same) thus answered. Great is the force of your perswasions, but greater the vnfaired loue I beare you, which hath such authority ouer me: as when you shall haue least occasion to demand, I am content and constrained to obey, yea, to repose such a thing in your trust, as very hardly can I holde fast in my thoughts. Yet I desire you, albeit you see me not stored with prouidence, that you will carefully manage our enterprise, by warie keeping it from knowledge or suspect: rather submitting our selues to the highest displeasure, then common reproofe, which is contained within no limits. Sufficient protestation made *Amadis* hereof, but little batterie needed when the hole was won, and riding through a verie thick wood, the Princeesse became desirous of sleepe, because the night before she enioyed no rest: whereupon shee acquainted *Amadis* therewith, saying, shee must needes sleepe ere she went any further. Hee being no vnprofitable counsellor, and seeing a daintie plot by a rivers side, shadowed with boughes from the heate of

the sunne: aduised her to rest there awhile, and dismounting from their horses, hee thus spake. I please you Madame, in this place we may stay till the heate be gone, and you rest in tarying for the cool evening: in meane space I will lead *Gandalin* to the Towne, to bring some viands to refresh vs withall. Your reason is good, saide *Oriana*, but how shall hee come by me? He shall leaue his horse in pawne, answered *Amadis*, and returne on foote. Yet I (quoth *Oriana*) haue a better helpe then that: hee shall sell this ring, which can doe vs no better seruice then now in our neede. So pulling the ring from her finger, she gaue it to *Gandalin*, who taking his leaue, as hee came by his Maister, saide: So good time lost, will neuer be had againe. *Amadis* knew his meaning well enough, yet made he no shew thereof, but vnarmed himselfe, and *Oriana* spreading the Damofels mantle on the grasse, laide her downe vpon it: the Damofell likewise went aside into the wood, where shee fell soundly to sleepe, by reason shee watched all the night before. Thus remained *Amadis* alone with his mistresse, so glad of her gentle grant, and the fauourable houre at hand: as hee could not withdraw his eyes from comfort, which made him delay time in needlesse gazing. In the end, though his hands had bene slow in vnarming him, all his other members were in better state, for not one of them but did his duty. The heart was rauished in thoughts, the eye, in contemplation of excellent beauty, the mouth, with sweete kisses, the armes, with kinde embracings: and no one member consent in any poynt, except the eyes, which wished themselves in number.

number like the starres in heauen, for their better ability in function, thinking they could not sufficiently beholde so diuine an object. In great paine were they likewise, because they were hindered from the pride of beauty, for the Princeesse held her eyes closed, as well to disguise her desire of sleepe, as also for the discreet shame conceiued by this pleasure, so that shee durst not boldly looke on him she most loued. Hereupon, carelessly spreading her armes abroad, as though she slept in deed, and by reason of the exceeding heate, leauing her gorget open, two little alablaster bowles liuely shewed themselves in her bosome, so faire and sweetly respiring, as Nature neuer shewed more curious workmanship. Now *Amadis* forgetting his former bashfulnesse, seeing Fortune allowed him so quaint a fauour, let loose the reins of amorous desire with such aduantage, as notwithstanding some weak resistance of the Princeesse, she was enforced to proue the good and bad together, which maketh friendly maidens become faire women. Daintie was the good grace and subtiltie of *Oriana*, in shadowing her surpassing pleasure, with a feminine complaint of *Amadis* boldnesse, shewing in countenance such a gracious choller & contented displeasure: as in stead of consuming time in excuses, *Amadis* resaluted her with sundry sweet kisses, as also another cause to chide if she wold. But she being loth to mixe angry speeches with amiable solace, or with frowning lookes to crosse an equall content, thought it better to commend the controule of so kinde a loue, and therefore continued this pleasing recreation, as neither party receiued occasion of

mislike: rather with kisses (which are counted the seals of loue) they chose to confirm their vnanimie, then otherwise to offend a resolute patient. Ah, how many repetitions made *Oriana*, of the paines shee suffered in expectation of this day: confessing those pitinate particularities, which none but she & her desire were acquainted withall. How many manners likewise alleadged *Amadis*, expressing thereby his singular contentment, and credible assurance of his perpetuall faith? now reckoning all his trauels well imployed, & more then sufficiently recompensed. In these discourses and pleasures they spent most part of the day, carryed so farre from remembrance of any thing else, as they thought not on the time, how day wasted, & night ensued, whether *Gandalin* were returned, or the Damofell awake, all these things were now cast into obliuion. They imagined to haue viands good store, being thus delighted the one with the other, which seemed more delicious to them, then all the *Nectar* or *Ambrosia* of *Iupiter*. Yet at length they remembered themselves somewhat better, when hearing the Damofell and *Gandalin* to scarce them, their pastime ended, and taking each other by the hand, walked among the trees to take the ayre: in the meane while *Gandalin* and the Damofell spread a cloath on the grasse, and set thereon such victuals as they had. Now though they wanted rich cup-boords of plate, as were in the houses of King *Lisuart* and *Perion*, as also the solemnity of great seruices: yet the fortunate entertainment at this time, was held by them of higher estimation.

During their repast, as they regarded

garded the woods and fountains, they began to esteeme it no strange matter, why the Gods sometime forsooke the heauens, to dwell in groues and delightful Forrests: *Jupiter* they imagined wife, when he followed *Europa*, &c, and his other friends: Beside, *Apollo* had reason to become a Shepheard, for the loue of *Daphne*, and the daughter of *Admetus*. They being willing to imitate their example, wished

continually to tarry there, without returning to the Pallace and royal pompe: reputing the Nymphes of the woods most happy Goddesses, excelling such as remayned in the walled Cities. Pity were it to trouble these louers in their amorous deuises, wherefore we will leaue them, and see what happened to *Galaor*, following the search of King *Lisuart*.

### CHAP. XXXVII.

*How Galaor rescued King Lisuart from the ten Knights that led him to prison.*

**G**alaor parting from his brother *Amadis*, in such sort as you heard, followed the way whereby the King was led prisoner, and making great haste, in respect of his earnest desire to ouer-take him, had minde of nothing else hee met by the way. As thus hee continued gallopping, hee saw a Knight well armed come riding towards him, who maruelling why the Prince vsed such extreame diligence, when hee came neare him, sayd: Stay a while knight, and tell mee what affaires cause you make such speed. Forbear Sir I pray yee, answered *Galaor*, for by my tarrying may happen too great an inconuenience. By God, sayde the knight, you must not so escape, for you shall tell mee whether you will or no. I may not trifle the time, quoth *Galaor*, and so rode on still without any variance. Nay *Galaor*, replied the knight, I will bee resolute in my demand, though to your cost. Hereupon hee posted after *Galaor*, still exclaiming

on him with hard words, weening he fled away for feare of him, and often-times hee thought to smite him with his Launce, but the Prince euer more escaped his attempt: yet his horse being sore weatied, hindered him very much, when the knight ouer-taking him, thus spake. Infamous palliard, and without heart, of these three things chuse the best, either to combat, returne or answer my demand. Now trust me, sayd *Galaor*, the easiest of these three is hard to mee, wherein you make no shew of curtesie: for returne I may not, and if I combat, it must be against my will. But if you desire to know the cause of my haste, followe me and you shall see: for I should tarry too long in telling it, and happily you would scant belecue mee, so horrible and disloyall is the deed which compelleth me to this impatience. Belecue mee, quoth the knight, & I will follow thee three whole dayes, onely to see whether thou lyest or no.

Thus *Galaor* held on his way, & the knight hasting after, till ha-

uing

uing ridden the space of a mile, when they elplied two other knights, the one being on foore running to catch his horse, and the other gallopping away so fast as hee could. Hee on foot was *Cosen* germaine to the knight that followed *Galaor*, who in iousting with the other knight, had beene dismounted: & knowing his kinsman, acquainted him with the whole accident, requesting his assistance in reuenge of his wrong. It may not be now, answered the other, till I haue followed the knight you see before, three dayes together: hereto hee added all the speeches betweene *Galaor* and him. In sooth, replied his *Cosen*, hee should seeme (by your wordes) the greatest coward in the world, else mindeth he some enterprise of higher consequence: therefore I will adiourne the reuenge of mine iniury, and beare you company, to the ende I may beholde the sum of your attempt. While thus they talked, *Galaor* had gotten very farre before, which caused them make the more haste after him: till at length the Prince espied the ten knights that conducted the King, they riding vpe a narrow strait, fure before him, & fure behinde. Now did he fully resolve to die, or purchase his deliuerance, for hee was so offended to see the King bound with chaines, as hee imagined himselfe able to conquer them all, & as many more if they had been there, whereupon he thus cryed to them: Traytours, durst you vneruerently lay hand on the best King in the world? With these wordes he met one of them so directly, as his Launce passing through his body, hee fell downe dead beside his horse. When the other foure saw their companion slaine, they willed the formost fure

to guard the King, for they would reuenge his death sufficiently: but they found themselves very much deceiued, for though the Princes horse (by reason of his sore traueil) often stumbled, and thereby put him in danger of falling, yet laide hee such loades vpon his enemies, as two more of them accompanied the first, and the other twaine were brought into hard extremitie. Then came the other fure with a fresh charge vpon him, when *Galaor* perceiuing his owne danger, intended to reuenge his death and the Kings together, entring courageously among the thickest, shewing most rare and haughty chivalry. When the two *Cosens* that followed him beheld his behaviour, confounded with maruell, the one sayd to the other. By God we did him wrong to tearme him a coward, for hee is the most hardy knight that euer I saw: except the world shall twit vs with shame, let vs not see him die in this extremitie, lest the beauty of chivalry bee gone for euer. Resolved thus to succour him, they valiantly thrust themselves into the skirmish, deliuering such friendly blowes on euery side, that *Galaor* soone felt himselfe well assisted: because his enemies were somewhat more dispersed, and hee had leasure to take a little breathing, but wondering whence this aide should proceed, hee fell to worke againe, giuing them good cause to misdoubt their liues. When the *Cosen* to *Archalaus* sawe how his side decayed, and his knights dishartened, slaine and sore wounded: hee purposed to kill the King: who by this time found the meanes to vnbinde himselfe, and alighting from his horse, got one of the slaine knightes swordes, where-with

hee resisted his enemies brauely. As the cosin to *Arcalaus* followed his intent, the king gaue his horse such a blow ouer the face, as by rearing vp, hee fell downe backward; yet the Knight recouered himselfe, and *Galaor* seeing one fight with the king, came to assist him, when snatching off his helmet, hee would haue smitten his head from his shoulders: but the king would not suffer him, saying, hee should liue and dye a theefe. The two cosins, who were named *Don Guilan* and *Ladassin*, pursued another knight, whome they slew, and returning backe againe, they knew the king, which stroke them into no little maruaile, because they heard nothing of his misfortune: then alighting from their horses, they took off their helmets and did him reuerence, when hee knowing them right well, embraced them in his armes, saying. My friends, you haue succoured me in a needefull time, for which I may liue to requite you with thanks: yet haue you wronged me by your absence from the Court, and for your loue to each other I lost you both, especially, you Lord *Guilan*, your minde being else-where, made you forget me. These words caused a modest blush in *Don Guilan*, beause the king disciphered his loue, which was the Duchesse of *Brisfaya*, who was not one iot behinde him in affection: as well witnessed the good entertainment she gaue him, tasting together the fruit of their contentment. Which the Duke so doubted, and dayly conceiued such strange suspicion thereof, as it procured the iniurie was done to *Galaor*, when the Dwarfie espied him in the garden, at his returne from faire *Aldena*; whereby the Damofell was in dan-

ger of burning, as the history heretofore hath declared to you.

But while the king thus communed with *Don Guilan*, *Galaor* had got the Nephew of *Arcalaus* beside his horse, and tyed the chaine about his neck, the king was bound withall: then taking the best horses belonged to the dead knights, they rode toward *London*. And by the way, *Ladassin* recounted to the king, how he contended with *Galaor* for riding so fast, offering him the combate, which he refused because he would delay no time for his succour: which caused the king to requite him with many thanks, that he could so well forbear in a case of such necessity. But my Lord, quoth *Don Guilan*, my hap was more hard, for by thinking on her, who oftentimes makes mee to forget my selfe, a knight encountered with mee, and by force of his Lance, cast me from my saddle. In sooth, answered the king, I haue heard talke of many louers, and what they enterprife for their Ladies, yet neuer of any folly comparable to yours: which giue me good cause to coniecture, that you were not in vaine named *Guilan* the pensue, for you are the greatest mufer I euer heard of. As thus they beguiled the time, they ariued at the house of *Ladassin*, which was not farre thence, whether soon after came *Galaors* squire and *Dardan* the Dwarfie, who thought his maister had taken that way. Then did *Galaor* tell the king, how his brother *Amadis* was gone to reskew his daughter, and in what manner they heard of their seperation by the poore labourers, wherefore he aduised him to send speedily to *London*, least his mishap being published in the Citie, might raise some comotion among the

people. Credit me, quoth the king, seeing *Amadis* undertooke to follow my daughter, I will not as yet account her lost, if the traytor *Arcalaus* worke no new villany by his enchantments: but as concerning my happy deliuerance, I like well that my Queen should vnderstand thereof. Whereupon *Ladassin* called a Squire, whome the king presently sent to the Court as *Galaor* aduised. After they had well refreshed themselves, they were

conducted to their chambers, and on the morrowe set forward on their iourney, the king coming with the Nephew of *Arcalaus*, as concerning the enterprife of his kinsman: which made him reuel the whole determination, and how *Barfinan* was in hope, so the king of Great Brittain. Hereupon the king concluded to make the more haste, thinking to finde *Barfinan* as yet at *London*, and to punish him for his audacious presumption.

### CHAP. XXXVIII.

*How newes came to the Queene that the King was taken: And how Barfinan laboured to vsurpe the City of London.*

**I**F you haue well noted the former discourse, you may easily remember, how the poor labouring men; (not knowing the king & *Oriana*) seeing how iniuriously they were intreated by *Arcalaus* and his complices, were glad to hide themselves in the wood: in like manner, how afterward they vnderstood by *Amadis* and *Galaor*, that the prisoners were king *Lisuarte* and his daughters. Whereupon, so soone as the two knights were parted from them, they hastened to report these newes in *London*: which caused such a murmuring through the Citie, especially among the knights, as they presently armed themselves, and mounted on horse backe in such troupes, as the fields were quickly couered with men & horses. At this time was king *Arban* of *Normales* talking with the Queene, little thinking on any misfortune: when one of his Squires bringing his Armour, sayde My Lord, you tarry heere trifling too

long, arme your selfe quickly & followe the rest, who by this time haue gotten so farre as the Forrest.

What is the matter, answered King *Arban*. Ah my Lord, quoth the Squire, newes is brought to the Citie, how certaine villaines haue carried the King away prisoner. Prisoner? replied king *Arban*, may it be possible? Too true my Lord, answered the Squire. When the Queene heard these vnhappy tydings, not able to vndergoe so great an oppression, she fell downe in a swoone: but king *Arban* hauing more minde on the King, left her in her Ladies armes, hastning with all speed hee could to horse backe. When he was setting foot in stirrop, hee heard the allarme sounded, and the assault which *Barfinan* gaue to the Castle, whereby hee gathered they were betrayed: wherefore hee caused the Queenes lodging to bee guarded, and returning to the Citie, sawe euery one ready in Armes, when chusing so many as hee pleased,



as also two hundred well approoved knights, hee sent two of the cheefest to the Tower of London, to vnderstand the cause of the allarmer. To them it was reported, how *Barfinan* had forcibly entred with his traine, killing and casting ouer the walls at that he met. Herein he followed the message of the Page from *Areslaus*, finding very slender resistance: for most part of the knights and men of account, were gone to succour the king. Highly displeased was king *Arban* at these newes, perswading himselfe the king had been betrayed, wherefore to preuent such other inconueniencies that might happen, he ordained his men in battaile, placing good watch about the Queenes lodging. And thither *Barfinan* now prepared, hoping to take the Queen as hee had done the tower: but he met with stronger resist than he expected, and the skirmishes proceeding on either side, *Barfinan* took a prisoner, by who he was aduertised, how king *Arban* would withstand him euen to the death. Now began hee to deuise, how by faire speech and falshood he might take the king, crauing a parle with him, whereto king *Arban* willingly agreed, and silence being made on both sides, *Barfinan* began in this manner.

I euer thought til now, my Lord, that you were one of the best aduised knights in the world, but by prooffe I perceiue a man may finde the contrary: yet this I think withall, that what you doe, is for the safetie of your honor. Herein you appeare of simple iudgement, considering in the end, it will bee but the losse of you and your men: in respect king *Lisuart* your late Lord is dead, for prooffe whereof, euen he that slew him will ere long send

me his head. Such fortune then hath dealt so hardly with him, and I at this instant am the greatest Lord in this countrey: dare you denie to make me king? Alas, you abuse your selfe! the best will be for you, to yeelde your selfe louingly, and I shall entreate you so well as any Prince in my Realm: suffering you still to enioy the countrey of *Nor-wales*, and particularly beside will so honor you, as you shall haue great reason to be content. Answaer villaine, answered king *Arban*, full wel doost thou manifest thy horrible treason: for beside thy treacherie in compacting the death of my Lord, thou wouldest haue mee become a traitour to his friends, as thou thy selfe hast prooued. Thou art deceiued, doe the worst thou canst: thy villainie onely will take vengeance on thee according to desert, with such good helpe as we will put thereto. What? said *Barfinan*, think'st thou to hinder me fro sitting as king in London? Neuer shall traitour, replied *Arban*, be king of London, by Gods leaue, while the most honourable king of the world liueth. I called for thee, quoth *Barfinan*, in respect of thine owne good, because I fauoured thee more then any other, imagining thou wert of sound discretion: but (as I haue said) I finde my selfe deceiued, wherefore reason requireth, that thy ouer-weening should fall, and (in despite of thee) I will reigne king in great *Brittain*. Assure thy selfe, answered *Arban*, I will keepe thee fro such climbing, as if the king my maister were here personally present. Then began the assault afresh, king *Arban* withdrawing himselfe to harden his men, being maruailously offended at *Barfinans* words. Now though he were very sharply assailed, yet

stood

stood hee brauely on his defence, many being slaine and sore wounded: neuerthelesse, he was euer more formost in the fight, and last in the retreits which was caused by the night ensuing. Nor neede wee doubt, considering the puissance of *Barfinan*, and they fewe on the contrary side, but king *Arban* would take his aduantage in resistance, by compelling them to narrow streets, where foure on a side could hardly deal together, which turned to the great disaduantage of *Barfinan*, because *Arban* well fortified euery place in good order, and with fresh supply still encouraged his men.

The retreit being sounded, and either side with-drawne, King *Arban* seeing his souldiers forewearing, by the hotte skirmishes they had endured: as is the office of a good Captaine indeede hee came and comforted them in this manner. My louing companions and friends, this day haue you worthily fought, as none of you but deserueth estimation, among the most forward men in the world, and hauing begun so well, I hope you will proceede better and better. Remember the cause of your fight, not onely to maintaine your good king, but your owne liberty: against a tirant, traitour, and what worse? who would buy his vsurping in this Kingdome, with the blood of you, your wiues and children. Saw y ou not how he vfed them hee tooke in the Tower? Beholde you not the end of his purpose? which is to ruinate this noble Realme, that hath (by diuine prouidence) beene so long time preserved, and euer more continued in reputation, flourishing with loyal subiects to their Prince? Heard you not the flattering per-

swasions, which the Rebelle vfed before the assault, thinking to cōquer vs by his golden tongue? In vaine is his labour, I am right well assured, that no one of you but will die a thousand deaths, before he shall conceiue any other minde in you, I see by your resolu'd countenances, if I should thinke or say otherwise, I were a monstrous offender: for if he haue more men then wee, wee haue more hearts of courage then he, which forbiddeth all accusations of dismayng, setting before your eyes, the famous account you shal liue in hereafter. By their looks you might discern at their retire, how vnwillingly they will be to trie you againe: and respect not the traitorous words of *Barfinan*, our king liueth, and will right speedily come to succour vs. In meane while I intreat as my friendly companions, let nothing dismay your hope, but continue as you haue begun: with famous resolution, that is more honourable to die for liberty, then to enioy a life by thraldome and slauerie, vnder a wicked, iniurious, and traitorous Prince. When the king had ended his oration, there was no one in the company, how sore hurt soeuer he was, but would courageously encounter *Barfinans* power, and bid him brauely good-morrow next day in the Tower: wherewith the king not a little contented, returned to the Queenes lodging, his face couered with sweate, and his armour all bloody, by reason of fine woundes he receiued in fight. The Ladyes seeing him in such pitious plight, were maruailously abashed, especially the Queeno, who well nere dead with griefe and fear together then as a woman in midst of despair, she said: Alas deer Nephew, what shall wee doe? wee are all but dead.

dead. Madame, answered king *Arban*, all will go well if God be pleased, in vaine doe you thus discomfort your selfe, for I hope to heare good tydings of the King: and his traytours that seeke to vsurpe the kingdome, by your good and loyal subiects shall receiue deserued punishment. God grant it, quoth she, but you are so wounded, as I thinke it impossible for you to bee at the battell, if *Barsinan* come to morrow againe, nor can our men doe any thing without you. Be not you troubled therewith Madame, replied king *Arban*, for while my soule sucks her spirit from the ayre, I will not forsake my charge. So bidding her good night, hee went to haue his wounds dressed, and afterward turned to his souldiers, merrily, passing the night among them.

*Barsinan* on the other side, got into the Tower of *London* which he had wonne, and numbring his men, found that his power was greatly weakened: yet would hee make no shew thereof for dismayeing the rest, but shewing a dissembling countenance, thus spake to them. My friends, it sufficeth that I haue shewen mine enemies what you are, and they (if I think good) to stand at my mercy: wherefore I am determined (without any further losse of you) to rest our selues five or sixe dayes, till *Arcalaus* send me the head of king *Lisuart*, and then the sight therof, wil make the not dare to resist mee any longer, but in hope of fauour, will yeeld themselves. Each of you therefore reioyce and be of good cheere, for when I am King, right richly will I reward you all. So went they to rest till the next morning, when

*Barsinan* (being armed) mounted on horse-backe, with twenty knights in his company, and came to a Port which one of king *Arban*s knights kept, who seeing this troupe, presently founded an alarme. But *Barsinan* sent him word how hee came to parle onely, and desired truce beside for six houres: whereof king *Arban* was immediately aduertised, who granted the truce *Barsinan* requited, & likewise for five dayes. Conditionally, that he should offer no violence to any house in the City, or practise any entrance during the limited time: beside, if the King returned in that space, the difference should bee left to his disposition. *Barsinan* was contented with these conditions, because hee accounted king *Lisuart*s death certaine, whereupon hee saide to *Arban*. I hope this little truce, will be an entrance into a perpetuall peace betweene vs: for I dare assure yee, king *Lisuart* is dead, and his daughter must be my wife, as within these five dayes ensuing you shall evidently see. What? quoth king *Arban*, thou hast then put him to death: and couldst thou deale so traitorously with him, that gaue thee such honourable entertainment in his Court? rather will I presently die, then continue one houre of peace with thee, get thee gone therefore quickly, or I will send thee hence in peeces. Is it true? quoth *Barsinan*, well mayest thou threaten me, but it is in me to make thee repent it. Thus returned hee to his souldiers, acquainting them with his honest offers to king *Arban*, and the audacious answer hee returned for them.

Chap.

## CHAP. XXXIX.

*How Amadis came to the succour of the City of London, when it was in this distresse.*



Or long agoe we left *Amadis* in the wood, familiarly deuising with the Princeesse *Oriana*, thinking on nothing but their sweete contentation: and among other discourse, *Amadis* intreated her to tell him, what speeches *Arcalaus* had with her by the way. On my faith Sir, quoth she, he confounded my senses with perswading mee to reioyce, saying. Before five dayes were expired, I should raigne as Queene in Great Brittain, enioying *Barsinan* to my husband: himselfe likewise should be chiefe Gouernour and Maister of his house, in recompence of the seruices hee did for him, in giuing him my fathers head, and mee to be his wife. Ah heauens, sayde *Amadis*, what treason is this in *Barsinan*, who shewed himselfe such a friend to the king? God shield hee doe no wrong to the Queene. In sooth, I greatly doubt it, replied *Oriana*, it were good therefore wee hastened to see. With all my heart, quoth *Amadis*: so mounting on horse-backe, they rode toward *London*, meeting many knights by the way that followed the King, whom still hee directed in their course, certifying them that *Galaor* was gone likewise in his search. Within a while after, *Oriana* espied *Don Grumedan* an auncient knight of honour to the Queene, and twenty knights more with him, who all that night had searched the Forrest for the king: but when hee sawe her, the teares stood in his eyes

with ioy, desiring to heare some newes of the King her father. Credit mee Sir, quoth shee, not farre from the Citie were we sundered, when God ordayned so well for me, that *Amadis* deliuered me from the villaines, and ransomed mee with the price of their liues. They were vnwise to resist, saide *Grumedan*, when you had so good a Champion: but I pray you my Lord, what is become of your brother? Even in the same place, answered *Amadis*, where they separated the father from the daughter: we seuered our selues, hee posting after the King, and I followed *Arcalaus*, who led away Madame *Oriana*. The better hope haue I of his succour, quoth *Grumedan*, seeing so good a knight hath taken it in hand.

Hereupon, *Amadis* tolde him the horrible treason of *Arcalaus* and *Barsinan*: Let me therefore intreate yee, quoth hee, to conduct the Princeesse leasurably after, while I make haste before least the Queen be distressed, because I doubt the traytor will her offer iniury. I think it likewise expedient, that you cause all the knights to returne you meeete withall: for if the King should bee reskewed by multitude of men, there is enow before already, and more then needs. So leauing his Lady with *Don Grumedan*, hee made all the haste hee could toward *London*, buertraking the Squire by the way that came from the king, who told him all the newes of his deliuerance, which was no little ioy to *Amadis*,

V 4 hea-

hearing the fortunate successe of his brother *Galaor*. There met hee with another likewise, who made report of *Barfinans* dealings at *London*, wherefore entring the Citie so couertly as hee might, the first hee met withall was king *Arban*, of whom hee was louingly embraced and welcommed, with request of what newes he brought. None but good, answered *Amadis*, and such as you are desirous to heare: but because I doubt the Queene is scant merry, let vs goe see her, for happely shee will bee glad of our comming. So rode they to the Court together, *Amadis* still keeping the Squire with him that came from the king, and when they entered the Queenes preface, *Amadis* falling on his knee, beganne in this manner. Madame, this Gentleman left the King well this morning, and at liberty, whereof his Maiefty certifieth you by him: my selfe likewise (not long since) left your daughter with *Don Grumedan*, and very shortly they will be with you. But because I vnderstand that *Barfinan* molesteth you with trechery, suffer vs I pray you to goe see what hee can doe. When the Queen heard these ioyfull tydings, her inwarde content tooke away the liberty of her speech, nor could shee doe any thing but lift her hands & eyes to heauen, applauding his name from whence this good proceeded, and by gestures deliuering some signe of thanks to *Amadis*. At length hauing overcome this delightfull passion, and intending to question further concerning these newes: the allarme was sounded, wherefore king *Arban* and *Amadis* hyed to the barres, where they found *Barfinans* men giuing an eager charge, as hoping to con-

quer the contrarie part. But *Amadis* thrusting himselfe for-most, caused the bars to be taken down, and accompanied with king *Arban*, brake in courageously vpon the enemy, a noble president to their souldiers, who beeing cheered by this onser, tooke heart and followed. Now waxed the skirmish to be hot indeed, so that on both sides very many were slaine, which *Barfinan* perceiuing, & trusing in his multitude to suppress the weaker part, came formost himselfe in person, thinking (now hee saw the barres open) to driue his aduersaries backe againe into the Citie. When *Amadis* noted his forwardnesse he stepped backe, & changed his Crest and Shield with a simple mercenary souldier: yet reseruing his Launce, which with a strong carrear pierced thorough his Armour, and wounding *Barfinan*, brake in peeces in his flesh. Then drawing his sword, he gaue him such a stroke on the helmet, as hee was astonished therewith, and redoubling his blowe, cut his right arme quite from his shoulder: when *Barfinan* (feeling himself so wounded) would haue retyrred backe, to saue himselfe by the speed of his horse, but hee fell to the ground as deprived of his senses. Wherefore *Amadis* left him, and set vpon the rest, who beeing vnable to endure these horre assaults, likewise beholding their Lord dismounted: took thesespurs to flight for safety of their liues, yet were they so closely followed, as the most part of them were slaine in the field, and some few of them escaped into the Tower, causing the bridge to be quickly drawn vp after them.

Hereupon *Amadis* returned where he left *Barfinan* & because he was

was not yet dead, commanded he should be carried to the Queenes lodging, there to bee kept till the Kings returne: and as hee would haue put vp his sword, hee sawe it soyled with blood, wherefore in wiping it, hee saide: Thou traistie sworde, in a happy houre was the knight born to whom thou belonget: and as thou art one of the best in the world, so is thy Master the most vertuous Prince liuing. He vsed these words, because it appertained to King *Lisuart*, and was sent him from the Queene by *Gandalin*, as you heard before: but now returnes hee with king *Arban* to the Queenes lodging, to comfort her with newes of happie victory.

All this while the King is hastening toward *London*, giuing order to returne all the knights hee met by the way, among whom were *Agrius*, *Galmes*, *Solinus*, *Galdan*, *Dinadans*, and *Bernas*: all which were highly in the Kings fauour, as men of vertue and no small deservings: and his Maiesty hauing imbraced them, said. My noble good friends, you had almost lost mee, but God beethanked, you haue recovered mee againe, by the helpe of these three worthy knights *Galaor*, *Gulian*, and *Ladafin*. In sooth my Lord, answered *Dinadans*, so soon as your mishap was knownen in the Citie, each one prepared to bring you succour. I knowe my good Nephew, quoth the king, that I am greatly beholding to you all: but I pray you take good store of these knights, and post with speed to assist the Queene, for I doubt she is in no little danger. This *Dinadans* was one of the best knights of the kings linage, and well esteemed among men of account, as well in respect of his vertues, as also his

braue behauiours in chiuahy: so according to the kings command, he rode away presently very brauely accompanied.

The king likewise followed an indifferent pace, left his Nephew should stand in need of helpe, and by the way hee overtook *Don Grumedan* with his daughter *Ortuna*. How ioyfull this meeting was, you may easily conceiue, that the separation was not so grieuous, but this was as gladsome. *Grumedan* told his Maiesty, how *Amadis* left the Princeesse with him, while hee rode before to assist the Queene: thus with repetition of many matters, they beguiled the time till they arrived at *London*, where hee vnderstoode the successe of *Barfinans* enterprise, and how valiantly King *Arban* had resisted him, not forgetting the worthy behauiour of *Amadis*, in taking him prisoner and discomfiting his men, except a few that saved themselves in the Tower.

Here would it take a world of time, to report the ioy, pleasure, and contentment betweene the King and Queen at their meeting, likewise the mothers comfort hauing recovered her daughter againe: but as your iudgements can better conceiue than I set downe, matter about the reach of common capacity, so doe I leaue it to you, and proceed to the King. Who to terrifie the traytors thus gotten into holde, besieged them severally, and to dishearten them the more, brought *Barfinan* & *Arcales* Nephew before the waller, where before all the people they confessed their treason. Which being done, a great fire was made, wherein they were alive consumed, but when they in the Tower beheld this spectacle, and that they

hearing the fortunate successe of his brother *Galaor*. There met hee with another likewife, who made report of *Barfinans* dealings at *London*, wherefore entring the Citie so covertly as hee might, the first hee met withall was king *Arban*, of whom hee was louingly embraced and welcommed, with request of what newes he brought. None but good, answered *Amadis*, and such as you are desirous to heare: but because I doubt the Queene is scant merry, let vs goe see her, for happely shee will bee glad of our comming. So rode they to the Court together, *Amadis* still keeping the Squire with him that came from the king, and when they entered the Queenes presence, *Amadis* falling on his knee, beganne in this manner. Madame, this Gentleman left the King well this morning, and at liberty, whereof his Maiesty certifieth you by him: my selfe likewise (not long since) left your daughter with *Don Grumedan*, and very shortly they will be with you. But because I vnderstand that *Barfinan* molesteth you with trechery, suffer vs I pray you to goe see what hee can doe. When the Queen heard these ioyfull tydings, her inwarde content tooke away the liberty of her speech, nor could she doe any thing but lift her hands & eyes to heauen, applauding his name from whence this good proceeded, and by gestures deliuering some signe of thanks to *Amadis*. At length hauing overcome this delightfull passion, and intending to question further concerning these newes: the allarme was sounded, wherefore king *Arban* and *Amadis* hyed to the barres, where they found *Barfinans* men giuing an eager charge, as hoping to con-

quer the contrarie part. But *Amadis* thrusting himselfe for-most, caused the bars to be taken down, and accompanied with king *Arban*, brake in courageously vpon the enemy, a noble president to their souldiers, who beeing cheered by this onfet, tooke heart and followed. Now waxed the skirmish to be hot indeed, so that on both sides very many were slaine, which *Barfinan* perceiuing, & trusting in his multitude to suppress the weaker part, came formost himselfe in person, thinking (now hee saw the barres open) to driue his aduersaries backe againe into the Citie. When *Amadis* noted his forwardnesse he stepped backe, & changed his Crest and Shield with a simple mercenary souldier: yet reseruing his Launce, which with a strong carreer pierced thorough his Armour, and wounding *Barfinan*, brake in peeces in his flesh. Then drawing his sword, he gaue him such a stroke on the helmet, as hee was astonied therewith, and redoubling his blowe, cut his right arme quite from his shoulder: when *Barfinan* (feeling himself so wounded) would haue retyred backe, to saue himselfe by the speed of his horse, but hee fell to the ground as deprived of his fences. Wherefore *Amadis* left him, and set vpon the rest, who beeing vnable to endure these hotte assaults, likewise beholding their Lord dismounted: took thesespurs to flight for safety of their liues, yet were they so closely followed, as the most part of them were slaine in the field, and some few of them escaped into the Tower, causing the bridge to be quickly drawn vp after them.

Hereupon *Amadis* returned where he left *Barfinan* & because he was

was not yet dead, commanded he should be caried to the Queenes lodging, there to bee kept till the Kings returne: and as hee would haue put vp his sword, hee sawe it soyled with blood, wherefore in wiping it, hee saide: Thou trustie sworde, in a happy house was the knight born to whom thou belonget: and as thou art one of the best in the world, so is thy Master the most vertuous Princee liuing. He vsed these words, because it appertained to King *Lisuart*, and was sent him from the Queene by *Gandalin*, as you heard before: but now returnes hee with king *Arban* to the Queenes lodging, to comfort her with newes of happie victory.

All this while the King is hastning toward *London*, giuing order to returne all the knights hee met by the way, among whom were *Agreais*, *Galaor*, *Soliman*, *Galden*, *Dinadans*, and *Bernas*: all which were highly in the Kings fauour, as men of vertue and no small deseruing: and his Maiesty hauing imbraced them, said. My noble good friends, you had almost lost mee, but God beethanked, you haue recovered mee againe, by the helpe of these three worthy knights *Galaor*, *Gulien*, and *Ladafin*. In sooth my Lord, answered *Dinadans*, so soon as your mishap was knowne in the Citie, each one prepared to bring you succour. I knowe my good Nephew, quoth the king, that I am greatly beholding to you all: but I pray you take good store of these knights, and poss with speed to assist the Queene, for I doubt she is in no little danger. This *Dinadans* was one of the best knights of the kings linage, and well esteemed among men of account, as well in respect of his vertues, as also his

braue behauiour in chiuallry: so according to the kings command, he rode away presently very brauely accompanied.

The king likewise followed an indifferent pace, left his Nephew should stand in need of helpe, and by the way he overtooke *Don Grumedan* with his daughter *Ortuna*. How ioyfull this meeting was, you may easily conceiue, that the separation was not so grieuous, but this was as glad some. *Grumedan* told his Maiesty, how *Amadis* left the Princeesse with him, while hee rode before to assist the Queene: thus with repetition of many matters, they beguiled the time till they arrived at *London*, where hee vnderstoode the successe of *Barfinans* enterprise, and how valiantly King *Arban* had resisted him, not forgetting the worthy behauiour of *Amadis*, in taking him prisoner and discomfiting his men, except a few that saved themselves in the Tower.

Here would it take a world of time, to report the ioy, pleasure, and contentment betwene the King and Queen at their meeting, likewise the mothers comfort hauing recovered her daughter againe: but as your iudgements can better conceiue than I set downe, matter about the reach of common capacity, so doe I leane it to you, and proceed to the King. Who to terrifie the traytors thus gotten into holde, besieged them severally, and to dishearten them the more, brought *Barfinan* & *Arctalaus* Nephew before the walles, where before all the people they confessed their treason. Which being done, a great fire was made, wherein they were alieue consumed, but when they in the Tower beheld this spectacle, and that they

they were in great want of victuals, they yielded themselves to the Kings mercy, the most part of the being (for examples sake) hanged on the battlements, and the rest set at liberty vpon humble submission. Yet this matter bred very great trouble afterward, betwene them of Great Brittain & *Sansuegua*: for the sonne of *Barsinan* being a good knight, vexed king *Lisuart* with contagious warre, as in the History hereafter at large is mentioned.

After the King had escaped these misfortunes, the former ioyes and pastimes begonne againe: during which time, the Lady and her two sonnes (the messengers of *Madafima*, who were witnesses when *Galaor* and *Amadis* promised to forsake king *Lisuart*s seruice) arrived at the Court. When the two Princes were aduertised thereof, they went and friendly entertained her, shee saying: Gentlemen you know the cause of my comming, are you determined to keepe your promise? We are, quoth they, and will not breake our couenants with *Madafima*, but presently will perswade it before the King. Entering the great Hall, the Lady fell on her knees before his Maiesty, deliuering these speeches. My Lord, I am come to your Court, to see if these two knights will obserue a couenant, which in my presence they made to a Lady. What was it? answered the King. A matter that will scant like you, quoth the Lady, or any such as beare you affection: and thereto shee added the whole circumstance. Wherat the King waxing somewhat offended, told *Galaor* that hee had very much wronged him. My Lord, replied *Galaor*, it was better to do so, then be treacherously slaine, for had wee beene

knowne, neither you, nor all the world could haue saued our liues: but let not your Maiesty be offended, for the remedy shall be more ready then you expect. In accomplishing my promise to *Madafima* of *Gantasi*, my Lord I take my leaue of you, departing altogether from your seruice: certifying you that it is her will to doe you this displeasure, and worse if she should compasse it, for the extreame malice she beareth to you. *Amadis* affirmed what his brother had done, then *Galaor* turning to the Lady & her two sonnes, sayd. Haue we not now accomplish our promise? Yes truly, quoth the Lady, wee must needs auouch so much. You may then returne when you please, answered *Galaor*, but tell *Madafima*, she did not so much as she wanted, as you may perceiue by the present effect. Now my Lord, quoth he to the King, we haue fulfilled our promise to *Madafima*, and because in granting her earnest desire, the time was not limited how long we should leaue your seruice: we may enter therein againe when you please to command, so that we are yours as faithfull as before. When the King and all that were present heard what had past, they reioyced exceedingly, esteeming *Galaor* & *Amadis* well aduised herein: whereupon the King thus spake to the Lady. According to her great treason vnder shaddowe of good meaning, they are bound to no more then they haue accomplished: for to deceiue the deceiuer is no deceit. And say to *Madafima*, seeing she hateth me so vnreasonably, she once had the in her power, who might haue grieved me all my life time: but God hauing in other places deliuer'd me from many perils wil not suffer me to perish by so bad

a woman

woman as she is. I desire yee my Lord, quoth she, to tell mee their names. The one is *Amadis*, answered the King, and the other his brother *Galaor*. May it be possible, sayd the Lady, that *Madafima* had *Amadis* in her power? Credit me, quoth the King, I haue tolde yee truth. Their fortune was good, replied the Lady, for they might

not haue escaped if she had known them: and in sooth the deece might bee reckoned ominous, if two such worthy persons had perished. Yet when she shall knowe hereof, sayd the King, I thinke she will forbear to wrong me any further. With that the Lady tooke her leaue, shaping her course the same way she came.

## CHAP. XL.

*How King Lisuart held open Court in the Cittie of London many dayes, in which time sundry great personages were there feasted, the greater part whereof remayned there long time afterward.*



Welue dayes together (after these mishaps) did King *Lisuart* continue his Court in all magnificence, many noble personages being there assembled, as wel strangers as others, hoping now to make little stay but to return home to their owne houses: yet the greater part of them aboad with the King, in like manner did sundry worthy Ladies accompany the Queene. Among other knights attending on the King, were *Don Guilan* the peniue, and his Cosen *Ladassin*, who (as I haue sayde) were very good knights: but *Guilan* was the better of the twaine, for very fewe were found in the Realme of Great Brittain, that carried more account for deeds of Armes, and all other graces befitting a knight, setting aside his musing and melancholy. By meanes whereof, fewe or none could bee pleasant with him, or haue any words from him in company: but loue procured these extreames, busying his thoughts in such sort with his Lady, as hee had minde of none but her. And shee

of whom wee speake, was endued with singular beauty, being named *Brandalisia*, sister to the Kings wife of *Sobradisa*, and ioyned in marriage with the Duke of *Brisbois*: who now was arrived at the Court, to answer the accusation *Olinas* laide against him. The King gaue him very gentle welcome, and beeing in the presence of many great Lords, the Duke beganne in this manner. Sir, you haue commanded my appearance here this day, to iustifie my selfe before your Maiesty, concerning a crime *Olinas* chargeth mee withall: whereof I hope sufficiently to cleare my selfe, by the rightfull iudgement your selfe shall giue; and hee rest condemned like a varlet as hee is: for here am I ready to approue against him, or any other hee shall bring, that I neuer committed treason or so foule a deed.

At these wordes *Olinas* arose, and with him a great nuber of knights errant, all resolved to maintayne this quarrell against the Duke: when the King beheld them in such a mutiny, hee maruelled whence the cause should proceede, when

Gys-



*Grumedan* speaking for all the rest, sayd. My Lord, because the Duke of *Bristois* hath threatened and defied all knights errant, we are ready to answer his challenge. In good faith, answered the King, if it bee so, hee hath attempted an ouer fond warre, for I thinke there is no knight in the worlde so puissant, that will bee induced to such an enterprise. But forbear at this time, and offer him no iniury, because he is heere to receiue iustice: which shall be done, according to the counsell of the Princes and Lords present, without fauouring any one. Then *Olinas* falling on his knee before the King, beganne in this manner. My Lord, the Duke who standeth before your Maiesty, hath slaine a Cosen getmaine of mine, hee neuer giuing him occasion of offence: wherefore I will iustifie him to bee a villaine and a traytour, and will make him confesse it with his owne mouth, else shall I kill him and cast him forth of the field. The Duke tolde him hee lyed, and hee was ready to accomplish what the King and his Court should ordaine: wherupon it was determined, that this emulation should bee decided by combat, which the Duke accepted, desiring the King to permit him & his two Nephewes in this cause, against *Olinas* and two other knights. This being granted, the Duke was very glad thereof, for he made such account of his kinsmen, as hee thought *Olinas* could not bring the like: notwithstanding, all was deferred till the morrowe following.

In meane while, *Don Galuanes* asked his Nephew *Agrais*, if hee wold assist *Olinas* against the Duke, and hee consenting thereto, *Galuanes* came to *Olinas*, saying. Sir O-

*linas*, seeing the Duke is desirous to fight three against three, my nephew and I are determined to take your part: which when the Duke heard, hee remembred that he had defied them in his owne house, when *Agrais* combated with the Dwarfes champion, at what time the Damosell should haue bene burned: wherefore hee became very pensieue, in respect though he esteemed his Nephewes approued good knights, yet he repented his wilfull offer, & gladly would haue excused the matter if hee could, being so well acquainted with the behaviour of *Galuanes* & *Agrais*. But considering his promise past before the King, and so many noble personages there present, hee must of necessity stand thereto: wherefore the next morning hee entered the Listes with his Nephewes, and *Olinas* on the contrary with his copartners. Now were the Ladies standing at the windowes, to beholde the issue of this quarrell, and among the rest stood *Olinia* the faire friend to *Agrais*, who seeing him ready to enter such perill, was so dismayed, as she could scant tell what countenance to vse. By her stood *Mabila*, shee being in no lesse grieve for her Vncle and brother together: likewise the Princesse *Oriana*, louing them both, in respect of the reasons heretofore declared, accompanied the two Ladies in sorrowe, fearing their danger: but the knights being ready to the combat, the King by a Herald commanded the Champions to doe their deuoyre. Heereupon with a braue career they encountered together, *Agrais* and *Galuanes* vnhorling the two Nephewes, and albeit *Olinas* receiued a wound on the stomacke, yet had not the Duke caught

hold

hold about his horse neck, his forerunchad proued as hard as his Nephewes. The drawing their swords, they smote so violently against each other, as the standers by wondered at their fierceness: beholding their shields defaced, their armour battered & coulered with their blood, that the victorie hung a long time in suspence. For *Agrais* horse being slaine vnder him, brought his life in maruailous hazard, because the Duke and one of his Nephewes stroue to keep him downe, seeking to thrust their swords into his belly, or else to smite his head from his shoulders: but he was so well armed, and of such courage withall, as hee held them both play, though with exceeding perill. Well may you thinke, that his friends grieved to see him in this distresse, especially the three Ladyes, of whom we spake so lately, whose cheekes were bedewed with whole fountaines of teares, and wofull *Olinia* seemed rather dead then liuing. But had he long continued in this extremitie, her latest houer must needs haue ensued, yet at length he recovered himselfe, charging the Duke and his Nephewes with such puissant strokes, as well declared his hardy courage. *Olinas* all this while was in such case, by reason of the sore wound the Duke gaue him, that he could hardly defend himselfe: which the Duke perceiuing, hee left his Nephew with *Agrais*, and assailing *Olinas* very roughly, made him fall downe in a great astonishment. But as he would haue slaine him, *Agrais* stepped betweene the (hauing dispatched his enemye of his head) and hindred the Duke from his determination, wounding him in many places on his body, that he could scant tell which

way to turne him. *Don Galuanes* likewise hauing slaine the other Nephew, came to assist *Agrais* against the Duke, who seeing his life at the latest exigent, turned his horse to escape away: but *Agrais* gaue him such a stroke on the helmet, as hee fell beside his saddle, with one of his seete hanging in the stirrop, when the horse being at libertie, feeling his burthen hang on the one side, ranne flinging vp and downe, none being able to reskew the Duke, till his necke was broken with dragging along. Heereupon *Agrais* left him, returning to his vncle to know how he fared. Very well I thanke God, answered *Galuanes*, but it grieueth mee that *Olinas* is dead, for hee lieth still and moueth not. Right sorry likewise was *Agrais* to heare these words, wherefore commanding the Duke and his Nephewes bodies to be throwne forth of the field, they came both to *Olinas*, and finding him alive, as also his wounds not to be mortall, they bound them vp so well as they could, saying. Friend *Olinas*, be of good cheere, for though you haue lost very much blood, yet doubt wee not of your health, because wee finde little danger in your hurts. Alas my Lords, quoth *Olinas*, my heart fainteth, and albeit I haue bene heerebefore wounded, yet neuer was I in such debilitie. Then the King desired to knowe whether hee were dead or no, and when it was tolde him, how hee wanted nothing but speedy cure: hee commanded him to bee honourably caryed into the Citie, and his own chirurgions to attend on his health, euen as it were his owne person: which he did, promising to deliuer him well againe within few daies.

X

Thus

Thus every one returned, disputing diuersly on the end of the Combat, and according to their particular affections, so that soone after, the Queene (who was one of the best Ladies in the world) was aduised to send for the wife to the deceased Duke, that in the Court shee might weare away the cause of her melancholly, and to dispatch this businesse, shee sent *Don Grumedan* to her requesting she would bring her, Neece *Aldena* with her, whereof *Galuanes* was not a little glad, especially *Don Guilan*, who was the friend and beloued of the Dutcheffe. Not long after, she and her Neece arriued at the Court, where they were right no-

bly feasted and entertayned. Thus the King spent the time in the City of *London*, accompanied with many great Lords, knights and Ladies, because the fame was blazed through the world, of his honorable courtiesse to strange Knights: which drew an exceeding number to his court, whom he rewarded very bountifully, hoping (by their meanes) not onely to confirme his Realme in peace, but likewise to conquere other, which sometime had bene subiect and tributary to his Crown, yet through the pusillanimity and negligence of the Kinges his predecessors, were lost and discontinued their former obedience.

## CHAP. XLI.

How Amadis determined to goe combat with Abiscos and his two Sonnes, to reuenge the Kings death, who was Father to the fayre Briolania, and of that which followed.

**E**retofore it hath bene declared, how *Amadis*, being with *Briolania*, promised to reuenge the King her Fathers death, against *Abiscos*, and his two Sonnes, which in one year after he should performe, being accompanied with two other Knights. Also how when he tooke his leaue of her, shee gaue him a Sword, because his owne was broken, desiring him to weare it for her sake: which Sword was afterward broken at the Ladies Castle, who was the beloued of *Angriote d'Esframans*, when he combatted with *Gasian*, and commanded *Gandalin* to bring away the peeces thereof: which occasioned great harme not long after, not by any fault of him, but by the indiscretion of *Dardan* the Dwarfie, who imagined his master loued the

fayre *Briolania*, in respect he offered himselfe to be her Knight.

One day therefore, *Amadis* being with King *Lisuart*, euermore delighting with his Lady *Oriana*, to the no little contentation of the both: Loue, who often-times prouoketh his Subiects, would no longer continue them in so great ease, but rayse some cinders of diuision, whereby they might receive discontentment. For this cause he made *Amadis* remember his promise to *Briolania*, that he should combat *Abiscos* within one yeare the end whereof was now at hand: and being loth to faile therein, he sought all conuenient meanes to take his leaue of the Princeesse *Oriana*, determining to acquaint her with the whole cause, in what sort *Briolania* was disinherited of her fathers kingdom: such were his discourses on her behalf, that although

*Oriana*

*Oriana* was loth to grant what hee demanded, or to permit his absence from her: yet being ouercome with compassion, she restrained her will, and in middest of her sorrow, said: Deere friend, I know well that your speeches are reasonable, but the wrong you do me; aloweth no excuse: Yet in respect I loue ye, as you ate well assured, it is conuenient I should preferre your honor before mine own pleasure. You haue promised (as you tell me) to succour a disinherited Lady, I am content, seeing there is no other remedy, though my comfort be with greater griefe then you weene: for my minde is perswaded, some mischiefe will happen to me by this voyage. Madam, answered *Amadis*, vnwilling am I to giue you any occasion of dislike or to attempt any thing against your miade, rather could I wish neuer to haue bene borne: Let *Briolania* then pardon my tarrying, for I hold my selfe sufficiently excused, seeing my departure is not agreeable to you. Not so sweete friend, replied *Oriana*, I am willing you shall go: but make a speedy returne I pray you. With twenty kisses was this separation sealed, and shee desired him to acquaint the Queene there-with, that this journey might be shadowed vnder her commandement: which he did, and on the morrow departed with *Galaor* and *Agrais*, when they had not ridden past halfe a Mile, but he asked *Gandalin*, if hee had brought with him the peeces of the Sword that *Briolania* gaue him when hee left her. No my Lord, answered *Gandalin*. Returne then quoth *Amadis* to the Dwarfie, and when thou hast them, make what speede thou canst to ouertake vs. Alas, had he but misdoubted the

mishap followed: hereon, hee neuer would haue sent such a messenger: For by his techlesse speeches, he endangered the liues of *Amadis* and *Oriana* together, as shall hereafter be largely described.

Gone is the Dwarfie, to his Masters lodging, and finding the peeces of the Sword, in the place where *Gandalin* had directed him, returned hastily toward his Master, but passing by the Queenes lodging, he heard one call him, whom looking about, he espied the Princeesses *Oriana* and *Mabila*, who demanded wherefore he had left *Amadis*. Madame, quoth he, I haue not bene so long from him, but I can quickly ouertake him: for this which I carry, will let him make no great hast till I come. What is it? said *Oriana*. What answered the Dwarfie, I can assure ye Madame, he prizeth them more then they be worth, for her sake that gaue him the Sword. What is she? quoth *Oriana*. The Lady, replied the Dwarfie, for whom he now vnder takes the combat. And thought you be daughter to the best King in the World, as also sayter (in mind opinion) then any other: yet rather should you haue gained her conquest, then all the wealth in this kingdome.

I know not what thou meanest, said *Oriana*, vnlesse thy master haue giuen himselfe to her? You haue guessed right Madame, answered the Dwarfie, he is altogether at her commandement, thinking himselfe happy to be her Knight. So taking his leaue, hee posted to ouertake his Master, who little thought on these slanderous reports: But *Oriana* entred in to such a Iealousie, as without regard of any thing whatsoever, she

shee would haue cast her selfe forth at the window, had not *Medea* and the Damofell of *Denmarke* stayed her. Now riseth frowning anger in her brows, and she to misconceiue of the man, whose onely desire was to do her seruice, With often wringing her hands, she calleth to remembrance, in what earnest affection he desired leaue for this voyage, which augmented her suspicion of the Dwarfes wordes: and in such fort was her heart shut vp, as no teare might fall from her eyes, because those vapours were withdrawne to the most worthie places in her. Hereupon her torments redoubled in extreames, as *Dido* for the tromperie of *Aeneas*, or sad *Medea*, seeing her selfe forsaken of her friend *Iason*, neuer felt such anguish: and in fatall fortune shee would haue succeeded them, but that she was hindred by them about her, who found the meanes to defend her from such mishap.

By this time the Dwarfie ouerooke *Amadis* and the rest, when they began to ride somewhat faster, *Amadis* not requiring any thing of him, nor he reciting what he tolde the Princeesse, but shewed him the peeces of the Sworde he brought. Not farre had they ridden, but they met a Damofell, who after she had saluted them, demanded whether they trauailed, saying, shee would aduise them to forsake that way. Wherefore answered *Amadis*. Because, quoth she, for the space of fifteene dayes, no Knight errant passed this way, but he hath beene cyther wounded or slaine. And who hath done them such displeasure? said *Amadis*. A Knight, answered the Damofell, the most valiant man at Armes that euer was seene. I pray ye Damofell,

quoth *Agrais*, bring vs where wee may see him. You cannot ride far in this Forrest, said she, but he will quickly shew himselfe. So traualled they on with the Damofell, and long time they neyther heard nor saw any one, which made them thinke shee spake these words to feare them: yet soone after, *Amadis* espied the Knight, who seemed a man of goodly stature, and ready prepared for the combat. As hee and his companions stood beholding him, they heard him speak to a squire, who reared foure Launces against a Tree, and after ward came to them, saying. Gentlemen, my Maister giuerh you to vnderstand, how during the space of fifteene dayes, hee hath vnder taken the guard of this Forrest, in all which time his fortune hath beene, not to be vanquished by any one: And though it be a day and a halfe since his intended tearme is expired, yet stayeth hee here till now for the pleasure he hath in Iousting. And as he was departing hence, he espied you comming: wherefore hee letteth you know, that if each of you will breake a Launce, he careth not to try his fortune with you, provided, that the combat at the Sworde be spared, because hee sholdome proceedeth so farre without doing more harme then willingly he would.

When *Agrais* heard this message, hee tooke his Armes, returning this answer: Friend, goe tell thy Maister I am content to try the Ioust with him. Hereupon, he gaue the spurres to his horse, and the knight seeing him comming, gaue forth to meete him, their Launces being broken in the encounter: But *Agrais* was easily cast from his Horse, of which foyle he could not but be ashamed.

Ga.

*Galeor* beholding his Cozin dismounted; determined to reuenge his wrong, bidding the knight to prepare himselfe, who taking another Launce, ran against *Galeor* with such furie, as after their staues were broken, their bodies met together so vehemently, that *Galeors* horse being more feeble then the other, fell downe with his Master on bis back, but the Prince not recovering himselfe, was left on the ground, when the horse arose, and ran about the field, as the other of *Agrais* did. *Amadis* abashed at these accidents, preparing himself, said to the Knight. I know not what thou art, but thou maist vane, that thou hast dismounted two approved good Knights. So couching his Launce, proceeded forward, but *Galeor* stayed him, calling the Knight to the combat, which made *Amadis* thus to answer. Brother, finde not your selfe agriued with him, because he sent vs word before the Ioust, that he would not combat with the Sworde: but I hope to take reuenge for all.

Herewith they encountered valiantly together, breaking their Launces so courageously, and meeting with their bodies so violently, as *Amadis* was thrown to the earth, his horses shoulder being broken in the fall: in like manner was the Knight dismounted, but keeping the reynes of his bridle in his hand, he quickly mounted on horse back againe, when *Amadis*, thus spake to him. We must trie one course more, if thou wilt haue the honor, for as yet it is not won, because we both were vnderfild. I will not now Ioust any more, answered the Knight. Then you doe me wrong, replied *Amadis*. Redresse it, if you can said the Knight: for according

to my order before the Ioust, I am bound to no more then what I haue done. After these words, he galloped away through the Forrest so fast as he could: which when *Amadis*, and his companions saw, they being all on foote, they stood as men ashamed, for they could not imagine what he was that thus intreated them, whereupon *Amadis* mounted on *Gandalins* horse, saying to his friends: Follow me if you please, for it would grieue me not to know the name of this Knight. In sooth, answered the Damofell, it were the greatest folly in you, aboue all the knights belonging vnto King *Lisuart*, to thinke you can finde him in one whole yeere, vnlesse you be directly guided. Faire Damofell, said *Galeor*, it may be you know what he is, and the place where he abideth. On my faith, quoth she, if I know any thing thereof, I mean to tell it you: for neuer will I iniurie so good a Knight. Damofell, replied *Galeor*, by the affection you beare to the thing you most loue in the World, tell vs I pray ye what you know in this matter. You conuince me in vaine, quoth she, for neuer will I discover his affaires, except you deliuer me some good present. Demand what you will answered *Amadis*, and you shall haue it, on condition you helpe vs to finde the knight. I am content, replied the Damofell, if first you will tell me your names, and afterward each of you giue me a boone, at what time I shall demand them of you. With all our hearts, quoth *Amadis*, and for our names, the one is *Galeor*, the other *Agrais*, and my selfe am a Damofell. When the Damofell heard this, shee was very glad, saying:

Certes my Lord, my journey is shortned, for I seeke you. Then you haue now found me, answered *Amadis*, what is your will with me? That you shall know, quoth shee, when time serueth: but do you not remember the combate, which you promised to performe for the king of *Sobradisaes* daughter, when shee succoured you by meanes of the Lyons? Yes that I doe, sayde *Amadis*, and now am I riding toward her. Would you then, quoth the Damofell, follow a knight so hard to be found, and the time for the combate beeing neerer then you weene? She saith very well my Lord, answered *Galaor*, doe you therefore and *Agrais* proceede on your journey, and I will seeke the knight with this Damofell: for neuer shal I rest til I haue found him: & if it be possible, I will be with you before you deale with *Abiscos*. Be it so, replied *Amadis*, but she promised vs to tell his name, & where we may find him. His name, quoth the Damofell, I cannot tell ye, for I know it not my selfe, and yet I haue bene a moneth with him, in which time I haue seene him doe such deedes of armes, as without fight thereof I would neede haue credited: but where he is now, I can conduct him thither that will goe with me. It is all I request, answered *Galaor*. Follow mee then, quoth she: so taking their leaue, they separated themselves.

Thus *Amadis* and *Agrais* held on their way, arriuing within fewe dayes after at the Castle of *Tura*, where they found the faire *Briolania*, with the afaire Lady: but when *Amadis* beheld her, he found her vnusually changed, for if shee were faire when hee first sawe her, shee now seemed of such excellent perfection, as (except *Oriana*)

he reputed her the most beautiful creature in the world, whereupon he sayde to *Agrais*. If nature was desirous to expresse her cunning in a creature, in this Lady she hath most sufficiently accomplished it. My Lord, quoth she, full long haue we expected your comming, for in you consisteth our onely hope. Madame, answered *Amadis*, by the helpe of God, I trust you shall recover your losse, and we will doe our vttermost therein. As thus they deuised, they entred a faire chamber, where mantles were brought to wrap about them, and *Briolania* help to vname *Amadis*, for she could not be satisfied with beholding him, because she counted him the fairest knight that euer was seene, being now but twenty yeeres of age. And long time after she waded amoureusly, so that when she had recovered her Kingdome, she wished him sole Lord of her and her countrey together, as shall hereafter be declared. But *Amadis* was elsewhere addicted, and gaue sufficient prooffe to her, that the extreme anguish hee endured for his *Oriana*, were manifest examples of his stedfast loyalty. Nevertheless, the young Lord of *Engall* pitying faire *Briolania*, would disguise this historie in another manner, describing fauerly, which report is worthy of credit. For he saith, that *Briolania* being restored into her Kingdome, providing for the health of *Amadis* and *Agrais*, who were wounded, she continuing euermore amoureus of *Amadis*; seeing by no meanes shee could winne him to be her friend,ooke aside the Damofell, to whom *Amadis*, *Galaor* and

and *Agrais* made the seuerall promises, at what time she conducted *Galaor* to the knight that iousted with them in the Forrest, and discovering the chiefest secrets of her Heart to her, with abundance of teares and affectionate sighes, requested her counsell and remedy in these amorous passions. The Damofell compassionate on her Ladies sicknesse, promised to giue her redresse for it, whereupon she said to *Amadis*, that the boone she would desire of him, was his entrance into the Tower, from whence he should not depart, vntill he had begotten of *Briolania* a Sonne or a Daughter. *Amadis* willing to keepe promise with the Damofell, yeelded sherto, yet without any will to touch *Briolania*: whereby he grew into such melancholly, as he refused all bodily sustenance, and fell into such danger of his person, as euery houte he expected death. Which being heard in the Court of king *Lisuart*, as also his deadly dangerous ex-

treamitie: *Oriana* (loth to lose him) sent him word and licence, that he should do what the Lady requested. Whereupon *Amadis* considering hee might no way escape, and his gracious Mistresse pittied him so much, he begat a Sonne and a daughter of *Briolania*, whereof she was deliuered of at one labour: but this History is altogether false and faigned. It might be that *Amadis* was prisoner in the Tower, and *Briolania* beheld his daily pining away: but she desired the Damofell to remit him this boone, on condition he should not depart till his brother *Galaor* returned, as willing to comfort her selfe with the sight of him, while she attended his brothers arriual: for *Galaor* espoused her afterward, as you shall reade in the fourth booke of this History. Let it then suffice at this time, that *Amadis* and *Agrais* sojourne certain daies in the Castle, while all needfull things were ready for their combat.

## CHAP. XLII.

How *Galaor* went with the Damofell after the Knight that dismounted him and his companions in the Forrest, whom when he found, they combated together, and afterward in the sharpest point of their combat, they knew each other.

**H**OW *Galaor* went with the Damofell, seeking the Knight that vnhorsed him in the Forrest, for which he was so overcome with anger, as euery knight hee met withall detrely felt it; becauise in combat many receiued their death. Then espying a faire Castle on the top of a high mountaine, the Damofell told him, there

was no other place neere where they might lodge that night: wherefore he being glad to accept thereof, they came to the Castle, finding many Gentlemen and Ladies sporting together, among whom was a Knight aged about threescore yeeres, who taking *Galaor* by the hand, did him all the honour might be desired. My Lord, quoth *Galaor*, your courtesie to vs is so great, that albeit we were deterr'd

ned to passe further on our way, yet for your sake we are content to stay with you this night. Then the knight conducted *Galaor*, into a faire Chamber, leauing the Damosell among the other Ladies; and after the Prince was vnarmed, the knight spake to him in this manner. Here Sir may you rest and take your ease, calling for any thing you stand in neede of: for God knows I haue vsed such entertainment not onely to you, but to all knights errant that passed this way, because some time I haue beene as now you are. Yet hath nature giuen mee two Sonnes, whose onely delight is in search of aduentures, but now they lie sicke in their beds, beeing cruelly wounded by a Knight, who with one Launce cast them both from their Saddles. But they were so ashamed at this foyle, as they mounted againe and pursued the knight, oueraking him as hee entred a Barque to passe the water, where my Sonnes said to him, that in respect he had iousted so well, they would trie his fortune in combat with the Sword: but the knight made answere he could not now intend it, yet would they needes presse him so farre, as to hinder his entrance into the Barque. Whereupon a Lady being in his company said, they wronged her ouermuch to stay her Knight: but they were not to depart, till he had combated with them at the Sword. Seeing it will be no otherwise replied the Lady, he shall enter fight with the better of you both, on condition, that if he be conqueror, the other do forbear the combat. They answered, if the one were vanquished, the other would reuenge his foyle, which when the Knight heard, he was so angry, as

he had them both come together, in respect they were importunate and would not rest contented. In the triall, one of my sons sustained the worst, wherefore his brother seeing him in such perill, stroue to reskue him from death: yet all was in vaine, for the knight handled them so roughly, as he left them like dead men in the field, and afterward passed away in the Barque. No sooner heard I of this mishap, but I sent for my Sonnes, & home were they brought in this dangerous plight: but that you may giue credit to my words, behold here their Armour cut and mangled, as I thinke the like stroakes neuer came from any mans hand. *Galaor* maruailing at this discourse, demanded what Armes the conquering knight bare: when he was answered, his Shield to be of vermillion colour, with two black Lions figured therein: By these tokens *Galaor* knew him, that it was the same man he trauailed to finde, which made him demand of his friendly host, if he had no further knowledge of the Knight. No verily Sir, quoth the auncient Gentleman. For this night, answered *Galaor*, let vs take our rest, and to morrow I intend to seeke the man you talke of. For already I haue trauailed foure daies in his search: but if I meeete with him, I hope to reuenge the injuries of your Sonnes, and other like, whom he hath offended, or else will cost the price of my life. I could rather with said the Knight, that leauing this perillous enterprise, you would take some other course, seeing my two Sonnes haue bene so hardly intreated, they own wilfull folly being cause thereof. So breaking off talke, *Galaor* took his rest till the next morning

ning, when taking leaue of the auncient knight, he rode away with the Damosell, who brought him to the place of passage in the Barque: where crossing the water to the other side, they came to a very beautiful Castle, whither the Damosell rode before, aduising the Prince to stay her returne. She taried not long, but comming back againe, brought another Damosell with her of excellent beauty, and ten men beside all on horse-back: after the faire Gentlewoman had saluted *Galaor*, she said. Sir, this Damosell that came in your company, telleth me, how you seeke a knight, who beareth two black Lyons in a vermillion shield, and are desirous to know his name: this is very certaine, that you nor any other can finde him for three yeeres space, but onely by force of armes, a matter not so easie to be accomplished by you, for perswade your selfe, his like is not to be found in all the Isles of great Brittain. Lady, quoth *Galaor*, yet will I not giue over his search, although hee conceale him selfe in this sort: and if I meeete with him, it shall like mee better to combat with him, then to know my demand by any other way. Seeing then, answered the Damosell, your desire is such, I will shew you him within three dayes ensuing, for this Gentlewoman's sake, being my cosin, who according to her promise hath earnestly entreated me. *Galaor* requited her with many thanks, and so they trauailed on, arriuing in the euening at an arme of the Sea, where they found a Barque ready for passage to a little Island, and certaine mariners in it, who made them all sweare, if they had any more then one knight in their company. No, credit me, replied the

Damosell: hereupon they set sayle and away. Then *Galaor* demanded of the Damosell, the reason why they tooke such an oath. Because, quoth she, the Lady of the Isle whither we goe, hath so ordained it, that they shall let passe but one knight at one time: and no other must they bring till his returne, or credible intelligence of his death. What is hee, saide *Galaor*, that vanquisheth or killeth them? The selfe same knight you seeke, answered the Damosell, whom the Lady hath kept with her more then halfe a yeere, intirely louing him: and the cause of this affection proceedeth from a Tourney, which not long since hee maintained in this countrey, for the loue of her and another faire Lady, whom the knight (being a stranger here) conquered, defending her cause with whome he now is, and euer since shee bare him such affection, as without grant of his loue she wold haue dyed. Sometime hee is desirous to seeke after strange aduentures, but then the Lady to detain him still in this place, causeth such knights as come hither to passe one after another against whom he combateth, and not one hath yet returned vnvanquished: such as die in fight are there interred, and the foyled sent back againe, depoyled of their horse and armes, which the knight presenteth to his Lady, shee being one of the fairest creatures in the world, named *Corisanda*, and the Isle *Bransande*. Know you not the cause, saide *Galaor*, wherefore the knight went not many dayes since, to a Forrest where I found him, and kept the passage there sixteene dayes together, against all such as trauailed that way? Yes mary, quoth the Damosell, he promised a boone to a Lady



Lady before he came hither, wherefore she intreated him to keep the Forrest for the space of fifteene dayes: yet hardly hee got licence of his faire Mistresse, who allowed him but a moneth to stay and returne.

By this time they were landed, and came before a goodly Castle, where stood a pillar of Marble, with a horne hanging on it, which the Damosell bad him winde, and the Knight would come forth at the sound thereof. After he had giuen a good blast, certaine Pages came forth of the Castle, who set vp a Pavillion in the midst of the field, and six Ladies (soone after) came walking forth one of them seeming by her gesture and countenance, to be commander of the rest, taking her place accordingly in the Tent. I maruaile, said *Galaor*, the knight tarryeth so long, I desire one of you to will the Lady send for him, because businesse else where of great importance, forbiddeth me to trifle time here in vaine. One of the Damosells fulfilled his request. What answered *Corisanda*, maketh he so small account of our Knight? thinketh hee so easily to escape from him? hath he such mind of other affaires before hee see the end of this attempt? indeede I thinke he shall returne sooner then he expecteth, but with slender aduantage for him to bragge of: then calling a Page, she said. Goe and bid the strange Knight come forth. The Page quickly did his message, and soone after, the Knight came forth on foote, being all armed except with his Helmet, which was brought after him with his Launce, and another Page leading his Courser: when he came before his Lady, she said. Behold Sir, here is a braue

Knight, who thinketh lightly to overcome you, & accounteth himselfe assured of the victory: I pray you let him know the price of his folly. After these wordes she lifted and embraced him, but *Galaor* noting all these misteries, though he tarried too long from the combat: at length the Knight being mounted, they prepared themselves to the carriere, and breaking their Launces in the encounter, were both wounded. *Galaor* presently drew his Sword, but the knight intreated him to foust once more. With all my heart, replied *Galaor*, yet I am sory my horse is not so good as yours, for if it were: I could be content not to giue over till one of vs lay along on the ground, or all these Launces broken in peeces. The Knight made him no answer, but commanded a squire to bring them other haues, and meeting together, *Galaor*'s horse was almost down: the knight likewise lost his stirrups, being glad to catch holde by the mane of his horse, whereat was one somewhat ashamed, he said to *Galaor*. You are desirous to combat with the Sword, which I haue deferred, not for any doubt of my selfe, but onely to spare you, notwithstanding, we must needs now try the issu thereof.

So what you can answered *Galaor*, I meane to bee reuenged for your kindnesse in the Forrest: these words made the Knight soone to remember him, saying: You must do no more then you can, and happily before you depart hence, you may sustaine a foyle worse then the first. Hereupon they fell to the combat, which began and continued with such fury, as the Ladies, were driuen into wonderfull amazement, yea, themselves were

bashed

bashed that they held out so long, hauing their Armour mangled, their Shields defaced, their Bodies sore wounded, and the blood streaming downe vpon their horses: *Galaor* neuer being in such danger of his life, but when hee fought with his brother *Amadis*, which made him carry better opinion of the Knight, and both of them being glad to breath a while, *Galaor* entred into these speeches. You see Sir I haue the better of the combat, let me therefore know your name, and why you conceale your selfe so closely: wherein yon shall doe me very great pleasure, and wee may continue friends, else worse will ensue then you imagin. Be wel assured answered the knight our strife shall not be ended so easily, nor am I to bee overcome so lightly as you weene, beside, I was neuer more desirous to prolong a combat, then I am at this instant, because I neuer met with the knight that tryed me so well: but to you nor any other will I bee knowne, except one Knight who hath power to command me. Be not so opinitue, replied *Galaor*, for I sweare to you by the faith I owe to God, neuer to leaue you till I know whar you are, and why you conceale your selfe so secretly. And I sweare to you, quoth the knight, while breath is in my body you shall not know it by me, and rather would I presently die, then any but two should vnderstand what I am: yet I know not them, but they may and shall haue knowledge of me. And what are they, said *Galaor*, you esteeme so much? Neither will I disclose them to you, answered the knight. Both them and my former demaund, quoth *Galaor*, I will know, else one of vs shall die, or both together. I

am well pleased therewith, replied the Knight.

So began they to charge each other a fresh, as if they had not fought together before at all: but the strange knight receiued many cruell wounds, which made his strength more and more to faile: and the Lady seeing the great danger of his life, would suffer him to endure no longer perill, but comming to *Galaor*, said. Forbeare sir Knight, would God the Barque and Mariners had sunke, before they brought you hither. Lady, quoth *Galaor*, you ought not to blame me in doing my deuoir against this knight, who hath outraged me, & many beside, for which I meane to bee reuenged this day. Forbeare, said the Lady, to wrong him any more, otherwise you may fall into an extremity without any mercy.

It matters not what may happen answered *Galaor*: but nothing shall make me giue over, vntill he haue satisfied my demand. And what is that? quoth she. He must tell me his name, replied *Galaor*, and why so closely hee concealeth himselfe, likewise what the two Knights are of whom he told mee but euen now. Proceede no further in combat said the Lady, and I will satisfie your demand. This Gentleman is named *Don Florestan*, concealing himselfe in this secret manner to finde his two brethren, who are in this country accounted such men at Armes, that albeit hee hath well tried himselfe with you, yet will hee not bee commonly knowne, till he haue accomplished such deedes in chiuallric, as may deserue to equall him with them, who are at this time in King *Lisuart*'s Court, one of them being named *Amadis*, the other *Galaor*, and all three

three the Sonnes to King Perion of *Gaule*. Alas, what haue I done? quoth *Galaor*, heere brother take my Sword, and therewithall the honor of the fight, for I haue offended ouer much. What? said the knight am I then your brother? According to this Ladies speeches, answered *Galaor*, you are, and I am your brother *Galaor*. *Florestan* amazed at this accident, fell on his knee, saying. My Lord, I desire you to pardon me, for this offence in combatting vnknown with you, was caused by no other reason: but that I durst not name my selfe your brother, till I had made some imitations of your noble vertues, *Galaor* courteously embraced him in his armes, the teares streaming

from his eyes with ioy, and greening to see him so sore wounded, doubting least his life was in great danger: but when the Lady saw them so good friends, and the enmity conuerted into such Humility, as one right glad thereof, she said to *Galaor*. Worthy Sir, though first you gaue me occasion of great heauinesse, yet now with sufficient ioy you haue recompensed me. So taking each of them by the hand, she walked with them into the Castle, where they being lodged in two sumptuous beds, her selfe (skillfull in Chirurgerie) cured their wounds. Thus remained the two brethren with the rich and beautiful Lady *Corisanda*, who desired their health as her owne welfare.

## CHAP. XLIII.

*How Don Florestan was begotten by King Perion, on the faire Daughter the Countie of Zealand.*



At what time King Perion sought after strange Aduentures, he arriued in the countrey of *Almaigne*, where he sojourned the space of two yeares, accomplishing many braue deedes of Armes, the renowne whereof continueth to this day. And as he returned toward *Gaule* hee lodged in the Counties house of *Zealand*, where he was entertained very royally, as well in respect of his owne reputation, as also because the Countie himselfe had sometime bene a Knight errant, which made him loue all such as followed Armes. After supper, the King was conducted to his Chamber, where being in bed, and somewhat wearie with trauaile, he fell a sleepe soundly: but to shake

off this heauinesse, he felt himselfe embraced and kissed he knew not by whom, when starting vp to wile, he was so held down that he could not. Why Sir? quoth she that thus mastred him, take you no pleasure in me who am alone with you? the king looking on her, by meanes of the light which still burned in his Chamber, he discerned her to be a most beautifull Lady, wherefore he thus answered. I pray you faire friend, tell me what you are. What foecer I am, quoth she, I loue you exceedingly, as one that freely giues her selfe to you. In sooth, replied the King, I very gladly would know your name. You trouble me, said the Lady, with this importunity, yet can I vse no other continence the you see: but it were necessary quoth the king, I should know

know your name, if you meane to be my friend. Seeing you constrain me thereto, answered the Lady, know that I am the Counties Daughter, who hath so friendly entertained you. Now trust me Madam, replied the King, you must hold me excused, for I had rather die, then abuse the man I am so much beholding to. Will you then refuse me? quoth she, well may you bee tearmed the worst nurtured Prince in the world, in denying the conquest, which all your life time you might haue sayled of. You may speake your pleasure, answered the King, but I will do what is conuenient for your honour and mine, and not offend in so foule a manner. I shall, quoth she, cause my Father to thinke himselfe more iniured by you, then if you grant what I desire. So starting from the bed, she tooke the Kings Sword (euen the same which was afterward found with *Amadis*, when he was taken vp on the Sea) and drawing it forth, she set the point against her heart, saying. Now shall my Fathers life be shortned by my death, whereof you are the onely cause. As she vttered these words, she offered to stab her selfe with the Sword: when the king suddenly staying her hand and meruailing at her impatient loue, thus replied. Hurt not your selfe Madam, for I am content to satisfie your will. Hereupon hee kindly embraced and kissed her, passing the night with her in such sort, as her hot desire was quallified, and at that instant she conceiued with childe: the King little thinking thereon, for the next morning he tooke his leaue of her, and the Countie, returning with all speede he could into *Gaule*. But the time of deliuerance drawing on,

and she (desirous to couer her of fence) determined to goe vijs, an Aunt of hers, whose dwelling was not past two or three miles off, and many times she resorted thither for her pleasure. So taking no other company with her but a Damosell, as shee rode through the Forrest, the payne of trauaile made her alight from her Palfrey, she being soon after deliuered of a goodly Sonne. The Damosell that was with her, seeing what had happened, bringing the childe to the mother, said. Madam, as your heart serued you to commit the offence, so must it now practise some present remedy, while I retorne from your Aunt againe. Then getting on horseback, she rode apace to her Ladies Aunt, and acquainted her with the whole matter: which caused the old woman to be very sorrowfull, yet she provided succour for her Niece, sending a Litter with all conuenient speede, wherein the Lady and her childe were brought to her Castle secretly, euery thing being so cunningly handled, as the Countie neuer knew his Daughters fault. After such time as these matters require, the Lady returned home to her Father, leauing her Sonne in her Aunts custody, where he was nourished till the age of eightene yeeres, hauing Squires and Gentlemen attending on him, who daily instructed him in managing Armes, and all braue qualities be-seeming a man of value. He being growne of goodly stature, the old Lady brought him one day to the Countie his Grand-father, who gaue him his knight-hood, not knowing what he was: & returning againe with his motherly Nurse, by the way she brake with him in this manner. My Sonne, I am cer-

certaine you are ignorant of your parentage, but credit my words, you are the son to King *Perion* of *Gaulle*, begotten on his daughter that gaue you your order of knight-hood: endeouour your selfe therefore to follow your fathers steps, who is one of the most renowned knights in the world. Madam, quoth *Florestan*, oftentimes haue I heard great fame of King *Perion*, but neuer imagined my selfe to be his son: wherefore I vow to you, being my long and carefull nurse, that I will trauaile to finde my father, and not make my selfe known to any one, till my deedes declare me worthy to be his son. Not long after, hee departed from the olde Ladie, and accompanied with two squires, iourned to *Constantinople*, which at that time was greatly vexed with warre, where he remained the space of foure yeeres, performing such haughty deedes of Chivalric, as he was counted the best knight in all those parts. When he perceived himselfe in some account, he intended to visit *Gaulle*, and make himselfe knowne to the king his father: but coming into great *Brittaine*, hee heard the fame of *Amadis* to be maruailous, which was the cause of his stay there, to win some report by armes, as his bretheren had done, whom he longed to acquaint himselfe withall. At length he met with them both in the Forrest, as you heard, and afterward combated with his brother *Galaor*, which caused their aboad at the Castle of *Corisanda*, vntill such time as their wounds were healed.

But now let vs returne to *Amadis* and *Agrais*, who staid with faire *Briolania* siue daies together, preparing their armour and every thing in order: which being done,

they set forward on their way, accompanied with *Briolania*, her Aunt, certaine waiting Gentlewomen, and squires to doethem seruice by the way. When they drew neere the Realme of *Sobradisa*, they came to the Castle of an ancient Lady named *Galumba*, who sometime liued in *Briolania* s fathers Court, and there they were welcomed very honourably: yet whether *Briolania* trauailed thus accompanied, the olde Lady *Galumba* could not chuse but maruaile, which made her request to be satisfied therein. *Briolania* Aunt tolde her, how *Amadis* was one of the best knights in the world, and had promised to reuenge the murdered kings death: likewise how hee discomfited them that guarded the Chariot, and afterward overcame the rest in the Castle, at what time the Lions escaped, as you haue heard. *Galumba* wondering at such singuler prowess, answered. If he be such a one as you make report, his companion must needes be of some estimation, and well may they bring your enterprise to end, considering the truth and iustice of the cause: but take heede least the traitorous king worke some treason against them. That is the chiefe point of my fear, answered *Briolania*, wherefore we came to craue your aduise herein. Heereupon shee wrote a letter, and sealed it with the Princesses seale at Armes, then calling a Damosell, after shee had giuen her instructions, she bad her make hast in deliuering the letter. Presently went the Damosell to horse back, and trauailed so speedily that shee arrived at the great Citie of *Sobradisa*, which the whole Realme tooke this name by. There was *Abiscos* and his Sonnes, *Darison* and

and *Dramis*, and these three must the Combat be waged withall: for *Abiscos* slew the Father of *Briolania*, by couctous desire he had to the Crowne, which he euer since vsurped and held, more by tyranny then any consent in the Subjects. The Damosell entred the Palace on horse-back, when diuerse knights came to her, requesting her to alight: but she made answer she would not, till she saw the king, and that hee commanded her to leaue her Palfrey. Soone after came the king, accompanied with his two Sonnes and many great Lords, and after shee had saluted him, hee boldly bad her say what she would. My Lord, quoth she, I shall fulfill your command, on condition I may abide in your protection, and receiue no iniurie for any thing I say. By my Crowne, said the king, I warrant your safety: wherenpon the Damosell thus began. Sir, my Lady and Mistresse *Briolania*, disinherited by you, greetes you with this letter, which may openly bee read before this royall company, and I afterward receiue answer for my discharge: when the king heard openly the name of *Briolania*, remorse of conscience touched him with the wrong hee did her: yet was the letter openly read, which was to giue credit to the Damosells words. The most of the Lords there present, who sometime were subjects to the slaughtered king, seeing the messenger of their lawfull Queene indeede: pittied she was so vniustly disinherited, and in their hearts desired of God, to plague the treason done to her Father: Proceede Damosell, quoth the king, and let vs heare your message. My Lord, said she, by treason you murdered my Ladies Father, and vniustly keepe

her from her inheritance: wherefore according to your former promise, which you haue not once but often times made, that you with your two Sons would maintaine by Armes, the right you pretend to haue in this Realme: shee sends you word by me; if still you stand vpon such triall, shee will bring two knights hither, who shall in combat maintaine her cause, making you know your disloyalty and treason committed. *Darison* eldest Sonne to the king, hearing his Father menaced in this sort, grew into great choller, and as one moued with despight, he arose, when (without the kings consent) hee thus spake. Damosell, if your Mistresse *Briolania* haue two knights with her, men resolved to fight on her behalfe: here do I accept the combat for my father and Brother, and if I faile, I promise in the presence of all these Lords, to send hee my head in requitall of her fathers; whose death was not accomplished without great reason. In sooth Sir *Darison*, answered the Damosell, you speake as a knight of haughtie mind, yet may I doubt these words to proceed from choller, because I discern an alteration in your countenance: but if you will request the king to confirme your speeches, I shall thinke your proffer came from a heart of courage.

This answer Damosell, quoth he, may you boldly make her that sent you hither. Cause then his Maiesty, said the Damosell, to giue my Ladies knights assurance; that for any mishap you may receiue in the Combat, they shall sustaine no iniurie, nor be meddled withall but by you three: And if you purchase them such a safe conduct, they shall bee here within

Three dayes at the vttermoſt, *Dariſon* falling on his knee before the King, ſaid. You heare (my Lord) the Damofells demaund, and the promiſe I haue made before your Maieſty, in the preſence of all theſe great Princes and Lords: humbly therefore I beſeech you, ſeeing my honor is yours, that both you and all the reſt will confirme her requeſt, otherwiſe, to our great diſaduantage, the preſuming knights, who dare aduenture in the cauſe of fooliſh *Briolania*, will imagine themſelues conquerors, and vs diſmaide faint-hearted Cowards: hauing openly publiſhed, that if any one will touch your illuſtrious renowne for matters paſt, by the combat of vs three you intend to be purged. And albeit you would make them no ſuch promiſe, yet ought not we to reſuſe them, for as I vnderſtand, they be ſome fooliſh knights of King *Liſuarts* Court, who by their ouer-wecning and aſpiring thoughts, make high accompt of their owne deedes in the contempt of others. The King who loued *Dariſon* as himſelfe, though the death of his brother condemned him culpable, and thereby made him feare the combat: granted them ſafe conduit, according as the Damofell requeſted for the two knights, and ſuch as came in their company. Here is to be conſidered, that the period of this traitours Fortune was now limited, and the iuſtaunger of all wrongs, pointed out rewarde for the treaſon of him and his Sonnes, as in this diſcourſe may bee euidently ſeene.

The Damofel ſeeing her meſſage had taken ſuch effect as ſhee deſired, ſaid vnto them: Make your ſelues ready, for to morrow without fayle ſhall this difference bee

deſided. So mounting on her Palefrey, ſhe returned to the Caſtle of *Galumba*, where being arriued, before the knights and Ladies, ſhe reported her anſwere: but when ſhe told them, that *Dariſon* reputed them fooliſh knights of king *Liſuarts* Court, they were ſo offended, as *Amadis* entred into theſe ſpeeches. By God, there are ſuch in company of that good king, as can eaſily abate the pride of *Dariſon*, and humble his head ſo low as they liſt: but I thinke his choller ouer-maſtered him, when he vttered words of ſuch great indiſcretion. Truſt me my Lord, answered *Briolania*, you cannot ſay or doe ſo much againſt theſe traytours, as they iuſtly deſerue. You know what vilanie they did to the king my Father, and how long time they haue diſinherited me: let pity then preuaile on my behalfe, ſeeing in God and you I haue reposed my ſelfe, with aſſured hope of ſufficient reuenge. *Amadis* whole heart was ſubmiſſe to vertue and all gentleneſſe, moued with compaſſion, ſaid.

Madam, if God be ſo pleaſed, ere to morrow at night, your ſorrow and ſadneſſe, ſhall be conuer- ted into pleaſure and content: herupon they concluded, to ſet forward very early the next morning, which made them depart to their chambers, except *Briolania*, who ſat conſerring with *Amadis* on many matters, when often times ſhe thought to motion marriage between him and her: but ſuſpecting by his continuall ſighs, as alſo the teares ſtreaming from his eys, that ſome other Lady was cauſe of theſe paſſions, ſhe kept ſilence, and taking her leaue bad him good night. On the morrow they go all to horſe-back, & comming to the

Citty

Cittie of *Sobradisa*, their arriuall was very welcome to many, who ſeeing the Daughter of their late ſoueraigne Lord, and knowing the monſtrous treacherie of his brother, they inſtantly deſired her prosperous ſucceſſe, becauſe they bare her ſingular affection, *Abiſeos* remembering the wrong hee had done her, and his bloody treaſon ſo vnaturally committed, ſeemed terrified in countenance, becauſe the worrme of conſcience reuiued his heinous offence: yet hauing bene ſo long abſtinate and indurate in his ſinne, thought fortune would now aſſure his quietneſſe, and confirme his eſtate to continue in tranquility. But when he ſaw how the people ſtocked about her, not ſhewing any reuerence to him and his ſonnes, albeit they were royally accompaigned with Lords, hee exclamed on them in this manner. Ah wretched and bad minded people, I ſee what comfort you take by the preſence of this Gidle, and how your ſences are caryed away with her: now may I well iudge, you rather could except her as your ſoueraigne, ſhe being a woman not capable of ſuch an office, then I that am a hardy knight. Her weakneſſe you may note, becauſe ſhee hath in ſo long time gotten but two knights, who are come to receiue an ignominious death, which in ſooth I cannot chuſe but pittie. When *Amadis* heard theſe taunting words, he was ſo enraged, as if the blood would haue gushed from his eyes, and raiſing himſelfe on his ſtirrups, that euery one might heare him, hee thus answered. *Abiſeos*, it may bee eaſily diſcerned, that the arriuall of the Princeſſe is ſcant pleaſing to thee, in reſpect of thy horrible treaſon committed, murdering her father

thy eldeſt brother: but if thou haue any feeling of vertue, & art repentant for thy ſoule miſ-deed, yeeld to her what thou haſt vniuſtly vſurped, ſo ſhall I diſcharge thee of the combat: provided, thou aſke God forgiuenſſe, and vſe ſuch repentance as beſcemeth a ſin ſo heinous, that by loſing honour in this world, thou mayſt ſeek the ſaluati- on of thy ſoule hereafter. *Dariſon* prouoked to anger by theſe ſpeeches, aduanced himſelfe, & before his father had leiſure to reply, hee preuented him in this manner. Thou fooliſh Knight of King *Liſuarts* Court, hardly can I endure thy iniurious words to my father in my preſence: but I am content to defer them, till we proceede to the effect of thy demand, then ſhall I take ſuch vengeance for them as I deſire, for when thy heart ſhal ſaine in time of neede, wanning to ſaue thy life by flight: if thou make not good haſt I will ſo chaſtiſe thee, as each one ſhall pittie thy miſerable eſtate. This is too long a proceſſe, ſaid *Agrais*, to defend thy fathers treaſon withall, goe arme thy ſelfe, and come to the combat as thou didſt promiſe, then ſhalt thou ſee if fortune bee ſo ſauourable, to giue thee the victory which thou reckoneſt aſſured: if ſhe doe otherwiſe, perſwade thy ſelfe, both thou and thine ſhal haue the meed of your wicked deſeruing. Say what thou wilt, answered *Dariſon*, ere long thy iniurious tongue puld from thy head, ſhall be ſent to the court of thy maſter king *Liſuart*, that ſuch as behold thy worthy puniſhment, may be afraid to hazard the like by their liberall language. So calling for their armour, the king and his two ſons were quickly armed, then mounting on horſe-backe, they went to the place appointed

appointed for Combats. Whereupon, *Amadis* and *Agrais* lacing their Helmers, tooke their Shields and Launces, and afterward entered the field. Then *Dramis* (who was the youngest brother, yet a Knight so valiant, as two of the best in that Countrey durst not deale with him in Combat) said to his Father. My Lord, where your Majesty and my brother are present, wel may I be excused from speech, but now effects must shew it otherwise, by such strength as Heaven hath enabled me withall: therefore I desire to try my Fortune with the Knight who hath so wronged you, and if I kill him not at the first taint of the Launce, neuer shall Armor come on my back againe: but if I meete him not so right as I desire, he shall have but little respite of life, for at the first stroake of my Sword, I will dispatch him. Many heard the words of young *Dramis*, and esteemed highly of his enterprise, nor did they greatly doubt the performance, considering what deedes of Armes they had seene him accomplish. Now place they their Launces in their rests, and *Dramis* prepared himselfe against *Amadis*, who met him so full in the carriere, as his heart brake in his belly, and he fell to the ground so waighitly, as if it had beene the fall of an Oxe. Get thee to all the Duels, said *Dardan* the Dwarfie, my master is very well rid of thee: but methinks his threatening hath lighted on himselfe, which commonly falls out so with such great crakers. *Agrais* and *Darison* brake their Launces in the encounter, but no other harme happened betwene them as yet.

When *Abiseos* saw his Son *Dramis* was dead, he was meruailously displeased, and intended to re-

venge his death on *Amadis*, whereupon he gaue forth to meete him, and piercing his Launce thorow the Princes shield, gaue him a fore hurt on the Arme, which made the beholders doubt, that *Amadis* could hold out no longer. If then the young Princeesse *Briolania* was dismaide, it were in vaine to demand the question: for now her heart dreaded further mishap: but he who could not be daunted with common wounds, drew the sword which he recovered from *Arcalas*, giuing *Abiseos* such a sound greeting therewith on the head, as made him couch his neck to his shoulders, and the Sword sliding downe vpon his right arme, gaue him a wound to the very bone, by means whereof *Abiseos* found himselfe so distressed and amazed, that he fell down from his horse as it were in a Trance. Now did the people meruaile not a little, to see *Amadis* at two stroakes ouerthrow two such puissant Knights, esteemed amongst them the best in the World: but *Amadis* beholding no other resistance, returned to *Darison* who fought with *Agrais*, they behauing themselves so manfully against each other, as the people thought they neuer saw a braver comba.

At length *Abiseos* recovered againe, and seeing his Sonne *Darison* in danger of his life, came to assist him, giuing *Agrais* such a wound in the throate, as his Cozin thought he had beene slayne outright: But soone did he requite *Abiseos* for it, by seperating his wounded Arme from his body, euen the same Arme wherewith he killed the King his Brother, which made him fall downe dead to the ground, whereupon *Amadis* called to him, saying. *Abiseos*, this

this is punishment in member, whereby thou didst thrust thy selfe into the Crowne, and now hast receiued death according to thy desert. Then hee turned about to help *Agrais*, but he met him with the head of *Darison* in his hand: whereat all the people gaue a great shout, and humbled themselves to *Briolania* as their lawfull Queen. This was the end of the wretched Father and his Sonnes, serving at this day for an example to such as shamefully vsurpe the right of others: which though they enioy for a small season, yet when the God of power letteth loose his arrows against them, they fall into open and detested ruine. Let every man therefore set before his eys that no euill remaineth unpunished, and the end concludeth these two principles, the eternall beatitude of the celestially Soules, and the mercilesse excruciaments of miserable damned creatures.

Thus see you what los fell to *Abiseos* and his children, vsurping the kingdome by homicide and tyranny, euen by the death of his own naturall brother: therefore heauen repayed him with a miserable end, by the conquering Sword of *Amadis* and *Agrais*, who dragged them along out of the field, demanding if any other would withstand the right of *Briolania*. By one of the chiefeft Lords in the Countrey named *Goman*, they were answered, she had no more enemies to gamesay her, which he testified with an hundred knights of his owne kindred: All the people being there

ready to receiue their Queen *Briolania*, and do her homage as be-seemed faithfull Subiects. Hereupon *Amadis* and *Agrais* conducted the new Queene to the Palace Royall, where they were presently vnarmed, and Chirurgeons commanded to attend their wounds: in meane while *Briolania* was confirmed in the regiment, by a generall oath of the Subiects taken to their Soueraigne, with such ioy, as neuer was the like in *Sobradisa*. But because the two knights were very fore wounded, and their hurts found to be somewhat dangerous, all sports and pastimes accustomed at such solemnity, were referred til the time of their recovery: which to compass the sooner, their lodgings were appointed in seuerall chambers, that none might trouble them with tedious talking, lest a continuall feuer should come vpon them. Notwithstanding, *Briolania*, as one not ingratefull for the good she receiued by them, would not depart from them eyther day or night, but onely at the time of repast: so that by her kinde and diligent attendanee, the danger of their sicknesse was expelled the sooner. See here the true and certaine history, for what is said more concerning the loue of *Amadis* &c this Princeesse, hath been inuented and falsely faigned, according as I haue said before: therefore we will cease, seeing here it goes no further, vntill the contrary may apparantly be knowne, as in the History following is declared.



## CHAP. XLIIII.

*How Galaor and Florestan riding toward the Realme of Sobradisa, met with three Damosels at the Fountaine of Oliues.*

**G**alaor and Florestan being at the Castle of Corisanda, as you haue heard, they sojourned there til their wounds were healed: afterward they concluded on their departure, to seek Amadis in the realme of Sobradisa, desiring they might come thither before the beginning of the combat, to haue part of the perill in fight, and glory in conquest. But when Florestan should take leaue of his Lady, her griefe and teares vnspeakable, able to moue ruth in a heart of flint, although Florestan assured her of his speedy returne. Notwithstanding all these mones, forward they set to the Realme of Sobradisa: Florestan crauing a boon of his brother by the way, to wit: that he would not combat on the way for any thing which might happen, vntill he were able to hold out no longer. With much ado he obtained his request, & so rode they on foure dayes together, not meeting with any aduenture worthy the rehearfall: but toward Sun setting they met a knight hard by a Tower, who intreated them earnestly to lodge there that night, which gentle offer they accepted, and entering with the knight, they conferred on many matters till supper was ready. The knight was of comely stature, & well spoken, but his countenance was so sad & melancholly, as Galaor began thus to question with him. Me thinkes Sir you are not so merry as you should be, but if wee may any way help your pensiuenesse, tell vs, and you shall finde vs willing to performe it. I belecue assuredly, quoth their host, that like good knights

you would doe as you say, but my sadnesse is caused through extreame loue, a matter not to be reuealed, and therefore the rather to be pardoned. So fate they downe to supper, which beeing ended, Galaor, and his brother were conducted to their chamber, where they reposed themselues till the next morning: when mounting on horse-backe, their host would accompany them a little on the way, and calling for his Iennet, but putting on no Armour, hee rideth with them: this did hee to see what should happen to them, because in the way hee guided them, he hoped to see some proofe of their manhood, when if they were vanquished or slaine, he might the more easily escape from them.

Not farre had they travelled, but they came to a place called the fountaine of Oliues, because in the midst of the water grew three high Oliue trees. Heereby they espied three beautifull Damosels, and a Dwarfie sitting aloft in one of the trees: whereupon Florestan saluted them very curteously, as one not to learne his behavior toward Ladies, then one of the Damosels requiting his salutation, sayd. Sir knight, if heauen haue endued you with as great bounty as comely perfection, no doubt but you are sufficiently enriched. Faire Damosell answered Florestan, if my outward appearance doth please you, my inward vertue you may try if you haue any need. You speake so kindly, quoth she, that I will presently make proofe of your valour, to see if you can carry mee hence from this place. In sooth Lady, replied Florestan, if of your selfe you

be

be willing to goe, I know no reason to the contrary why you should not. Herewith he commanded the squire to set her on a palfray, which was tied (ready furnished) at one of the oliue trees: but while the dwarfie behelde it, hee cryed out aloud. Come forth sir knight, come forth, for here is one will cary away your friend. Presently came out of a valley a knight brauely prauncing, & well armed, who said to Florestan. What moues you sir to touch my Lady? I cannot think she is yours, answered Florestan, seeing shee entreateth mee to cary her hence away. Albeit shee would, quoth the knight, yet I thinke it not at this time so conuenient, because I haue defended her from better then you are. I know not how well you haue defended, replied Florestan, but she shall goe with me if I can helpe it. By God sir, answered the other, you must first talk with the knights of this valley, and seele how safely they can keepe such as they loue. So placing their Lances in their rests, they ran couragiously against each other, the knight breaking his staffe: but Florestan smot his shield so strongly against his helmet, as the lace brake, and his head was bare, but worst of all, he fel so heauily vpon his sword, that with his weight brake in two peeces. Florestan finished his carriere, hauing his Launce whole and sound, when turning againe to the knight, hee saw that he moued neither hand or foote, wherefore punching him with his Lance vpon the stomach, said. Pillard, thou art dead, if thou yeeld not. The knight being recoured fro his traunce, & beholding the present danger of his life, desired mercy: which Florestan granted, so he would freely resigne the Damosell. She is at your pleasure,

replied the knight, but cursed bee the houre when first I saw her. For by her folleys she hath oftentimes endangered my life, Florestan leauing him, came to the Damosell, saying: Faire Lady, now you are mine. You haue so nobly won me, quoth she, as I remaine at your disposition. As they were departing thence, one of the other Damosels thus spake: Alas sir, will you sepe- rate so good company? it is a yeere and more since wee haue liued together, and we would be loth now to depart in this manner. If you please to accompany her, answered Florestan, I can be content to conduct you together: and more I hope you will not request, because I meane not to leaue my conquest. I thinke not my selfe so foule, replied the other damosel, but some good knight may enterprise as great an aduenture for me: mary it is to be doubted, whether such hardinesse remaine in you or no. Why Lady, quoth Florestan, thinke you that feare can make me leaue yet I promise you on my faith, but that I would not forcibly cary you away, you should presently goe with me: but if your will be so good, let my squire helpe you vp on your hackney. Which she did, & the dwarfie cryed againe as he did for the first, whereupon another knight came immediatly foorth, and after him a squire bearing two Launces, the knight vsing these words to Florestan. You haue (sir) already won one Lady, and (not content with her) you seeke for another: but now in one instant you must loose them both, and your head I doubt to keepe them company, because you beeing of no better race, are vnworthy a Lady of so high calling. Thou vauntest very much, answered Florestan, yet haue I two

Y 3

knights

knights of my linage, whom thou, nor three such as thou art, may bee thought worthy to serue. Thy commendations extend very far, sayde the knight, yet am I to meddle with none but thee, who hast got a Lady from him that could not defend her: but she must be mine if I conquer thee, else by vanquishing me, thou shalt be maister of them both together. Now thou speakest reason, quoth *Florestan*: defend thy Lady well, or without doubt shee will fall to my share. So giuing the spurres to their horses, they committed this controuersie to be tryed by the Lance, when though the Prince failed in the race, and the other brake his staffe very manfully: yet (being angry at his mis-hap) at the second course he set the knight so violently to the ground, as hee thought euery bone of him was broken in pieces. Thus was he safely possessed of the second Damosell, and very loth hee was to leaue the third there alone, but shee beholding their host that conducted them thither, spake to him in this manner. My friend, I would aduise ye to bee gone, because you know these two knights cannot resist him will presently come: then if you be taken, you are sure to dy the death. Beleeue mee Lady, quoth hee, I meane now to see the end of all, for my horse is quick of pace, and my tower strong enough to defend me from him. Well, looke to your selues, said the Damosell, you bee but three, and one of you vnarmed, but if he were, it might not auail him. When *Florestan* heard how shee praised him that was to come, he was more desirous to carry her away then before, onely because hee would haue a sight of him, and therefore bad his Squire to set her on horse-backe as he did

the other, when the Dwarfie in the oliue tree deliuered these wordes. Beleeue me Sir knight, in an euill houre came this boldnesse on you, for presently commeth one who will reuenge his companions. Foorth of the valley came a knight in gilt armour, mounted on a lusty bay courser, the man resembling a Giant in proportion, and reputed to be of incredible strength. After him followed two Squires armed, each of them carying a hatchet in his hand, and so soone as he came neere *Florestan*, he thus spake. Stay knight & fly not, for by flight thou art not able to saue thy life, better is it for thee to dye like a good knight then a coward, especially when by cowardise thou canst not escape. *Florestan* hearing such menaces of death, contemning likewise a man of no value, incensed with anger, hee returned this answer. Monster, Beast, Diuell, or whatsoeuer thou art, reason I see thou wantest: so little do I esteeme thy prodigall words, that I thinke thou hast no better weapons to fight withall. I greene, saide the Knight, that I cannot haue my fill in reuenge on thee, but I would foure of the best of thy linage were here with thee, for mee to slice off their heads as I wil do thine. Look to thine owne thou wert best, answered *Florestan*, for I hope I am sufficient to excuse them, and bee their Lieutenant in this matter on thee. Thus fundering themselves, in rage and fury they met together, that the beating of their horses hooves made the earth to groan and the breach of their Launces made a terrible noise: but the great knight lost his stirrups, and had fallen to the ground, if by catching hold about his horse necke hee had not escaped. As *Florestan* helde on his

his course, hee caught a hatchet from one of the squires, wherewith he smote him quite beside his horse: and by time he returned, the Knight had recouered his seate againe, and the hatchet which the other Squire held. Now begins a dreadfull combat betweene them, such cruell strokes being giuen at each other with their hatchets, as though their helmets were of right trusty Steele, yet they cut and mangled them very pittifully. Many times was *Florestan* enforced to staggering, by the mighty blowes of his monstrous enemy, yet at length the Prince smote at him so furiously as he was faine to lie along vpon his horse neck, when redoubling his stroake betweene the helmet and the brigandine he parted his head from his shoulders. Being thus conqueror of all the Damosells, and they not a little mourning at this strange victory, the Knight who had bene their host the night before, spake to *Florestan*. My Lord, this Damosell haue I long time loued, and shee me with like affection, but for the space of this yeare & more, the great knight (whom last you slue) hath forcibly detained her: yet beeing now recouered by your worthy prowesse, I beseech ye Sir, I may enioy her againe. If it be so as you say, answered *Florestan*, my pains haue stood you in some steede at this time, but against her will, neither you or any other can get her from me. Alas my Lord, quoth the Damosell, no one but he hath right to my loue, then sunder not them that should liue together. Nor will I said *Florestan*, you are, Lady at your owne liberty, and may depart with your friend when you please. They both requited him with manifold thanks then taking leaue of *Galaor* & *Flo-*

*restan*, the knight rides home ioyfully with his new conquered Lady. The other two Damosells desired the Princes to accompany them to their Anns house which was not far off, *Galaor* questioning with them by the way, why they were kept in such sort at the Fountaine, where to one of the Damosells thus replied. Vnderstand my Lord, that the great Knight who was slaine in the combat, loued the Lady which your host carried away with him; but shee despised him aboue all other, fancying no other then him who now enioys her. But in respect this knight was so puissant, as none in this country durst contend with him, he kept her violently whether she would or no, yet offering her no iniury, because hee loued her deerely, and one day among other he thus spake to her: faire Mistresse, to the end I may compasse your gentle affection, and be esteemed of you the only knight in the world listen what I will do for your sake. There is a Knight named *Amadis* of *Gaule*, accounted the onely man for valour this day liuing, who slew a Cozin of mine in the Court of king *Lisuart*, a knight of great fame called *Dardan* the proud: him (for your sake) will I seeke, and by cutting off his head, conuert all his glory to mine owne commendation. But till I compasse what I haue said, these two Ladies (meaning vs) and these two knights of my linage shall attend on you, and each day conduct you to the fountaine of *Oliues*, which is the only passage for knights errant through this Countrey: if any dare be so bold to carry you thence, there shall you see many braue combats, & what the honor of your loue can make me do, to cause the like opinion in you towards me, as your diuine perfecti-  
ons

ons, haue wrought in me to you. Thus were wee taken and given to the two Knights who were first dismounted, and with them we haue abode the space of one whole yere, in which time many combats they fought for vs, yet neuer conquered till this present. In sooth Lady, answered *Galaor*, the knights intent was too high for him to accomplish, because he could not deale with *Amadis*, and escape the Fortune now fallen vpon him: but how was he named? He called himselfe *Alimias*, quoth she, and had nor ouer-weening pride too much ruled him, he was a most gentle & courteous Knight. By this time were they come to their Aunts Castle, where *Galaor* and *Florestan* found gracious entertainment, the old Lady being very glad to see her Nieces, as also to vnderstand the death of *Alimias*. After they had taken leaue of the friendly Ladies, they journey toward the Realme of *Sobradisa*, where they heard before they entred the Citie, how *Amadis* and *Agrais* had slaine *Abiscos* and his Sonnes, by meanes whereof, *Briolania* ruled as a peaceable Queene, which news highly contented them, & made them reioyce for their happy fortune. To the palace they come vnknown of any, till they were brought to *Amadis* & *Agrais*, whose wounds were already indifferently recured, and they deuising with the Queene at her arriall. Here you must note, how the Damosell that conducted *Galaor* to finde *Florestan*, left them after the combat, and comming before to her Mistresse, told her and *Amadis*, how *Galaor* and *Florestan* knew each other, and what issue their combat

had: which made *Amadis* very kindly to embrace them both, and *Florestan* offered on his knee to kiss his hand, which *Amadis* would not permit, but causing him to arise, sate downe & communed of their adventures past. But one day among other, the new enstalled Queen *Briolania*, after many honorable feastings she had made the, seeing these foure knights determined to depart, considering the good she had receiued by *Amadis* and *Agrais*, & that she (being before a disinherited Princeesse) was by their meanes restored to her Kingdome: beholding likewise the wheele of fortune turned, and how such personages were not alone to aide and defend her Countrey, but puissant enough of themselves to be Kings and mighty Lords: falling on her knees before them, first rendering thanks to God, who had done her such grace as to regard her in pittie, continuing her discourse, she said. Thinke my Lords, these mutations are the meruailes of the Almighty, which are admirable to vs & held of great account, but to him they are (in manner) nothing. Let vs see if it be good then to shun Signories & riches, which to obtaine we take such paine and trauaile, and to keepe, endure innumerable anguishes and distresse: as superfluous therefore vtterly to deiect them, because they are torments of body & soule, vncertaine and haue no permanence. As for my selfe, I say no, but affirme, that they being lawfully begotten, modestly vsed, & according to Gods appointment: they are in this world, rest, pleasure and ioy, and the way to bring vs to eternall glory.

The End of the first Booke.



A Table for the ready finding of the Chapters  
Contayned in this Booke, directing by the  
Number to euery seuerall Lease.

CHAPTER I.

Of whence the Kings *Garin-ter* and *Perion* were, & the Combat betwene *Perion* and two Knights, as also how hee fought with a Lion that deuoured a Hart in their presence: with the successe following thereon. Fol. 1.

Chap. 2. How the Princeesse *Elisena*, and her Damosell *Darioletta*, went to the chamber where King *Perion* was lodged. Fol. 6.

Chap. 3. How King *Perion* parting from little Brittain, trauielled on his journey, hauing his heart filled with grieve and melancholy. Fol. 12.

Chap. 4. How King *Languines* carried away with him the Gentleman of the Sea, and *Gandalin* the Sonne of *Gandales*. Fol. 19.

Chap. 5. How King *Lisuart* saying by the Sea, landed in Scotland, where he was greatly honoured, and well entertained. Fol. 24.

Chap. 6. How *Vrganda* the Vnknowne, brought a Launce to the Gentleman of the Sea. Fol. 33.

Chap. 7. How the Gentleman of the Sea, combatted with the guards of *Galpans* Castle, and afterward with his Brethren, and in the end with *Galpan* himselfe. Fol. 39.

Chap. 8. How the third day after the Gentleman of the Sea departed from King *Languines*, the three Knights came to the court, bringing with them the wounded Knight in a Litter, and his disloyall wife. Fol. 43.

Chap. 9. How King *Lisuart* sent for

his Daughter the Princeesse *Oriana*; for that long before he had left her in the Court of King *Languines*: who sent her accompanied with the Princeesse *Mabila* his onely daughter, as also a noble traine of Knights, Ladies and Gentlewomen. Fol. 46.

Chap. 10. How the Gentleman of the Sea fought the combat with King *Abies*, on difference of the warre he made in *Gaulle*. Fol. 55.

Chap. 11. How the Gentleman of the Sea was knowne by King *Perion* his Father, and by the Queene *Elisena* his Mother. Fol. 60.

Chap. 12. How the Giant bringing *Galaor* to King *Lisuart*, that he might dub him knight: met with his brother *Amab*, by whose hand he would be knighted and by no other. Fol. 66.

Chap. 13. How *Galaor* vanquished the Giant at the Rock of *Galte- res*. Fol. 76.

Chap. 14. How after *Amadis* departed from *Vrganda* the Vnknowne, he arrived at a Castle, where it chanced to him as you shall read in the discourse. Fol. 81.

Chap. 15. How King *Lisuart* caused a sepulchre to be made for *Dardan* and his friend, with an Epitaph in remembrance of their death: and the honor he did to *Amadis*, after he was found and knowne. Fol. 91.

Chap. 16. How *Amadis* made himselfe knowne to King *Lisuart*, as also the Princes and Lords of his Court, of whom he was honorably receiued and feasted. Fol. 100.

Chap. 17. What were the adventures

## The Table.

tures of the Prince Agraies, (since his returne from Gaule, where he left Amadis. Fol. 108

Chap. 18. How Amadis carrying with his good will in the Court of King Lifuart, heard tidings of his brother Galaor. Fol. 206.

Chap. 19. How Amadis combat- ted against Angriote and his bro- ther, who guarded the passage of the walley, against such as would not con- fesse, that their Ladies were inferior in beauty to Angriotes choyce. F. 122

Chap. 20. How Amadis, was in- charnted by Arcalaus, when he would haue deliuered the Lady Grindaloya and other from prison: and how after- ward he escaped the inchauntments by the ayde of Vrganda. Fol. 131

Chap. 21. How Arcalaus brought news to the Court of King Lifuart, that Amadis was dead, which caused his friends to make manifold lamen- tations and regrets, especially the Princeesse Oriana. Fol. 136.

Chap. 22. How Galaor came ve- ry sore wounded to a Monastery, where he sojourned five dayes atten- ding his health, and at his departure thence, what happened to him. F. 141

Chap. 23. How Amadis depar- ted from the Ladies Castle, and of the matters which were occurrent to him by the way. Fol. 150.

Chap. 24. How King Lifuart being in the chase, saw a farre off three knights armed comming toward him and what followed thereupon. F. 154.

Chap. 25. How Amadis, Galaor, and Balays determined to trauaile to King Lifuart, and what adventures happened by the way betwene them. Fol. 159.

Chap. 26. How Galaor reuenged the death of the Knight, whom hee found slaine on the bed vnder the Tree. Fol. 164.

Chap. 27. How Amadis pursu- ing the Knight that misused the

Damofell, met another knight with whom he combatted, and what hap- pened to him afterward. Fol. 168

Chap. 28. How Amadis combatted with the Knight that did steale the Damofell from him when he slept, and vanquished him. Fol. 174.

Chap. 29. How Balays behaued himselfe in his enterprise, pursuing the Knight that made Galaor lose his Horse. Fol. 176.

Chap. 30. How King Lifuart held open Court most royally, and of that which happened in the meane time. Fol. 179.

Chap. 31. How Amadis, Gala- or, and Balays arriued at the Court of King Lifuart, and what happened to them afterward. Fol. 182

Chap. 32. How King Lifuart de- parted from Wwindfore to the good City of London, there to hold open and royall Court. Fol. 185.

Chap. 33. How King Lifuart would haue the aduise of his Princes and Lords, as concerning his former determination, for the high exalting and entertaining of Chinalrie. F. 191

Chap. 34. How while this great and ioyfull assembly endured, a Da- mosfell came to Court, cloathed in mourning, requesting ayde of King Lifuart, in a cause whereby hee had beene wronged. Fol. 195.

Chap. 35. How King Lifuart was in danger of his person and his state, by the vnlawfull promises he made too rash and vnadvisedly. Fol. 201.

Chap. 36. How Amadis and Ga- laor understood, that King Lifuart and his Daughter were carried away prisoners, wherefore they made hast to giue them succour. Fol. 209.

Chap. 37. How Galaor rescued King Lifuart from the ten Knights that led him to prison. Fol. 216.

Chap. 38. How news came to the Queene that the King was taken: and how Barsinan laboured to usurpe the City

## The Table.

City of London many dayes, in which time sundry great personages were there feasted, the greater part whereof remained long time after- ward. Fol. 227.

Ch. 41. How Amadis determined to goe combat with Abiscos and his two Sons, to reuenge the kings death, who was father to the faire Briola- nia, and of that which followed. Fol. 230.

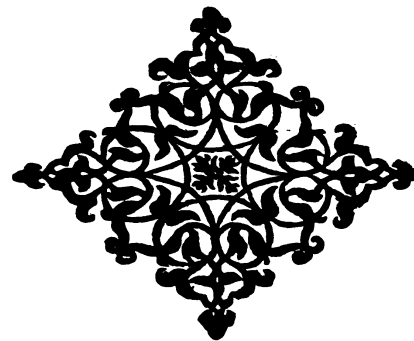
Chap. 42. How Galaor went with the Damofell after the Knight that dismounted him and his compa-

nions in the Forrest, whom when hee found they combatted together, and afterward in the sharpest point of their combat, they knew each other. Fol. 235

Chap. 43. How Don Florestan was begotten by King Persion, on the faire Daughter to the Countie of Zea- land. Fol. 240.

Chap. 44. How Galaor and Flo- restan, riding towards the Realme of Sobradisa, met with three Damofells at the Fountaine of Oliuca. Fol. 248:

FINIS.



# THE SECOND BOOKE Of Amadis de Gaule.

CONTAINING THE DESCRIPTION,  
Wonders and Conquests of the Inclosed  
or *Firme-Island*: As also the triumphes and  
troubles of *Amadis*, in the pursuit of his  
fayrest Fortunes.

Moreover the manifold Victories hee obtained, and  
admirable seruices by him performed for King *Lijuart*:  
*And his notorious ingratitude towards him, which was*  
the first occasion of the broyles and fatall warres  
that (no small time) continued betwene  
him and *Amadis*.

---

*Translated out of French, by A. M.*

---



---

LONDON,  
Printed by NICHOLAS OKES, dwelling in  
*Foster-lane. 1619.*





TO THE RIGHT HONORA-  
ble, Sir *Phillip Herbert*, Earle of *Mountgo-*  
*merie*; And Knight of the most noble  
*Order of the Garter*.



*Madis*, in his first Booke kissing your noble hand,  
the second followeth to finde the like fauour, en-  
couraged thereto by your euer knowne most ho-  
nourable nature, and affable graces affoorded to  
the very meanest deseruers. The third and fourth Bookes  
succesfully ensue, to make vp the first volume of so famous  
an history; till foure more may in the like manner be finished,  
to present themselves to you their gracious Patrone.

*Your Honours enér to*  
*be commanded.*

*A. M.*





## THE SECOND BOOKE OF AMADIS DE GAVLE.

### CHAP. I.

*The Description of the firme Island. who made the enchantments, and placed these great riches which were found in the same.*



Here was a King in Greece, who was married vnto the Emperours daughter of *Constantinople*, by whom hee had two sonnes, excellen in all perfection, both of body and minde. Especially the eldest (named *Apolidon*) who was so well brought vp and conditioned, that hee found not his equall in any vertuous quality wherein he exercised himselfe. This *Apolidon* studied all sciences, wherein he profited so much, that hee was not onely counted one of the best knights in the world; but also surpassed all men of his time for wisdom: excellen them in learning, as farre as the moone exceedeth the starres in light, and chiefly in the art of Nigromancy, by the which he brought to passe many great matters, which seemed beyond the capacity of men. Now was the King (father of these two young Princes) most mighty in lands, and wealthy in treasure: but

very weake in body by reason of his age. Wherefore knowing the end of his daies to approach, he would before his death, make partition of all his goods vnto his children, because no contention or debate should happen betweene them after his decease. And for that end he appointed the kingdome to *Apolidon*, being his eldest sonne and heire, the other he inuested with all his riches, and moveable goods, among which there was many excellent bookes, of inestimable value. Yet the youngest nothing liking this partition, betwyled his estate vnto the King; beseeching him most humbly to consider, that his patrimony being so small, hee was not onely left poore, but in a manner disinherited. Then the aged father perceiuing the discontentment of his sonne (being the thing hee most feared) was exceeding sorrowfull, but yet would he not alter that which hee had done, without the consent of *Apolidon*: who being aduertised thereof,

came vnto him, and in the presence of his brother saide thus. It may please your Maiestie, I heard within these few dayes that my brother is not content with that portion, which it hath pleased you to appoint vnto him: and therefore because I knowe how grievous the same is vnto you, seeing the brotherly loue betwixt him and mee likely to be broken: I most humbly beseech your highnesse, to take all that againe which it hath pleased you to giue vnto mee, and dispose therof as it shal seeme best to your owne minde, for I shall thinke my selfe thrise fortunate, to doe any thing that may breede your soules felicity, and very well apaid, with that which to him was appointed.

When the King behelde the bounty of his sonne *Apolidon*, and the obedience hee shewed vnto him, hee was therewithall so pleased and exceeding ioyfull, that his soule (knowing it, could not leaue his body in greater contentment) fled vp into heauen: leauing his two sonnes in such friendship as he desired. Notwithstanding, after the body was buried, and all accustomed funerall rights ended, *Apolidon* caused certaine shippes to be rigged and furnished for the sea, wherein being embarked, with diuerse Gentlemen of his friends, seeing the winde and weather fauour them, he commanded the anchors to be waied, and the sailes to be let fall; the which were incontinently filled with so stiffe a gale, as in lesse then one houre they were past the cuntry of Greece. And yet *Apolidon* had not determined to bond his course vnto any certaine coast: but following his fortune, driuen by the winde, he discouered the Cuntry of Italie, whereunto approaching, he lan-

ded in a certaine port thereof. The Emperour *Sindan* beeing aduised of his landing, sent many great Lords vnto him, to request him to come to Rome: where hee should be as royally entertained as might be deuised. To which request *Apolidon* willingly condescended, and beeing there already arrived, the Emperour receiued him with honor, yet although at his coming hee determined to sojourn no more then eight daies with him, hee changed his purpose, and remained there a longer season: in which time he accomplished such haughty deedes of armes, and behaued himselfe so worthily, that amongst the Romans he gained the reputation of the best knight in the world: and obtained the loue of a young Princesse, the onely sister to the Emperour, named *Grimanesa*, the fairest Lady then liuing. And although that their loue was alike, yet was this faire Lady so straightly looked vnto, that neither could her affection bee satisfied, nor the common desire of them both bee performed. Wherefore one day consulting more priuily, then they euer yet before had done, loue wrought such a consent in them, as they agreed to depart vnto such a place, where they might without controule, enioy the fulnesse of their content: so as what they secretly intended, they as suddenly executed. For euen as they had appointed it, so the faire *Grimanesa* came forth one night to meete her loue *Apolidon*, who stayed for her at the water-side, having prepared shippes ready for their flight, and wherein they presently embarqued themselves. Then by force of the winde, they were in few dayes driuen to arrive at the foote of the Firme Island, which

was

was then inhabited by a mighty Giant, whereof *Apolidon* and those in the ship were ignorant. Whereupon thinking they were in a place of safety, came on shoare, and tents and Pavilions were set vp, wherein they might refresh them: for *Grimanesa* (who was not vsed to trauaile by sea) was as wearie as might be. But at that instant when they thought themselves most secure, the Giant which had discouered them, took them so suddainly, that *Apolidon* had scant so much leisure, as to arme himselfe: where-with *Grimanesa* was so amazed, that she was ready to die for feare: for the Giant taking her by the hand, said vnto *Apolidon*. Base slaue, although I am not accustomed to be kind vnto any, yet am I content for this once, to suffer thee to fight against me alone, on this condition, that if thou be overcome, this faire Lady shall be mine, and then afterwards I shall cause thee to be hanged vpon the pole of this tent. When *Apolidon* heard that by fighting with such a monster, he might both saue himselfe & his mistresse: his hart was so great, as he thought it a very easie matter to overcome him: and esteemed himselfe happy, that fortune had offered him so fit an occasion, as to make known vnto *Grimanesa* how much was his courage, and how great was his Knight-hood. Wherefore without longer delay the combat began betwene them, the which lasted but a while, for the Giant was pursued so valiantly, as hee fell downe back-ward. Then *Apolidon* straight stepped ouer him and cut off his head. Which the inhabitants of the Isle vnderstanding, they all came and offered themselves vnto him; beseeching him to remaine with them, and to bee

their Lord and protector. Vnto this their request he condescended: wherefore they conducted him with great triumph to the cheefe Fortresses of the Cuntry, all which he found so well fortified, and furnished; as from that time forward hee nothing feared the power of the Emperour, if he should attempt war against him for the taking away of his sister. Afterwards by the perswasion of *Grimanesa* he caused to be builded in that place, one of the fairest places that was to be found in all the Isles of the Ocean: the which he beautified so gorgeously, and furnished so rightly, that the greatest monarch of the earth would haue found it a very difficult matter to haue builded the like. But it chaunced that fiftene daies after his these arriual, the Emperour of *Constantinople* (his vnckle) died without heirs of his body; by meanes whereof, they of the Cuntry dispatched Embassadors vnto *Apolidon*, to beseech him to take vpon him the Empire, the which hee willingly accepted, being (as most men are) neuer contented with their estate, but still desirous of change, especially of a pettie Island, for an Empire. Yet *Grimanesa* sorrie to leaue so pleasant an Island, did most instantly entreat her Lord, that before their departure, (in remembrance of the pleasure which they had enioyed in this Palace, the first winnesse of the full fruition of their loues) hee would worke such a meanes by his Arr and great knowledge, that from thence forth, none might bee Lord thereof, except hee were as good a Knight as he, and as true in loue as hee was. Truly, Madame, answered *Apolidon*.

B 2

I

I will doe more for your loue then so: for not onely no man shall enter into this Pallace except he be such a one as you haue sayde, but further, no Lady, nor Gentlewoman shall set her foote therein, vnlesse she be as faire, and excellent in all perfections as your selfe. Then at the entrie of an Orchard (planted with diuerse sorts of trees) he caused a vault to bee made: ouer the which hee placed the image of a man made of copper, holding a horne, as though hee would winde it: and vpon the gate of this Pallace he set vp his owne and *Grimanesa* her picture, so artificially wrought that they seemed verie liuely: right ouer against which, he planted an high stone of Iasper, and about half a bow shoot off, towards the garden hee set a pillar of iron fise cubits high.

These things beeing in this sort framed, hee asked *Grimanesa* if she knew what hee had done. No surely, answered shee. I will tell you then presently sayde *Apolidon*: assure your selfe Madame, that no man nor woman which hath falsified their first loue, shall passe vnder this vault: for if they aduenture to enter the same, the image which you see, shall blowe such a terrible blast, & shall cast through this horne, such a flame, & stench, that it shall be impossible for them to passe on further: moreouer, they shall bee cast forth with such force, that they shall bee throwne downe and remayne in a swoound before the vault. But if it chance that any loyall louer, man, or woman, doe assay this aduenture, the image shall sound a tune so melodious, as it shall greatly delight the hearers: & there may such faithfull louers passe, without any impeachment. Furthermore, they may

beholde our portraytures, & their own names writtē in this Iasper, yet shall they not know by whom they were ingrauen. For tryall whereof if it please you, wee will proue the same forthwith. Then hee tooke *Grimanesa* by the hand, and passing vnder the arch, the Image of copper beganne to sound marueilous sweetly, but when they came to the Iasper stone, they beheld their names newly ingrauen therein, which greatly pleased *Grimanesa*. And to beholde what would be the successe of such as followed them, they called certaine Gentlemen, and Gentlewomen to make tryall of the aduenture: but as they thought to haue passed thorough the vault, the Image blew such a hideous blast, and cast forth fire, smoake and flame so horrible, that they all fell downe in a swoound, & were throwne forth most ruddy. Wherewith *Grimanesa* began to laugh, knowing that they were in more dread then danger, thanking *Apolidon* most heartily for that which hee had done for her sake. But yet my Lord, sayde she, what shall become of this rich chamber, in which you and I haue enioyed such great contentment? You shall knowe by and by, said hee. Then caused hee two other pillars to be brought: one was of Marble, which hee had placed within fise paces of the chamber: and the other of Brasse, was set fise paces before that. Afterwards he said to *Grimanesa*: Madame, henceforth there shall neither man nor woman enter into this chamber, vntill that hee who shall surpasse mee in prowesse, and knight-hood, or she which shall excell you in beauty bee first entered into the same: but when fortune shall bring hither those which shall be worthy of a place

place so excellent, all men afterwards, without any let may therein enter. Then he wrote vpon the pillar of Brasse, these words: Euery knight which shall make prooffe of this aduenture, shall passe some further then other, according as they excell each other in chiuallrie & courage. Vpon the Marble pillar thus: Let no man aduenture to passe this pillar to enter the chamber, except hee passe *Apolidon* in knight-hood. And ouer the entrie of the chamber: Hee which shall enter herein, shall exceed *Apolidon* in armes, and shall succeed him as Lord of this country.

Before any man could come nere the chamber, hee must of force touch the two pillars, & there trie his manhood. He likewise ordained that they should bee disarmed which hereafter should aduenture to passe vnder the arch of faithfull louers, if they receiued the repulse: and that all such should bee driuen forth of the Island, as false and disloyall men: but such as were faithfull, should bee entertained with all honour and seruice that might be deuised. Such as aduentured to passe the pillars to enter the forbidden chamber, if they did not passe the Brasse pillar, they should bee vsed neither better nor worse then those which were false in loue. If by chance they went beyond it, because there should bee a difference betweene them and the others, their swordes onely should bee taken from them. And if there came any better knight which attained not vnto the Marble pillar, hee should lose

but his shield: yet if hee passed on further, and entered not the chamber, his spurres onely should be taken from his heeles.

And touching the Ladies and Gentlewomen, married or vnmarried, which should proue the aduenture of constant louers, if they were repulsed, hee willed that they should be constrained to tell their names, that they might be written vp at the entrie of the vault, with the iust number of paces that each of them had entred forward in the same.

When the time is come (said *Apolidon*) that this Isle shall recouer such a Lord as is promised vnto it, these enchantments shall no more be hurtfull vnto any; and the place shall be free for all men: but yet it shall not bee so for women, vntill the fairest Lady shall first be entred into it, who shall free the passage for all others. Then did hee establish a Gouernour to receiue the reuenue of the country, vntill he should come that deserved it. And shortly after, hauing taken order for all his affaires, his ships being ready, they imbarqued, and had so faire a winde, that within fewe dayes they arrived in *Constantinople*, where they were most royally receiued.

But because my meaning at this present is onely to continue the deeds of *Amadis*, I will leaue *Apolidon* to gouerne his Empire, to declare vnto you what happened vnto the same *Amadis*, and vnto them which followed him at his departure from the City of *Sobra-disa*.

## CHAP. II.

*How Amadis, Galaor, Florestan, and Agraies, hauing taken leaue of the faire Briolania, to returne vnto King Lisuart, were carried into the Firme-Island to proue the arch of Loyall louers, and the other adventures in the same.*

**I**N the end of the first Book you haue heard how *Amadis* and *Agraies* remayned a while in the great Citie of *Sobradisa*, vntill their wounds were healed that they receiued in the battell against *Abyses* and his two sonnes: moreouer how *Galaor* & *Don Florestan* came thither afterward, & with what entertainmēt they were receiued. Now to continue our History you must know, That not all the hurts which *Amadis* had, nor any dangers which hee doubted, no nor all the kinde entertainements of *Briolania*, were once able to expell the continuall remembrance of the beautifull Princeesse *Oriana* forth of his mind: but as her rare perfections seemed continually to shine before his eyes, so did his desire to beholde her againe, dayly increase. Thus hee endured an exceeding torment which the more he thought to hide, the more it appeared: yet was the cause thereof vnknown, for euery one iudged diuersly thereof, as a passion finely dissembled, proceeding from some excellent thing, the which hee could well sustaine but better conceale. In the end not being able to supporte this long absence, which depriued him from the sight of her, that wrought this his hapie torment, hee with his friends tooke leaue of the Queene of *Sobradisa*, with an intente to returne to the Court of King *Lisuart*.

Notwithstanding they had not rode farre on their way, but fortune offered them an occasion of longer stay, as you shall heare. It happened that by chaunce comming neere vnto an Hermitage, they perceiued a Gentlewoman (accompanied with other women, & foure Esquires) comming forth of a Chnrch. Wherefore *Amadis* and his fellowes being desirous to knowe what shee was, rode before and saluted her most curteously: and shee which was the chiefe resolved them, and demanded whether they were going, Gentlewoman sayd *Amadis*, wee are going to the Court of King *Lisuart*, whether (if it please you, so that it be not out of your way) wee will beare you company. I thanke you heartily sayde the Gentlewoman, my iourney is another way. But because I thinke you be wandring knight, who commoly search for great adventures, I desire to know if any of you will go to the Firme-Island, to behold such strange and maruailous things as there are to be seene. For I am the daughter of him that is Gouvernour thereof, vnto whom I am presently going. Faire Lady, answered *Amadis*, I haue oftentimes heard of the wonders of this Island, and I should account my selfe happy if I might prooue them as I desire, but I repent that I aduentured them no sooner. By my faith sayd shee, you neede not bee so sory for your slacknesse: for there

hath

hath beene a number such as you, who haue had the like desire to aduenture themselves, yet did they not thinke their comming thither so sweete, as they found their departure thence fowre. I make no doubt thereof replied *Amadis*, because I haue heard so much: but tell mee, shall wee goe out of our way any thing farre, if we followe you? Two dayes iourney at the most, answered the Gentlewoman. I beleeuce sayd *Amadis*, that hee which will see the arch of loyall louers, must turne vpon the left hand and keep along the Sea side: vnder which arch no man that hath falsified his first loue, may passe. You say true sayd shee, and you may also there behold many other sights more strange.

Then *Agraies* enflamed with desire to see such rare things, sayd vnto his fellowes: My maisters I know not what you meane to doe, but sure I intend to accompany this Gentlewoman, if it please her, and I will prooue the wonders which shee hath tolde vs of. If you bee so loyall sayde shee, that you may passe vnder the enchanted arch, you shall finde beyond the same, both many nouelties which will greatly please you, and also you shall beholde the Images of *Apolidon* and *Grimanesa*, who built that wonderfull place: and that (which more is) you shall see your owne name written vpon a laper stone, without perceiuing by whom it is done. All the better sayde *Agraies*, I will if I can make the third that there hath entered.

When *Amadis* vnderstood the determination of his Cousen, hee was desirous to follow him, for he knew his loyalty to bee firme both in deed and thought, which by all

likelihood did promise him the maistry of the adueneure, before all others. But yet hee dissembled his intention, and sayde vnto his brethren, My friends although we are not amorous, as is my Lord *Agraies*, yet me thinkes we should for this once doe as hee doth, and keepe him companie. Let vs goe sayd *Galaor*, and I hope that all will fall out as wee desire, to our glory and our honour: heereupon they followed the Gentlewoman. Then *Florestan*, who had neuer before heard what the Firme-Island was, beeing alone with *Amadis*, sayde vnto him. My Lord, I perceiue you know all the wonders of this place, whereunto wee are going, whereof I neuer heard any speech; although I haue trauailed many farre countries. Truly answered *Amadis*, that which I know, I learned of a young Prince, my very good friend, named *Arban* of *Neruales*, who hath prooued many strange adventures, and chiefly these of the Firme-Island, which he could not archiue, but was constrained to returne with some disgrace. This Gentlewoman dwelleth in the place, of whom you may vnderstand as much as you desire to knowe. Wherefore *Don Florestan* came vnto her, and intreated her very earnestly, that seeing the lenght of their way ministered the occasion of conference together, shee would bee pleased to recite vnto him; all that which she knew of the Island. I will very willingly declare vnto you (sayde shee) that which I haue learned of such, as by their owne reports were well acquainted with the place, and the wonders thereof. Then shee rehearsed the particularities of all that which hath beene before declared: whereat the

B 4 more



more they admired, the more were they encouraged to aduerture the enterprise of those strange things, wherein so many valiant men had receiued the foyle. Thus together they rode so long, that night comming, they were in doubt to go astray, vntill the moon began to shine: and then they knew that they were in a great meddow, in which they beheld many Pauillions set vp, and people sporting all about them. Then said the Gentlewoman vnto *Amadis*, Sir, because I see my father, you may if it please you, come faire and softly, and I will goe before to aduertise him of your coming, that he may do you that honour as you deserue. So saying, shee gallopped her horse, vntill shee came vnto the tents, where she alighted. Then shee tolde her father, how these foure knights had followed her, hauing a desire to trie the aduentures of the Firme Island, which he vnderstanding, came to meete them, and receiued them very courteously: afterwards hee led them vnto one of the Pauillions, where they rested vntill their supper was ready. When they were set downe, the gouernor of the Isle discoursed vnto them the aduentures of such Knights and Ladyes, which had proued the arch of loyall louers, and the other nouelties thereof, vntill it was time to goe to rest. Whereupon they all withdrew themselves, and when day appeared, they mounting all on horse back, rode so long, that they came to a place which was in breadth no more then a bow shoote of firme ground, and all the rest was water. And they went on in this straight, vntill they came into the entrie of the Island, the which was onely five leagues in breadth,

and seuen in length. There might they see the sumptuous Pallace of *Apolidon*, whose gates were open: and as they drew neerer, they perceiued more then an hundred targets or shields, placed in three ranks, the most parte leaning against two postes, and tenne other nailed a little ouer them. But there were three which were very high above the rest, fastned vpon another post which stood forwarder then the first, yet did they likewise differ in height, for the highest was a faddom above the middlemost, and the middlemost was a cubit ouer the lowest. Then *Amadis* demanded, why they were thus ranked. Truly, answered the gouernour, according to the valour and knight-hood of those which would haue entred the forbidden chamber, their shields are honoured: and these which you see neere the ground, belonged to such Knights which could not come neere the brazen pillar; but these tenne that are higher came vnto it, & they which ought these two other shields, which you see seperated and placed about the rest, haue done more: for they haue passed the pillar, yet could they not come neere the other of marble, as the other hath done, whose shield is therefore placed about these two, which are so much esteemed. Then *Amadis* approached more neere to see if he might know any of them, for there was none of them, but had written vpon them the names of such as heretofore did owe the: and he cast his eye vpon the lowermost of the three, which hung by themselves ouer the other tenne: which had in a field *Sables* a Lyon Or, fanged and armed *Argent*, with a Cheefe *Gules*: this hee knewe to bee the Shield

shield of *Arcalaus*. Then hee beheld the two vppermost, the lower bearing in a field Azure, a knight Argent, cutting off the head of a Gyant, the which hee remembered to bee the shield of king *Abies* of *Ireland*, who proued this aduerture, two yeares before that *Amadis* did kill him in *Gaule*. The third which was about all the rest, had a fiede Azure, three Flowers, or which he could not know without reading the superscription, which sayd, This is the shield of *Don Quedragant* brother to king *Abies* of *Ireland*, the which was set ouer all the others within these twelue dayes. For *Quedragant* behaued himselfe so valiantly, that he came vnto the Marble pillar, whereunto none other had before approached. He by chance passed by the Firme Island, in seeking for *Amadis*, with an intent to fight with him, and to reuenge the death of King *Abies* his brother.

Much amazed was *Amadis* seeing the shields of so many good Knights, which had all sayled in their purposed enterprise, and hee greatly feared least hee might performe as little as they. For this cause, hee and his company withdrew themselves, to goe towards the arch of loyall louers, the which was shewed vnto them. *Agrais* suddenly alighted, and approaching neere the forbidden place, hee with an indifferent high voice thus spake, Loue if ener I haue beene constant, let mee now be remembered. This sayde, hee passed on, and entred vnder the arch. Then the copper Image began to sound so sweetely, as it greatly reioyced the hearers: and *Agrais* stayed not, but went on vntill hee came vnto the Pallace where the pictures of *Apolidon* and *Grimanesa* were,

which seemed vnto him, as if they had been aliue. And he came neere vnto the lasper pillar, wherein he beheld two lines written. The first contayned *Madanil* sonne to the Duke of *Bargoine*, hath passed vnder the arch of loyall louers, and ended that aduerture. The other was the name of *Don Bruno de bonemer*, or of the lucky Sea, sonne to *Vaillades*, Marques of *Troques*. Scant had he read the last line, but he beheld a third, which contained: This is the name of *Agrais* son to *Languines* King of *Scotland*. This *Madanil* loued *Aquinda* Countesse of *Flanders*: & *Don Bruno*, *Melicia* daughter to King *Pevion* of *Gaule*. When *Amadis* did see that his Cousen was entred without any let at all, hee sayde vnto his brethren, Will not you proue the aduerture as hee hath done? No, answered they, for we are not so much subiect vnto this passion, that wee deserue to make tryall of our loyalty. Seeing then that you bee twaine, keepe you one another company, and I will accompany Lord *Agrais* if I can. Then he boldly entered vnder the arch, and as hee passed, the copper Image founded vpon his horne another sound, far more melodious then hee yet before had done. Moreouer, in stead of fire and stinking flame, that it cast forth against the disloyall louers, flowers and sweete leaues came forth of his horne, in such abundance, that the place were all couered therewith. But for all this *Amadis* stayed not, but passed on euen hard vnto the Images of *Apolidon* and *Grimanesa*, the which seemed vnto him so well formed, as they wanted nothing but speech. When *Agrais* which was entered before, perceined him, he came to him and sayde, My Lord and

and Cosen, me thinks we should not henceforth hide our loues from one another. But *Amadis* without any answer, tooke him by the hand, and walking together, they beganne to discourse of the excellency of the place. In the meane season *Galaor* and *Florestan* displeased with staying so long for them, did intreate *Isania* (the Gouernour of the Isle) to shew them vnto the forbidden chamber: the which he did.

Whereupon *Florestan* sayde vnto *Galaor*, my Lord, are you determined to try your selfe? No, answered hee, for I neuer desired to prooue such enchantments. I pray you then sayde *Florestan*, to sport you whilest I haue tried this aduventure. Then commending himselfe to God, with his shield vpon his arme, & his sword in his hand, hee marched right towards the forbidden place. But he went not farre forward, when hee felt himselfe layd at so sore, and so often ouercharged with the stroakes of Launces and swords, as hee verily beleued that no man was able long to suffer them: notwithstanding bearing his head lowe (mauger all the resistance) he marched forward, laying about him heere and there, but knewe not vpon whom. Yet he thought that which hee did hit, were so well armed, as his sword could in no sort hurt them, and hee passed the pillar of Brasse, euen hard vnto the other of Marble, against the which hee fell downe, not being any longer able to stand vp: for hee felt himselfe so wearie, and bruised with the forcible blowes which hee had suffered, that he thought he should die. And in the same instant he was so rudely lifted forth of the place, that hee lost all his vnderstanding:

wherewith *Galaor* was so displeased, that he thought himselfe worthy of blame if he did not reuenge his wrong. And therefore hee tooke him to his armes, and ranne right vnto the forbidden chamber: yet his haste was not so great, but that hee was as suddenly resisted & smitten, and so violently layde as, as very hardly hee came vnto the Marble pillar, against the which hee leaned, thinking to take breath. Notwithstanding the stroakes which on all partes lighted vpon him, were so many and so waighy, that hee was inflamed with rage in such sort as hee went on somewhat further, hoping yet to withstand them. Then did he imagine his enemies to bee so many, that for euery one blowe hee had before, he now thought that hee received twaine, so as his strength quite failed him, and hee fell downe on the ground a great deale more weak then *Florestan* was.

All this while *Amadis* and *Agrais* beholding the pleasantesse of the place wherein they were entered, perceiued a new writing in the Iasper pillar, which contained: This is *Amadis* of *Gaule*, the constant louer, sonne to King *Perim*. At the same instant was *Galaor* throwne soorth from the pillars, wherewith the Dwarfie began to cry: Our alas, my Lord *Galaor* is dead. This voyce was heard of *Amadis* and *Agrais*, who presently came forth to see what the matter was, and they asked the Dwarfie what moued him to cry so loud. My Lord answered hee, I beleue your two brethren are dead, in prouing the aduventure of the forbidden chamber: for they haue bene so rudely repulsed, as see where they lie without moouing hand or foot.

Trust

Trust mee laide *Amadis* worse could not haue happened to thee. Then he went vnto them, and hee found them so sorely bruised, that they lay speechlesse. But *Agrais* (thinking because fortune had fauoured him vnder the arch of loyall louers, that thee would bee as fauourable vnto him against the perill of the chamber) without staying to beholde his Cosen any longer, hauing his shield vpon his arme, and his sword naked in his hand, bearing his head lowe, hee ran right to the brasen pillar, yet had hee not marched farre beyond it, when hee felt so many blowes, that hardly could hee resist them. But his heart was so great, as mauger all lets, he passed euen vnto the marble pillar, and there was hee constrained to stay, hauing no power at all to stand any longer vpon his feet, being so astonied that hee lost his remembrance, and hee was as rudely cast out as his Cosen had bene before, the which *Amadis* perceiuing, beeing much displeased, hee began to curse the houre of that their fond enterprise: and approaching vnto *Galaor*, who was now come to himselfe, he said. In troth brother I perceiue I must of force followe, though I should die therein. Ah my Lord, answered *Galaor*, it should suffice you to take warning by our example, I beseech you flie such diuellish forceries, for nothing but mischief can come from them. Come what will, laide *Amadis*, accused may I be, if I faint in the matter. Then drawing his sword, hee well couered him with his shield, and hauing first made his deuout prayers vnto God, hee cried, O my deare Lady *Oriane*, from you onely proceedeth all the strength and courage that euer I had: I beseech

you now not to forget him, who so constantly craveth your ayde and good assistance. Which sayd, hee ranne so lightly towards the chamber as in spight of all impeachments hee came without taking breath, euen vnto the first pillar, although hee felt so many strokes light vpon him, that hee did thinke hee fought with more then a thousand knights together: yet his courage so much increased with the onely remembrance of *Oriane*, that there were neuer any knight before which could come neere him. Then was there heard the voyces of an infinite number, saying: If this knight do not end this aduventure, neuer may any knight performe the same. But for all these things hee left not to pursue his fortune, for the further he went, the more increased his desire to approach the chamber: so as notwithstanding the force of the Diuels, or inuisible company which gaue him many sore and heavy strokes, hee gained the entry of the chamber, from whence he beheld a hand and an arme couered with green wofsted to come forth, which drew him in. And presently there was heard another voyce, which sayde: Welcome is the gentle knight that exceedeth him in armes, which established so many maruailles in this place, who in his time was second to none, but this surpasseth him, and therefore the signiory of this Island of right belongeth to him, hauing about all other deserued it. He which had seene this hand, would haue iudged it to haue bene the hand of a very ancient mā, it was so withered: the which vāquished away so soon as *Amadis* was entred into the chamber, where he felt himselfe so fresh, and in so good estate, as if he had

re.

received neither blow nor trauell in coming thither. Wherefore hee tooke his shield from his neck, sheathed his sword, and to *Oriana* he ascribed the glory, for the great honour which he had gotten: for hee imagined that all his strength proceeded onely from her, and no other. The most part of the Inhabitants in the Isle, with many other strangers had seene the prowesse he had showne, and how the hand brought him into the chamber: especially having heard by the words of the voyce, the souerainty of the countrey was attributed to him, for which cause they all reioyced very greatly. But none were so ioyfull as *Galeor* and his fellows, who in stead of emulation, (where with they might wrongfully haue bene suspected) they were all so glad of the good and honour of *Amadis*, as if the like had chanced particularly to every one of them: and they caused themselves to be carried to him in the chamber, where they were thoroughly and presently heated by the vertue of the place. Thither likewise came *Isma* Gouvernour of the countrey, accompanied with many of the inhabitants, who all did their duty vnto *Amadis*, as to their new Lord, vnder whom they hoped not onely to live in peace and rest, but also hereafter to stretch their Dominions euen over their bordering neighbours and further. Then every one might view the rare deuises of this palace: amongst which there was a wardrobe (whether *Apolidon* & his Lady did most commonly withdrawe themselves) so beautifull and sumptuous, as it was not onely impossible to make the like, but also it was thought very strange and wonderfull, how any man might imagine that hee could

build so rare a peece of worke, seeing that they which were within might see what any man did without very easily, but they which were without could not perceiue any thing that was within the same. Thus was the firme Island conquered by *Amadis*, which had bene a thousand yeeres and more without a Lord, since *Apolidon* had there set vp his enchantments: and the next day the people came from all parts of the Island to offer their dutie and homage vnto their new Lord, who receiued them curiously. I leaue you then to imagine whether *Amadis* had occasion to be glad and content or no. They which haue oftentimes bin crossed with aduersitie may better iudge therof then any others can: for they know how to beare, and when to bewaile their misfortunes, more orderly then such who are accustomed with all prosperity & happiness. Neuerthelesse I know not whether of these two extremes are more comendable: for the one commonly draweth vnto it intolerable vaine glory, and the most damnable: the others continual care fraught with desperation, very dangerous. Therefore every wise man (considering there is nothing parmanent) will neither be proud with the prosperity that ouereth him, nor appaled for any aduersitie that befalleth him: but he will swim vp rightly as in a calm Sea betweene them both, without abusing the one, or affrighted with the other. The which *Amadis* could not doe, when inconstant fortune made him taste these passions, which for him shee prepared euen in the midst (as hee thought) of all his prosperities. And as shee beyond all measure favoured him, (holding him vp by the chinne)

in all chances that happened to him, without crossing him in any thing whatsoever: in like sort did shee turne her face from him, and brought him into such perplexity and sorrow, that neither force of armes, the continuall remembrance of his Lady, nor the magnanimitie of his heart were once sufficient to procure him remedy: but onely the grace, and mery of our Lord God (who in pittie regarded him) after hee had sometime remained in the rocke of aduersitie in sorrow and tribulation, as you may vnderstand: from the which hee delivered him, and placed him in greater ease, and contentment then before, as by the sequel of this historie you shall perceiue.

You haue heard in the first booke of *Amadis*, in what anguish the Princeesse *Oriana* was, for the false report of *Arda* the Dwarfie, at such time as hee returned backe from his maister, to fetch the pieces of the sword, which *Gandalin* had forgotten behinde him at his departure from the Court: and how she fostered vp in her minde the hate, which she had conceiued against *Amadis*, not being able to accept any counsell either from *Mabila* or the Damofell of *Denmarke*, wrongfully suspected him of falshood, who thought on nothing but only how he might serue and honour her with all faithfulness. Now it reflecteth to shew vnto you what happened thereof. Know you then that from the day, wherein this ielousie was first imprinted in her, it increased in such sort, as it wholly made her forget her accustomed manner of life, thinking thence forth on nothing so much, as how she might sufficiently reuenge her on *Amadis*, who

had (as she thought) so grievously offended her. And hereupon seeing hee was absent, and that shee could not declare vnto him by word of mouth, the anguish of her soule, shee determined to let him vnderstand it by writing. So as one day amongst others, being alone in her chamber, shee tooke pen in hand and writ this letter which ensueth.

The letter of the Princeesse *Oriana* to *Amadis*.

*My intolerable passions proceeding from so many causes, compelles my weake hand to declare by this letter, that, which my sorrowfull heart can no longer hide from thee Amadis of Gaule, most displeased, and perjured lover. For seeing the disloyaltie and inconstancie wherewith thou hast abused mee (who am unfortunate, and frustrate of all good hap, onely in loving thee above all things in the world) which is now very apparent, cheefely in that sorrowfully thou forsookest vs to go with her, who (considering her young yeeres and indiscretion) cannot haue that kinde-nesse in her either to fauour or entertaine thee: I haue also determined for euer, to banish from mee, this exceeding love which I did bare vnto thee, seeing my sorrowfull heart can finde no other reuenge. And although I would take in good part the wrong which thou proferest me, yet should it bee a great folly for mee to desire the welfare of such an vnthankfull man, for the faithfull loving of whom, I hate both my selfe & all other things. Alas I now perceiue very well (but it is too late) that most unluckely I hathraied my liberty, to a person so ingratefull, seeing that in recompence of my continuall sighs and passions, I finde my selfe deceiued, and shamefully*

ly abused. wherefore I charge thee neuer to come in my presence, nor vnto any place where I doe remaine: & be thou assured that I neuer loued thee so exceedingly, but now by thy ill deserts I hate thee farre more extremely. Packe thee henceforth else where, and try if thou canst with thy falsified faith and hony speech, abuse others as unhappy as my selfe: and neuer hope that hereafter any of thy excuses shall preuaile with mee: but without further desire to behold thee, I will bewaile the rest of my sorrowfull life, with abundance of teares, the which shall neuer cease but by the end of

Her who forceth not to die,  
but onely because thou art  
her murderer.

## CHAP. III.

*How Durin departed to goe toward Amadis, vnto whom hee deliuered the Letters from Oriana, and what hurt happened thereby.*



Hen Durin had at large vnderstood the will of the Princeesse, he mounted on horse backe, and hastened him so well that the tenth day following, hee arriued in the great City of *Sobradisa*, where hee found the new Queene *Briolania*, whom hee thought to be the fairest Lady that euer he had scene, except the Princeesse *Oriana*. Then did he tell her how he was come to seek *Amadis*, but shee tolde him, that now two whole dayes were passed since hee and his fellowes were departed towards Great *Brittaine*, since which time, she heard that they had taken their way vnto the *Firme-Island*. Whereupon *Durin* without any longer stay, tooke leaue of her, and rode so long, that he arriued in the Island the same houre that *Amadis*

This Letter being sealed, *Oriana* called a young Esquire brother to the Damosell of *Denmarke*, in whom shee greatly trusted, and commanded him very expressely, without staying one onely houre, that hee should goe finde out *Amadis* in the Realme of *Sobradisa*, and then presently deliver this Letter which shee had written to him: but chiefly that hee should marke his countenance whilst he read the same, and that he should bring backe no answer, though *Amadis* would giue it him.

entred vnder the arch of Loyall louers, where hee beheld how the Image had done more for him, then for any other knight that euer entered the same before, as it was tolde him. Now as *Amadis* together with *Agrates* returned to the succour of his brethren, *Durin* thought to haue spoken with him, but *Gandalin* entreated him to stay vntill he had tred the perill of the forbidden chamber, beeing assured that he brought Letters to him fro *Oriana*, the which perchance might haue been a meane (as he thought) to cause him either to forswore or to faile in the achieving of so great an enterprize: for *Amadis* was so subiect to the Princeesse, as hee would not only haue left off the conquest of the *Firme-Island*, but also of the whole world beside, if she had commanded. Wherefore after hee had finished

finished all the strange aduentures, and the inhabitants of the Isle had receiued him for their Lord, *Durin* came before him. Then *Amadis* demanded of him, what newes was in the Court of King *Lisuart*. My Lord, answered *Durin*, I left it euen in the same estate that it was in at your departure. And as he would haue proceeded in his speech, *Amadis* tooke him by the hand, and went with him alone into a very pleasant Orchard, where they walked together: then he demanded how he came to the *Firme-Island*. My Lord, said he, my Lady *Oriana* sent me vnto you, for such affaires as in this letter you shal vnderstand, the which he gaue vnto him. *Amadis* tooke it, and without changing his cheere, he turned his face from *Durin*, because hee should not behold his colour alter, for his heart began to leap with great ioy, so as he knew not wel how to set his countenance. But this sudden mutation was as soone changed into a great despaire, because, that reading these rigorous lines, which pronounced his banishment, it stroke so great sorrow to his heart, as hee was no longer able to dissemble his griefe, but burst out into such vehement weeping, that hee was all drowned in teares. Then *Durin* repented that euer hee was the bringer of such heauie letters, for although the contents thereof were vknown vnto him, yet because he knew not how to remedy it, hee durst not come neere *Amadis*, who was so confounded, as hee fell prostrate on the ground, and in falling, the letters which hee helde, did fall forth of his hand. Norwithstanding, he presently tooke them vp, and began to reade them againe: for the beginning had so greatly troubled him, that he had not yet

seene the end. But casting his eye vpon the superscription, which contained these words. *She who forceth not to die, but onely because thou art her murderer.* Hee then fetched so deepe a sigh, as if his soule had parted from his body, and therewithall fell downe back-ward. Where-with *Durin* was greatly amazed, & ran speedily to helpe him, but hee found him to moue no more then a dead man. Wherefore fearing some greate inconuenience, hee thought to haue called *Galeor*, or some other, yet fearing that thereby he might be blamed, he staed, & comming vnto *Amadis*, lifted him vp, who cryed. Oh heauens, why do you thus suffer mee to die, and haue not deserued it? Alas Loyaltie, what recompence doost thou offer those that neuer offended thee, now I see my selfe forsaken of her, for whose sake I would rather suffer a thousand deaths, then one of her commandements by mee should be disobeyed. Then pitifully looking vpon the letter, which he had in his hand, he sayde: Ah happy letter, because thou wert written by the excellentest personage this day liuing, and yet most unhappy, in that thou procurest the cruell death of the truest louer that euer serued Lady, which death that it may bee the sooner, I will neuer forsake thee, but will place thee in the neerest & dearest place that I haue. So hee put it in his bosome, and asked *Durin* if hee had ought else to say? No, answered he. Well then, saide *Amadis*, thou shalt presently retorne with my answer. In good sooth my Lord, answered *Durin*, shee hath expressely forbidden me to receiue any. And what, did not *Atabla* nor thy sister wil thee to say any thing to me? No my Lord, answered he, for they

knew not of my departure, because my Lady stricly charged mee to acquaint no body therewith. Ah God, sayd *Amadis*, I see well now, that my misery is voyd of remedy. Then he rose vp and went to a riuer which passed along by the garden, where hee washed his eyes, which done, he willed *Durin* to call *Gandalin*, and that hee should come back againe with him alone, which hee did: but at their returne they found him in a swoound againe, yet recovering incontinent, and seeing *Gandalin*, he said. Friend I am vndone, therefore go seeke out *Isania* the Gouvernour of this Isle & bring him hither alone. Then *Gandalin* ran for him and staid not long vntill they returned together: who being come, *Amadis* said vnto him, *Isania* you know the oath you haue sworne vnto me, & the duty wherein you are vnto mee bound, notwithstanding, I pray you yet to promise me as you are true knight, to keep secret whatsoeuer you shal see me doe, vntill to morrow morning after my brethren haue heard diuine seruice, and then secretly goe thou and cause the gate of this Castle to be opened, which being done, let *Gandalin* bring thither my horse & armour, but take heed that none perceiue it, and I will follow straight after thee: they were no sooner departed from him, but he began to remeember a dream which he had the night before, wherein he thought that being armed, and set vpon his horse hee was on the highest part of a peece of land enuironed with diuerse sorts of trees, and that round about him were many persons making the greatest ioy in the world, then one of them presented him with a box, saying. Sir taste of that which is herein: which he did, and hee thought hee

did eate of a most bitter meat. And as hee cast it from him, the raines of his horse did breake, whereupon the horse ran vp and downe so that he was not in any fort able for to stay him. VVhen he saw he was so farre from this merry company, he looked backe, and hee thought that hee beheld their great mirth changed into such exceeding mone, as it greatly pittied him, & willingly would he haue returned backe to asswage their sorrow, if hee could haue mastered his horse, who at that instant entred into a tuft of trees, where hee found a rocke enuironed with water, against the which the horse stayed. Then hee alighted for the great desire he had to rest him, and vnarmed himselfe: herewithall he beheld a very aged man clothed with a religious habit, who tooke him by the hand as if he had pittied his trauaile, & spake to him certain words in a strange language which he did not vnderstand: & being in this trouble he awaked. Vpon this dreame *Amadis* mused a great while, thinking that oftentimes they foreshow some thing that followeth, because he did see part of that which hee had dreamed to fall out. Thus hee came to the gate where *Gandalin* and *Isania* stayed his with furniture, & there armed himselfe: afterwards he mounted vpon his horse, keeping neither way nor path vntill he came neere vnto an Hermitage, then he demanded of *Isania* what place that was: My Lord answered hee, this Chappell is dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, wherein oftentimes are diuerse strange miracles wrought. For which cause *Amadis* alighted from his horse, entred into the Church, and kneeling downe with great deuotion, hee made his prayers to God.

God. The which being ended, hee rose vp, & called *Gandalin* to him, whom he held a long time embraced in his armes, not being able to speake one word, yet in the end he thus said vnto him. My deere *Gandalin*, thou and I haue beene fostered vp with one milke, and alwaies brought vp together, and I neuer felt any paine or sorrow, wherein thou hast not had thy part: Thy father tok me vp in the sea, whē I was yet but a small thing, beeing but newly borne the very night before, afterward he caused thy mother to cherish mee as tenderly as if I had their dearest childe. Now haue I oftentimes tried thy loyalty, knowing very wel what seruice thou hast done for me, the which I did hope in time with the fauour of God to haue recompensed, but this great misfortune is fallen vpon me, the which I feele more sharpe and cruel then death it selfe, especially seeing I am constrained to forsake thee, hauing no other thing to bestow vpon thee, but the Isle which I haue newly conquered, which I do giue thee, commanding *Isania*, with my other subiects (vpon that faith and homage which they haue sworne vnto me) to receiue thee as their Lord, so soone as they shall be assured of my death. Yet is it my wil that thy father and mother shal enioy the same, during their liues, and afterwards it shall remaine vnto thee: which is in recompence of the good I haue receiued of thee, whom I thought to haue better rewarded, according to their deserts and my desire. And as for you, Lord *Isania*, I pray you that of the fruits and reuenues of this Isle, which of long time you haue had in your keeping, you should build here in this place a Monestarie, in the honor of the virgin *Mary*, and

to endow it with so much liuing, as thirtie religious men may henceforth liue vpon the same. Ah my Lord, said *Gandalin*, I neuer forooke you for any trauaile or perill which hitherto you haue suffered, neither yet will I leaue you if God be pleased: and if you dye, I will not liue after you, neither for all the world will I lose you. Therefore you may (if it please you) bestowe this gift vpon my Lords your brethren, seeing I will not haue it, neither do I desire it in any sort. Holde thy peace, said *Amadis*, let me heare these words no more, vnlesse thou desirest to displease me: but do as I would haue thee: for my bretheren may provide far greater liuings for thee and their friends, then this small thing which I doe giue vnto thee. But touching you, my deere friend *Isania*, it very greatly grieueth me that I haue not the means to gratulate you according to your deserts: notwithstanding, I leaue you amongst so many of my good friends, as they shall supply that which I cannot. I pray you my Lord, answered hee, suffer mee onely to accompany you, that I may be partaker of any wealth or woe that shall happen to you: Wherein you shall fully shew mee your loue, and I rest satisfied to my liking. My deere friend, saide *Amadis*, I doubt not but that you would follow with a good will, notwithstanding my miserie is so excessiue, as besides my maker, none can ease it: whome onely I humbly beseech to be my conductor, for I will haue no other companion. And therefore *Gandalin* if thou desirest Knighthood, holde take it presently with my armour, which I doe giue thee, for since thou hast heere-



tofore so well kept them, it is reason they should now serue thee, considering how little I shall hereafter need them: if not, thou maiest receiue this honour of my brother *Galeor*, vnto whom my Lord *Isania* here, shall in my behalfe make request to the same ende: and I entreate thee to serue him, euen as faithfully as thou hast serued mee. For my loue vnto him is so great, as amongst all my most afflictions I shall bewaile his absence, because I haue euer more found him an humble obedient & a louing brother. You shall further request him, to take into his seruice *Ardan* my Dwarfie whom I recommend vnto him, & to the Dwarfie say, that I will him to serue my brother dilligently. This sayd, both hee and those to whom he spake burst forth into a boundance of teares, & comming vnto them he embraced them, saying: Now my friends, seeing I neuer hope to see you any more, I entreate you to pray to God for mee, and vpon your liues, I charge you that none of you doe follow mee. Then hee got vpon his horse, set

spurres to his sides, and galloped from them, remembering not at his departure to take either Launce, shield, or helmet with him. Thus he entred into a desert place at the foot of a mountaine, taking no other way but whither his horse would carry him, and so long hee rode vntill the most parte of the night was now spent, when the horse entred into a little brooke enuironed with many trees, where he would haue drunken. But as hee passed on further, *Amadis* was stricken on the face with certaine branches of trees, so rudely as it wakened him out of his study, and therewithall looking vp, hee perceived that hee was in a couert and solitary place, beset with store of thick bushes, which greatly reioyced him, because hee thought hee should very hardly bee found out in this thicket. There he alighted, tyed his horse, and sate him downe vpon the grasse, the better to meditate vpon his melancholy: but hee had wept so long, and his braines were so light, that at the last hee fell asleepe.

## CHAP. IIII.

*How Gandalin and Durin followed the same way that Amadis had taken, brought the rest of his armour which he had left behinde, then found him sleeping, & how he fought against a Knight whom he did overcome.*



*Amadis* being departed, *Gandalin* who remained in the Hermitage with *Isania* & *Durin*, as you haue heard, began to make the greatest lamentation in the world, and said. Although he hath forbidden mee to follow him, yet will I not stay for any thing behinde him, at least I will carry him his armour. I will

gladly beare you companie for this night, sayd *Durin*. I would to God we might finde him in better case then hee was at his departure. Then they tooke their leaue of *Isania*, and getting to horse-backe, they followed the same way that *Amadis* had tooke, coasting heere and there about the wood, so long till fortune brought them where hee lay. When his horse feared their

their horses, hee began to neigh, whereby *Gandalin* knew his Master was not farre off, wherefore the more secretly to behold his countenance, hee allighted, comming so neere vnto him as he might easily behold where he slept hard by the riuer side: whereupon he stood close, watching when he should awake, & he had not staied long before his slumber left him. Then he suddenly started vp as if hee had been frighted. At that instant was the Moon withdrawne by the daies approach, yet sate hee still on the grasse, beginning his moane in a most strange and pittifull manner, and bitterly weeping, he burst out into these words. Alas fortune too inconstant & fickle, why hast thou first aduanced mee, and afterwards ouerthrowne me. Now I well perceive, thou canst doe more hurt in one houre, then thou wilt do good in a thousand yeares, for if heretofore thou hast giuen me any pleasure or ioy, thou hast now in a moment cruelly robbed me of all, leauing me in bitter tormētts far worse then death: and seeing thou wast minded so to serue mee, why hast thou not at the least made the one equal with the other? because thou knowest that if heerebefore thou didst bestow vpon me any contentment, yet was it euer more mingled with great sorrowe. In like sort shouldst thou reserue for me some sparke of hope, with this cruelty wherewith thou now tormentest me, executing vpon me an incomprehensible thing, in the thought of those whom thou fauourest: who because they feelee not this mischiefe, doe thinke those riches, glories, and honours which vnto them thou lendest, to bee euermore lasting. But they forget, that besides the troublefom trauels which their

bodies doe suffer for the keeping thereof, how their soules are in danger to perish therefore. For by thy flatteries & wanton intisements, thou vterly ouerthrowest them, & in the end compellest them to enter into the labyrinth of all desolation, from whence they are neuer able to depart. And quite contrary are thy aduersities, for so much as if a man doe resist thee patiently, flying greedy couetousnes, & disordinate ambition, he is lifted out of this vilde place into perpetuall glory. Notwithstanding I being most vnfortunate, could not chuse this good, seeing that if all the world were mine, and should bee taken from me by thee, yet hauing only the good grace of my Mistris, it should be sufficient to make me as mighty as the greatest monark, the which I also lacking, how is it possible for me in any sort to liue? Therefore in fauour and recompence of my loyalty, I beseech thee not to giue mee a languishing death: but if thou art appointed to ende my dayes, doe it without delay, taking compassion of him, whose longer life thou art ignorant how irksome it is. This sayd, hee fell downe backward vpon the grasse, and was as silent as if he had beene in a swoond. Then within a while after hee cryed, Ah louely *Oriana*, you haue wounded me deadly, in banishing me discourteously, for I will neuer transgresse your comandements, what danger soeuer may happen mee, seeing that if therein I failed, my life also were thereby finished: notwithstanding for as much as I wrongfully receiue my death, the more extream is my dolor. But seeing that with my end you shall rest satisfied, I neuer esteemed my life at so high a price, but I wold, if it were

possible, change it into a thousand deaths, to afford you neuer so little pleasure. In like sort since it liketh you to execute your anger against me, I am very well content, if for my affliction you may henceforth liue at your ease, for whether soeuer my Soule flyeth, it shall receiue most quiet when it shal know that you remaine contented. And vntill mine innocencie shall bee known vnto you, I will endeauor to finish the rest of my sorrowfull daies in all bitternesse and displeasure, and being dead, my spirit shal lament the griefe which wil happen vnto you for the wrong which you haue done to me, specially wanting power to succour you. O King *Perion* my Lord and father, how little occasion shall you haue to bewaile my death, when you shall neither know the same nor the cause thereof? But because that knowing the same, it would bee to you a griefe intollerable, and yet it could be no mitigation of my torment, I pray, that my misfortune may to you neuer be manifest, least the same should abridge the remainder of your dayes, which yet are not determined. Then after a small pause he cryed, O my second father *Galuanes*, truly I do greatly grieue that my aduerser Fortune doth not permit me to discharge that great bond in which to you I am bound, for if my father gaue me life, you preferred the same, in deliuering me from the danger of the Sea, being launched forth into his mercilesse waues, euen when I had but newly left my mothers womb, and afterwarde I was by you as carefully cherished, as if I had beene your dearest childe. I am assured good King *Arban* that you will greatly bewaile my sorrowfull end, yet valiant *Angriotta d'Esbra-*

*noux, Guillan*, and a number of my other friends, shall assist you to be-mone his death, who euer loued and held you deere. Ah good cousin *Mabila*, what haue I deserued of you, or of the Damosel of *Denmark*, that by you I am abandoned when I haue most neede of your ayde? Haue you so many times preferred my life, & doe you now (without desert) make me pay tribute for my receiued pleasure, in consenting to my miserable death? Beleeue mee, if need were, deare friends, for your sakes would I bee sacrificed: and yet you make no conscience to forsake mee, which maketh mee verily to beleeue, that you haue denied mee your comfort, heauen and earth haue desired my confusion, which shall the lesse grieue me in that I see no remedy. *Gandalin* and *Durin* hearing these lamentations of *Amadis*, they were so much agrieved therewith, that they wept as bitterly as hee, yet durst they not shew themselves, because hee had so straitly charged them not to follow him. But *Amadis* ceased not his mone vntill hee heard a knight who passed hard by him singing this song:

*Out, sacred Loue, most bounden I remaine  
To thee, for thy exceeding bounteous grace:  
On earth what Gentleman may vaunt like mine?  
Beloued thou makest me in euery place.  
Happy such hap, when loue doth so respect me,  
Ne're seru'd I Lady, but shee did affect me.*

*To witnesse this, a Princesse word I haue,  
Sweet Saramira, shee I know will vow it:  
Whom I in heart a supream honour gaue,  
And for the date, her beauty did allow it.  
My hap was good, good hap enclind to gayning,  
Till past the full, turn'd loues decrease a wanning.*

*For now a Goddesse guides my backe retire,  
Faile Oriana, Prize of louers warre:  
The peerlesse daughter of a kingdome fire,  
Whom Venus yeeldeth for her brighter barre.  
My lucke is great her praises to recount,  
But to enjoy her loue, my iays surmount.*

Having

Having ended his song hee alighted vnder a tufted tree planted by the high way side, thinking there to passe the rest of the night: but worse happened to him then he hoped, for *Gandalin* which had heard what hee sayde of *Oriana*, (doubting that *Amadis* had not marked it, because his minde was otherwise occupied) sayde vnto *Durin*, It were best for mee to goe to my Master to know what hee intendeth to doe. Then came hee forth of the bush where he was hidden, & beheld *Amadis* that fought for his horse to depart fro thence, who as he looked here & there he espied *Gandalin*: VVhen not knowing him at the first, he cryed. Who art thou that comest to surprise me? speake and hide thy selfe no longer. My Lord, answered he, I am *Gandalin*, who will helpe you to finde your horse, if so it please you. When *Amadis* heard this, Ah said hee, how durst you presume to follow me, hauing so expressly forbid you? beleeue mee thou hast greatly displeased mee, let mee see thee no more but depart, or else be sure thou shalt die. My Lord, answered *Gandalin*, mee thinkes you should forget this manner of behauiour, and bethinke you how to reuenge the foolish speeches which euen now were vttered by a knight, who is not yet far from you, for they are greatly to your disaduantage. This sayde *Gandalin* to pacifie his displeasure towards him, that hee might bee the more incensed against the other. I did heare him as well as you (sayd he) and therefore am I content to seeke rest elsewhere, and to depart from hence where all misfortune doth follow me. What sayd *Gandalin*, is this all that you are determined to doe? What wouldst thou more? said he.

That you fight with him answered *Gandalin*, to make him confesse his presumption. I beleeue sayd hee thou wouldst say otherwise, seeing thou knowest very well that I neither haue spirit, heart, nor any force, hauing lost all in losing her who gaue me life, so as now I am no better then a dead man, neither is there in Great *Brittaine* any knight so cowardly, that could not easily ouercome mee if I should combare with him, so haplesse and hoplesse am I. Trust me answered *Gandalin*, you are in a great error thus to suffer your heart to faint & to let your courage faile, euen whe it should most serue you to aduance the honour of her, who so neerely toucheth you. What report will *Durin* make hereof thinke you, who hath heard and scene all, and is greatly abashed, that now you behaue your selfe no better. How (sayd *Amadis*) is *Durin* here? I truly sayd *Gandalin*, wee came both together: and I beleeue hee followeth you thus, to declare your manner of behauiour vnto her that sent him vnto you. Get thee gone sayd *Amadis*, thou vrgest mee too much. Yet when hee thought that *Durin* should returne to *Oriana*, his heart was so inflamed, that hee called for his armes, and mounting on his horse he went toward the knight, whom hee found layd vnder the tree, holding his horse by the bridle. Then *Amadis*, in a great rage sayde vnto him, Sir knight who so greatly extollest thy fortune in loue, I beleeue that against all right thou hast receiued that good that loue hath done for thee (if good it may be rearm'd) and that thou neuer deseruedst it, the which I wil proue with the losse of thy head. What art thou answered the other, my spea-

speakest so audaciouly? dost thou think that I am fauoured of the fairest Lady in the worlde for any other cause but onely for my valour and high knighthood? wherewith I will make thee presently confesse that loue hath reason to fauour me, and that it is not for thee to speake thereof. It is but thy opinion sayde *Amadis*: but thou must knowe that in despite of thee, I am hee who hath least occasion to praise loue, because hee hath so vildely deceiued me, that I wil neuer dayes in my life put any trust in him, knowing how falsely and treacherously he commonly vseth those that most faithfully do serue him. And because I haue sufficiently prooued it, I will maintaine that he can neuer be so faithfull, as I haue found him false. That it is so, let vs see whether hee hath gained more in thee then he hath lost in me. Then the knight mounted on his horse, and beeing ready to fight, he answered, Vnhappy knight deprived of all good, and banisht iustly from loue, beeing vnworthy of his fauor, get thee from my presence, for I should commit a most horrible fact, to lay my hands vpon such a vild & miserable fellow. So saying, he turned his horse to haue fled away, if *Amadis* had not staied him in calling him. Villaine, wilt thou then defend thy loue which so highly thou priskest onely with thy countenance, and so get thee gone because thou wouldest fly the combat. Trust me answered the other thou art in a right opinion, for it is true that I haue no desire to proue my selfe against a person of so small desert, but seeing thou wouldest that I should breake thy head, I am content, and if thy heart will serue, defend it if thou canst. Herewithall they ran one a-

gainst the other with such force, as their Lances flew to shiuers, pearcing their shields quite thorough, neuerthelesse their armour being good & strong staied the stroke, yet the knight fell to the ground carrying the raines of his horse with him, wherefore he rose again lightly. The which *Amadis* beholding, he said vnto him, Truely knight if the right which you pretend in so faire a friend bee not better maintained with your sword then it hath beene with your staffe, Loue hath made but a bad choyce of you for a valiant champion, & your Lady a far worse match in lighting vpon such a carpet knight. He made no account at all of these reproaches, but boldly drew out his sword, and comming neere to *Amadis* laid at him so lustily, that hee had beene wounded if with his shield hee had not well warded himselfe, wherein his sword was so farre entred, that he could not pul it forth again, but was forced to let go his holde, leauing it sticking fast in the shield of *Amadis*. Who lifted himselfe vp in his stirrups hitting him so sound a blow vpon his head-peece, that it pearced euen vnto the quick: & the blow gliding downe, it lighted vpon his horse neck, wounded him to the death, falling downe in the place and his master vnder him all astonied. But *Amadis* seeing him arise said vnto him, Gentle louer, I am of the minde that *Capid* henceforth should erect a trophie for the high prowesse which you haue shewed in his seruice: & that as long as you liue you should not cease to sing his praises, & declare those benefits which vpon you hee hath bestowed: As for mee I will goe seeke my fortune else where. So he set spurres to his horse, & as he departed, he beheld *Gandalin* & *Durin*,

*Durin*, when coming neere them, he tooke *Durin* by the hand, and sayd vnto him: Friend *Durin*, I see my misfortune so strange, and my sorrow so intollerable, as of force I must die, which God grant it may be without delay: for death onely will giue rest and ease to this torture which vexeth mee. Salute from me the Princeesse *Mabila*, and thy good sister, the Damosell of *Denmarke*, vnto whom thou mayst declare my cruel death, which I suffer with as great w<sup>o</sup>g as euer any knight suffered. Before the which, I would to God I had the meanes to doe them any seruice, in recompence of the duty I doe owe them for all the good they haue done, and the fauours they haue purchased for mee. Then hee beganne his

moane, weeping so bitterly as *Durin* therewith had his heart so stopped with woe, that hee was not able to answer one word: Wherefore *Amadis* embraced him and committed him to God. At that instant began the day to appeare, when *Amadis* perceiuing that *Gandalin* followed him, hee sayd vnto him: if thou determinest to come with me, take heede vpon thy life that thou turne me not from any thing which I shall say or doe, otherwise I pray thee forthwith to turne another way that I may see thee no more. Belceue me Sir, sayd *Gandalin*, I wil do whatsoeuer shal please you. Then *Amadis* deliuered him his armor to bear, commanding him to pul the sword forth of his shield & to cary it to the amorous knight.

## CHAP. V.

who was the Knight vanquished by Amadis, and what happened vnto him, before he fought with him.



Seeing that it falleth out so fir, I will declare vnto you (before I passe any further) the estate of the amorous Knight, of whom wee spake euen now. You must knowe that hee was called *Patin*, brother to *Don Siden* the Emperor of *Rome*, and hee was the best knight that was to be found in all *Romania*. By meanes whercof he was feared and famous through all the Empire, chiefly because hee was to succeed in his brothers dignitie, for there was none more neere the same then hee, and the Emperour was already so olde, that hee neuer hoped to haue any heire. Now this *Patin* was one day talking with the Queene of *Sardinia*, named *Sarda-*

*mira*, one of the fairest Ladies in the world, whom hee loued extremely. And as hee gaue her to vnderstand what seruency and torment hee endured in ouer-louing her, she answered him: My Lord, I assuredly belecue that which you tell mee, and the better to witnesse the same, I let you know that there is no prince liuing for who I would do more then for you, nor whom I would more willingly take for husband: because I know your good parts, and the high knight-hood wherewithall you are so famous. These speeches bred so great presumption in the heart of *Patin*, as besides that hee was by nature one of the proudest Gentlemen in the world, hee entred into such glory, that he answered her: Madame, I have

hane heard that King *Lisuart* hath a daughter esteemed the fairest Princeesse in the worlde, but for the loue of you I will goe into Great Brittain, there to mainteine against all men, that her beauty is not cōparable to yours: the which I alone will prooue in combate against two of the best knights that dare say the contrary: whom if I cannot ouercome, I will that King *Lisuart* doe cause my head to bee cut off. In good faith my Lord, answered the Queene, I am of a contrary opinion: for if the Princeesse haue any beauty in her, it nothing impaireth that which God hath bestowed vpon mee, if any beauty there bee: and me thinks that you haue other means more fit to make known your prowesse in all places. Hap what may hap answered hee, I will doe it for your loue, to the end that euery one may knowe that as you are the fairest Lady in the world, so you are beloued of the valiantest Knight aliue. Hereupon continuing in this minde, within a while after hee tooke leaue of the Queene, and passed into Great Brittain accompanied onely with two Esquires. Then hee enquired where he might find King *Lisuart*, vnto whose Court he shortly after came: and because hee was more richly armed then wandering knights were accustomed to bee, the King thought him to be some great personage: For this cause hee receiued him most honourably, appointing him into a chamber to shift himselfe. When he was vnarmed hee returned to the King who stayed for him, marching with such grauity, as those that beheld (seeing his comely stature) iudged him to bee of great courage. But the King tooke him by the hand, and conferring together hee sayde

vnto him, gentle friend, I pray you thinke it not strange, if I desire to know who you are, because I may the more honor you in my Court. It may please your Maiesty, answered *Patin*, I am not come into this countrey, to hide mee, but rather to make my selfe knowne as well vnto your Highnesse as vnto all others: I am that *Patin* brother to the Emperour which humbly beseecheth you to enquire no further of my affaires, vntill I haue seen my Lady *Oriana* your daughter. When the King heard that, he embraced him, and in excusing his ignorance he sayd to him. My good Cousen, I am maruailous glad of the honour that you haue done me, In cōming thus to visit me in my owne countrey, assuring you that since you are desirous to see my daughter, she shall not onely be shewed vnto you, but likewise the Queene, and all her trayne. And so long they continued their talke, vntill they had couered for supper. Then the King caused him to sit next vnto him, where hee found himselfe compassed with so great a number of knights, as hee much marualled thereat: and began to despise the Court of the Emperour his brother, as also of all other Princes in respect of this which hee saw. After the tables were taken vp, it being time to goe to rest, the King cōmanded *Don Grumedan* to bring *Patin* to his lodging and to shew him all the honor and good entertainment hee could. So for that night they departed, vntill the next morning that hee came and found the King hearing diuine seruice, after the which hee was conducted to the Ladies, who receiued him curteously: for at his comming the Queen took him by the hand, praying him to sit betweene her, & her daughter.

daughter *Oriana*, whom at that instant he beheld with such an eye, as the loue which before he did beare vnto the Queene *Sardamira*, was wholly changed vnto her, becoming captiuated with her excellent beauty and goodly grace. You may iudge then how he would haue esteemed her if he had seene her in the time of her perfect health, which was now much decayed by reason of this new ielousie which she had conceived against *Amadis* which made her looke leane, pale, and wan: but these defaults could nothing quench the heate of the fire already kindled in the heart of *Patin*, who was so far beside himselfe, that hee determined to beseech the king to bestow her vpon him in marriage: making account that it would be easily granted, considering his birth and high estate. Hereupon he tooke leaue of the Ladies, and returned towards the King, who was ready to sit downe to dinner, the which being ended hee went aside towards a window, and calling *Patin* vnto him, they talked long together. Afterwards falling from one matter to another, *Patin* said vnto him. It may please your maiesty, yesterday I promised to tel you (so soone as I had seene my Lady *Oriana* your daughter) what moued me to come from Rome into Great Brittain, I beseech you not to bee offended if I haue taken so far a iourney, to come in person to require her of you in marriage. I haue chosen her as well to haue your alliance as also for the beauty and good grace which remaineth in her. I am sure you are not ignorant (considering the place from whence I am descended, & the great meanes which cannot faile me, as one day to be Emperour of Rome) that if I

would else where set my liking, there is no Prince this day liuing, which would not be very glad to receiue mee for his sonne in law. Good cousin, answered the king, I thanke you for the kindnesse and honour you do offer me, but the Queene hath alwaies promised *Oriana* that she shall neuer be married against her will, wherefore before wee grant you any thing, we must know of her how she will bee content therewith: this the King sayd because he would not discontent *Patin*; for he was not minded to bestowe his daughter vpon any Prince or Lord that should carry her forth of the land. *Patin* was satisfied with these wordes, and expecting some other answer of the King, hee stayed fife dayes at the Court, yet the king neuer spake to *Oriana* thereof, although he assured him that hee had done as much as he could, to cause her consent thereto, but he could in no sort preuaile with her. Therefore win her your selfe if you can, said he, and pray her to doe that which I shall command her. Then *Patin* came vnto her and said. Madame I am to desire a request of you, that shall be both honorable and profitable for you, the which I pray you not to deny me. My Lord (answered the princeesse) there is no reason to refuse the grant, being such a reasonable request as you assure me it is, therefore if it please you, defer not to declare it vnto me. I beseech you, said *Patin*, to obey whatsoever the king your Father shall command you. *Oriana* (who vnderstood not his meaning) answered him. You may bee assured Sir, that I should be very sorry to do otherwise. This answer wonderfully contented *Patin*, for he now assuredly thought *Oriana*

to be his, and said vnto her, Madam I haue determined to go thorough this countrie to seeke strange aduentures, and I hope to performe so high deeds of Arms, as you shall shortly heare news of my prowes, so much to mine aduantage, as very easily you will cōdiscend vnto that which the king will command you for the loue of me. Herewithall he tooke leaue of her, manifesting at this time his intencion vnto her no farther, and returned vnto the king vnto whom he declared the answer of *Oriana*, together with the desire he had to proue himselfe against al wandring Knights. Do as it please you, answered the king, notwithstanding I would aduise you to desist from such an enterprise: for you shall finde many strange and very dangerous aduentures, with a great number of knights well exercised in armes, who may happily in some sort displease you. If they be valiant and hardy, said he, I hope they shall not finde any faintnes or cowardlines in me, as my deedes hereafter may witnes. Wel, answered the king. Do what you shall thinke best. Thus *Patin* departed in the hope which he had to enioy *Oriana*, for the loue of whom he had framed this song, which he sung when fortune brought him neere the place where *Amadis* made his mone, who vsed him as you haue heard. But now we will leaue him, and recount vnto you what happened to *Durin*, who hauing left *Amadis*, returned the next way passing by the place where *Patin* lay wounded, who had taken off his Helmet for the griefe of his wound, hauing already lost such store of blood, that his face and armour was all stained and covered therewith. He beholding *Durin*, said to him, Gentleman, my friend, tell me where I

may finde a place to cure my wounds. Truly answered hee, I know no place but one, and those whom you shall finde there, are so sorrowfull, that I beleeue they cannot looke vnto you. Wherefore? said *Patin*. For a Knight (quoth *Durin*) who newly hath wonne the place that I tell you of, and seen the images of *Apolidon* and his Lady, which till then no other might behold: since when he is departed thence secretly in such melancholy, as his death is greatly feared. Be-like said *Patin*, you speake of the Firme Island. True (quoth *Durin*). What said *Patin*, is it conquered already? certes, I am heartily sorry, for I was going thither, with intencion to proue my selfe, hoping to haue won the same. *Durin* smiled, and answered him, Truly knight if there be no more prowesse hidden within you, then that which you haue now manifested, I thinke instead of honour, you might there haue gotten shame and infamy. *Patin* thinking himselfe iniured rose vp, and thought to haue taken hold of the raines of *Durin*'s horse: but *Durin* turned from him: before *Patin* seeing hee was farre enough from him, hee called him againe and said. I pray you faire sir, tell what he is that hath gotten this famous conquest. Then tell me first what you are, answered *Durin*. I will not stick for that, said *Patin*, I am sir *Patin*, brother to the Emperour of Rome.

God bee praised, answered *Durin*: Yet so farre as I see you are of higher birth then bounny, and your courage is as slender as your Courtesie is small: Witnesse the speech which of late you had with the Knight that you enquire after, who is the very same that euen now went from

from you, whom I beleeue (considering how hee hath handled you) you will grant that he is worthy of such a victory, and not *Patin* whom he hath vanquished. This

## CHAP. V. I.

How Don Galaor, Florestan and Agraies, undertooke the search of Amadis: who hauing left his Armour, changed his name, and withdrew himselfe to an hermitage, in the company of a very old hermit, there to liue solitarily.



Haue of late told you that when *Amadis* departed from the firme Island, it was so secretly, that *Galaor*, *Florestan*, *Agraies* and others, neuer perceived any thing thereof: you haue also heard the oath which he had taken of *Isania* the gouernour, that he should not declare any thing which he had seene, vntill the next morning when masse was ended: the which *Isania* performed. For the day following, when the Lords were ready to sit downe at the Table, they perceiued that *Amadis* was absent: and enquiring for him, *Isania* told them that they should know after dinner where hee was become. Thereupon they sat downe thinking that he was gone somwhere for his pleasure. After the Tables were taken vp, *Isania* said vnto the. My lords the misfortune of my Lord *Amadis* is far worse then you thinke it is, as I shall presently declare vnto you. Then he recited in what order he departed from the, the great sorrow wherein hee was, and what he had commanded him to say vnto them, especially how he had disposed of the Island, and he earnestly intreated the not to follow him, seeing that he hoped for no remedy of his misery: For his death was not to bee prevented. When they heard these pittifull news, there was not any of them whose eyes were not filled with teares, and they began to make a

said, he set spurs to his horse, taking the right way vnto London, in full purpose to recite vnto the Princeesse *Oriana* all that hee had seene and heard of *Amadis*.

most sorrowfull lamentation. But *Galaor* made the greatest moane of all, saying. If I may releue him from distresse, the best knight in the world shall not in this sort die. Although he hath commanded vs to stay, yet shall he not be obeyed for me at this time: but I will seeke vntill I shall haue found him, & will know who hath wronged him, that I may eyther reuenge it, or die in the quarell. Beleeue me answered *Agraies*, we will not be far behinde you: and if we cannot remedy his misfortune by force of courage, or counsell, yet at the least we will altogether die with him for company. Moreouer said *Isania*, he desireth you my Lord *Galaor* to make *Gandalin* a knight, and take *Arden* his dwarf into your seruice, whom he recommendeth vnto you. Then *Galaor* called the Dwarf, and said vnto him: *Arden*, thy master hath forsaken vs, and willed that thou shouldst be mine, assure thee that so long as I liue, I will not leaue thee for his sake. How? answered the Dwarf, is my Lord dead then? So saying, he fel down where he stood, and began to teare his haire, making so great sorrow as it was wonderfull, & said: I might well be counted a traitor to liue after my Master, wherewithal he had slain himself if they had not takē heed vnto him. *Florestan* his heart was so ouercharged with griefe that he could neither weep, nor speak, but sit leuening as if he had been in a trance. And



when he recovered his speech, he said vnto his fellowes : my Lords, it is no time for vs to weepe nor lament when we should rather endeavour to succour my Lord *Amadis* : let women waile, but let manly mindes conioyne together, & devise how we may provide a remedy for so great a mischief. As for me, I thinke that without longer delay we should all to horseback, making as great speede as we may to finde him, then we may know if there be any meanes to cure his malady: for the time passeth, his sorrow increaseth, and he still goeth farther from vs. The Lord *Isania* (as he saith) hath brought him some part of his way, he may shew vs then which path he hath taken, but if we shall longer tarry, wee may lose him, without hope euer to see him againe. Therefore my Lords I pray you let vs make hast to follow him. Vnto the which they all agreed, & caused their horses to be presently brought. Then *Isania* conducted them to the place where *Amadis* had left him, and from thence they rode till they came whereas *Patim* lay wounded, whom they beheld lying vpon the ground, whilest his two esquires did cut down boughs and poles, to make him a litter: for he was so feeble with the losse of his blood, that he could not sit on horseback, nor answer one onely word vnto the knights who saluted him, and enquired of him, what he was that had done him such outrage : but he made a signe that his Squires should tell them. Whereupon *Galaor* came, and demanded the matter of them, they answered him that he had iousted against a knight which came from the Firme Island, by whom hee was overthrowne at the first encounter, and how that afterwards thinking to

revenge him with his Sworde, he sped so illas they might perceiue by his hurt. What is become of the knight, said *Galaor*. By our faith answered the squires, we know not, for we were not present at the combat. Notwithstaunding we do thinke that we did meete him in our coming hither, and he did ride ouer the Forrest so fast as his horse could run, hauing none following him but one Squire, who wept bitterly carrying after him his Armour and shield, vpon the which were 2. Lyons sables, in a field Ore. In faith said *Florestan* it is he whom we doe seeke. Shew vs therefore what way he tooke, the which they did. Then the knights went after him, and so long they rode, vntill they came to a crosse way, where they staid to aduise what was best to be done: for there was not any body that might tell them any newes of that which they fought : and therefore they determined to separate themselves, promising one vnto another to meete at the Court of king *Lisuart*, vpon *S. Iohns* day next ensuing: but if by that time they heard no newes of *Amadis*, then they would determine further what to do in the matter, thus taking leaue of each other, they departed with weeping : and afterward they did what they might, but it was all in vaine, although they had ridden through many strange countries in which they found many great accidents & perilous aduentures. But you must know, that so soone as *Amadis* had sent *Durin* away, he set spurres vnto his horse, neyther caring, nor determining what way he should take, & he went euen as fortune guided him: in the end hee came to the bottom of an obscure valley, full of vnderwood & bushes, which place he thought most com-

modious to hide himselfe from being found out of any that might follow him. Here did he alight, letting his horse goe where hee would, but vnbridled him not: then he fate down by the side of a brook, which descended from the mountaine, and tooke a little water to refresh him withall. By this time *Gandalin* had ouertaken him, who had stayed behinde to deliuer *Patim* his Sword, who finding *Amadis* laid all along vpon the grasse, so still that he heard not one word to proceede from him : hee durst not say any thing to him, but fate downe hard by him, and within a while after *Amadis* rose vp, and beholding *Gandalin* laide vpon the ground by him, hee pushed him with his foote saying, sleepest thou *Gandalin*? By my faith sir no, answered he, for in stead of sleeping, I thought vpon two things which concerne you greatly, the which (if it please you) I will declare, if not, I will hold my peace. Go to rise said *Amadis*, and take our horses, for I will get me gone, because I should be very sory to be found of those (who it may be) do follow me. Truly answered *Gandalin*, me thinks you are farre enough out of the way : besides your horse is so wearie, as if you let him not rest a little, it is impossible for him to beare you any longer. I pray thee said he, (in weeping) do what thou shalt thinke best, for whether I stay or goe, my sorrows are remediless. Eate then a little of this bread which I haue brought for your sustentance, answered *Gandalin*, but he refused it. What will you then do said he, shall I tell you whereupon I studied euen now? It is all one to me answered *Amadis*, I thinke on nothing so much as my death. Then hearken vnto me if it please

you, said *Gandalin*, I haue long time mused vpon the letter which *Oriana* sent vnto you, as also vpon the words which the knight vttered against whom you did fight, and so consequently vpon the lightnesse and inconstancy wherewith women are endued : for seeing she hath changed her loue and your selfe for a stranger, shee witnesseth very well what trust a man should repose in such as she is : and on the other side, when I consider her vertues, I thinke it in a manner impossible, that she should so farre forget her selfe. But it may be that in your absence, some false report of you, hath been made vnto her, whereby she hath conceived this displeasure against you, the concealing whereof so much the more increased her grief. Notwithstanding, seeing you are assured that you neuer offended her, although she haue beene too credulous, yet in the end the truth will be knowne, and thereby your innocency the more appaarat, it seemeth vnto me that you should not thus despaire, seeing that shee may repent her folly, and acknowledge the wrong which she hath done vnto you, in such sort as requiring pardon for her misconceit, she may make you amends with more ioy & contentment then you euer yet enioyed together : & therefore inforce your selfe to eate, that you may be able hereafter to preserve your life, but if you do wilfully suffer the same thus to be lost, you shall also loose all the good & honor that euer you may or can hope for in this world. Hold thy peace said *Amadis*, for thou hast so shamefully and wickedly lied, as I know no man which would not be displeased to heare thee thus to accuse her, because that so wise a

Princesse neuer did amisse at any time: and if I die, I haue well deserued it, seeing that she shall be obeyed and satisfised euen vntill my death. And bethou assured, if I did not thinke that thou speakest this, onely with intent thereby to asswage my sorrow: I would presently strike thy head from thy shoulders, for the offence which thou hast done vnto me, and take heed that henceforth you commit not the like fault.

When he had so said, he arose vp in a great rage, and walked vp along the riuer, so pensiuie that he knew not what way he should take. Which *Gandalin* perceiuing, (fearing his anger, and thinking also that he would not goe farre) he let him alone and laid him downe to sleepe, his eyes beeing very heauie with watching. When *Amadis* was returned vnto him, and perceiued him so sound asleepe, hee would not wake him, but took his owne horse and sadled him, then did he hide the bridle and harness of *Gandalins* horse in the bushes, to the end when he awaked he might not follow him. Then he armed himselfe and mounted on horsebacke, coasting ouer the top of the mountaine. Thus without any stay at all, hee rode till it was within foure houres of the sun setting, descending then into a great plaine, where there were two high trees, and vnder them a faire fountaine, commonly called, The fountaine of the plaine field: to which hee went to water his horse. And as he approached neere the fountaine, he beheld a religious man clothed poorly in a garment made of gores haire, hauing his beard and head all white, who was watering his Asse. *Amadis* saluted him, asking him if he were a Priest. Truly, said

the olde man, it is more then forty yeeres since I first said Masse. The gladder am I thereof, said *Amadis*. Then he alighted & took his saddle and bridle from his horse, who finding himselfe at liberty, began to run towards the Forrest, *Amadis* minding not to follow him, but threw off all his armour, which done, he kneeled at the oldemans feete, who taking him vp by the hand, made him sit downe by him: & beholding him well, he thought him to bee the fairest Gentleman that euer he saw, although hee was pale and wan, hauing his face all bedewed with teares: whereat the Hermit was moued with so great compassion, that hee sayde vnto him. Knight, you seeme to bee full of sorrow, and if your griefe proceede from the repentance of any sinne that you haue committed, In truth my son you are very happy: and if it bee for any temporall losse, then I thinke (seeing your youth, and the estate wherein you haue liued vnto this present, you should not thus vex your selfe, but pray for forgiueneffe. Then hee gaue him his blessing, saying. Goe too, now confesse your sins. Hereupon *Amadis* began to tell the whole discourse of his life, without letting any thing passe. Truly, saide the holy man, seeing that you are descended of so high a birth, you ought to bee the more vertuous: yet you must not dispaire for any tribulation that may happen vnto you, cheefely, for this that proceedeth from the occasion of a woman, who is as easily won as she is lightly lost. Wherefore my son, I counsell you to forget such vanities, and henceforth to banish the thought of such a miserable manner of life from you, for it will not onely be yrkesome vnto you, but

also

also euery vertuous person will condemne you for it. Ah father, answered *Amadis*, I am now in such extremitie, that it is impossible I should liue any long time, wherefore I humbly pray you to receiue mee into your company, and to comfort my poore soule, for that little time which it hath to remain in this vnhappy body. When the good oldeman heard him speake with such affection, he sayde vnto him, I promise you my friend, it is ill done of you, who are a knight, yet young and of a comely stature, to fall into such desparie, seeing that women cannot continue their loue, but by presence of those whome they loue: for by nature they are quickly forgetfull, and light of beleefe, especially where any thing is reported vnto them of such as haue fondly yeelded themselves to them, who when they thinke to haue nothing but ioy and contentment, do finde themselves plunged in all sorrow and tribulation, as you now feele by experience. Wherefore I pray you henceforth to be more vertuous and constant: and seeing you are borne a Kings son, and likely to gouerne a Kingdom, returne to the world, for it should be a great hurt to loose you in this sort: and I cannot presume what she might bee that brought you into this extremitie, seeing that although shee were a woman so requisit as shee could not bee equalled, yet for her such a man as you are to be cast away. Father, answered *Amadis*, I aske not your counsell herein, for I now neede it not, but for my soules sake I desire you henceforth to receiue mee into your company, which if you refuse to do, I see no other remedy for me, but to die amongst the beasts of this Forrest. The old man

seeing him so resolute, had such compassion of him, as the scares fell down his long white beard, and answered him: Alas my son, my abiding in a desert place, and I liue a life too strickt for you, my Hermitage is at the least seuen leagues within the sea, vpon the top of a poore Rock: vnto the which no liuing creature can come vnlesse it bee at the beginning of the spring time. Notwithstanding, I haue already remained thirty yeeres there, exempred from all worldly pleasure, liuing onely vpon such small almes, which some people of this Countrey doe bestow vpon me. I promise you father, saide *Amadis*, it is the life which I desire, and I once intreat you, that you would giue me leaue to go with you. The which the Hermit at the last granted, notwithstanding, that he had a long time denied him. Heerewithall *Amadis* kissed his feete, saying: father command whatsoever you shall please, for to my power I will euer obey you. Then the Hermit saide his euening seruice, after the which (because hee had eaten nothing all day) hee tooke out of his wallet a little bread, and fish dried in the sun, which was giuen vnto him: and willed *Amadis* to eate with him, but he refused it, although he had beene three daies without tasting any sustenance. Wherefore the hermit saide vnto him: My sonne you haue promised to obey me, doe this then which I command you, and eat, for if you should die in this obstinacie, your soule should be in very great danger. For this cause *Amadis* durst not denie him, but did eat a very little, for hee sighed continually, not being able to forget the great sorrow wherein he remained. After he had taken this small refrecti-

on, the good old man spread his cloake abroad and laid him downe thereon, and *Amadis* at his feete, who was a great while before hee could take any rest, tumbling and tossing himselfe as a person ill at ease, neuertheless in the end, being heauie with long watching, he fell asleepe: and hee dreamed that hee was locked in a chamber so darke, that he could see no light at all, neyther could he finde any way to come out thereof, wherewith he greatly lamented: moreouer hee thought that his Cozin *Mabila* and the Damosell of *Denmarke* came vnto him, hauing before them a beame of the Sun, which gaue a great light in so darke a place: they taking him by the hand said vnto him, My Lord, come forth from hence, if it please you, and follow vs into the palace, the which he did. But at his comming forth, he thought that he did see *Oriana* inuironed with a great flame of fire, which made him so afraid, that hee cried out helpe, helpe, my Lady *Oriana* burneth: and therewithall he leaped into the fire to saue her. Then he tooke her in his armes, comming through the flame againe without any hurt at all: afterwards hee carried her into a garden, the greenest and pleasantest that he had seene. At the lowde cry which *Amadis* did make, the good Hermit awaked, and taking him by the hand, hee asked him, what he ailed? Father, answered he, I haue euen now in my sleepe felt such exceeding paine, that I meruaile I am not dead. Your cry hath witnessed the same, said hee, but let vs rise, for it is time to depart. Then he got vpon his Asse, and tooke the way toward the Hermitage, and *Amadis* followed him a foote, talking together of many

things, at the last he prayed him to giue him one gift, which should not bee hurtfull vnto him, the which the old man granted, I pray you then said *Amadis*, that so long as we are together, you would not tell any man who I am: and henceforth to giue mee another name, such as it shall please you: then after my death you may tell my brethren of me, that they may come fetch my body, and carry it into *Gaule*. Your life and death, answered the hermit, are in the hands of God, therefore speake no more thereof, for therein you offend him very gricuously: and therefore seeing you know him, loue him, and serue him as you are bound to do, he wil succour and helpe you: notwithstanding what other name wil you haue? Such as it shall please you to giue me, said *Amadis*. And as they talked together, the olde man had his eye continually vpon him, and the more he looked on him, the fayer he thought him to be: but he did see him so full of griefe as he determined to giue him a name conformable to his excellency, and agreeable to his melancholy. Whereupon he said vnto him: my Sonne you are yong and of a faire complexion, notwithstanding your life is obscure, by reason of your sorrow, therefore my will is that you bee called the *Faire Forlorne*. Wherewith *Amadis* was contented, liking very well of the Hermit his deuise, who not without great occasion had imposed that name vpon him. And euen as they were ouertaken with the night, they came vnto the Sea side, where they found a little boat which the day before was come to seeke the Hermit at his hermitage, wherein they embarked, and within a small time after tooke landing at

the poore Rock, so called because of the barrenesse of the place, as the old man had declared to him. Who continuing his discourse, said, Sonne I haue heretofore followed the world as you haue done, and my name was *Andabod*, assuring you that during my young yeeres, I studied many vaine sciences: but in the end being wearie thereof, I withdrew my selfe into this poore place, where I haue already remained thirty yeeres and more, and neuer departed thence vntill yeeesterday, that I was at the buriall of my sister, who died within these few dayes. When the *Faire Forlorne* came into this Solitary place, he was exceeding glad: hoping that in a very short time his sadnesse and his life would both end at once. Thus he remained in the company of the hermit, consuming his youth with weeping and continuall lamentations, setting at naught all worldly honours, especially the glory which he had gotten in fighting with *Galpan*, *Abies* King of *Ireland*, *Dardan* the proud, and many others whom he had overcome, and he began to despise in himselfe all vanities, considering the variablenesse of Fortune. who not long before had so highly aduanced him, that hee had entred into the forbidden Chamber of *Apolidon*, as in the beginning of the History hath beene mentioned. But if he had beene demanded what moued him so to do, what would hee (thinke you) haue answered? no other thing (as I guesse) but that the displeasure of a weakewoman, had brought him to this extremity: he would haue tried to colour his fault by the examples of the strong and valiant *Hercules*, *Sampson*, the wise *Salomon*, *Virgill*, and an infinit num-

ber of other great and vertuous personages which haue all fallen into the like misery, being no more able to resist the same then he. And *Amadis* would haue thought their misfortunes sufficient to shaddow his miserie, and yet it is quite contrary: for their example might haue warned him to haue shunned the like folly. Was it likely then that Fortune would bring him out of his calamity, he being thus overcome for so small a cause, and to bestow vpon him afterwards more fauours and victories then euer she had done before? me thinketh that she should not: neither yet had she done it, if those things by her executed against him, had not turned to the profit of the persons whom she would fauour, whose liues depended vpon *Amadis* his safety, whom she tormented in such sort, as it seemed she had more compassion vpon them; then care of him, as your selfe may iudge. Because that *Amadis* being as it were brought vnto the period of his life, (when he least hoped of remedie) euen then was he restored vnto his former estate by such meanes, as shal be hereafter recited vnto you. But to the end that we stray not too farre from the order of our history, you must first vnderstand that which happened to *Gandalin* after he awaked and found neither *Amadis* nor his horse: who rising vp in a fright, misdoubted that which was happened, and looked in all places thereabout, notwithstanding he could see nothing but Trees and Bushes. By meanes whereof he began to cry and call, yet no body answered him but the *Eccho* which resounded thorow the valley: whereby he knew well that *Amadis* was departed. For this cause he began to make a most sorrow-

sorrowfull lamentations, determining to follow him, and to doe what he could to find him againe, which that he might the better accomplish; hee returned where hee had left his horse, the which hee found, hauing neither saddle nor bridle vpon him, which made him almost beside himselfe. But as hee fretted and sought from one place to another, in the midst of the bushes hee espied the harnessse of his horse, which he sought, wherefore incontinently he saddled him, and mounted vpon him, galloping through the Forrest not knowing which way to take: and in this frensie he rode fise daies together without any stay at all, but at the side of the villages, where he onely taried to enquire after *Amadis*. Notwithstanding, he could heare no newes of him till the sixt day, that he entred into a meddow wherein was a fountaine, hard by the which *Amadis* had left his armour. There he beheld a Pauillion set vp, and two Gentlewomen, vnto whom hee came, asking them if they had seene a knight passe by, bearing in his shield two Lions *saables*, in a field *Or*. Wee haue not seene the knight which you demand after, answered they, but we did finde his shield and therest of his armour vpon the brinke of this fountaine. When *Gandalin* heard this, hee cryed out mainly, and rearing his haire, he said weeping: Ay me, is he dead. Alas what misfortune is hapned, the best knight in the world, is he lost? heerewithall did hee encrease his laments so strangely, as both the Gentlewomen had great compassion vpon his miserie: Alas my Lord, sayde hee, how badly haue I kept you: truly I am worthy to bee accounted the most wicked esquire that

liueth on the earth, hauing so lewdly forsaken you, and you who were wont to be the defence and refuge of all distressed persons, haue now nor coucel nor comfort of any living wight, no not of me caittife as I am, that through my great fault and sluggishnesse, haue left you in your greatest neede, euen when I ought best to haue serued you. No foner had he said these words, but that hee fell downe in a swoound: which when the Gentlewomen behelde, they cryed: Alas this esquire is dead, and therewithall they ran vnto him, but hee moued not in any fort. Neuerthelesse, they bestirred them so well, as they brought him againe to himselfe, & afterwards they sayd vnto him: my friend, you are to blame thus to despair for a thing whereof you are yet vncertaine. It were more conuenient for you to goe seeke your maister, seeing that the vertuous (as you ought to bee) do encrease their strength, euen when aduersitie most assaileth them. *Gandalin* knew that they sayde true, and for the same cause he determined (following their counsell) to trauaile so long from place to place, vntill he had newes of *Amadis*. But I pray you Gentlewomen, answered hee, tell me where you haue found his armour? That will wee willingly, said they: Wee were of late in the company of *Dan Guillan* the captain, who within these few dayes past, deliuered vs from the prison of *Gandinas* the malicious, with more then twentie other Ladies and Gentlewomen, behauing himselfe so valliantly, that he hath broken the wicked custome of the Castle, and constrained the Lord thereof to sweare, neuer more to maintaine the same. And because euerie one had liberty to goe whe-

ther they would, my fellow and I haue followed him vnto this place, and wee haue already stayed here this foure daies, because that when we came higher first, *Guillan* knew the armour of him whom you enquire after, which were left vpon the side of the fountaine. And I promise you that neuer knight was more sorrowful then he, for as soon as he beheld them, hee alighted from his horse saying. Beleeue me this place is farre vnworthy to hold the shield of the best Knight in the world. Then did hee take it vp from the ground, and hanged it vpon this Tree. Which done hee mounted againe vpon his horse, commanding vs expressly that we should keepe it vntill hee had found the Knight to whom it appertained: And to that end we did set vp these Pauillions which you see. Notwithstanding after we had kept the same three whole dayes, he returned, and arriued but yesterday very late hauing no

news of him at all, and very early this morning he commanded his Esquires to take the rest of his Armour which were here found, and he tooke off his owne shield, to hang about his necke, the other which we did keepe. In the doing whereof he wept bitterly and said. Truly shield thou makest a bad exchange of thy Master, for me: afterwards he told vs that he went to the Court of king *Lisuart* to present those spoyles vnto *Queene Brisena*, being assured that shee would be no lesse sorrowfull then he, for the sad mischance, and wee likewise do follow after him, to thanke the Queene for the good which *Guillan* hath done for vs, for her sake, as he hath commanded vs to do. Then *Gandalin* bid them farewell, assuring them, that hee would finde him, vpon whom his death or life depended, or else hee would end his daies in the seeking of him.

## CHAP. VII.

*How Durin returned vnto the Princeesse Oriana, vnto whom he declared the sorrowfull newes of Amadis: and of the great sorrow which she made, after she understood of his despaire.*

**D**urin hauing left *Patin* in the Forrest (as you haue heard) made such great hast to returne vnto *Oriana*, to let her know what he had seen of *Amadis*, as the tenth day following he arriued in the City of *London*. But so soone as *Oriana* perceiued him, her heart throbbed in such sort, as she was faine to goe into her chamber, & lay her down vpon her bed before shee would speake vnto *Durin*: and shortly after shee commanded the Damosell

of *Denmarke* to cause him to come in, and to see that while she talked with him no other should come where she was.

Then *Durin* beeing on his knees before her, shee said vnto him: *Durin* my friend, by the faith thou owest vnto mee, tell mee in what estate thou diddest finde *Amadis*, what was his countenance whilest hee red my Letter, and what thou thinkest of the *Queene Brisolania*? Madam answered he, by my faith I wil tell you the very truth, although I am sure that

that vnto you and others it will seeme in a manner incredible. At my departure from hence (as it pleased you to command mee) I went without any stay, vnto the Citie of *Sobradisa*, where I found the Queene *Briolania*, who (in my opinion) next vnto you, is the sayrest princeesse of the world, and of the best grace. There I heard news that my Lord *Amadis* and his fellows were departed to returne vnto this Court, but vpon the way they did meete with a Gentlewoman, who carried them vnto the firme-Island to proue the strange aduentures thereof: whereupon incontinently I tooke my way thither, and there I arriued euen as my Lord *Amadis* passed the Arch of Loyall-Louers, vnder the which none might passe that had in any sort falsified his first Loue. How? said she, hath he so rashly enterprised such an aduenture, hauing his disloyalty so fresh before his eyes? I know not Madam answered *Durin*, how you belecue it, but sure I am that it hapned better vnto him then you thinke for, seeing that he hath gotten more honour then euer any loyall Knight receiued, as many can witnesse by the signes which then appeared. And although at that instant *Oriana* would haue seemed for to dissemble the pleasure which she conceiued of these news, yet could she not so cunningly do the same, but that with extreame ioy her sudden blushing did increase her beautie, for the assurance shee had in the loyaltie of *Amadis*. But *Durin* continuing his discourse, said vnto her Madam, he hath yet done greater things, for after hee had finished this so strange aduenture, he heard news that my Lords *Galaor*, *Flore*, *Bon* and *Agrais* thinking to winne

the forbidden Chamber, were so rudely repulsed from the marble Pillar, that their liues were in great perill, by meanes whereof my Lord *Amadis* desirous to reuenge their wrongs, with an intvincible courage he passed through all the garded places, and maugre all the enchantments, hee entered into the Chamber, yet was it not without great danger and trauaile. Thus did he win the Signory of the firme Island, and all the inhabitants thereof haue already sworne vnto him homage, and fealty, according to the custome of the Country, which is one of the fairest and strongest places in the world. And I assure you Madame, that it is more then an hundred yeeres since any living creature hath passed the pillars, but only my Lord *Amadis*: by whose force and strength we haue seene all the singular things and riches of the pallace of *Apolidon*, and the aduenturous Chamber, which is renowned thorow all the parts of the Earth. During this discourse of his, *Oriana* was almost rauished with the great ease, and pleasure that she conceiued in the hope that one day she should bee Lady and owner of such singular things, to her owne and her louers contentment, and said vnto *Durin*. Truly *Durin* fortune hath bene very fauourable vnto him. Ah Madame answered he, nay rather too rigorous, so as I would to God some other had carried him that vnhappy Letter which you writ, & I deliuered: how said *Oriana*, I pray thee tell me, what countenance he shewed in reading it? Madame I wil tel you since it pleaseth you, answered he, although I am sure that you will bee very fort when you shal vnderstand what consequence it returned vnto, and the mischief

it brought vnto the best and faithfulllest knight in the world. In what sort, said she. You are the cause of his death, answered *Durin*. Out Alas, said *Oriana*, what is it thou tellest mee? You haue forged the sword that hath wounded him to death, and I carried it to him, so as we are both his murderers. Then declared hee the whole circumstance and manner how he deliuered the letter, and the despaire hee entered into after he had read it: so as, said *Durin*, he did shortly after that, secretly departe from the Pallace of *Apolidon*, with *Gandalin*, *Isania* the Gouvernour of the Isle, and me, and we brought him vnto an hermitage, where hee charged vs feightly to follow him no further: then hee mounted on horseback, and taking with him neither Helmet, Shield, nor Lance, he fled ouer a mountaine like vnto a mad man. Afterward hee reherfed vnto her all the talke which particularly he had vsed vnto them, in taking his leaue of them, and *Durin* made this discourse with so many teares, as it was very hard to iudge whether hee or *Oriana* had the more sorrowfull heart. And know you Madame, saide hee, that after his departure (notwithstanding his command to the contrary) *Gandalin* and I followed him, and found him asleepe by the side of a fountaine, yet his sleepe was not long: for suddainly hee awaked, and raising himselfe vp, he began to make the greatest lamentation in the world, bewailing King *Perion* his father, then *Mabila*, and others his friends. All this while *Gandalin* and I hid our selues for feare of his furie, by meanes whereof without any impeachment of vs, he passed the most part of the night in the like lamentations, vntill about the

breake of day, that there chaunced a knight to come singing a song, which he had made for the loue of you, the which *Durin* recited vnto her, as also that which happened vnto *Patin*, which so ouercharged the heart of *Oriana*, that she remained in a swoond, looking like one that were dead. The which *Durin* fearing, he called the Princeesse *Mabila*, and the Damosell of *Demmarke*, vnto whom he saide. God helpe my Lady, who is in a greate perplexitie for a thing which is now too late to be remedied: and if shee hath mis-done, the punishment is of due vnto her. Herewithall he departed, leauing the women much amazed, for they knew not the cause of this inconuenience, much lesse how they might remember the same: neuerthelesse, they vsed her in such sort, that shee came againe vnto her selfe, and casting forth a sigh, she saide with a feeble and low voice: Ah wicked woman that I am, whē with so great wrong I haue deprived him of life, whom in this world I most loued. And seeing it is out of my power now to reuoke that mischicfe, whereof I am the repentant causer, I beseech you (friend) to take my lament in satisfaction of the hurt which I haue purchased vnto you, with the sacrifice which I shall make of mine owne life to follow you vnto the death: so the ingratitude which I haue committed against your loyaltie, shall bee manifested, your selfe reuenged; and I punished. And as shee thought to haue proceeded further, her speech failed her againe, wherewith *Mabila* and the Gentlewoman were more abashed then before, so that they called *Durin* to know what heauie newes hee had brought vnto *Oriana*, who wholly declared



declared it vnto them. Let me alone the said *Mabila*, for I know wel how to remedy this matter. Hereupon they vnclaced her, and bestirreth them so well, that she brought her to life againe: then *Mabila* demanded of her how she did. Gentlefriend (answered she) farre better then I desire: So as I rather desire death then life, for now I do nought else but languish. Wherefore Madame, said *Mabila*: do you thinke my Cofin so inconstant, that hee will not willingly excuse the iniurie that you haue done vnto him, knowing that extreame loue rather then any other thing constrained you thereunto? And if he be gone, as *Durin* hath tolde you, it is but to passe away part of his melancholy, tarrying vntill his innocency bee knowne vnto you: But I am certaine, if it pleased you to call him back againe, that he is as ready to obey you as euer he was. And behold what you shall doe: intreate him by a Letter, that hee take no regard vnto that which you did command him by *Durin*, and that which you did, was suddenly after a false report made vnto you of him: and therefore will him to come vnto you to *Mireflore*, where you stay for him to amend your fault at his discretion. Ah my Cofin, answered *Oriana*, do you think that he will euer vouchsafe, either to respect me, or make one steppe for me? But do you thinke, saide *Mabila*, that the loue he beareth to you, is of so little force, that he will not bee farre more glad to recouer your good fauour, then he hath beene sorry to be by you forsaken? I am verily assured, that to die he will not displease you. And to accomplish this matter well, it behoueth the Damofell of *Denmarke* to vndertake the charge to

finde him out, because he knoweth her, and putteth his trust in her. Well, answered *Oriana*, I am content to be aduised by you. So shee tooke paper and inke, and as they had determined she did write vnto *Amadis*, afterwards the Letter was giuen to the Damofell of *Denmark*, with expresse commandement to passe first into *Scotland*, thinking that he might be there with *Gandales*, rather then in any other place. And the better to colour their enterprise, they aduised the Damofell to tell the Queene, that *Mabila* sent her towards the Queene of *Scotland* her Mother, to vnderstand some news from her: With the which the Queen was well pleased, and gaue her a Letter and tokens to present vnto her. Thus was the Gentlewoman dispatched, who departed with *Durin* her brother, and *Enil* the Cofin of *Gandales*. And so long they rode till they came vnto a port towne called *Vigill*, which separateth great *Brittaine* from the Realme of *Scotland*. There they tooke shipping, and they had the winde so faire, that the sixt day following they landed in the Citty of *Poligex*. Then tooke they their way toward the Knight *Gandales*, whom they met a hunting: but when he beheld the Damofell of *Denmarke* (knowing that she was a stranger) he stayed, enquiring of her what she did seek in that Countrey. Your selfe answered she, towards whom, two Princesses your friends haue commanded me to come, to present from them certain presents, which I carry vnto the Queene of *Scotland*. Gentlewoman said he, may it please you to tell me their names: yea willingly sir said she, the one is my Lady *Oriana* daughter to the mighty king *Lisuart*, & the other the Princess

cessie *Mabila* whom you know well enough. Ha said *Gandales*, you are most luckily here arriued: and they haue reason to accompt me their most humble seruant, for so I am, & I pray you most heartily to come and alight at my house, then to morrow we will go together to see the Queene: in the meane while doe mee this pleasure, as to tell me how *Amadis* doth. The Gentlewoman was herewith much astonished, seeing that she had missed of her purpose: notwithstanding dissembling her sorrow, she answered *Gandales*: that he was not returned to the Court since he departed thence to reuenge *Briolania*: and it is thought that he is come into these parts with his cofin *Agreais*, to see the Scottish Queene his Aunt, and you also: for this cause the Queene and other

Ladies of his kindred and deere friends, gaue me in charge to deliuer him a Letter, which will be very welcome vnto him I am sure. And the Gentlewoman said thus much, because she knew certainly, that although *Amadis* would hide him fro (knowing that she brought him news from *Oriana*) others, yet hee would change his minde to speake with her. I would said *Gandales* that he were here, for I haue a long time greatly desired to see him. Thus talking together at the last they arriued at the Castle of *Gandales*, where hee scassed the Gentlewoman three dayes: and the fourth day following, hee conducted her vnto the Court, where she deliuered to the Scottish Queene the Letters and presents which the Queene *Brienna* had sent vnto her.

## CHAP. VIII.

How Don Guillan the Pensif did bring vnto the Court of King *Lisuart* the Shield, Armour, and Sword of *Amadis*, which he had found lying by the Fontaine of the plaine field.



fter that Don Guillan the Pensif was departed from the Fontaine where he found *Amadis* his Armour, he rode six daies before he arriued in the Court of King *Lisuart*. And he ordinarily carried the shield of *Amadis* about his necke, and neuer tooke it off, except when hee was constrained to fight: then he tooke his owne, fearing to deface the other. And as he rode he met with two knights, Cofins to *Arcalaus*, who incontinently knew the shield of *Amadis*, and they thought *Guillan* to be he. Wherefore they (who hated him to the death) determi-

ned to assaile him, and said one to another: euen now will we carrie the head of this villaine vnto our vncle *Arcalaus*. This they spake so lowd that *Guillan* heard it, where-with being thoroughly chafed he answered them. Palliards you reckon without your host, for neuer did traitor affright me, no more shall you, seeing I know you for kinsmen to *Arcalaus*, and as wicked as himself: then pulled he downe the visor of his Helmet, couched his launce and ran vpon them. Now they were yong and strong, so that they defended themselves stoutly: notwithstanding at the last they could not long resist him that had

charged them. Who after hee had some smal time fought with them, thrust his sword in the throat of the eldest, and the other fled vp towards the top of the mountaine, who was not long pursued by *Guillan*, because hee was a little wounded, whereupon he let him go and followed on his way, along the which he rode so far, vntill he arrived at a Castle, belonging vnto a knight of his acquaintace, where hee lodged for that night, beeing then very late. But the next day (as hee would haue departed from his lodging) his host seeing him without a Launce gaue him one, from thence hee rode so long, that hee came neere a riuer named *Guiron*, ouer the which there was a bridge no broder then for two horses to passe ouer afront. And approaching more neere thereunto, he beheld a knight entering vpon the same, whose shield was vert, a bent *Argent*. This he knew to bee his cosin *Ladasin*; and on the other side hee saw another knight ready to fight, who forbad *Ladasin* from passing ouer, except hee would breake a Lance with him, but *Ladasin* answered him, that he would not stay for so small a thing, and herewithall covering him with his shield, he set spurres vnto his horse. As much did hee that kept the passage, who was mounted vpon a great bay courser, and did beare in his shield *Argent* a Lion *Sables*, and his helmet all blacke. Their encounter was so strong, that *Ladasin* fell into the water, where without doubt he had bene drowned (as well for the weight of his armour, as also for the high of the place from whence he fell) if he had not taken holde of certaine willowes, by meanes whercof hee got vnto the banck side. In the meane season he

that had ouer-throwne him returned faire and softly from whence he was departed. Then *Guillan* seeing his cosin in such danger, ranne speedily to helpe him, and caused him to be pulled vp by his squires, and afterwards he saide vnto him: trust me cosin without the helpe of these boughes you had bene in great danger, and therefore all strange knights should feare to iust vpon such bridges: for those which do keepe such passages, haue their horses no small time experimented for the purpose, with whome (more then by their owne prowess) they gaine the honour and reputation ouer a number of better knights then themselves are. And as for me, I would rather turne out of the way a dayes iourney, then put my selfe in such hazard, were it not to reuenge you if I can. Now the horse of *Ladasin* had not followed his maister, but was passed ouer to the other side of the riuer, and the knight of the bridge his squires were there ready to take him, who caried him into a pleasant and strong tower, seated in the midst of the water. Wherefore *Guillan* tooke his shield, and couched his Lance, he called vnto the knight of the bridge, that he should take heede of him, who ran against him, and they met together with a most strong encounter: neuertheless it fell out so well for *Guillan*, that he ouerthrew his enemy together with his horse into the riuer, and himselfe had sped little better, for he was vnhorsed as well as the other, if in falling his horse had not slipped by the one side of him, and he taken hold of certaine stakes, by the which he got vpon the bridge again, from whence he might perceiue the knight in the riuer, who hauing caught hold by the taile of

the horse of *Guillan*, was brought to shore on the one side, and his horse came to the other side, where the Squires of *Ladasin* were ready to take hold of him. Thus against their willes the two knights made exchange of their horses, and therefore *Guillan* ran vnto the knight to tell him, that if he would restore his horse and his fellowes, that they would send ouer his which their Squires had taken, and then they would depart. What answered the knight vnto him that brought the message, thinke they to escape so lightly from my hands? yea truly said the other, for they haue done as much as the custome of the passage requireth. Not yet answered the knight, because we were both ouerthrowne: and therefore they must win the bridge by the sword, if they will passe ouer. Will you then said the other, compell them to fight? I thinke you should be satisfied with this iniurie which already you haue done vnto them, seeing that all bridges ought to be free for every passenger. I care not answered the knight, go tell them, they must fight (will they nil they) how my sword curreth: then hee leaped vpon his horse most lightly without any helpe of his stirrop, afterwards coming neere vnto *Guillan*, he said vnto him very fiercely and boldly: knight your embassadour hath bene ouer tedious in deliuering his message, but before you escape me, you must of force tell me, whether you be any of the subjects to a king called *Esuart*, or any of his household. Wherefore answered *Guillan*, I would it were my luck, said the other, to haue him now in your hand, for by my head he should not raigne one day longer. When *Guillan* heard him say so, none could be more angry then

he was, & therefore answered him in good faith, knight if king *Esuart* my Lord were in any danger, I am very sure, that he would dispatch thee: acknowledge this thy great presumption, be cause he is his kinne, and thou knowest that thou shouldst not haue vnto him: I haue a greater desire to fight against thee, then any I had against any other knight. And if I can bring thee to ioust, and a knight of his house, I will chastise thee as I shall see cause, for goddies Princes sake. I haue some freer from all thy malice, do not budge that I shall be with thee before it be noone, I will not abide glad to carry a messenger to him: notwithstanding before this meete thy desert, my will is, that thou shalt know both who I am, and what promise I will stand vnto him by thee, *Guillan* was very much displeased with the knights words, so hardly would he haue defended the combat so long, had it not bene that hee promised to tell him his name, wherefore he stayed a while to heare what he would say. When thus thus said the knight, this I am *Guillem* sonne to *Don* *Sancho* Lord of *Castile*, who King *Esuart* was most treacherously did put to death in the City of *Seville*. The presence which I will stand vnto him by thee, shall be the heads of those knights of his Court whom I keep prisoners (and one of them is dead as his nephew) together with thy right hand also, which will hang about thy necke, after I haue separated it from thy arme. Will you say answered *Guillan*, if thou canst performe that thou braggest of, it were a great deale, but I beleeue thou shalt prove thy selfe a liar, and so saying hee strooke at him. Then there began betweene them a sharpe and cruell combat: For

withoout any breathing, they laid at each other so fiercely, that *Ladafin* and his squire who were present, did not thinke that any of them could escape the death. Nevertheless, they behaved themselves so valiantly, that one could not iudge who had the best: for they were expert knights, hardy, and exercised in armes, so that knowing how to defend themselves, few blowes could hurt them to the quick. Now when their battaile was at the hottest, they heard the widding of a borne from the top of the tower, wherewithall *Guillan* was abashed, thinking it to be some new supply come to his enemy, and on the other side, *Gaudelod* suspected it to bee some revolt of the captiues which he had in his prisons. And therefore either of them did their best to vanquish his enemy, before the succours should come: so that suddainly *Gaudelod* rushed vpon *Guillan* thinking to vnhorse him, but *Guillan* embraced him so hard, that they both fell to the ground tumbling one ouer another, yet holding their swords fast in their hands, but it happened so well for *Guillan*, that he had his enemy vnder him. By meanes whereof, before the other could rise, hee gaue him five or six great blowes with his sword, which in such sort amazed him, that from thenceforth he waxed more feeble. Notwithstanding, getting vp vpon his feet, hee both well defended himselfe, and better assailed his aduersary, giuing sufficient knowledge of the little good will he wished vnto his enemy: who so sorely oppressed vpon him, that hee was constrained to recoile and turne his back. Therefore *Guillan* marking where he was worst armed, did hit him such a blow with his sword

vpon the arme, that hee quite parted it from his shoulder. So with the same griefe thereof, he cast forth a loude cry, flying towards the tower: but *Guillan* undertooke him, and laid so fast holde vpon his helmet, that he pulled it from his head. Then fetching his sword to his throat, hee saide vnto him. Betsey mee Sir, you shall now goe to the king to present him with other heads then you determined, but if you will not obey me, your owne shall satisfie me. Alas, answered *Gaudelod*, I had rather yeelde my selfe to the mercy of the King, then to die presently. Whereupon after hee had giuen his faith vnto *Guillan*, they mounted on horseback, and *Ladafin* with them. At that instant, they heard a great tumult within the tower, and beheld one of the warders running away, whom they staid to know what the matter was: who told them that the prisoners had found the means to vnbinde themselves, and to come forth of the dungeon where in they were kept, afterwards they were armed, and had already slaine the most part of his fellows. Hee had no sooner ended his speech, when hee behelde some of those, which he spake of, ouer the gate of the tower, and three or foure others which pursued a knight, and seuen halberders, that fled towards a wood hard by, and when those which had gained their liberty, perceined *Guillan* and *Ladafin*, they cryed vnto them, that they should kill those traitors that had escaped from them. Wherefore *Guillan* & his cousin ran before and slew foure of them: the rest fled theselues with their lightnes, excepting onely the knight who was taken. Then came the prisoners

soners to salueth *Guillan*, whom they all knew, & after some talke which they had together, *Guillan* said vnto them: my Lords, I cannot tarry long with you, for I am constrained to goe forthwith to King *Lisuart*, but my cousin *Ladafin* shall beare you company vntill you haue refreshed you, and afterwards I pray you to come vnto the Court, & to bring with you these two knights, whom I deliuer into your keeping, vntill king *Lisuart* haue taken such order for them, as to his Maiestie shall seeme best: and let one of you remaine here for the guard of this place, vntill I haue otherwise prouided for it. The which they promised him to performe, thus taking leaue of them hee tooke his shield from his neck, and gaue it vnto his squires, and taking the shield of *Amadis* (as he was accustomed) the teares stood in his eyes. Wherewithal the others being much abashed, demanded of him, what moued him thus to take his shield from his neck, and place another in steed thereof with so great sorrow. Ah, answered he, this shield belongeth to the best knight in the world, and hee reherfed vnto them the manner how hee had found it, with the rest of the armor of *Amadis*, whom he had since searched for through all the cuntry, without hearing any newes of him: wherewithall euery one of them were very sorry, fearing lest some great misfortune had happened him. Thus *Guillan* followed on his way, and rode so long that (without any further trouble) hee arriued in the Court of king *Lisuart*: where it was already known how *Amadis* had ended the adventures of the Firme Island, & gained the signorie thereof: in like sorte how hee was departed from thence secretly, in great anguish.

Nevertheless they knew nothing of the cause thereof, except those whom I before haue tolde you of. Thus *Guillan* entered into the hall, having about his neck the shield of *Amadis*, who was presently known of all the assembly, wherefore they flockt about him to heare what he would say, but the king was first, who demanded what newes hee had of *Amadis*. It may please your maiestie, answered *Guillan*, I knowe none: nevertheless, if it please you I will before the Queen recite how I did finde his armour, sword, and his shield, which heere you may see. Truly said the king, I am very well pleased, for since hee was her knight, it is reason that she first know what is become of him. Saying so, hee tooke *Guillan* by the hand, & led him where the Queen was. Then *Guillan* kneeling downe, said vnto her weeping. Madame, not many daies since I found the armour of *Amadis*, with his shield left all alone hard by a fountaine, which is called the fountain of the plaine fieldes: wherewithall I was so sorrowful, that euen at the same instant I fastned the shield vpon my selfe, leaving in it the keeping of two Gentiewomen, that were in my company, vntill that I had gone through the cuntry, to enquire where hee was become. But I was neither so fortunate to finde him, nor so happy to heare any newes of him, wherefore knowing the desert of so good a knight, who had neuer any desire, but to employ himselfe to doe you seruice, I determined seeing I could not bring him to you, to bring you his armes, as witnesse of the dory which I doe owe both to your Maiestie, and also to him: the which you may command if you please, to be set in an open place,

place, where euery one may see them, as well to heare news of him, by such strangers as ordinarily repair vnto his Court, as also to encourage all such as follow armes, to take example by him that was owner of them: who by his high knight-hood, hath gained the chiefest reputation amongst all those that euer buckled cuirasse on their backs. When the Queene vnderstood such news of *Amadis*, neuer was any Lady more sorrowful, and answered *Guillan*: It is great pittie for the losse of so good a Knight: for I am sure that many at this day do weep, which will be sorry for his losse: and I giue you most hearty thanks for that which you haue done for him and me together: assuring you, that those which will put themselves forward to find him shall giue me and all other Ladies cause to wish them wel for his sake, which was so much at their commandement. But if the Queene for these newes was any whit lorry, the king and those of his company were no lesse sad: yet was it nothing to the griefe which *Oriana* sustained. For if before she was vexed for the great fault which she had committed, at that instant her paine redoubled with so great a melancholy, that it was impossible for her to stay there any longer, but she withdrew her selfe into her chamber. And casting her downe vpon her bed she began to cry: Ah wicked woman that I am, I may now well say, that all the felicity that euer I had is but a plaine dreame, and my torment is a very certaine truth, seeing that if I receiue any contentment, it is onely by the dreames which do nightly solicite me, for when I awake all forward Fortune afflicteth my poore spirit, so as if the day be vn-

to me a grieuous martyrdom, and darkens all my brightnes, and bereaues me of all pleasure and comfort, but that I may sleepe I thinke that I am better, my sweet friend, but being awake I am quite deprived of that great joy, maketh me too much to feel his absence. Ah my eyes, no more weep, but sobs of teares, you are much abused, seeing that being thus you onely behold him that contenteth you: and no sooner opened, but all the torment in the world commeth at once to blinde them: at the least this death which I feele so needeth hand shall deliuer me from this care: and you sweet friend may be reuenged of the most ingratefull woman that euer was borne. Then like a furious woman she rose vp, determining to throw her selfe headlong from the window downe to the ground: but *Amadis* who had followed her pretending such an inconuenience stayed her, setting before her the misery which she might get, if it were but known that she were so minded: and moreouer she did assure her that *Amadis* would shortly returne, saying vnto her: How now Madam, where is the constancy of a Kings daughter, and that wisdom for which you are so much renowned? Haue you already forgotten the mischief that was likely to haue happened vnto you, by meanes of the false newes that *Arcalins* brought vnto the Court this last yeare? And now because *Guillan* hath found my Cousins armes, is it therefore likely that he should be dead? Believe me, you shall see him againe shortly, & he wil come vnto you so soone as hee hath seene your Letters.

This Counsell was authorisid with such perswasive reasons, that *Oriana* ceased part of her torment:

But

But yet these newes so greatly troubled her minde, that had it not bene for the wisdom of *Mabils* (who often times perswaded her to be quiet) there had happened a merueilous inconuenience: but in the end shee knew so well how to preuaile with her, that shee resolued vpon this, that the Gentlewoman of Denmark would bring him againe. And as they were in these tearmes, one came to tell them that the knights and Gentlewomen which *Guillan* had deliuered from prison were arrived, wherefore *Mabils* seeking to withdraw *Oriana* from fancies, brought her where the Queene was, vnto whom the two Gentlewomen (that had kept the shield of *Amadis*) recited the lamentation which they had seene an Esquire make, when he knew the Armour and Shielde that *Guillan* had found vpon the side of the Fountaine of the plaine field. The King was likewise present in whose eyes stood a flood of

Teares, thinking assuredly that *Amadis* was dead. Then *Ladassin* and his fellows were seene to come in, who brought with them *Gandalod* prisoner, together with the other knight, whom they presented vnto the king on the behalfe of *Guillan*, declaring vnto him both the manner of the Combat, the talke that passed betweene *Gandalod* and *Guillan*, and also how that during their incounter, the knights that were in the deepe dungeon of his tower had found the meanes to deliuer themselves. Is this true said he to *Gandalod*, I caused not long since thy father to be burned in this citty, for his great treason, and thou shalt likewise be there hanged with thy companion, because thou hadst conspired my death. Then forthwith he commanded them to bee hanged ouer the Citty wales right ouer against the place where *Barfinan* was burned as it hath been recited vnto you.

#### CHAP. IX.

How the Faire Forlorne being in the poore Rocke with the Hermit, there arrived a ship, in the which was Corisanda, who sought for her friend Florestan, and of that which happened vnto them.



Ne day the Faire Forlorne being set hard by the Hermit, neere vnto the dore of their little house, the olde man said vnto him: I pray you my son, tel me the dream that you had, when you awaked on a suddaine sleeping hard by me neere vnto the Fountaine of the plaine field. Truly father answered he, I will willingly tell it you, and I most humbly beseech you likewise to let mee vnderstand, be it for good, or bad, what you thinke thereof. After-

wards hee recited the dreame in such sort as you haue heard, keeping onely the names of the Gentlewomen secret.

Then the Hermit remained a good while pensue, when he beholding the Faire Forlorne, he began to smile, and said vnto him: My child, I assure you, that you haue now more cause to reioyce then eueryou had: but yet I would haue you know how I vnderstand it. The darke chamber in the which you thought your selfe to be, out of which you were not able to com forth.

forth, signifieth this great tribulation wherein you now are. The Gentlewomen which afterwarde opened the doore vnto you, are some of your friends that continually sollicit your cause vnto the Lady whom you so feruently loue, with whom they haue so much preuailed, that they shall withdraw you from this place. The Sunne-beame which went before them, are Letters of reconciliation that she sendeth vnto you: by meanes whereof you shall leaue me. The fire that inuironed this lady, sheweth the great loue, together with the sad laments that she maketh for your absence, as well as you doe for hers. And by the faire garden whereunto you did beare her, drawing her forth of the flame, signifieth the great pleasure which you shall both haue at your meeting. Truly my Son, I know that seeing the habit and estate whereunto I am called, such speeches as these become me not at all: neuerthelesse knowing that it is for your good, I am sure that I do not amisse in this counselling a person so comfortlesse as you are. Herewithall the *Faire Forlorne* fell vpon the ground to kisse his feete, reioysing that he had happened into the company of a person so holy, that knew how to comfort him so well in his aduersity, desiring very heartily, that whatsoeuer the holy man had told him, might so come to passe, and he said vnto the Hermit, my Father seeing it hath pleased you to do me so much good, as to expound this dreame, I pray you likewise to tell me the meaning of one other, which I dreamed the night before I came from the firme-land.

Then did hee recite it word by word vnto him. Whereupon

the aged man answered him, My son, by this you may plainly see that which already is happened vnto you, for I assure you that the place ouer shadowed with trees, where you thought that you were, & the great nūber of people which at the first made such great ioy about you, signifieth the firm Island which you haue conquered, to the great pleasure of all the inhabitants thereof. But the man which came vnto you with a boxe full of bitterness, is the messenger of the Lady that gaue you the letter: and your selfe doth know better then any other, whether he brought you bitterness or no, by the discourse which he had with you. The sorrow which afterwards you did behold in the persons which before were so ioyfull, are they of the Isle, who at this present are very heavy for your absence. The apparell which you threw off, are the teares which you haue shed. The stony place wherein you entred inuironed with water, this rock witnesseth to you what it is. The religious mā that did speake vnto you in an vnknown language, is my selfe, who do instruct you in holy writ, which you neither vnderstand, nor can comprehend. Father answered the *Faire Forlorne*, I know verily that you say the truth which giueth me great hope of that which you haue declared of the other: but the continuall griefe and melancholie wherein I liue, hath already ouer-mastered mee, that I belecue if the good which you promise vnto me do not the soon cease my care, death will first seize vpon my sorrowfull corps.

Norwithstanding the Hermit knew how to perswade him so well, that from thenceforth he shewed a little merrier countenance then before he had done, and began to

turne his sorrow to some solace, vnto angle for fish with two Nephewes of the olde man, that kept him company. Neuerthelesse, the most part of the time he with-drew himselfe into a secret place hard by the sea side, which was ouershadowed with diuerse sorts of trees: and there oftentimes he cast his sight vnto the Firme-Island, which put him in remembrance of those fauours whereunto fortune had called him, & the wrong that *Oriana* did vnto him, hee hauing neuer offended. Alas, saide he, haue I deserued this entertainment to be banished, without hauing offended so much as in thought? Truly deere friend, if my death were agrieable vnto you, you haue meane enough to giue it me more speedily, without making mee thus to liue in languishing. The onely deniall of your good grace, the very first day that you accepted me for your knight, had beene sufficient at that time to haue made me die a thousand deaths. Many other lamentations did the *Faire Forlorne* every day make, in this solitary place, wherein he tooke so great pleasure, that oftentimes hee there passed away both the day and the night: so as one time finding himselfe more frolicke in his minde, then of a long time he had beene, hee made this song following.

*Sith that the victory of right deseru'd,  
By wrong they do withhold for which I seru'd;  
Now sith my glory thus hath had a fall,  
Glorious it is, to end my life withall.  
By this my death likewise my woes release,  
My hope, my ioy, my inflamed loue doth cease.  
But euer will I minde my during paine:  
For they to end my glory, and my gaine,  
My selfe haue murdered, and my glory slaine.*

Thus the *Faire Forlorne* passed away the time, waiting vntill fate or better fortune should bring him forth of this miserie. But it

happened that one night lying vnder the trees (as hee was accustomed) about the breake of day hee heard very nigh him the sound of a most sweete instrument, wherein he tooke so great pleasure, that he gaue attentiu care thereunto a good while, amazed notwithstanding from whence it might proceede. Knowing the place to be solitary that no other there remained but the hermit, his two Nephewes, and himselfe: wherefore he rose vp, without making any noyse at all, and approached more neere to see what it might be. Then he beheld two young Gentlewomen sitting by a fountaine, who (tuning their voyces to the sound of a lute) did sing a most pleasant song: neuerthelesse fearing to trouble their mirth, hee stood still a great while without being by them perceiued. Afterwards he came forth and disclosed himselfe, saying vnto them: Truly Gentlewomen your musicke hath made me this day to loose Matins, for the which I am very sorry. When these women heard him speake (hauing not seen him at all vntill that time) they were much afraide. Norwithstanding, one of them more bold then her fellow, answered him: My friend, we did not thinke to offend you with this our mirth, but seeing we haue so luckily found you, tell vs (if it please you) who you are, and how this desert place is called. In truth faire Gentlewomen, saide the *Faire Forlorne*, this place is called the poore Rock: wherein there liueth an Hermit, vpon the top thereof in his little hermitage. As for me, I am a poore man that keep him company, doing great and hard penance for the sin and wickednesse which I haue committed. Gentle friend, answered they,

may



may we finde in this place (for two or three dayes onely) any house wherein we may place at ease a Lady both rich & mighty, so tormented with loue, that she is euen at deaths dore therewith. Trust me said he, there is no other lodging in this Rock, but the little cabinet wherein the Hermit doth lie, and one other that I do sleepe in sometime: but if the Hermit will lend you mine, I am content (to do you a pleasure) to lie in the meane time abroad in the fields, as I commonly vse to do. The Gentlewoman gaue him hearty thanks, and bidding him good morrow they departed towards a Pavillion: within the which the *Faire Forlorne* beheld a most beautifull Lady vpon a bed. Wherupon he knew that the same was shee of whom they told him. But looking farder off, he did see foure armed men walking by the Sea side, who scouted abroad, whilst fise others did take their rest, and he also perceiued a shippe at Anchor well appointed. The Sun was already vp, when he heard the Hermitage bell to ring, which made him go vp thither. Where he found the Hermit making him ready to go to seruice: vnto whom he tolde that there were people newly arriued in the Rock, and that if it were his pleasure, hee would willingly goe call them to heare Mattins. Goe then answered the Hermit, and I will stay for them. And as he went downe the Rocks, he met the Lady, whom the knights carried toward the hermitage: wherefore he returned, to helpe to make ready the Hermit, who seeing the Lady was come, began seruice. Then the *Faire Forlorne* being amongst the women, began to remember the time when he was in the Court of king *Lisuart*, and of

the pleasure hee was wont to haue with the Princeesse *Oriana*, & there-withall he began to weepe so bitterly, that the Gentlewomen perceiued it, and did very much wonder thereat. Notwithstanding they thought that it was for the contrition of his sinnes, and seeing him young, sayre, and comely, they could not thinke what to presume thereof. When the Hermit had made an end of seruice, they came to salute him, praying him for Gods sake, to lend them some little chamber for their Lady (who was wearie of the Sea, and extremely sicke) wherein she might take her rest, for a day or twaine. In truth faire Ladies, answered he, there are here no more then two small Cabinets, in one of them I remaine (and if I can so long as I liue, neuer woman shall come therein) and the other is for this poore man, which doth such great penance, wherein sometimes he sleepe, and I would be very sory that he should bee put out thereof against his will. Father said the *Faire Forlorne*, do not let for me to doe them a pleasure, for I am very well content for this time to haue no other lodging then vnder the Trees. Well said the hermit, let it be so for Gods name. Then the *Faire Forlorne* conducted them vnto his Cabinet, where the Gentlewomen set vp a rich bed for their Mistresse, who was forthwith carried thither. And because it was told the *Faire Forlorne* that her sicknesse proceeded of extreame loue, he tooke more heede to her behaviour then to any of the rest: and he perceiued that her eyes were still full of Teares, and her sighs were at commandement: Wherefore hee drew the two Gentlewomen apart, whom in the morning hee

had found playing on the Lute, & earnestly entreated them to tell the occasion of the great sicknesse that their Mistresse sustained. Friend answered they, if you marke her well you shall find that she is very faire, although that now her disease hath abated a great part of her beauty: for shee hath neither comfort nor ioy by reason of the absence of a knight that shee goeth to seeke in the house of King *Lisuart*, whom she so feruently loueth, that if short time doe not graunt some ease to her passion, it is impossible that her life should continue long. When the *Faire Forlorne* heard king *Lisuart* named, hee could not re-fraine from teares, and hee had a greater desire then before, to know the name of the knight that shee loued: therefore he requested them very earnestly to tell him his name, in good sooth answered the Gentlewoman, hardly may you knowe him: for hee is not of this countrey: yet is hee esteemed the best knight in the world, next vnto two other of his kin. Alas my faire gentlewoman sayd hee, for Gods sake name him vnto me, and the two other whom you so much extoll. Truly answered they, we are contented, vpon this condition, that first when wee haue done, you doe tell vs whether you bee a knight or not, and afterward your name. I am content therewith, sayde the *Faire Forlorne*, so great is my desire to knowe that which I demand of you. Then one of them sayd vnto him: the knight which this Lady loueth, is called *Don Florestan*, brother to the good Knight *Amadis de Gaule*, and to *Don Galaor*, and hee is the sonne of King *Petion of Gaule*, and of the Countesse of *Salandria*. You say true answered hee, and I verily belecue that you

cannot say so much good of him as hee deserueth: What? sayde the Gentlewoman, doe you know him then? It is not long sayd he, since I did see him in the house of Queen *Briolant*, for whom his brother *Amadis*, and his Cousin *Agric* did fight against *Abises* and his two sonnes, and thither hee with his brother *Galaor* arriued some fewe dayes after the combate: and I thinke him to be one of the fairest knights in the worlde. As concerning his prowesse, I haue many times heard *Don Galaor* himselfe speake thereof, who fought a combate with him as hee sayde. This combate sayde shee, was the cause that hee left my Lady in the selfe same place, where they first knew one another. I thinke then answered the *Faire Forlorne*, that shee is called *Carisanda*. You say true sayd the Gentlewoman. In truth answered he, I am no lesse sory for her sicknesse then before, for I knowe *Florestan* to bee so wise, and of so good behaviour, that I am sure hee will doe all that which she shall command him. God grant it sayd shee, but seeing wee haue satisfied you, acquite you of your promise and tell vs who you are. Gentlewoman answered the *Faire Forlorne*, I am a knight who haue heretofore had more pleasure in the vanities of the worlde then now I haue, for the which I heere abide sharpe penance, my name is the *Faire Forlorne*. By my truth said one of them, you haue taken a good course, if you are able therein to continue. And because there is no reason now to leaue our Mistresse all alone in this her great melancholy, wee bid you farewell, and doe goe vnto her to passe away the time with such musike as you did heare this morning.

Then the *Faire Forlorne* departed, but hee was presently called backe againe, for as soone as the gentlewomen had played two or three songs, they rehearsed vnto *Corisanda* all that hee had saide of *Florestan*, and that the poore man which did penance, had seen him not many dayes before. Wherefore she sent to pray him to come vnto her, and in the meane while shee sayde vnto her women: assure you this Hermit that knoweth *Florestan*, must needs be some great personage disguised. At the same instant the *Faire Forlorne* was come, and she sayd vnto him: my friend, my women tell me that you know *Don Florestan*, and that you doe very well loue him, I pray you (by the holy order that you professe) to tell me what acquaintance you haue had with him, and where you did last see him. Then the *Faire Forlorne* told her more of him then hee had tolde vnto the Gentlewomen, and how hee knew very well, that he and his brethren, with their Cousen *Agrais*, had beene in the *Firme Island*: for he had there left them, and neuer since had seene them. Ah sayd she, I beleeue that you are something a kinne vnto him, seeing the great good you report of him. Madame, answered the *Faire Forlorne*, I loue him intirely, as well for his valour, as also for that his father made me knight, which maketh me the more bounden vnto his children: and I am very sory for the newes that I haue hard of *Amadis* before I did come vnto this desert. What are they sayd *Corisanda*. Truly answered hee, comming hither I met with a Gentlewoman at the entry of a Forrest which sung a pleasant song for the tune, but very pittifull by reason of the matter that it con-

tayned. Then I enquired of her who made it, and shee answered me, that it was a knight, vnto who God (if it bee his pleasure) send more ioy then hee had when hee made it, for his song doth very wel witnesse, that his grieve proceeded from too extreame loue. And because I liked it wel, I remained with the Gentlewoman so long vntill I had learned it: moreover she did assure me that *Amadis* did make it, and that he did shew her the song at that time when by his melancholy hee was most mastered. I pray you sayde *Corisanda*, teach it vnto these two Gentlewomen, for by that which you say, loue held him then in as great bondage as he now holdeth me. I will doe it answered hee, both for the honour of him and also of you, althought it be a thing farre vnseemely for me to do. Herewithall he withdrew the Gentlewomen a part, and taught them the song with the tune thereof, wherein they tooke great pleasure, because the *Faire Forlorne* did sing it with a lamentable and soft voyce, which yeelded more harmony and aptnesse, both to the tune and the matter, then he could if hee had beene at more liberty in body and minde: and the Gentlewomen learned it so cunningly, that many times after they did sing it before their Mistresse, who tarried foure dayes in the poore Rocke, & the fift shee embarked. But before she departed, shee demanded of the *Faire forlorne*, whether hee would remaine any long time in that place. Madame, answered he, nothing but my death shall drawe me from hence. I doe much maruaile sayde *Corisanda*, what moueth you to doe so: yet seeing that you are in such a minde, I will in no sorte dissuade you from it: so

so saying, she entred into her ship with her companie, bidding the Hermit farewell. Then setting saile, the winde was so fauourable, that in fewe dayes after they landed in Great Brittain, and arriued in the Citie of London, where at that time King *Lisuart* remayned. Who knowing of her arriuall, hee together with his Queene receiued her royally. The King to honour her the more, caused her to bee lodged in his owne Pallace. And some few dayes after, as they were discourting together, the Queen sayd vnto her, Good Cousen, the King charged mee to tell you, that hee taketh your comming hither to see him so thankfully, that if you haue any thing to doe with him, he will employ his best meanes to pleasure you. Madame, answered *Corisanda*, I giue the King most humble thanks, and your grace also: there is nothing that importuneth mee more, then the absence of *Don Florestan*, whom I thought to haue found in this Court. Cousen sayde the Queene, wee haue at this time no other newes, of him, but that hee is gone in search of his brother *Amadis*, who of late is lost, we not knowing the cause thereof. Then shee tolde her how hee had wonne the *Firme Island*, and that afterwards hee departed secretly from his fellows: especially the manner how *Don Guillian* did finde his armour, and what diligence hee had vied to vnderstand what was become of him. When *Corisanda* did see that shee was frustrate of her intention, and vnderstood the losse of *Amadis*, the teares stood in her eyes, saying: Alas what will become of my Lord and friend *Florestan*, I am sure (considering the loue that he beareth vnto his brother) that if hee cannot finde him,

he will lose himselfe, so that I shall neuer while I liue see him any more: the Queene comforted her so well, that shee receiued some hope to heare news from him very shortly. Now *Oriana* was by, who had heard all this talke, and the loue that *Corisanda* did beare vnto *Don Florestan*, brother to *Amadis*: for which cause shee had the more desire to doe her honour, so as she and *Mabila* did ordinarily keepe her company, taking great pleasure to heare her recite the loue that passed betwixt her and her friend, the cause of their parting, and the trauell which afterwards shee had endured in hope to finde him. And as shee made this discourse, she remembered her of the time when shee remayned in the poore Rocke, where shee found a knight doing penance, who during her abode there, taught a song vnto her women: which *Amadis* had made being in great melancholy, as the companion of the Hermit had assured her. Madame answered *Mabila*, I pray you seeing your Gentlewomen haue learned it, commaund them to sing it before my Lady *Oriana*: for I shall bee very glad to heare it, seeing it is made by *Amadis*, who is mine owne Cousen. Beleeue mee sayd *Corisanda*, I am very well content, assuring you that it canot better please you then it will delight me, because of the neer nesse of the linage that is betwixt my Lord *Florestan* & him. Then shee sent for the Gentlewomen *Lutes*, who played and did sing the song of *Amadis* so sweetly, that it ministred both mirth & mone vnto the Ladies which vnto them listened: ioy to the eare, content for the melody, and grieve to the minde, in feeling his passion, that was so grieuously pained. But

*Oriana* whom it most of all touched, tooke more heede vnto the matter then the musicke, knowing the mischief whereof she was cause, and the great reason that *Amadis* had to complaine. Whereupon shee was suddenly stricken with so great sorrow, that she went into a wardroabe, ashamed for the teares that had issued from her eyes in so good a company, from which she could not abstain. Notwithstanding as shee withdrew her selfe, *Mabila* (to couer this fault) sayd vnto *Corisanda*: So farre as I perceiue, *Oriana* is not well, wherefore I am constrained to leaue your company at this time, and to goe helpe her: neuerthelesse, if it pleased you, I would willingly knowe what was the behavior of him that taught your Gentlewomen the song, and wherefore he remayned in the poore Rocke: for no doubt hee did then knowe what was become of *Amadis*. Then *Corisanda* rehearsed vnto her in what sorte they did finde him, and the talke he had with her: but sayd shee, I did neuer see a man more pensive, nor more faire, considering the miseries he endured. *Mabila* very suddenly began to suspect that it was *Amadis* himselfe, who being so far from all hope, had chosen such a solitary place, because hee would not be seene of any living wight, and at the same instant shee departed towards *Oriana*, whom shee found weeping bitterly. Vnto who (with a smiling countenance) shee sayd. Madame, in seeking after newes, sometimes one learneth

more then hee thinketh vpon, wisse this which I haue vnderstood of *Corisanda*. The knight so sad, that is named the *Faire Forlorne*, in the poore Rocke, is *Amadis* and no other, who desirous to obey your commandement hath in such sort withdrawne himselfe, because hee would neither be seene of you, nor of any other person: therefore I pray you reioyce, for you shall shortly drawe him hither againe. Alas answered *Oriana*, may it be possible? I would I might bee so fortunate to imbrace him in my armes before I die, and beleue me Cosen (sayd shee to *Mabila*) that if I may once againe haue him, I will giue him such an occasion to pardon me, that he shall forget all the wrong which I haue done vnto him. But then very suddenly like a person doubtfull and fearefull to lose that which shee loued, shee began to make a greater lamentation then before, crying: Ah my Cosen, haue pittie vpon mee, I am in worse case then if I were dead, vnforgotten woman as I am: I haue iustly lost by my folly, him vpon whom my good, my ioy, and my life doth wholly depend. How now Madame, sayd *Mabila*, euen when most hope is presented vnto you, doe you then most torment your selfe? Assure you vpon my faith, if the Gentlewoman of *Denmarke* do not bring you newes of him, that I will finde the meanes to supply her want: being sure, that it is he which nameth himselfe the *Faire Forlorne*, and no other, and repose you vpon me herein.

CHAP.

## CHAP. X.

*How the Gentlewoman of Denmarke going in search of Amadis, after long trauell, costing along many strange Islands, by chance shee arrived in the poore Rocke, where Amadis was, who was called the Faire Forlorne, whom shee knew, & how they returned together towards Oriana.*



En whole dayes did the Damosell of *Denmarke* remaine with the Queene of *Scotland*, nor so much for her pleasure, nor for to rest herselfe from the stormes of the Sea, as for the desire shee had to learne some newes of *Amadis*, in the countrey wherein shee thought assuredly to finde him: being assured that if she should returne vnto her Mistresse, without bringing her some newes, that she could not afterwards liue one houre, knowing in what anguish shee had left her. Neuerthelesse, not being able at that instant to take any better course in her affaires, after shee had vsed all the diligence therein that possibly shee could, shee determined to returne into Great *Brittaine*, so sorrowfull as might be. Then shee caused a ship to be ready, wherein shee embarked: but the destinies pitting these two persons, would in this matter make manifest how much they could performe, in giuing worldlings to vnderstand, that no man (how valiant or discrete soeuer) can helpe themselves without their diuine ayde. For as soon as the Mariners had weighed their anchors & hoysed their sailes, hoping to set their course for *London*, the winde and tempest rayed such a storme, that without any storage at all, the shippe was tossed with so great rage, that the Mariners and all the rest despairing of health, expected no other buriall

but in the fishes bellies. And thus they remayned two dayes and two nights, not knowing where they were, much lesse what they should doe. In the end, the Sea being appeased, and the storme past, about the breake of day they discovered the poore Rocke, where they took landing: and because some of the Mariners (who knew the place) did tell the Damosell of *Denmarke*, that *Andabod* the deuout Hermit had there his residence, shee determined to goe heare diuine seruice, & to giue God thanks for the good that hee had done for them in deliuering them from such perill: and without longer stay shee began to goe vp the Rocke, accompanied with *Darin* and *Enil*. At the same time the *Faire Forlorne* (who by chance had passed that night vnder the trees, as hee was accustomed) perceiued them, and seeing that they came towards him, because hee would not be seene hee turned another way, and got to the Hermitage before them, where hee found the Hermit ready to say seruice. But hee tolde him that there were people newly arrived, who were comming vp the Rocke, and therefore it were good to stay, if he pleased, vnto the which the Hermit willingly agreed. At the same time was the *Faire Forlorne* so leane, wanne, and so tanned with the heat of the Sunne, that hee could hardly be knowne for *Amadis*, for his continuall weeping made such furrowes in his face, that there was

nothing to bee discerned but skin and bone. And as the Gentlewoman and her company entred into the Chappell, hee was vpon his knees lifting vp his eyes to the heavens and praying that either by his speedy death his care might be ended, or in prolonging his dayes some present comfort might be afforded vnto him. Whilest he was thus praying, the Hermit begane his seruice, during which time the *Faire Forlorne* did not once looke vp, to beholde any of them arrived vntill it was ended, who casting his eyes vpon them, hee knew the Damosell of *Denmarke* & the rest. Therewithall hee felt such a motion that (both by reason of his great weakenesse, as also by seeing of her that put him in minde of all his martyrdome) he fell downe all along vpon the ground, wherefore the Hermit thinking that hee had bene dead, cryed out: Ay me is he gone? then God haue mercy vpon his soule. Saying so, a flood of teares fell from his eyes downe vpon his long hoary beard: Then he sayd vnto the Damosell of *Denmarke*: I pray you Gentlewoman for charity sake, command your Esquires that they may helpe mee to beare my fellow into his chamber, for so farre as I see it shall bee the last good that wee can doe for him. Whereupon *Enil* and *Darin* tooke him vp, neither of them knowing him. But the Damosell of *Denmarke* demanded of the Hermit what he was. Truly answered hee, it is a knight which liueth here in penance. Trust me sayd the Damosell, hee hath chosen a very austere life, and in a very desert place. Hee hath done it, answered the Hermit, to separate himselfe from the vanities of the world. Verily sayde the Gentlewoman, seeing

you assure me that he is a knight, I will see him before I depart: and if there be any thing within the ship, which may serue his tume, I will cause it to bee left for him. It shall be well done answered hee, but so farre as I see, he is so neare his end, that I belecue hee will ease you of that labour. Herewithall the Damosell entred into the little chamber where the *Faire Forlorne* was layd, who seeing her so neere vnto him, knew not what he should do: for hee thought that making himselfe to be known, he should transgresse the commandement of his *Oriana*, and also if shee departed, and he not discovered, hee should remaine voyde of all hope. In the end he concluded that it were lesse hurtfull for him to die, then his Lady should be displeased, therefore hee determined for resolution not to manifest himselfe in any sort vnto the Damosell of *Denmarke*, who sayd vnto him. My friend I haue been enformed by the Hermit that you are a knight, and because all Gentlewomen are greatly bound vnto good knights, for the benefite and pleasures that they commonly receiue at their hands in defending them, and deliuering them from many and great dangers, I had a great desire before I departed to see you, to giue vnto you such provisions as are in my ship, that shall be necessaric for your health. Notwithstanding, he answered her nothing, neither did hee any other thing but lament and sigh: and because that in that little Cell wherein hee remayned, there was little light, the Gentlewoman did not know whether hee were a dying or no. Whereupon she was ware of a window, which she opened, by the light whereof shee might behold him more at ease: but all the while

that she beheld him, hee neuer cast his eyes off from her, neuertheless hee spake not one word, but sighed without ceasing, like vnto a wight, whose heart was ouercharged with woe, which moued the Damosell to exceeding pittie. And comforting him in the best sorte shee could, by chance shee espied a scarre which he had vpon his face, with a blow that *Arcalaus* the Enchanter had giuen him, when hee rescued *Oriana*, as hath bene recited in the first Booke. Wherefore shee thought in her minde that without doubt this was *Amadis* whom shee sought, and at the instant shee did know that he was euen the same, & for the same cause shee being greatly amazed, cryed out, Alas what do I see? My Lord you are he that hath made me haue many a weary iourney to find you: this sayd, she embraced him. Alas my Lord sayd shee, it is now high time to extend both pittie and pardon vnto her, who (procured thereunto by some sinister report, hath brought you to this great extremitie) belecue me, doth now iustly endure a life worse then death: then did she deliuer him the Letter that *Oriana* had written vnto him. Hold sayd she, your Lady sendeth you this, and commandeth you by me, that if you be the same *Amadis* that you were wont to be, and hee who the so much loueth, that (forgetting all passed faults) you come vnto her to the Castle of *Mirefleur*, where a full satisfaction shall be made vnto you, for the sorrowes and anguishes which you haue suffered for your ouer feruent loue. Herewithall was the *Faire Forlorne* so greatly rauished, that it was a long time before hee could answer one word, but hee tooke the Letter which hee kissed without cea-

sing, and afterwards put it next vnto his heart, saying: O poore heart so long time passioned, that hardly hast thou bene able to resist such a tempest, notwithstanding the abundance of teares, which thou so continually hast distilled, that it hath almost brought thee euen to the point of death, receiue now this medicine, the which only is conuenient for thy health, and come forth of this darknes, which so long hath blinded thee, taking thy strength againe vnto thee, to serue her that of her owne free grace causeth thee to reuiue. Then opened hee the Letter which contained

The Letter of Oriana to Amadis.

**I**F great faults committed by enemie (acknowledged afterwards by humility) are worthy of pardon, what ought those to bee which are caused by too much abundance of loue? Neuertheless my loyall friend I will not deny but that I haue deserved exceeding punishment: for I ought to haue considered that at such times when any are in the greatest prosperity and mirth, then fortune cometh and overthroweth them into sorrow and misery: furthermore I ought to haue remembered me, of your exceeding vertue and honesty, which was neuer yet found faulty, and most of all though I had died, yet should I not haue forgotten the great seruitude of my pensive heart, which proceedeth from no other cause, but onely from the same wherein your owne is tyed: being certaine that so soone as any flame had bene therein quenched, mine had as suddenly bene therewithall acquainted: in such sort as the care which is both had so strange the mortall desires thereof, hath been

the onely cause to encrease the same. But I haue done amisse, like vnto them who being in the top of their felicity, and most assured of the love of those, by whom they are beloued (not being able to comprehend in them so much good) become iealous and suspicious, moued by their owne imagination, then by any reason, ouershadowing this bright happinesse with the cloud of impatience, beleeuing the report of some men (it may be wicked slanderers) of small credit, and vitiuous, sooner then the witnesse of their owne conscience, and certaine experience. Therefore my constant friend, I beseech you hartely to receiue this Damosell (as being sent from her, who acknowledgeth in all humility, the great fault which she hath committed against you) who shall (better then my letter) acquaint you with the extremities of my life, whereof you ought to haue pittie, not for any of mine own desert, but for your owne reputation, who are neither accounted cruel, nor desirous of reuenge, where you finde repentance and submission, especially seeing that no penance may proceede from you more vigorous, then that which I my selfe haue ordained for me, and the which I doe beare patiently, hoping that you will release it, restoring vnto me your good fauour and my life together, which thereupon dependeth.

Herewithall a new ioy possessed the minde of the *Faire Forlorne*, and hee quite banished the continuall melancholy which had so long tormented him: neuertheless, the perplexity wherein *Oriana* remained, in expecting newes from him, withheld part of pleasure: wherefore he praied the Damosell of *Denmarke*, to aduise her selfe what she had to do, for I feele my selfe, said he, so farre beside my selfe, that I can thinke vpon no o-

ther thing, but vpon the new restitution of my life, which I haue receiued by your meanes. I am of the opinion, answered the Damosell, seeing that these in my company do not know you, to tell them that for pittie sake, I will cary you to the *Firme Island*, only to see if by changing the aire, you may also change your malady: the which was accordingly performed. Notwithstanding, the *Faire Forlorne* before his departure, declared vnto the Hermit, how the Gentlewoman had so long sought for him, that now they were heere casually met together, onely by meere chance, and the storme which had brought her vnto the poore Rock. And for this cause my father, saide he, I am constrained to leaue you and to follow her, assuring you that so long as I liue, I shall neuer forget the good which you haue done for mee, for without your good help, I had perished both body and soule. And seeing that by your deuout praies (as I beleeuie) I haue bene preserued hitherto, I most humbly beseech you to haue your poore guest still in remembrance. And moreover to do so much for me, that hereafter you would doe your best to reforme the Monastery which I haue caused to be builded in the *Firme Island*, as heretofore I haue tolde you: the which the holy man promised to accomplish, and with the teares in his eyes, blessed the *Faire Forlorne*, who without longer stay, went aboard with the Damosell of *Denmarke*. The sailes were no sooner hoisted, and the ship lanchd out into the main, but they had so stiffe a gale in their poupe, that within a few daies after they arriued in a port of great *Brittaine*, he not being as yet knowne by any other but

the

the Damosell. Then came they on shoare and tooke their ready way, towards *Mirefleur*, where *Oriana* stayed their comming, being well aduised to amend the fault that she had made. And the Damosell in riding together with the *Faire Forlorne*, sayd. What ioy will my Lady receiue when she shall beholde you? beleue mee that neuer woman was in a more desperate case then she, when she vnderstood by *Darin*, the sorrowe that you had in receiuing her Letter: I assure you that shee was like to haue died, I doe greatly wonder how shee hath bene able vntill this time to support the passion, which she yet possesseth. And you neede not to doubt but that *Mabile* and I were greatly troubled, for none of vs did know that my brother was sent vnto you, and my Lady had expressly charged him that in no sort hee should tell vs thereof, which had likely to haue bene the cause of worse mischiefe then is yet happened. Beleue me said the *Faire Forlorne*, I was neuer in greater danger of death, and I doe maruell whereupon she framed this imagination that shee hath conceived against me, seeing that I neuer thought to doe any thing which might displease her: and although I should haue so farre forgotten my selfe, yet did I not deserue such a cruell Letter as shee did write vnto mee. For although I make not those bragges & hipocrisies that a number can doe, yet doe not I forget to measure the fauours and graces which I haue receiued at her hand: and were not this thought sown in bad ground, I am sure she would not be suspicious of the fruit thereof, seeing that both the one and the other, are wholly dedicated to serue and obey her. Alas

when *Corisanda* arriued in our hermitage, I did then verily think that my ende was come: the good Lady bewailed her passion which shee induced in louing my brother *Estreban*, too vehemently, and I died with displeasure, to be so wrongfully banished by *Oriana*. How many paines, what trauailes, what intollerable torments, haue I suffered in the poore Rocke, without receiuing consolation from any liuing creature, but the good Hermit, who perswaded mee to patience? Alas what hard penance haue I induced for her whom I neuer offended? beloeue me Damosell, I was so exceedingly troubled, that euery houre I desired death, and as often did I feare to lose my life. But I pray you imagine, the despaire wheren I remayned, when I shewed vnto the Gentlewomen of *Corisanda*, the song that I made in my greatest tribulation. And as hee would haue proceeded in discourting his dolours, the Damosell of *Denmarke* sayd vnto him, in good faith, so farre as I perceiue you haue both induced much sorrow, one for another: and therefore you must forget what is past, and amend what is to come.

With these and such like discourses thy arriued neere vnto a Nunnery, which was in the midst of the Forrest, foure dayes iourney from *London*. Doe you know sayd the Damosell, what I haue thought vpon: I thinke it for the best you doe carry heere to rest your selfe, and I will go vnto my Lady, to tell her of your arriual, which done I will send *Darin* backe againe, to let you know what you are to do. Notwithstanding I thinke it best that *Enil* should not yet know who you are no more then he now doth, & that hee should carry heere with



you to serue you: but *Durin* already vnderstandeth somewhat of the affaires betwixt *Oriana* & you, wherefore you neede not feare to disclose your selfe vnto him. Hereupon they called him, and the Damosell of *Denmarke* sayd vnto him. Brother, you were partly cause of the losse of *Amadis*, by the Letter which you carried to him, and yet so farre as I perceiue you haue not hitherto knowne him, but doe you thinke it possible that this Hermite may be my Lord *Amadis*? and neuertheless it is he without doubt, but take heede vpon your life that he be not disclosed by you neither to *Enil*, nor any other: when *Durin*

knew that his sister sayde true, neuer was man more amazed then hee: in the meane while they entered into the Nunnery, where the Damosell called *Enil* and sayd vnto him, *Enil* I pray thee carry with this knight vntill hee haue a little recovered his strength, and in the meane season my brother and I will depart about certaine busines that wee haue to doe. By Saint *Mary* answered *Enil*, I will obey whatsoeuer you shall command mee. Then they departed, and the *Paire Furlorne* remaind in the Nunnerie for the occasion aboue rehearsed.

## CHAP. XI.

*How Galaor, Florestan, and Agraies departed from the Firme-Iland, to goe seeke Amadis, of whom they could heare no tydings at all, whereupon they all returned vnto the Court of King Lisuart.*

**H**ATH bene heretofore tolde you that *Galaor*, *Florestan*, and *Agraies* departed from the Firme-Iland, to begin the search of *Amadis*, who was secretly departed from them. You must now vnderstand that after they had trauiayled thorough many strange countries (wherein they performed many worthy deedes of armes and perillous aduentures, without hearing any newes of *Amadis*) seeing that their time approached wherein they promised one another to meete in the Court of King *Lisuart*, they determined to returne thither: and they all did meete euen vpon Saint *Johns* day early in the morning at an Hermitage hard by *London*, according as they had appointed. And the first that came thither, was

*Galaor*, *Agraies* next, and shortly after *Florestan*, accompanied with *Gandalin*. Glad were they to see each other in health, but sorrowfull for the little good that they had done in this enterprise; as the teares fell from their eyes. Whereupon *Gandalin* shewing the dute of a good and faithfull seruant, said vnto them. Beleeue me Lords, all your teares cannot bring him who you desire to finde, except it be by another diligent search, which you may a fresh vndertake. And although that you haue already done your best endeauour, yet ought you not to thinke much of your labour, but seeke him better then euer you did, seeing that you are assured thoroughly what hee would haue done for euery one of you particularly, if fortune had offered any occasion. Now then

then if behoueth you to doe the like for him, for if you doe lose him in this sort, it shall not onely bee the losse of the most gentle knight in the world, but of the nearest kinsman that you haue, and ouer and besides, it will be vnto you a great blemish. Therefore my Lords I beseech you, in performing the duty of a brother, a friend, and a companion, to begin his search a fresh, without sparing therein at all either time or toile. This perswasion did *Gandalin* make, in weeping so extremely, that it greatly pittied the three knights to behold him, so as they concluded, after they had bene in the Court (if they heard not news of *Amadis*) to begin a new pursuit, & to compassse the whole world about till they had found him: and vpon this determination (after they had heard diuine seruice) they departed from the hermitage, and tooke the way towards *London*. But as they approached nere vnto the Cittie, they were ware of the King, who was already in the fields accompanied with many noble men, and valiant knights: for hee celebrated that day with all magnificence, because that vpon the same he was crowned peaceable king of great *Brittaine*, which was the principall occasion that many knights came to serue him. Who beholding *Galaor*, and his fellowes coming towards them, shewed the king thereof, and they in the mean season were hard at hand. But because *Florestan* had neuer before scene such an assembly, *Galaor* said vnto him. Brother behold the king. Now had they all three their headpieces off, wherefore some in the company did know them all forthwith except *Florestan*, the King embraced them, demanding how they

fared. Then *Florestan* alighted to kisse his hands, the which he refused. And because he was the Gentleman that did most of all resemble *Amadis*, and that heretofore he had heard speaking of him, he began to suspect that it was his brother, and therefore he saide vnto *Galaor*, I beleeue that this is your brother *Florestan*. It is he indeede; if it please your Maiestie, who hath a great desire to doe you seruice. Ah, saide the king, I would *Amadis* were now heere that I might see you all three together, what, saide *Galaor*, hath your grace heard any newes of him? No, saide the king: but what haue you heard? It may please your Maiestie, answered he, wee haue all three sought him a whole yeere, yet haue we done no good, but lost our labour, and we did thinke to haue found him here in your Court: wherefore seeing your grace hath certified me to the contrary, I am in worse hope of his recovery then before. So am not I, saide the king, for I am perswaded the heauens haue not endued him with such perfections, to forsake him after this manner, which maketh me to beleeue, that we shall very shortly heare some tidings of him. Whē they had ended their talke, they entered into the Cittie, where the Queene and the other Ladies were incontinently aduertised of their arriual, wherewith they were as glad as might bee, especially *Olinda*, the friend to *Agraies*, who very lately was aduertised, that he had passed vnder the arch of faithfull louers, and shee expected his coming with as great deuotion, as *Corisanda* did the arriual of *Florestan*. Then *Mahide* imagining to do *Oriana* a pleasure, ran to aduertise her: but she found her with-drawn into

into her chamber, where shee sawe her leaning her head vpon one of her hands, and reading in a booke, to whom she saide: Madame, will you please to come downe to see *Galaor*, *Agrais* and *Florestan*, who are now newly heere arrived? Whē she heard her speake nothing of *Amadis*, a new feare strook at her heart, so that she knew not what to doe, and the teares distilled from her eyes in such abundance, that her speech failed. Neuertheless, in the end, not being able to dissemble her griefe, shee answered *Mabila*: my cosin and sweet friend, how would you haue me to go see them? in good sooth, I haue not my minde so well setled that I may dissemble or hide that, which in their presence I ought to doe. Morouer mine eyes are ouerswollen with much weeping, and (that which worse is) it is impossible for to behold those, whom I did neuer see but in the company of your cosin, whom I haue so highly offended. Herewithall her heart was likely to haue left her sorrowfull body, and she cryed. My God how doe you permit mee wretched woman to liue, being so worthy of death? Ah my deere loue, I doe now feele a double griefe for your absence, seeing *Galaor* & the rest to returne without you, whome you loued as deere as your selfe, who knowing the iniury and wicked act that I haue committed against you, shall haue iust cause to procure my ruine, whereunto I consent with a good will, seeing that so vnadvisedly I haue bene the meanes of your losse. Herewithall she had fallen downe all along, if *Mabila* who streight espied it, had not staid her vp, saying vnto her: Madame, will you alwaies continue these strange passions? I know well

that in the end, you will publish that to your shame, which we doe most desire should be kept secret. Is this the constancy which you ought to haue, especially seeing that day by day we expect to heare good newes by the Damosell of *Denmarke*? Alas, answered shee, you speake at your pleasure, is it possible that shee may finde him, hauing the charge bur to seek him onely in *Scotland*, seeing that his brethren haue in a manner compassed all the West without hearing any newes at all of him? You abuse your selfe, saide *Mabila*, it may bee that they had found him, but that hee kept himselfe secret from them, the which he will neuer do fro your Gentlewoman, knowing that she is priuie to both your loues. And therefore be of good cheere vntill her returne, and then doe as you shall thinke good: and for this time, let vs goe if it please you towards the Queene who demandeth for you. Well, answered *Oriana*, I am content to doe what you will. Then shee dried her eyes, and went in the Queenes chamber, into the which the three knights were already entred: who seeing her comming did their duty vnto her: at the same time the King held *Galaor* by the hand, vnto whom he said: behold I pray you, how your good friend *Oriana* is impaired, since you did last see her. In good faith, answered *Galaor*, your Maiestie faith true, and I would with all my heart, that I might doe her any pleasure, that might purchase her former health. Herewithall *Oriana* smiled, saying vnto *Galaor*. God is the only comforter of all men, so that when his pleasure is, my health shall be restored, and your losses recovered, which no doubt are great, for so

deere a brother *Amadis* was vnto you. And I would that the trauell which you haue taken to seeke him in farre countries, had brought some fruit, as well for the good of you and yours, as also for the seruice of the King my father, vnto the which hee was wholly adicted. Madame answered *Galaor*, I trust that wee shall very shortly heare some newes of him, because he is the knight that I haue euermore seene most valiantly to resist all extremities. God grant it said *Oriana*, but I pray you cause *Don Florestan* to come neere vnto vs, that I may more plainly beholde him, for I haue bene tolde that hee is the knight that doth most resemble your brother *Amadis*. Whereupon *Galaor* called him, and he came & saluted *Oriana*, who rooke him by the hand, & they three sate downe together. Then the Princeesse imagined that she did verily beholde him, who being absent from her, shee had day and night before her eyes, and therefore shee began to blush and change her colour. Now had *Mabila* in like sort withdrawn herselfe, together with *Olinda*, to giue a better occasion vnto her brother *Agrais* more priuately to speake vnto her: and therewithall hee seeing them in a place so convenient, came and saluted them, then at their request he sate downe betweene them, in taking *Olinda* secretly by the hand. And she who did languish for his loue, was the gladder that might be, being sure of his constancy, by the prooffe which he had made passing vnder the arch of loyall louers in the Firme Island, in recompence whereof she would willingly haue giuen him better intertainment, if she durst. But the presence of so many witnesse, took from them

not onely the familiarity, which otherwise they would haue giuen the one to the other, but also the facility and liberty of speech, so that their eyes onely serued to supply this default, which they imployed therein according to the affections of their passioned harts. And as they were in these pleasant teares there was heard from the chamber as if it had been the voyce of some oppressed with grief, wherfore the king would needs know who it was? It may please your Maiesty answered an Esquire it is *Gandalin* & the Dwarf, who no sooner beheld the shield and armour of *Amadis*, but they made and yet continue the strangest lamentation that possibly may be. What sayde the King, is *Gandalin* here? He is if it like your Maiesty answered *Florestan*. It is very neere two monethes since I did finde him at the foot of the hill of *Sanguin*, as hee was seeking his Maister, and because I did tell him that I had already sought him in euery place, hee was content to come with me. In good faith said the King, I haue alwaies esteemed *Gandalin* for such a one, as now he sheweth himselfe to be, for I did neuer see any Esquire to loue his Master better then hee doth.

When *Oriana* heard these words, especially how that *Gandalin* was returned without *Amadis*, she was in such a perplexity, that shee was likely to haue swooned betweene *Florestan* his armes, who not knowing the cause of her sudden passion, and fearing to affright the King and the company, called *Mabila*, who forthwith doubted such a mischance. Wherefore leauing *Agrais* alone with *Olinda*, shee came vnto *Oriana*, and caused her secretly to depart, into her chamber, and to lie downe vpon her

G bed,

bed, where shee remained not long, but that rising vp as it were almost beside her selfe, shee sayd vnto *Mabila*: Cosen, you knowe that since our comming to this Citie, there hath passed neuer a day wherein wee haue not receiued sore displeasure. Therefore I am determined to withdrawe my selfe for a certaine time vnto my Castle of *Mirefleur*, for my heart telleth me that in changing the ayre, I shall also change my afflictions, and that my troubled spirit shall there finde rest. Madame, answered *Mabila*, I am of the same opinion, to the end that when the Damofell of *Denmarke* doth returne, you may more priuately speake with her, and pleasure him that shee (I hope) shall bring with her, the which would be very hard, yea almost impossible to doe in this place. As you loue mee then sayd *Oriana*, let vs not tarry any longer: for I am sure the King and Queene will very willingly giue vs leaue.

Now you must vnderstand, that this place of *Mirefleur*, was a little Castle most pleasantly seated two leagues from *London*, built vpon the side of a hill, and compassed vpon the one side with the Forrest, and vpon the other with many Orchards, full of all sorts of trees and pleasant flowers: moreover it was inuironed with many great Fountains, which watered it on all parts. And because that once the King (being there on hunting with the Queene) seeing that his daughter tooke great pleasure in the place, hee bestowed it vpon her, and afterwards she caused a Nunnerie to bee builded within a bow shot thereof, whereunto she sometimes went to recreate her selfe. But that I may not degresse ouer

farre from my first discourse, *Oriana* according as she had determined, came and demanded leaue of the King and Queene for her departure, the which was easily granted vnto her: and therefore shee purposed to depart the next day very early in the morning. And because that *Galaor* and his comforts would in like sort returne to make a new search for *Amadis*, finding the King at leasure, they sayd vnto him: If it please your Maiesty, wee were greatly to be blamed if wee should any longer deferre the seeking of *Amadis*, because my fellowes and I haue sworne neuer to rest in any place, before wee haue heard of him, therefore it may please your grace to giue vs leaue to depart to morrowe, to doe our endeauiours. My friends answered the King, I pray you deferre your departure yet a few daies longer, in the meane season I will cause thirty knights to depart from hence, who shall goe & begin this voyage: for I haue great neede of such knights as you are, for an enterprise which is happened vnto me, the which importeth me greatly both in goods and honour, it is a battaile which I haue appointed against King *Cildadan* of *Ireland*, who is a strong and mighty Prince. And to let you vnderstand the cause of this warre, *Cildadan* hath married one of the daughters of King *Abies*, whom *Amadis* slew in *Gaulle*. And although time out of minde, the realme of *Ireland* hath euer beene tributarie vnto the King of *Great Brittain*: neuertheless to haue an occasion of quarrell this *Cildadan* refuseth the payment thereof, and sendeth me word that he will put one hundred of his knights in battaile against the like number

of mine, vpon this condition; that if he be ouercome he will redouble the tribute which I doe demand of him, otherwise he will hence-forth remaine free and acquitted, the which I haue condescended vnto. So my friends, I doe most earnestly entreat you, euen as you loue mee, not to forsake mee in this my greatest neede, knowing assuredly, that my enemies are strong, and determined to worke my displeasure, but by your good helpe and the right that we haue, we shall easily ouercome them, then shall you goe seeke out *Amadis*, as you haue determined, and you shall take as many of my knights with you as you please. When they heard this request which the King did make vnto them, there was not any amongst them, that was not content to obey him, seeing his necessity so great, although that thereby the quest of *Amadis* was delaied: and at the same instant they promised not to forsake him. During this conference, *Mabila* sent to seeke *Gandalin*, for shee would speake with him before shee went to *Mirefleur*, who came vnto her: and as soone as hee did see her, he could not possibly refraine from weeping, nor she likewise. Afterwards hauing some-what eased their hearts with their exceeding teares, *Gandalin* spake first, saying vnto *Mabila*: Alas Madame, what wrong hath *Oriana* offered, not onely to you, but vnto all your lignage together, causing you to lose the best Knight in the world. Ah, how ingratefull hath she shewed her selfe vnto you for the seruice which you haue done vnto her? and that which is yet worst of all, she hath wronged him that neuer offended her either in word or thought: wherefore I may well

say, that God hath very ill bestowed vpon her that great beauty, and other excellent gifts wherewith he hath endued her; seeing they are gouerned and ouer-ruled with so great treason: and yet I am well assured that none hath lost more then she. *Gandalin* my friend answered *Mabila*, I pray thee put that thought forth of thy minde, for thou art ouer-much deceiued; seeing that all which my Lady *Oriana* hath done, hath beene for the grieve and displeasure that she conceined for one word which was ouer-lightly reported vnto her, through which she hath conceiued some occasion of ielousie, imagining, that thy maister had forgotten her, and that the affection which he did beare vnto her, was turned and bestowed vpon another. Notwithstanding, she did neuer imagine, that her letter (written in choller) should haue beene of such consequence, nor that so much hurt should haue proceeded thereof: but shee committed this fault as one that was caryed away with too extreame loue; which fault is the mote pardonable in her, for the repentance which she hath endured euer since. Ayme, saide *Gandalin*, how was the discreete vnderstanding of my Lady, and you abused at that time, imagining that my maister could only but thinke to commit so haionous a fault against her, whom before hee should haue offended, hee would haue suffered himselfe to be buried quick vnder the ground? and I pray you Madame, tel me if it please you, the roote of this mischiefe; and what was that unhappy worde, which so troubled the vertue & spirit of you both, to cause the death of the most perfect Knight that euer was borne. *Arden* the Dwarfie,

answered *Mabila*, ( thinking to speake for the aduantage of *Amadis* ) was the occasion of all this mischief. Then she recited vnto him at large, the whole discourse of the three peeces of the sword, as you haue heard in the first booke. And assure thee *Gandalin*, said she, that neither the Damosell of *Denmarke* nor I, were euer able to driue it from the fantasie of *Oriana*, but that she was forsaken by him, so as shee still perceiuing that shee was cōtrariied by the Damosell of *Denmarke* and me, did hide her selfe from vs, and vnawares to vs both she wrote vnto him, that vnhappy letter which *Darin* did bring him, by the which is sprung the whole soure of this mischief. Whereof shee hath since that time, often enough repented her: for from the first houre that she did heare of *Amadis* his losse, shee hath receiued to great sorrow and grieve, that it is impossible to receive any more: and neuertheless, we haue been in a manner very glad of her punishment, seeing that she hath not yet feared to procure his displeasure, that of her hath so well deserved. All this discourse did *Oriana* heare, who was in her wardrobe: and perceiuing that they had changed their talke, shee came forth as if she had heard nothing at all. And as shee would haue spoken vnto *Gandalin*, the teares distilled from her eyes, and she began to tremble so extreemely, that she fell downe all along vpon the floore, crying. Gentle *Gandalin*, if thou art the same that thou shouldest be vnto thy maister, reuenge vpon me forthwith, the greater miserie which vniustly he endureth. Madam, answered hee, what would you haue mee to do? I pray thee, said she, kill me: and since I haue most iniuriously

caused his death, thou oughtest not in reason to defer the reuenge thereof, for I am sure he would haue done more for thee. Saying so her speech failed, and shee swooned as though she had bin departed. But *Mabila* accustomed to such qualms, did relecue her with a present and fit remedy, that when she came to her selfe againe, she cried wringing her hands. Ah *Gandalin*, thou doest mee great wrong, thus long to defer my end: I would to God that thy father were in thy place, I am sure that hee would bestir himselfe better than thou doest. Madame, answered *Gandalin*, God defend me from such disloyalty, I should truly play the part of the noblest villaine in the world, if I should but onely thinke such a thought, much more if I should commit two so great treasons, one against you, and the other against my Lord, who cannot liue one onely houre after you. And I would neuer haue thought that so wicked counsell should haue had any place within your spirit, for the incertainty that you haue of my maister his death, who could haue hardly endured this wrong which you now in these words haue offered him, without endangering his life, for death commeth not but at the will and pleasure of God: who hath not bestowed these fauours vpon him euer since his nativity, that for any iniurie that you haue done vnto him, he will permit that he should yet die. Many other reasons and perswasions did *Gandalin* vse to *Oriana* which gaue great calke to her matildom, by means whereof she said vnto him: *Gandalin* my friend, I am determined to morrow morning to depart vnto *Minefleure*, to expect either life or death, according to the newes which the

Damosell

Damosell of *Denmarke* shall bring vnto me. And because I shall remaine there some long time, I pray thee vnder the colour of seeing *Mabila*, to come and visit vs often times, for me thinks my sorrow decreaseth when I doe see thee. Madame, answered *Gandalin*, I am ready to obey you in whatsoever it shall please you to command mee. This said, he tooke his leaue of her, and as he departed from thence, he passed by where the Queene was, who caused him to be called, and then shee saide vnto him. *Gandalin* my friend, wherefore didst thou forsake thy maister? Madame, answered he, it was sore against my will, and to my great grieve. Then hee reherfed the manner how hee departed from the hermitage, and the complaints and lamentations that he made, especially he declared what his manner and behaviour was, when he found him in the bottom of the valley, which moued the Queene vnto such pittie, that shee shed luke warme teares thereat. Whereunto *Gandalin* taking good heed, said vnto her. Madam, your highnesse hath reason to lament the losse of my Lord, for hee was your graces most humble seruant. Nay rather my good friend and protector, answered she, and I would it were the Lords pleasure, that wee might heare such speedy newes from him, as might glue vs cause to reioyce. And as they talked together, *Gandalin* cast his eye vpon *Florestan*, who was talking with *Corisande*, whome *Gandalin* knew not: but hee thought her to be one of the fairest Ladies that euer he had seene, therefore hee beseeched the Queene to tell him who shee was, the which shee did, and the occasion wherefore shee was come into great *Brittaine*, as also

the loue which shee did beare vnto *Florestan*, for whose sake shee staid at the Court: if shee doe loue him, said *Gandalin*, shee may well vaunce that her loue is imprinted vpon him, in whome all honour remaineth, and he is such a one, that hardly may his equal be found in all the world: and moreover Madame, I assure you, that if your grace did know him so well as I, you would not esteeme any knight more than he, for he is of a most valiant heart and high resolution: He seemeth to be such a one, answered the Queene, further more hee is of so good a grace, and allied to so many good knights, that it is impossible but that hee should be such a gentle knight as thou hast reported him to be. In thomeane season *Florestan* entertained his Lady and Mistris, whom hee loved most seruintly, hee not without a double for shee was passing faire, a rich Lady, and allied to the noblest houses in all great *Brittaine*. Who hauing remained yet some few dayes in the Court after his returne, shee determined to depart, and taking her leaue of the king and Queene, shee took her iourney toward her own country. Two whole daies together did *Florestan* accompany her, who promised her that so soone as he heard any newes of *Amadis*, and that the bataille was past betwixt the two Kings, *Lisuarte* and *Cildadale*, (if he remained alive) hee would come vnto her to carry with her a long time: then taking his leaue of her, hee returned vnto the Court. But you must vnderstand, that *Oriana* who had not forgotten her determination of going to *Minefleure*, departed the next morning with her traine, where shee had not long remained, but that shee perceiued the amendment of her

health, and with the same, her hope increased to see him, whom shee so greatly desired. And because that the king had appointed, that during her abode in that place of *Mirefleur*, the gate should continually be kept, and that no body should enter therein: *Oriana* foreseeing (for the great desire shee had that it should be so) the coming of *Amadis*, shee sent to tell the Abbess, that shee should send vnto her the keyes of the Nunnerie gardens, to walke thither sometimes for her recreation, the which shee accomplished, which were hard adioyning to the Castle, but yet inclosed with very high walles. And one day as *Oriana* walked there, accompanied onely with *Mabila*, seeing the place fauourable and fit for her purpose, as if *Amadis* were returned, she began to thinke of him in such sort, and vpon the pleasure she should receiue by his presence, that in speaking to herselfe she sayd: Ah my onely hope, my solace and my intire refuge, wherefore art thou not heere with mee, seeing at this present I haue the meanes both to giue vnto thee, and also to receiue of thee, such ease and contentment as we haue so oftentimes desired to receiue one of another? At the least I will not depart from hence vntil I haue wholly satisfied the hurt which by my ouer-great folly I haue procured vnto you, but I will here attend your coming. And if Fates or fortune doe permit mee to behold you here shortly, I promise you, sweete loue, to giue you the sure contentment that your seruient loue hath promised vnto you a long time: but if my misfortune shall bee an hinderance vnto your speedy returne, your only absence

shall bee the meanes to hasten my end: wherefore I beseech you to take pittie on this my weaknesse, and to succour mee, for I liue and yet languish in extreame bitterness. And seeing that euer hitherto you haue beene obedient vnto mee, without contradicting me in any sort, now the necessity being such, I pray you by that power which you haue giuen mee over you, that you would come to deliuer mee from death (which I feele to approach) and tarry not: otherwise your delay will cause you ouer late to repent my vnhappy end. In this sort did she speak as if *Amadis* had beene present, when *Mabila* brake off her thought, and *Oriana* changing her talke, sayd to her: Cousin, seeing that wee haue the keyes of this place, it were best that *Gandalin* should make some other like vnto thee, to the end that your Cousin being returned, may goe and come hither when it as often as hee shall please. It is wel aduised answered *Mabila*. And as they were consulting, there came one of the Porters sayd to *Mabila* Madam, *Gandalin* is without, who desireth to speake with you. Let him come in, answered *Oriana*, for he hath beene brought vp with a long time: and also he is foster brother vnto *Amadis*, whom God preserve. God so doe sayde the Porter, it were a great damage that so good & vertuous a knight should sustaine any hurt. Then went he forth to goe seeke *Gandalin*, and in the meane time *Oriana* said vnto *Mabila*, I pray you let how your Cousin is beloued and esteemed of all men, yea euen of the basest sort of people, that are in a manner, voyde of all vertue, it is true answered *Mabila*. Then *Oriana* sayde, what would you

haue mee doe but die? hauing beene the onely cause of the ruine of him who is more worth, then all the men in the world, and who did better loue me, then his owne selfe? Ah accursed be the houre wherein I was borne, seeing that by my folly and light suspition, I haue done vnto him so great and so much wrong: Madame, answered *Mabila*, I pray you forget these imaginations, and onely arme you with hope, for all this which you both say and doe, serueth in no sort to ease your dolour. Herewithall *Gandalin* entred in, whom *Oriana* caused to sit downe by her: and after some conference which they had together, she recited how she had sent the Damosell of *Denmark* to seeke *Amadis*: vnto whom shee had written a Letter containing that which you haue heard, and what words also she had giuen her in charge to say vnto him, therefore said the Princeesse, in thy opinion dost thou thinke that he will pardon me? Madame, answered *Gandalin*, Methinks you are little acquainted with his heart, for I am sure for the least word that is in the letter, hee will tear himselfe into an hundred peeces for you, if you do but onely command him: by more likelyhood may you imagin whether he will be glad to come see you, yea or no. And be you assured that seeing the Damosell of *Denmarke*, hath vnderaken the charge to finde him, that she will sooner accomplish the same, then all the persons in the world beside: for I do not thinke (seeing hee did hide himselfe from me) that it is euer possible for any other but shee to finde him out. For this cause Madam, you ought henceforth to liue in good hope, and to reioyce more then euer you did, to the end,

that when he returneth he may not finde your beauty in such sort decayed. What saist thou *Gandalin*? answered she laughing, dost thou thinke me now to vely? Nay rather Madame, what do you thinke of yourselfe, that in this sort you doe hide you from the sight of all men. I doe it to this end, said *Oriana*, that when thy Master commeth if he would see me for my deformity, I might in this place stay him as my prisoner. I would said he, that he were here already, and free from that other prison, wherein he remaineth for your loue. Well said *Oriana*, we haue now other matters in hand, his Cousin and I haue done so much, that wee haue gotten the keyes of these gardens, by the which at his returne, he may come in hither to see vs at all times and as often as he will, and thou must do so much, to cause two other keyes like these to be made, the which he shall keepe. In good faith, said *Gandalin*, it is well and wisely aduised. Then the Princeesse deliuered him the keyes, and without any longer staying in *Mirefleur* he returned to *London*, where he executed his commission so diligently, that the next morning he came vnto *Mabila*, vnto whom he deliuered the counterfeit keyes, who shewed them straight vnto *Oriana*, saying vnto her: behold already a good beginning, for the recompensing of the hurt which you procured vnto your *Amadis*. Mine? answered *Oriana*, I would to God he were here. I then might well call him mine, whether hee would or no. Go to, go to, let vs not come out of Gods blessing into a warme Sun, said *Mabila*; but let vs see this night if *Gandalin* haue performed his taske well, and whether the keyes will open the



dores or not. I pray you let vs, said *Oriana*. And for that present they made an end of their talke, waiting a convenient time to finish their enterprife: and according to their appointment, about mid-night (when euery one were found asleepe) they secretly rose vp, and came down into the Court, it was then in the time of the moones waining, and for that cause the darknes did beare the more sway: wherefore *Oriana* began to bee afraid, and said vnto *Mabila*: I pray thee hold me by the hand, for I am almost dead with feare. No, no, I will defend you well enough, answered shee, am not I cosin to the most valiant knight in the world? But although *Oriana* did tremble, yet could shee not refraine from laughter, & said vnto her. Let vs go then garded: for I will henceforth thinke me safe being to be garded by you, who are so valiant in deeds of armes. Seeing that you know me so well, answered *Mabila*, let vs march on boldly, and you shall see how I will finish this aduventure: wherein if I faile, I sweare that for one whole yere, I will neither hang shield about my necke, nor strike one stroke with the Launce. Heerewithall they began to laugh so loude, that they might haue bin heard very easily, and at the same instant they came vnto the dore, where they tried the first key, which they found maruailous fit, and the second also, wherefore they opened them without any difficultie, and entered into the Orchard. Then sayde *Oriana* vnto *Mabila*: Cosin all that wee haue done is to no end, except some-what more be done: how may your cosin returne when wee once haue brought him into the place, considering the height of the wals? I

haue already thought vpon that, answered shee, it shall be very easie for him by the corner of this wall, against the which wee will set by this peece of timber, and with the same and our helpe together, hee may easily mount vp to the top thereof: but it behooueth that the chiefeest helpe come from you, for you onely reape the commoditie thereof. VVee shall see what will happen, sayde *Oriana*, and therefore for this time let vs depart, and goe to sleepe, the which they did. And as they laid them downe in their bed, *Mabila* embracing *Oriana*, saide vnto her. Madame, I would that the knight for whome you attempt so many fair enterprises, were now in my place, vpon this condition, that I did goe to sleepe else-where, because I would heare none of your complaints, for the harme that hee might doe vnto you. Gentle cosin, answered shee, if he were here, I would endure very much before I would complaine of it. And so long they continued this pleasant discourse, that loue stinged them so vehemently, as euery amorous Reader may easily imagine what they wanted, to cause them sleep till the next morning that they went to hear diuine seruice: and at their returne they found that *Gandalin* was already come from *London*, whom they led with them into the garden, where they told him how they had tryed the keyes, and what words *Mabila* had vsed in the prooning of them. By my faith Madame, answered he, you do now put me in minde of some iniurious speech that I vsed of you vnto my Lord, thinking thereby to haue comforted him, but therewithall he had thought to haue taken my head from my shoulders, and shortly after I did abide

fore penance for thus leasing, because that I fell asleepe, and when I awaked, I neyther found my bridle nor saddle, for my Master rode away, and had hidden them of purpose to stay me from following of him. Wherefore seeing that he was lost, and that he had left mee, for the words that I had spoken of you, I was driuen into such a Melancholy, that I had slaine my selfe if I had had a sword to do it: friend, *Gandalin*, answered *Oriana*, thou

needest not to excuse him, I know that he loueth me without dissimulation, therefore I pray thee put mee no more in remembrance of that mischiefe, whereof I am the chiefe cause, except thou wilt force my Soule and body to part asunder, for thou knowest that I stand betwene life and death, according to the newes that the Damofell of *Denmarke* shall report vnto mee.

## CHAP. XII.

How King Lisuart being set at the Table, there came before him a strange knight armed at all points, who desired him: the conference that Florestan had with him, and how *Oriana* was comforted with the good newes that she receiued from Amadis.

**K**ing *Lisuart* being ready to rise from dinner as *Galaor* and *Don Florestan* were taking their leaue of him, to conduct *Corisanda* onward of her iourney, there entred into the hall a strange knight armed at all points, except onely his head-peece, and gauntlets. Who kneeled before the King, and deliuered vnto him a Letter sealed with five seales, hee said vnto him. It may please your Maiesty to command this Letter to be read that you may vnderstand the cause of my comming vnto you. Then the king tooke the Letter and read it, and because it referred to the knights report, he answered him thus. Friend you may performe your charge when it shall please you. Hereupon the knight rose vp, and said aloud, King *Lisuart* I desire thee, and all thy allies in the behalfe of the mighty Princes, *Famangomad* Giant of the burning Lake, *Carla-*

daque his Nephew, Giant of the inuincible Mountaine, *Mandasabull* his brother in Law, Giant of the vermilion Tower, *Don Quadragant* brother to the late decessed King of *Abies* of *Ireland*, and *Arcalaus* the enchaunter: who doe all send thee word by me, that they haue sworne the death of thee and thine. And the better to accomplish this their enterprife, they will all come in the aid of king *Cildadan*, & be of the number of his hundred knights who will assuredly destroy thee. Notwithstanding if thou wilt giue thy daughter and heire *Oriana*, vnto the faire *Madasima*, daughter to the most redoubted *Famangomad*, to serue her for her Gentlewoman, they will let thee liue in peace, and be thy friends, for they will marry her with the Prince *Basigant*, who doth well deferue to be Lord, both of thy Land and Daughter also. Therefore King *Lisuart* chuse thee of these two conditions the best, either peace, which I aduise thee

to except, or the most cruell warre that may happen vnto thee, hauing to doe with such mighty and redoubted Princes. When the King had long giuen care vnto him (to shew that he made small account of such threats) he smiling thereat, answered him. Trust mee Knight, they that gaue thee this commissi- on, doe thinke farre amisse of me, for I haue all my life time thought a dangerous warre, better then a shamefull peace, because I were worthy of great reprehension, both of God and man, being King ouer such a mighty nation, if I should now through base cowardise, suffer them to bee afflicted with cruelty. Wherefore returne and tell them, that I had rather desire all the daies of my life, that warre which they do threaten me withall, and in the end to die in battaile, then to accord vnto a peace so much to my dishonor. And because that I desire to know their mind at large, I will send a Knight of mine owne with you, who shall in like sort declare vnto them my whole intension, and yet I know not if by their lawes all Embassadors or messengers are as free from danger with them, as they are with Christian Princes. If it please your Maiestie, said the knight, that he shal go with me, I will bee his warrant, and will cōdu& him vnto the burning lake, which is in the Isle of *Mongaza*, where they are assembled with the rest of the hundred, to come and meet with you: assuring you that where soeuer *Don Quedragant* abideth, he will neuer suffer wrong to be done vnto any. Truly answered the King, hee sheweth himselfe therein to bee a noble Prince: but tell mee, if it please you, what your name is. Sir, answered hee, I am called *Landin*, Nephew

to *Don Quedragant*, who am come with him to reuenge the death of King *Abies* of Ireland mine vnckle, neuerthelesse wee could neuer yet meete with him that did slay him, and further we doe not well know whether hee bee dead or not. I beleue you well, answered the king, and I would you did certainly know him to be liuing, and that he were here, for all the rest would go forward well enough. I know well, said *Landin*, wherefore your grace saith so, you esteeme him to be the best knight in the world, neuerthelesse, I hope to bee in the battaile which is prepared for you, and there to performe such worthy deedes of armes, to your disadvantage, that it may be you will change your opinion. By our Lady, answered the King, I am sorry for that, I had a great deale rather, that you had a desire to remaine in my seruice, notwithstanding this much I tell you, that there you shall finde those that can tell how to answer you well enough. And you (sayde the Knight) many other that will pursue you vnto shamefull death. When *Florestan* heard him speake so boldly, and to the preuidence of *Amadis*, his collar was moued therewithall, and hee saide vnto *Landin*. Knight, I am a stranger in this Countrey, and none of the Kings subiects, so that for any thing which you haue saide vnto him, I haue no occasion to answer you, chiefly because that here are present, so many Knights my betters, ouer whome I will not in any sort insult. Neuerthelesse, seeing that you cannot finde *Amadis*, which is (as I thinke) for your great profit, I am ready to fight with you, and will in his stead defend the quarrel that you haue against him. And

And to the end that you may the better know me, I am his brother *Florestan*, who doe offer vnto you the combat vpon this condition, that if I can ouercome; you shall be bound to giue ouer the quarrel that you haue against him, and if you ouercome mee, reuenge part of your anger on mee. Yet thus much by the way, you must not thinke it strange that I haue beene so forward in the matter, for I haue no lesse cause to sustaine his quarrel against you (he being absent) then you haue to maintaine that of King *Abies*, whose nephew you are, being very well assured that my Lord *Amadis* is of power sufficient to reuenge me, if Fortune permit you to haue the aduantage ouer me. My Lord *Florestan* answered *Landin*, so farre as I perceiue, you haue a desire to fight, but I cannot satisfie you at this time, being in no sort at mine owne disposition, as well for the affaires which by another I am appointed to discharge, as also for that I did promise before my departure from those Lordes that haue called me into their company, not to enterprize any matter before the Battaille, that might hinder me to assist and do my best endeavour therein: and therefore at this present hold me excused, vntill the battaile be ended, then I promise you to accept the combat which you demand, and sooner I cannot intend it. Beleeue me said *Florestan*, you speake like a worthy Knight: for those that haue the like charge that you now haue, ought to forget and denie the fulfilling of their owne will, to satisfie those from whom they are sent, otherwise they might bee blamed, seeing that although you should get the victory of this

combat, to your honour, yet it might be, that their affaires might be foreflowed thorow your stay and hinderance, because they doe all repose themselves vpon your charge, therefore I am content to defer it vntill the time that you require, and because you shall not afterwards faile, behold here is my gage. At the same instant he threw downe his gloue, and *Landin* his Gauntlet. Wherefore by their owne consent all was remitted vntill the thirtieth day after the battaile. Then *Landin* tooke his leaue of the king, who deliuered vnto him a Knight that was called *Filipinel* to goe with him to defie the Giants as *Landin* had done him, and because that the Court was troubled for these unhappy newes, the king desiring to make the company merry, said vnto *Galax*, it is come into my remembrance faire knights to doe one thing princely for you, that will greatly delight you. Then he caused his youngest daughter *Leonor*, with all her Gentlewomen to be called, who were all apparelled in one liuerie, each of them hauing chaplets of flowers vpon their heads: Whom hee commanded to dance and sing, as they were accustomed to doe oftentimes. And you my darling (said he to *Leonor*) begin with the same song that *Amadis*, made for the loue of you being your Knight, Herewithall the young princeesse did sing.

#### The Song.

*Leonor* (sweete Rose, all other flowers excelleng,  
For thee I feele strange thoughts in me rebelling,

*I lost my liberty when I did gife,  
Vpon those lights, which set me in a mife,  
And of one free, am now become a thrall,*

to except, or the most cruell warre that may happen vnto thee, hauing to doe with such mighty and redoubted Princes. When the King had long giuen care vnto him (to shew that he made small account of such threats) he smiling thereat, answered him. Trust mee Knight, they that gaue thee this commission, doe thinke farre amisse of me, for I haue all my life time thought a dangerous warre, better then a shamefull peace, because I were worthy of great reprehension, both of God and man, being King ouer such a mighty nation, if I should now through base cowardise, suffer them to bee assisted with cruelty. Wherefore returne and tell them, that I had rather desire all the daies of my life, that warre which they do threaten me withall, and in the end to die in battaile, then to accord vnto a peace so much to my dishonor. And because that I desire to know their mind at large, I will send a Knight of mine owne with you, who shall in like sort declare vnto them my whole intention, and yet I know not if by their lawes all Embassadors or messengers are as free from danger with them, as they are with Christian Princes. If it please your Maiestie, said the knight, that he shal go with me, I will bee his warrant, and will cōdu& him vnto the burning lake, which is in the Ile of *Mongaza*, where they are assembled with the rest of the hundred, to come and meet with you: assuring you that wherefoeuer *Don Quadrant* abideth, he will neuer suffer wrong to be done vnto any. Truly answered the King, hee sheweth himselfe therein to bee a noble Prince: but tell mee, if it please you, what your name is. Sir, answered hee, I am called *Landin*, Nephew

to *Don Quadrant*, who am come with him to reuenge the death of King *Abies* of Ireland mine vncle, neuerthelesse wee could neuer yet meete with him that did slay him, and further we doe not well know whether hee bee dead or not. I beleue you well, answered the king, and I would you did certainly know him to be liuing, and that he were here, for all the rest would go forward well enough. I know well, said *Landin*, wherefore your grace saith so, you esteeme him to be the best knight in the world, neuerthelesse, I hope to bee in the battaile which is prepared for you, and there to performe such worthy deedes of armes, to your disadvantage, that it may be you will change your opinion. By our Lady, answered the King, I am sorry for that, I had a great deale rather, that you had a desire to remaine in my seruice, notwithstanding, this much I tell you, that where you shall finde those that can tell how to answere you well enough. And you (sayde the Knight) many other that will pursue you vnto shamefull death. When *Florestan* heard him speake so boldly, and to the preuidence of *Amadis*, his coller was moued therewithall, and hee saide vnto *Landin*. Knight, I am a stranger in this Countrey, and none of the Kings subiects, so that for any thing which you haue saide vnto him, I haue no occasion to answere you, chiefly because that here are present, so many Knights my betters, ouer whome I will not in any sort insult. Neuerthelesse, seeing that you cannot finde *Amadis*, which is (as I thinke) for your great profit, I am ready to fight with you, and will in his stead defend the quarrel that you haue against him. And

And to the end that you may the better know me, I am his brother *Florestan*, who doe offer vnto you the combat vpon this condition, that if I can ouercome, you shall be bound to giue other the quarrel that you haue against him, and if you ouercome mee, reuenge part of your anger on mee. Yet thus much by the way, you must not thinke it strange that I haue beene so forward in the matter, for I haue no lesse cause to sustaine his quarrell against you (he being absent) then you haue to maintaine that of King *Abies*, whose nephew you are, being very well assured that my Lord *Amadis* is of power sufficient to reuenge me, if Fortune permit you to haue the advantage ouer me. My Lord *Florestan* answered *Landin*, so farre as I perceiue, you haue a desire to fight, but I cannot satisfie you at this time, being in no sort at mine owne disposition, as well for the affaires which by another I am appointed to discharge, as also for that I did promise before my departure from those Lordes that haue called me into their company, not to enterprize any matter before the Battaille, that might hinder me to assist and do my best endeouour therein: and therefore at this present hold me excused, vntill the battaile be ended, then I promise you to accept the combat which you demand, and sooner I cannot intend it. Beleue me said *Florestan*, you speake like a worthy Knight: for those that haue the like charge that you now haue, ought to forget and denie the fulfilling of their owne will, to satisfie those from whom they are sent, otherwise they might bee blamed, seeing that although you should get the victory of this

combat, to your honour, yet it might be, that these affaires might be foreflowed thorow your stay and hinderance, because they doe all repose themselves vpon your charge, therefore I am content to defer it vntill the time that you require, and because you shall not afterwards faile, behold here is my gage. At the same instant he threw downe his gloue, and *Landin* his Gauntlet. Wherefore by their owne consent all was remitted vntill the thirtieth day after the battaile. Then *Landin* tooke his leaue of the king, who deliuered vnto him a Knight that was called *Filipinel* to goe with him to defie the Giants as *Landin* had done him, and because that the Court was troubled for these unhappy newes, the king desiring to make the company merry, said vnto *Calao*, it is come into my remembrance faire knight to doe one thing princely for you, that will greatly delight you. Then he caused his youngest daughter *Leonor*, with all her Gentlewomen to be called, who were all apparelled in one luerie, each of them hauing chaplets of flowers vpon their heads: Whom hee commanded to dance and sing, as they were accustomed to doe oftentimes. And you my darling (said he to *Leonor*) begin with the same song that *Amadis*, made for the loue of you being your Knight. Herewithall the young princeesse did sing.

#### The Song.

*Leonox* (sweete Rose, all other flowers excellen,  
For thee I feele strange thoughts in me rebelling,

*I lost my liberty when I did gaze,  
Vpon those lights which set me in a maze,  
And of mee free, am now become a thrall,*

Put to such paine, thou seruest thy friends withall.  
And yet doe I esteeme this paine a pleasure,  
Knewst I for those whom I love out of measure.  
Leonor sweete rose, &c.  
For thee I fade, &c.

A little joy in any others sight,  
My heart is thine, thy selfe my chiefe delight.  
But yet I feele the more that I doe love,  
More smart I feele, more paine, more grieve I proue.  
Will let loose rage, though he be angry euer,  
He take my love for gaine, though I gaine neuer.  
Leonor sweete rose, &c.

And though to you I manifest my woes,  
My martir dome, my smart another knows:  
One unto whom, I secretly inuoke,  
Who is the cause, of this my fire, my smoke.  
She hath a shew to cure my endlesse grieve,  
And onely she may yeelde me some reliefe.

Leonor sweete rose, all other flowers excelling,  
For thee I feele strange thoughts in me rebelling.

And seeing that it happeneth out so conueniently, I will tell you vpon what occasion *Amadis* made this song. One day the Queene being talking with *Oriana*, *Mabila* and *Olinda* (*Amadis* coming in to her chamber). Shee called her daughter *Leonor*, and saide vnto her: that she should Princely goe, and request *Amadis* to bee her knight, and that from thenceforth he should serue her, without bearing affection to any other but to her. The little Princessse thinking that her mother did speake in good earnest, did rise vp, & with a good grace came and made this request vnto *Amadis*, whereupon all the Ladies and Gentlewomen began to laugh. But *Amadis* taking her vp in his armes, saide vnto her. My little Lady, if you will haue me to be your Knight, bestow some pretty fauour vpon me in token that you are my Mistresse, and that I am your seruant. I haue nothing, answered shee, but this carquent of gold that I were vpon my head. The which she suddainly vntied & gaue it vnto him, wherewithal euerie one againe began to laugh, see-

ing how verely shee beleued the words of *Amadis*, who for her sake did make this song. And the same did *Leonor* and her playfellows sing, as you haue heard, the which did greatly delight all the company: which being ended, they made a lowly obeisance, & returned vnto the place where the Queene sat. Then the king tooke *Galaor*, *Florestan* and *Agrais* apart, who were desiring leaue of his Maistie to accompany *Corisanda* some part of her way, and he saide vnto them: My friends you are the three persons of the worlde, vpon whome I doe chiefly rely. You know the baraine that I haue agreed vnto with King *Cildadan*, which is to be performed in the first weeke of the month of August: wherein wee shall finde against vs many strong Giants, who are bloody people, & full of cruelty. Wherefore I pray you not to vndertake henceforth any matter or aduenture, that may let you from keeping of mee company: otherwise you shall doe me a most great displeasure, because that by your ayde I trust in God, that the pride and presumption of mine enemies shall bee abated, and wee shall remaine conquerours, and they quite ouerthrowne and discomfited.

Most royall King, answered *Galaor*, there is no neede to vs either prayer or commandement vnto vs, to perswade vs to bee in a place so famous: for although wee had not at all any such intercession as we haue to serue your Maistie, yet the desire to fight against such personages, should neuerthelessse not bee diminished in vs, seeing that it is the onely duty of all good Knights, to hazard themselves in such enterprises, where they may gaine honour and reputation.

Therefore your Maistie may be assured that our returne hither shall bee very shortly, and in the meane season you may communicate this matter vnto the rest of your knights, to encourage and to confirm them in the same good will that now they haue to serue your Maistie, the which counsell the King liked well of, and therewithall hee gaue them leaue to depart. Thus they went together in the conduct of *Corisanda*, as I haue already recited. Now had *Gandalin* heard all this talke that had passed, & seene how the three knights were departed, wherupon hee went to *Mireflour*, to declare the same vnto *Oriana* & *Mabila*, who were very much disquieted with this new defiance that the Gyants had sent vnto the King. Neuerthelessse *Oriana* sayde vnto *Gandalin*: In good sooth, seeing that *Corisanda* now hath *Florestan* so much at her commandement, considering the vehement loue that she doth beare vnto him, mee thinks shee should bee very glad thereof, and long may she so continue, for she is a most sober, and wise, and vertuous Lady, and such a one that deserueth it well. Saying so she began to weepe, & with a deepe sigh, she sayd. Ah fortune why dost thou not yet permit me to beholde my Lord *Amadis*, one onely day? I beseech thee either to grant me this good, or to spare my life no longer, because my soule doth loath it. Herewithall shee became so sad, that it greatly pittied *Gandalin* to beholde her, who notwithstanding dissembling his grieve, faigning not to be content with this talke, answered her: Madame you must not bee offended if henceforth I come no more in your presence; for I did alwaies

hope that my Lord *Amadis* would haue returned hither againe very shortly, and now hearing you in these termes, I am quite deprived of this benefit. I pray thee good friend *Gandalin* sayd, shee, be not angry. I wear to thee by my faith, that if I could looke with a merrier countenance, I would willingly doe it; but I cannot otherwise do; for my heart yet remaining in continuall heavinesse, will in no sort permit me, and were it not for the consolation which thou hast giuen me, I assure thee that I should not haue the power to stand vpon my feet, so much doe I feele my selfe grieved with this warre that my father hath vndertaken, the success whereof I doe exceedingly feare, by reason of thy Master his absence. Madame answered *Gandalin*, hee shall not now be any where so secret, but that hee shall haue newes thereof; and I am very sure, that notwithstanding all the disgraces and disfaours that you haue done vnto him, by discharging him from your presence, yet will hee not faile to be there, knowing that it is a thing of great importance both vnto the King & you: not that hee will presume to come before you, but hee will make himselfe knowne in place where hee may doe you seruice, in hope that you will pardon him for the fault that he neuer did, nor euer thought to doe. God grant sayd *Oriana*, that thy words proue true. And as they were in these discourses, there came a Gentlewoman who told *Oriana* that the Damofel of *Denmarke* was arrived, and shee hath brought vnto you many faire presents. Then feare & hope sealed vpon the Princessse heart, in such sort, that without power to answer one worde, shee

H began

began to tremble, the which *Mabila* perceiuing, she answered the Gentlewoman: friend will her to come in hither all alone. The gentlewoman returned to performe her charge, but in the meane time beleue mee, neither *Mabila* nor *Gandalin* knew how to behaue themselves, beeing either hopelesse of the good, or fearefull of the bad newes that the Damosell of *Denmarke* might bring. Who shortly after entered in with the countenance of a person more pleasant then penſiue: and after her duty done vnto *Oriana*, ſhee preſented her with a Letter from *Amadis*, ſaying vnto her: Madame, my Lord *Amadis* recommendeth him muſt hubly vnto your good grace, whom I haue found, as this Letter (written with his owne hand) will aſſure you: *Oriana* receiued the Letter, and as ſhe thought to haue opened it, her ſpirit was ſo raiſhed with exceeding ioy, as all the parts of her body remained without any power, or ability once to moue or ſtirre, becauſe they would ſupply no other office, but to participate in this moſt happy newes: ſo that *Oriana* therewithall fell down in the place where ſhe ſtood. But very ſuddenly ſhee was raiſed vp againe, & ſhe opened the Letter, wherein ſhee found the ring that ſhe ſent vnto *Amadis* by *Gandalin*, at the ſame time that hee fought with *Dardan* at *Winſore*, which ſhe preſently knew. Wherefore in kiſſing it ſhee ſayd ſo loud that ſhe might eaſily be heard: O ring diuinely kept, bleſſed be hee, that euer did make thee ſo fortunate, giuing from hand to hand all the pleaſure that may bee deſired, then put ſhe it vpon her finger, and beganne to reade the Letter. And when ſhe beheld the ſweet words

that *Amadis* vſed, & the thanks that he did yeeld vnto her, for the careful remembrance that ſhe had of him, by the which he was raiſed from death to life, there was neuer any woman more ioyfull, and caſting her eyes vp to heauen, ſhee ſaid: O God of heauen and earth, creator of all things, praized be thy holy name, becauſe thou haſt vouchſafed in mercy to looke vpon mee, by the diligence of this Gentlewoman. Herewithall ſhee withdrew her ſelfe apart and tooke the Damosell of *Denmarke* by the hand, ſaying vnto her: I pray you faire Lady tel me how you did find him, how long you haue bin together, and the place where you haue left him. By my faith Madam answered the Damosell, after my departure from you, I arriued in *Scotland*, where I remained certaine dayes without hearing any news of him, by meanes whereof (beeing as it were voide of hope to ſatiſſie your deſire) I tooke ſhipping intending to returne vnto you: but wee had ſo ſore a tempeſt vpon the Sea, that mauger all our Mariners, the ſhip was driuen vnto the poore Rocke, where my Lord *Amadis* the remained. Whom at the firſt ſight we did not know, for he was changed in name, habite, and countenance, and hee was likely to haue died in our preſence, when in a manner hee was not ſuccoured by any of vs. Notwithſtanding in the end I was ware of a wound that he had vpon the face, the which was heretofore giuen vnto him by *Arcaus*, whereby I ſtill ſuſpected that it ſhould be he, and in the end hee maniſteſted himſelfe vnto me. And continuing her diſcourſe, ſhee recited wholly all that which you haue heard in the beginning of this Hiſtory. Then loue & pittie aſſailed

led the heart of the Princeſſe, in ſo ſtrange a manner, that ſhe entreated the Gentlewoman to ſpeake no more of the troubles of *Amadis*: but onely to tell her how hee did at that preſent. Madame, answered ſhee, I haue left him in the Forreſt, ſtaying to heare ſome newes from you. And how may wee ſecretly ſend vnto him, ſaide *Oriana*: for if you returne vnto him ſo ſuddainly, there might ſome matter bee ſuſpected. For the ſame occaſion, answered the damoſel, I haue brought with me *Durin*, whome I will ſend back when it ſhall pleaſe you, ſainging that I haue forgot parte of the preſents that I brought vnto *Mabila*. It is very well aduiſed, ſaid the Princeſſe. Afterwards ſhee declared vnto her, how *Coriſanda* gaue vnto them the firſt hope that *Amadis* was not dead, and that hee it was that named himſelfe the *Faire Forlorne*. It is true, answered the Damosell, and hee is yet ſo called, neither is hee determined to change his name, vntill hee haue firſt ſeene you, except you command him the contrary. That ſhall then be very ſhortly, ſaide *Oriana*, for his coſin and I haue taken ſuch order, that hee may come hither when it ſhal pleaſe him and not be perceiued by any body. We haue the key of this garde (by the which the way ſhal be eaſie and ſecret for him) the which wee will ſend vnto him by *Durin*, therefore call him vnto vs, to tell him what *Amadis* muſt doe at his higher arriuall. Here vpon *Durin* came vnto them, & *Oriana* ſhewing him the garden, ſaid vnto him. *Durin* doeſt thou ſee this orchard, *Amadis* muſt enter in to it ouer the corner of this wall, & when hee is once in, heere are the keyes of the dore thorow which he muſt come vnto vs, the which thou

ſhalt carry vnto him, and ſhall further aduertise him, whatſoeuer thy ſiſter ſhall tell thee in my behalfe. Which ſaid, ſhe departed leaving them together, and as ſoone as ſhe was entred into a great Hall, ſhee forthwith ſent vnto the Damosell, willing her to bring thoſe preſents which the *Scottiſh* Queene had ſent vnto her & *Mabila*, the which ſhe did. But as ſhee vnfolded the cloth wherein they were wrapped, (as if ſhee had ſuddainly be thought her ſelfe) ſhe cried. Alas Madam, I haue left the tokens that were ſent vnto *Mabila*, there as we did lie the laſt night, and if *Durin* do not ſpeedily returne, they may be in dangar to be loſt: now *Durin* knew the matter well enough, and therefore hee made as though hee were vnwilling, and on the other ſide, *Mabila* ſainging to be very angry, ſaid vnto him: *Durin* my good friend, will you do me this pleaſure, to returne and fetch that which your ſiſter hath forgotten? Madam, answered he, I will do whatſoeuer you ſhall pleaſe, but by my faith, I could bee very well content, that it would pleaſe you to appoint ſome other to doe it, becauſe of the toyle that we haue indured in our wearſome journey. My friend, ſaid ſhe, I pray thee do ſo much for me, & be thou ſure that I wil reward thee in good ſooth, ſaide *Oriana*, it were greates reaſon ſo to doe, I vnderſtand you well enough, answered *Durin*, although you mocke mee. At this word they all began to laugh, ſeeing the counterfeit diſcontentment that he made to returne back. Well goe to, ſaid hee, ſeeing that I muſt beare this ſhout with mee, I will to morrow morning depart. The they all retired, and *Durin* went to *London* to ſee *Gandalin*, vnto whom he declared all that you haue heard:



afterwards he departed to returne vnto the Abbie where *Amadis* remayned expecting newes from *Oriana*. Neuerthelesse before hee departed, *Gandalin* willed him to tell *Enil* his Cosen, that he should endeavour himselfe to serue the *faire Forlorne* diligently, and that

whilest he remayned with him, hee should likewise enquire after some newes of *Amadis*: and this message did *Gandalin* send vnto him, to cause him the lesse to suspect him in whose seruice hee remayned, that *Amadis* might the more secretly bring his matter to passe.

## CHAP. XIII.

*How the Faire Forlorne sent Enil his Esquire vnto London to cause a new armour to be made for him, and what aduventure chanced vnto him in going to Mirefleur.*

**B**Ut because wee will not too much digresse from that which happened vnto the *Faire Forlorne*, you shall vnderstand, that after he had made some small stay in the Monestarie where he was left to waite for newes from *Oriana*, hee found himselfe very able to put on armour: and therefore hee sent *Enil* to buy him horse and armour with a shield of *Sinople*, set full of golden Lions. Who returned vnto him the selfe same day that *Durin* arriued at the Abbie, where he was well entertayned by the *Faire Forlorne*, who in the presence of *Enil* demanded of him, where he had left the Damosel of *Denmark* his sister: my Lord answered hee, at her departure from you shee forgot behinde her certaine presents, that the Queene of *Scotland* did send vnto my Lady *Mabila*, the which I doe come to seeke. Then turning vnto *Enil* hee sayd, *Enil* your Cosen *Gandalin* recommendeth him very heartily vnto you. Which *Gandalin* answered the *Faire Forlorne*. My Lord said

*Enil*, hee is a Cosen of mine, that long time hath serued a Knight called *Amadis* of *Gaule*.

Then the *Faire Forlorne* without further enquiring tooke *Durin* apart, who did wholly recite vnto him all that which he was commanded to tell him on the behalfe of *Oriana*, and how shee stayed for him at *Mirefleur*, being very well determined to giue him kind entertainment: likewise what order was taken for his secret comming and going, when and as often as hee pleased, and also how his brethren *Galaor*, *Florestan*, and *Agrais* his Cosen, remayned at the Court, expecting the battaile that is to be performed very shortly, betweene King *Lisuart*, and *Cildadan* of *Ireland*, especially the challenge of a combat that *Famongomad* and the other Gyants and knights had sent vnto the King, if hee would not giue *Oriana* to be a waiting maide vnto *Madasima*, and to be married shortly after to *Basigant* the eldest sonne to the sayde *Famongomad*. When the *Faire Forlorne* heard this discourse, his heart

was

was ready to breake with extreame rage: purposing with himselfe, that the first enterprise that hee would undertake (after hee had seene his Lady) should be to finde out *Famongomad*, and to fight with him, for the iniury that hee would doe vnto *Oriana*. After that *Durin* had thoroughly aduertised him of all that hee had in charge, hee tooke leaue of him to returne vnto *Mirefleur*, leauing him in the Abbie, fully determined from thenceforth to abate the pride of these Gyants: beeing glad notwithstanding in that hee had recovered the good fauour & grace of *Oriana*, on whom his life and honour did wholly depend. Then the next morning before the breake of day, he armed him with the same Armour that *Enil* had brought, and mounting on horsebacke, hee tooke the way towards *Mirefleur*: but hee had nor ridden farre, (thinking vpon the pleasure that was promised vnto him, and knowing how neere hee was vnto it) when making a carriere he beganne to curuet and mannage his horse so gallantly, that *Enil* was greatly amazed thereat, thinking that hee had neuer beene other then an Hermite, and he said vnto him: my Lord, vntill I may iudge of the effect and force of your courage, I may very well say that I did neuer see a more expert knight, nor one that can doe more with a horse then you. *Enil*, answered the *Faire Forlorne*, it is the valiant hearts of men, not their outward shew, that doth accomplish haughty deedes and hardy enterprises, therefore thou haning said thy mind by my countenance, mayest iudge hereafter of my courage according as I shall deserue, thou and discerne.

Thus rode the *Faire Forlorne* all the day long discoursing with *Enil* of diuerse pleasant matters, for those gloomy cloudes which in times past had ouer-shadowed his thoughts, were now ouerblowne, and the desire to beholde her by whom hee liued, shined only in his minde. But when it grew to bee somewhat late, hee lodged in the house of an ancient knight, that both gaue him kinde entertainment and great cheere: neuerthelesse the next morning hee departed. And because he would not be knowne at any time, at his departure from his lodging hee put his helmet vpon his head, neuer putting it off but when hee tooke his rest, and hee did ride from that time forth seauen dayes together without finding any aduventure, vntill vpon the eight day following, hee arriued at the foot of a mountaine, and hee did see comming towards him along a path, a knight mounted vpon a mighty courser, who seemed so great and so strongly made that hee was almost like a Gyant. Who comming somewhat neere, he called vnto the *Faire Forlorne*: knight I forbid you to passe this way, except you doe first tell mee that which I desire to knowe. Therewithall the *Faire Forlorne* did presently knowe him (although hee had neuer seene him before) for the shield which he did beare had in a field Azure three flowers Or, the like whereof he remembred that he had seen in the *Firme-Island*, & that he was *Don Quedragant*. For the which hee was very much displeased, as well because he had not determined to fight, vntill he had first found out *Famongomad*, as also because hee would not in any sort disobey the commandement that

H 3 *Oriana*

*Oriana* had sent vnto him by *Durim*: and hee greatly feared such a let, knowing that *Quedragant* was one of the best knights in the world: neuerthelesse hee made himselfe ready for the ioust. The which *Enil* perceiuing, hee sayde vnto him: my Lord I belecue that you will combat this Diuell. Hee is no Diuell, answered the *Faire Forlorne*, but one of the strongest knights I knowe, of whom I haue heretofore heard great commendation. Then *Quedragant* drew neere and sayde vnto him: Knight, you must tell me whether you belong vnto King *Lisuart* or not. Why so sayd the *Faire Forlorne*. Because sayde he, that I am mortall enemy to him and all his, and when I shall either knowe or meete with any of the, I will cause them to die an euill death if I may.

The *Faire Forlorne* was so greatly enflamed with rage to heare him thus to menace, especially the King and all his Knights, that hee answered *Quedragant*: You then are one of them that haue defied that good King? I am euen the same sayde hee, that will doe all the iniurie that possibly may bee done both to him and his. And how are you called? answered the *Faire Forlorne*. *Don Quedragant* sayde hee. Trust me *Don Quedragant* answered the *Faire Forlorne*, although you are a valiant Knight and descended of a Royall linnage, yet haue you enterprised an exceeding great folly, in defying thus the most mighty and best King in the worlde: for euery discrete knight ought to attempt no more then hee may well effect, seeing that they who doe once passe the bonds of their ability, and power, are to bee ac-

counted more haire-braind then hardy, and more vaine-glorious then valiant, the which is no better then folly. As for mee I am no subiect but rather a stranger vnto the King against whom your quarrell is: yet haue I alwaies had a desire to doe him what seruice I could, and therefore you may account mee of the number of those whom you doe desie, and combat with mee if you list, otherwise followe on your way. Beleue mee sayde *Quedragant*, I thinke the little experience you haue of mee, maketh you to vtter these braues: notwithstanding I would very willingly know your name. I am called answered hee, the *Faire Forlorne*: but I thinke for the small renowne that yet is blased abroade of mee, you doe now knowe mee as well as you did before. And although I am a stranger, yet haue I heard that you doe seeke *Amadis of Gaule*: neuerthelesse I beleue it were most for your profit, not to meete with him, considering but what I haue heard reported of him. What sayd *Quedragant*, dost thou thinke better of him (vnto whom I doe wish so much hurt) then of mee? Trust mee thou shalt repent it, therefore defend thee if thy heart will suffer thee. Although (answered the *Faire Forlorne*) that against another I would haue bin content for this time to haue excused mee from the combat, yet will I very gladly vndertake it against you, for the threatnings & presumptions that you doe offer vnto me.

This sayd, they ran one against the other with so great force that the horse of the *Faire Forlorne* was likely to haue kist the ground with his nose, & himselfe was wounded

in the right breast with the shiuer of a Launce, and *Don Quedragant* vnhorised and wounded betwene the ribbes. Yet hee rose vp againe lightly, and drew his sword running against the *Faire Forlorne*, whom hee tooke vpon a sudden whilest that hee was busie in mending and setting his helmet right: and before that hee was aware, *Quedragant* slew his horse vnder him, but the *Faire Forlorne* feeling him to founde, alighted downe. Then hee being exceedingly vexed for so wilde a part, hee sayd vnto *Quedragant*: knight, it seemeth that you haue neuer done any valiant deeds of armes, in that you haue so villainously slaine my horse, it might haue sufficed you to haue wreaked your anger on mee, and not vpon a poore beast. Neuerthelesse I am in good hope that the wrong which you haue done both to him and mee shall redound vpon your owne head. *Don Quedragant* answered him not one word, but couering him with his shield, he came and layd at the *Faire Forlorne*, who in a short time made him feeble how well hee could repay whatsoeuer was lent vnto him: and to heare them fight, one would haue iudged that more then tenne knights had been fighting together. Then ioynd they so close that they left their weapons, and fell to wrestling, endeavouring to throw one another downe, but that was impossible for them: wherefore they let goe their holde, and without any breathing, they betooke them againe to their blades, and layd load one vpon the other so courageously, that their Esquires beholding that cruell combat, did thinke it impossible but that they should both twaine die by the

hands of each other.

And thus they continued from three of the clocke in the afternoone vntill it grew towards night, without either resting them or speaking together: but euen at the same instant *Don Quedragant* was so wearie and faint, that his heart failed him, and he fell downe in this place. By meanes whereof the *Faire Forlorne* stepped vnto him, & as hee pulled off his helme to strike off his head, *Quedragant* taking ayre beganne to breath: the which the *Faire Forlorne* perceiuing (although hee was ready to performe with his arme, the reuenge that he meant to take of his enemy) hee stayed his blow, the sworde being ready to lop off any limme vpon the which falling downe it might chaunce to light: and hee sayde vnto *Quedragant*, it is high time for thee to think vpon the health of thy soule, for thou art but a dead man. Whē *Quedragant* perceiued that he was in such daunger, hee was so astonished that hee answered vnto the *Faire Forlorne*, Alas if I must die, yet at the least let mee first be confessed.

If thou wilt liue any longer said the *Faire Forlorne*, yelde thy selfe vanquished, and promise to performe all that I shall commaund thee. I will willingly fulfill whatsoeuer shall please you, answered *Don Quedragant*, although I am not vanquished: for hee is not overcome that without shewing one iot of cowardise, hath defended his quarrell euen with the losse of his breath, and vntill that he did fall at his enemies feet: but he onely is overcome, that for want of heart, feareth to doe what he may. Truly said the *Faire Forlorne* you speake the very truth, and

I am very glad that I haue learned so much of you. Go to, sweare to me the to obey my comandement. The which *Quedragant* did. But the *Faire Forlorne* called his Esquires to witnesse, and then sayd: I will that at your departure from hence, you goe vnto the Court of king *Lisuart*, from whence you shal not depart, vntill the same *Amadis* (that you seeke bee there arriued. Then you shall yeelde your selfe vnto his mercy, pardoning him for the death of your brother King *Abies of Ireland*, for that as I haue heard, they both of their owne free will challenged each other, and had Combate together, so as this reuenge ought not to bee pursued. Moreouer I will that you giue ouer the challenge that you haue made against the King, and those that serue him, without bearing armes heereafter against any one of them. All which conditions *Quedragant* promised to performe, although it was to his great griefe. Then he commanded his Esquires to prepare a litter for him, to carry him vnto *London*, according to his promise. In like sort the *Faire Forlorne* hauing seized vpon the horse of *Quedragant*, in stead of his owne that was dead, deliuered his shield vnto *Enil*, and followed on his way: vpon the which hee behelde foure young Gentlewomen that were flying with a Marlin, who had both seene the Combate, and heard all the talke of the two Knights: and for the same cause, they spake vnto the *Faire Forlorne*, earnestly entreating to come and lodge in their Castle, where hee should bee entertained with all the honor that might bee deuised, for King *Lisuart* his sake, vnto whose seruice hee had shewed himselfe so

affectionate. The which offer of theirs hee refused not, for hee was weary with the great traual he had sustained al the day. And as loon as he was come into his lodging, they themselues vnarmed him, to see if hee were in any sort dangerously wounded: but hee had no other hurt then that vpon his brest, which was a matter of nothing. Three whole daies together did the *Faire Forlorne* tarry there, and then departed, riding all day long without finding any aduenture: and the night following he lodged in a little Inne that stood on the way, from whence he departed the next morning very early, and about mid-day hee came vnto the top of a small hill, from whence he might behold the city of *London*, and the castle of *Mirefleur*, where his Lady *Oriana* remained.

Heerewithall he was surprised with exceeding ioy: neuertheless, hee fained as though he knew not the Countrey where hee remained, and demanded of *Enil* if he did know it. Yea very well, my Lord, answered *Enil*, beholde yonder is the citie of *London* where King *Lisuart* at this present remaineth. In faith, saide the *Faire Forlorne*, I would be very sorry that either he or any other should know mee, vntill my deedes deserue it, and that by my deedes of Armes I might be thought worthy to be in such an assembly. Therefore goe thou to see the Esquire *Gandalin*, from whom *Durin* did of late bring the commendations: and see that thou doest wisely enquire what euery one saith of me, as so when the battaile of King *Cildadan* shall be performed. What? answered *Enil*, shall I leaue you all alone? Care not thou for that, sayd he, I haue bene many times accustomed

med to go in that sort: yet before that thou doest depart, let vs espy together a fit place where thou maist find me at thy returne. Then they rode on a little further, when vpon a sudden they beheld close by the side of a riuer two pavillions armed, & in the midst of them a most faire tent. Before the which were many knights & Ladies sporting, and ten other knights armed for their guard: and there was neuer a pavillion that had not fife shields hanged vp, and as many Lances standing before it. Herewithall the *Faire Forlorne* fearing to bee disturbed of his enterprife, would auoid the combate & took his way vpon the left hand. The which the knights perceiuing, called vnto him, saying, that he must needs giue one stroke with the Launce for the loue of the Ladies. But he answered them that at that instant hee had no desire thereunto. For sayd he, you are fresh and many, and I alone, and very wearie. Beleeue me sayd one of them, I thinke rather that you feare to lose your horse. And why should I lose him sayd the *Faire Forlorne*. Because sayd the knight, hee must haue him that doth throwe you downe, & I am sure that your losse were more certaine then the gaine that you should get vpon vs. Seeing it is so, answered hee, I had rather depart, then come into any such danger, which said, he passed on. Truly sayd the knights, in our iudgements your armes are defended more with faire wordes then valiant deedes, so that they may euer bee sound enough to place ouer your Tombe when you are dead, yea although you should liue one hundred yeares and more. You may thinke of mee what you please answered the *Faire Forlorne*,

yet cannot that in any sort diminish my reputation. I would it were your pleasure, sayd one that stepped somewhat before his fellows, that you would breake onely one staffe with mee, I would be accounted a traitor, or not in one whole yeare to mount vpon a horse, if you departed not by and by to seeke your lodging without yours. Sir answered hee, it is that which I doe feare, and which caused mee to turue out of the high way. At this they all began to laugh, and so scoffe him saying, behold the valiant champion, that spareth himselfe against a battaile: yet for all this the *Faire Forlorne* made no account, but followed on his way vntill he came vnto a riuer side, but as hee would haue passed ouer, he heard a voyce that cryed: stay knight, stay. Then he turned his head and looked backe to see who it was, and perceived a Gentlewoman, in very good order mounted vpon a Palfrey comming towards him, who at her arriual said vnto him, *Leonor* daughter to King *Lisuart*, together with her Gentlewomen, doe all desire you to maintain the Iousts against these knights, and to shew that you will doe something for the loue of Ladies. How? answered hee, the daughter of the King, is she therof I truly answered the Gentlewoman. Beleeue me sayde the *Faire Forlorne*, I should be very sorry to haue a quarrell with any of her knights, for sooner would I doe them seruice for the honour of so faire a Lady. Notwithstanding seeing that it is her pleasure that I should otherwise do, I am content: vpon this condition, that they require no more then the Ioust only. Hereupon he tooke his shield, and Lance, and rode straight vnto the pavil-

pauillions, and the Gentlewoman rode before to aduertise the knights thereof. Wherefore it was not long before that hee who first of all had threatned the *Faire Forlorne* that hee would make him to lose his horse, offered himselfe to run the first course, whom he presently did know, for hee did very wel marked him, when he gybed at him, and he was very glad that he had so good an occasion to bee reuenged. Therefore they couched one against the other, setting spurs vnto their horses, meeting with so great an incounter that the knight broke his staffe to shiuers, and the *Faire Forlorne* hit him so rudely, that hee ouerthrewe him to the ground, and hee brake one of his thighes with three of his ribs, with the griefe whereof hee remayned quite astonished. In the meane season *Enil* ran to take his horse, & the *Faire Forlorne* turned vnto him that he had ouerthrown to whom he said, Knight if you keepe your worde you must not in one whole yeare come vpon any horsebacke, the which you did promise if you could not win mine. So saying, he heard that another knight cried vnto him: knight keepe thee from me. Wherefore he left the other, and putting his Lance in the rest, he clapt his spurres to his horse, & ran on so rightly against him that had challenged him, that hee vnhorfed him euen as hee had done the first, and as much did he vnto the third and fourth, before his Lance did breake: whose horses he caused to be taken, and tyed vnto a tree. Then he would haue bin gone, when *Enil* (who had seene that another knight did make him ready) said vnto him, Sir you haue not yet done, behold the fift which is comming towards you.

Then the *Faire Forlorne* turned his head, and did see a knight comming vnto him who brought foure Launces, who being come said vnto him. Sir knight my Lady *Leon* hauing very well perceiued the valour that you haue shewed against her knights, and knowing that your Launce is broken, shee fendeth you these foure, and shee prayeth you that so long as they will last, not to spare them against the rest that may come to reuenge their companions. I most humbly thank that good Kings daughter answered he, and I pray you to tell her grace, that for the honor of her, I wil so long as I liue do what shee shalbe pleased to command me: but I would neither stay, nor come one step forwards for any of these knights that remaine, so ouer proud haue I found them in constraining mee to fight against my will, when I would haue passed along on my way.

Herewithall hee tooke one of the Launces when very suddenly he beheld the fift knight ready to make his course against him: wherefore hee presently pulled downe his visor and couching his staffe he ranne against him, and he did hit him with so great force that hee vnhorfed him, as also all the rest, not breaking his Launce, but onely vpon the last who behaued himselfe better then any of the others, for before the *Faire Forlorne* could ouerthrowe him, he made two Launces flie to shiuers, but at the third time hee made him to lose his stirrups, and hee fell to the earth. And because hee kept his seate better then any of his fellowes, I will tell you who it was: his name was *Nicoran de Pont Craintif*, who in those dayes was one of the best runners with

with a Lance in all the Realme of great *Brittaine*. After that the *Faire Forlorne* had thus ouerthrowne them all, he lent their horses vnto the Princeesse *Leon*, praying her to aduertise her knights that hereafter they should bee more courteous vnto those that passe by the way, or else that they should learn to sit faster on horsebacke then they had done: for they might chance to meete with such a knight that would make them go on foote as they deserued. This message did make the knights so much ashamed, that they answered not one word: but they were greatly abashed that they were all vnhorfed by him, whom they so little esteemed, neither could they once imagine what hee should bee: for his armes were yet vnknowne. And *Nicoran* said, beleue me if *Amadis* were liuing, I would iudge that it was he, and I know not any other that would so haue parted from vs. It is not he answered *Galas*, for he would neuer haue runne against vs that are his friends. Did you not see sayd the other, how he also refused the ioust? Assure you it is he and no other. I would it were sayd *Giantes*, King *Lisuart* his Nephew, our shame should then bee the lesse: but whosoeuer hee be, God shield him from harme. The diuell goe with him answered *Lasamor*, he hath broken my thigh, and my ribbes: yet was I the cause thereof, being the onely procurer of mine owne hurt, and the first that began the combare. In this fort did the *Faire forlorne* escape from them, & went forward on his way, very ioyfull for his good fortune, hauing yet one of the foure Launces whole in his hand. Now was it exceeding hot, and he was very dry: and therefore beholding an

Hermitage a farre off, he tooke his way thither, as well to giue God thanks for his victorie, as also to drinke, if there were any to be had: and when hee came vnto the gate thereof he found three Gentlewomen Palfrayes saddled and bridled, the which two Squires did holde. Thert hee alighted and entered in, where hee did see no body. Wherefore after that hee had ended his prayers he came forth againe, and hee did see the three Gentlewomen, who were refreshing themselves by the side of a very shady fountaine, towards whom he went, and comming vnto them he saluted them. They demanded if hee were any of the knights of King *Lisuart*. Gentlewoman answered he, I would I were worthy to deserue so good company: but I pray you tell me which way are you going at your departure from hence. The right way to *Mirefleur* sayd the Gentlewomen, where we shall finde our Aunt (who is Abbess of the Monestary there) and my Lady *Oriana* King *Lisuart* his daughter. And because the weather is hot as you see, wee are constrained to stay here in the coole, and it were not amisse if you did as wee doe. Seeing you are so pleased answered hee, I am content to beare you company: for me thinks this fountaine is a very fit place for one to rest in, but doe you knowe how it is called? No sayde they: neuerthelesse there is another yet more faire in the bottome of this valley, which is called the fountaine of three channels. Herewithall they shewed him the place, although that he did knowe it better then they, for many times hee had there bene a hunting, and he had already determined that the same should bee the place where *Enil* should

should finde him at his returne from *London*. And as they were in this sorte discoursing together, they perceived vpon the same way a cart which was drawne with twelue horses and guided by two Dwarfes, within the which were many armed knights in chained, their shields were hanged all along the sides thereof, and amongst them were Ladies & Gentlewomen that cryed out, & wept most pitifully: before whom marched a Gyant armed with plates of fine Steele, hauing vpon his head a marueilous bright shining helme. But hee seemed to bee so great, that it would haue feared any man to behold him, & he rode vpon a mighty black horse, holding in his right hand a Bore-speare, the head whereof was more then a cubit in length, and there followed (behinde the cart) another Gyant farre more monstrous then the first, of whom the Damosels of the fountaine were so much afraid, as they fled to hide them amongst the bushes. At the same instant the Gyant which marched before (seeing how the Ladies that were in the cart did teare the hairs from their heads, for it seemed by their furious behauiours, that they very willingly would haue proeured their owne death) sayde vnto the Dwarfes, If you cause not these girles to hold their peace, by loue you villaines, I will make a thousand peeces of your entrails, for I would haue them charily kept, to sacrifice them vnto the God that I adore. When the *Faire Forlorne* heard him, hee presently knewe that it was *Famongomad*, who was wont to cut off the heads of all those that hee might take, and to shed their blood before an Idoll that hee had in the burning lake,

by whose counsell hee was gouerned in all his affaires, & although hee then had no desire to fight, as well because he would not faile to be at *Mirefleur* (according as *Oriana* had willed him) as also because he was wearie, and tyred with the encounter that he had had against the ten knights, yet knowing the persons that were in the cart, amongst whom was *Leonore* the Kings daughter, her Gentlewomen, and the ten knights that hee had ouerthrowne, hee determined either to die or deliuer the, knowing what grief the losse of her sister would be vnto *Oriana*, whom *Famongomad* and his sonne did take at vnawares, and all the rest of her traine, in a manner as soone as the *Faire Forlorne* had lest them, and in this sort they had bound and fettered them in the cart, that they might afterwards most cruelly put them to death. For this cause hee willed *Enil* to giue him his armes. My Lord sayd he, doe you not see these diuels that are comming towards vs? For Gods sake let vs be gone and hide vs from them, then may you arme your selfe at ease, for I would not tarry their comming for all the wealth in *London*. I will doe better if I may, sayd the *Faire Forlorne*, I will first try my fortune, and although thou dost thinke them diuels) thou shalt see them slaine by one onely knight: for their life is so odious before God, that hee will giue mee the strength to reuenge (as I hope) all those miserable cruelties which they from day to day doe commit.

Alas my Lord sayd *Enil*, you will wilfully lose your selfe: seeing that it twenty of King *Aswart* his best Knights had undertaken that which you alone thinke

to doe, yet might they hardly escape with honor. Care not thou for that, answered hee, if I should let such an aduenture passe before mine eyes, and not bee an actor therein, I were vnworthy euer to come into the company of good and vertuous men, and therefore whatsoever may chance thereof, I care not. This said, he left *Enil* weeping, and went vnto that side where he might easily beholde *Mirefleur*: because the remembrance of *Oriana*, was still present before him, and he began to say. O my Lady and onely hope, neuer did I enterprize any aduenture, the which I haue not by your means atchiued: and now that I knowe you are so neere vnto mee, and that it is for a thing that so much importeth you, forsake mee not I pray you, in this extremity. Herewithall he imagined that his strength was redoubled, and setting apart all feare, hee went toward the carr, and said vnto the Dwarfes: stay you base slaues, for you shall all die, and your maisters also. When the Gyant heard these threats, hee entred into such fury, that the smoke proceeded from his eyes, in such sort, as it seemed they had beene on a fire, and hee did shake his bore-speare with such force, that he almost doubled both ends together. Then hee answered the *Faire Forlorne*. Vnhappy and vnfortunate wretch, how durst thou bee so bold to come before me? Yet hee made as though he heard him not, but couched his Launce, and setting spurs to his horse, he smote the Gyant a litle beneath the wast, with such strength, as pearcing the ioynts of his harness, the Launce entred into his tripes with such exceeding force, that passing quite through, it hit against the hinder part of the sad-

dle, and brokethe girts of the horse, ouerthrowing both man and saddle euen in a moment. Neuerthelesse before the Gyants fall, he couched his bore-speare, thinking to haue hit the *Faire Forlorne*, but it missed him & stroke thorow his horses flanks: wherefore hee feeling that hee was wounded to death, did very nimbly alight downe. and although that *Famongomad* was in like sort deadly wounded, with the great rage that hee felt, hee rose vp, and with both his hands hee pulled forth the trouchon of the Launce that stucke in his body, and threw it at the *Faire Forlorne* with such extreame fury, that hee thought to haue ouerthrowne him, and so greatly did he straine himselfe to hurle the same, that the tripes came out of his belly, and he tumbled ouer and ouer. Therewithall he cried. *Basgant* my deere son reuenge the death of thy sorrowfull Father if thou canst. At this crye *Basgant* approched, holding a weighty bill, wherewithall hee thought to haue strooken the *Faire Forlorne*, but he stepped aside, and the blow passed by so forcibly, that if it had hit him it had clouen him quite asunder. Then the *Faire Forlorne* being very ready, and expert, stretched forth his arme, and stroke the Gyant so great a blowe, that hee cut the one halfe of his legge away, although that with the great fury wherein hee remained, hee could not as then feelee it, but lifted vp his bill, the which turned in his fist, which was a happy chance for the *Faire Forlorne*, who receined the blowe vpon his Shilde, within the which it entered so farre, that the Gyant could not pull it forth. And as hee strived to get it out, hee raised him vpon his stirrups to haue



the more strength. By the meanes where of, the sinues of his legges, which were cut a sunder sayled him, wherewithal he felt such great griefe, that (not being able to keep his saddle) he kissed the ground with his nose: and in falling, the *Faire Forlorne* stroke him another blow vpon his right arme, so that he was forced to forsake his bill, and leaue it in the power of his enemy. Notwithstanding his hart was so great, that hee rose vp againe and drew forth his sword, that was maruailous long, with the which he layed at the *Faire Forlorne* with all his strength, and hee strained himselfe so much, that the blood issued frō his wounds, in such great abundance, that all his strength sayled him, and he fel down together with his blow, which lighted vpon the stones, wherewith the sword brake in two pieces. The which the *Faire Forlorne* perceiuing, hee stepped aside, and set his hands vnto the bill in such sort, that by force hee pulled it out of his shield, wherewith he stroke so great a blow vpon the Giants helmet, that he made it flie from his head: but the Giant with that little remainder of his sword, that hee yet helde, pared away the top of his helmet, together with a little of the skin and haire of his head, the which blow if he had stroken somewhat lower, hee had cut his head off. Therewithal they that were in the cart, thought that the *Faire Forlorne* had bene wounded to death, and himselfe was so astonished, that hee thought his dayes to bee ended, wherefore desiring to bee reuenged, hee gaue him such another great blowe with the bill, that hee cut off his care, with halfe of his face, with the which he yeelded vp the ghost. During all this combate, the Princeesse *Leonor*

and all her company, were demouly praying for the good successe of the *Faire Forlorne*: who seeing that he was dispatched of *Basigant*, turned vnto *Famongomad*, who had behelde the death of his sonne, for whome hee made so great mone, that he was likely to haue gone mad. And although that hee was likewise at the point of death, yet notwithstanding hee had throwne his helmet from his head, holding both his hands before his wound, to keepe in his blood, that thereby he might prolong his life, the more to blaspheme God and his saints: nor being sorry for his death (as he said) but because that he had not in his life time, destroyed all the churches wherein he had neuer entered. And he cryed as loud as he could: Ah thou God of the christians, it is thou alone that hast wrought the meanes, that both I and my sonne (who were mighty inough to overthrowe one hundred of the best knights in the world) are slaine by the hand of a most wretched and feeble villaine. And as hee would haue proceeded in his his blasphemy, the *Faire Forlorne* stroke off his head from his shoulders, saying: Receiue thy reward for all thy cruelties which thou hast committed against a number of people. And spurning him vpon the belly with his foote, hee said: Now get thee vnto all the Deuils, who haue long expected thy coming. Then hee tooke vp *Basigant* his Helmet, and threw downe his owne which was broken. Enil in like sort brought vnto him *Famongomad* his horse, vpon the which he mounted, and came both to vnbinde the prisoners, and to doe his duty vnto the Princeesse *Leonor*, who gaue him great thanks for his good helpe. In like sort so did all the rest

rest of the company. Now had the Giants tyed all their horses at the tayle of the Cart: wherefore the *Faire Forlorne* went to seeke out the Princeesse her Palfrey; the which he brought, and mounted her vpon the same, commanding all the rest to take euery one their owne horse, and to get them to *London*, and to carrie vnto king *Lisuart* the bodies of the two Giants, and *Basigant* his horse, which will serue him well in the battaile against king *Cildadan*. But the Knights answered him; sir who shall wee say hath done this good for vs? you shall tell the king said he, that it is a strange knight, who is called the *Faire Forlorne*: and you may both declare vnto him at large the cause of the combat that I had with the Giants, as also the great desire that I haue to doe his Maiesty all the seruice I may, whether it be against king *Cildadan* or any other, herewithal they layed both the bodies in the Cart: but they were so great, that their legs trayled along vpon the ground more then six foote, and taking leaue of the *Faire Forlorne*, they went towards *London*, praising God, and the good knight that preferred them from death. But by the way *Leonor* and the yong Gentlewomen that were with her (forgetting their passed perill) made them garlands of flours which they set vpon their heads in entering into the City:

the people wondring to see the Giants, followed the Cart euen vnto the castle, to vnderstand who had done such valiant deedes of armes. The king did already know that his daughter was arriv'd; and how shee brought with her two dead Giants, wherefore he went downe into the Court with the Queen, and many knights, Ladies and Gentlewomen with them, to see what the matter was: the which the Princeesse *Leonor* recited vnto him, together with all that you haue already heard, whereat euery one wondred. And euen as shee had ended her discourse, in came *Don Quedragant*, who yeelded him prisoner into the kings hands, as being sent thither by the *Faire Forlorne*, the which increased in all the assistants, farther desire to know him, that lately had done so many knightly deedes. And the king said, in good faith, I doe greatly meruaile what he may be: but is there none of you that doe know him. And it was answered him no: saying that *Corisanda* Lady and friend to *Don Florestan* had found in the poore Rock (as heretofore she had declared vnto many) a sick knight that was named the *Faire Forlorne*: I would said the king, that he were in this company, because mee that he should not depart from vs, for any thing that hee would demand of me.

## CHAP. XIII.

*How that after the Faire Forlorne had ended his adventure hee went vnto the Fontaine of the three Channels: from thence he tooke his way to Mireflour, where he found Oriana, with whom hee remained eight daies together: and at the same time there arriued in the Court of King Lisuart, an ancient Gentleman bringing with him two Jewels of singular vertue, whereby the faithfull louer, from the fained might be tried, the which Amadis and Oriana determined to make prooffe of, in such secret manner, that they would neither be knowne of the king nor any other.*



After that the Princeesse Leonor and her trayne, had taken their leaue of the Faire Forlorne, he returned towards the Gentlewomen whom hee had found hard by the fontaine, who hauing seene the victory which hee had atchieued, had already forsaken the bushes, & came to meete him. Then he commanded Enil to get him to London vnto Gundalin, and that during his abode there, he should cause such another armor as that of his owne was, to be made for him, because they were all to broken and battered with the blowes that he had receiued in the former combats: moreover that he should not faile to returne vnto the fontaine of the three channels vpon the eight day following. Thus Enil departed from him, and on the other side the Faire Forlorne (hauing taken his leaue of the Gentlewomen) rode through the Forrest, and they tooke their right way to Mireflour, where being arriued, they declared to Oriana and Mabila, the dangerous combat, and glorious victory that was performed in their presence by a knight called the Faire Forlorne. When Oriana knew for truth that he was so neere vnto her castle, ioy and extreame pleasure, accompanied with a most

seruent desire, entred into her imagination, in such sort that vntill she had him in her armes, she neuer lost sight of the high way that led from the Forrest, by the which he was to come. By this time was the Faire Forlorne alighted from his horse, hard by a little River, staying vntill it were night: for he would not be seene by any, as he entring into Mireflour. Then he put off his Helmet, and laide him downe vpon the grasse: and therewithall hee began to thinke vpon the instabilitie of Fortune, and vpon the miserable despaire wherein (not long before) he remained when with his owne hands, he was ready to haue effected his death: and also how he was not only now restored to his former felicitie, but also aduanced to greater honour, glory and contentment: then before, knowing that he was so neere that ioy which hee should receiue with his Lady Oriana. In this agitation remained the Faire Forlorne vntill after sun set, when hee mounted on horseback, and came vnto the place that Durin had assigned him, where he found him together with Gundalin, who stayed there for him to take his horse. The he alighted down, & demanded of them, what the ladies were doing, my Lord, answered Gundalin, they are on the other side, in the garde, where

where they haue already staid for you more then foure houres. Help me then to get vp. The which they did: and hee being vpon the wall, beholding Oriana and Mibila, on the other side (hauing not so much patience as to stay for their helpe) he leaped from the top of the wall downe to the ground, and as hee would haue kneeled to haue done his durie, the Princeesse ran to embrace him, and in kissing him she was like to haue fallen in a swoone betweene his armes. But who could imagine the pleasure that they yeelded the one vnto the other? Amadis hee trembled like a leafe not being able to speake one Word, holding his mouth close vnto Oriana: who as it were in an extasie did behold him with such an eye, that it made them both twaine to liue and die together. In this sort they remained more then a good quarter of an houre, and euen vntill that Mabila smiling, said vnto Oriana: Madam, I pray you at the least before my cosin do die, let vs haue a sight of him if it please you. Soft and faire, answered Oriana, let mee a while alone with him, and then you shall afterwards haue him at your pleasure. Herewithall Amadis saluting Mabila, said vnto her. My good Cosin, this is not the first day that you haue knowne how much I am yours. I belecue you well sir, but my Lady would haue you wholly to her selfe. Alas, said she haue I not reason, seeing that I alone was likely by my fault, to haue bene the causer of his losse? Belecue me deere friend, the griefe which you felt and the teeres that you haue shed (by the fault that I committed) shal be now both acknowledged, and thorowly recompenced. Madam, said Amadis, you haue ne-

uer been at any time, but the procurer of all my happinesse and fauor, and if I haue felt any tribulation, I, and not you, haue been the causer thereof: therefore haue I iustly sustained, whatsoeuer sorrow I haue suffered. Alas sweete loue, answered Oriana, when I thinke vpon the estate wherein Corisanda and the Damofell of Denmarke did finde you, and the abundance of teares and lamentations that continually distilled from your eyes (as they haue told me) I assure you that yet my mind is troubled therewith. Madam, said hee, the teares, wherof you speake, were no teares: for long before the comming of Corisanda to the poore Rock, the spring whereof was dried vp: but it was an humor proceeding from my heart, the which did so continually burne in your loue, that being constrained by the force of the flame, it did draw vp to the eyes that moisture, which nature had placed about the heart to preserue it, and to giue it life: and I beleoue that if the Damofell of Denmarke had stayed from bringing me that reliefe which I receiued of her, in steede of teares which distilled from mine eyes, the soule is selfe had departed. Sweete loue, said the Princeesse, I know well that I committed a great errour in writing that letter which Durin did bring to you, but you should then haue remembered how that all women are weak, and very light of beleefe, especially in things wherein they are affectioned, and wherein by too extreame loue they are often times carried away, & made suspitious, euen as I haue bene against you, wherfore the greater that mine offence is, the greater praise shall you win in pardoning me: the which I beseech you to do.

being ready to receiue such punishment therefore, as it shall please you to giue vnto me, and to satisfie you at your owne discretion. Alas Madam, said *Amadis*, it is I that should demand pardon of you: for if I should die for your loue, most pleasant would that death be vnto me. But this much I assure you, that I had neuer beene able to haue resisted this great sorrow that I haue suffered, had it not beene that my martiredome was eased (knowing the pleasure which you would receiue in the same) that it tooke such force vnto it, as death was not of sufficient power in any sort to bring it to an end. Let vs leaue off this talke for this time said *Mabila*, you haue both suffered wrong, determine therefore henceforth how it may be recompensed: and now to eschue the vapours of the night (which may be vnto you somewhat hurfull) let vs retire vnto some couert. I like your counsell well answered *Oriana*. Therewithall *Amadis* was brought into her chamber, and presently *Mabila* and the Damosell of *Denmarke* (knowing that they should do them a pleasure to leaue them alone) went forth, faining to goe about some other affaires. Then the princeesse requested *Amadis* to sit downe in a chayre covered with veluet, which stood in a corner of the chamber, and she stood leaning vpon him, that shee might at more ease kisse him, and hang about his necke: whereupon he being overcome with an extreme amorous passion, left off his wonted modesty, thrusting one of his hands into *Oriana* her prettie breasts, and the other towards the place by him most affected: where with *Oriana* halfe ashamed in stretching her selfe along, because she

would not looke in his face, fide vnto him, My deere loue, I beleue that the hermit of the poore Rock, taught you not this lesse. Madame answered hee, I beseech you to pardon my rashnesse, knowing pittie of me, and seeing that both time and place is so favourable vnto vs, be not you more contrary vnto me then they, but suffer mee to continue that fauour, wherof by your good grace I haue taken possession, when I deliuered you from the handes of *Arcalaus*. My ioy, answered *Oriana*, you know that I am so wholly yours, that you cannot dispose of your selfe more then of me, neuertheless how may I possibly at this time satisfie your desire, seeing that your Cosin, and the Damosell of *Denmarke* are so neere vnto vs? Alas said he, they haue hitherto been the cause of my life, and now since they haue farther afflicted me do you thinke that they will desire my death? Assure you Madam that they are already so well acquainted with our affections (especially the Damosell of *Denmarke*) that although they haue not seen them effected, yet it may be they haue presumed as much and more: therefore I beseech you (in acquising you of your promise) to succour me. Which said, hee gaue such large scope vnto his passions, that notwithstanding all the faint resistance that *Oriana* could make against him, hee had that of her which he most desired, tasting together of the sweete fruit, which they did first sow in the Forrest, a such time as *Gandalin* was gone to seeke for some victuals for them: as you haue heard in the first booke. And although that *Oriana* made refusal thereof at the first, yet *Amadis* vsed her so courteously

ly that before they departed from the place, they determined to continue their sport, whilst they had so good opportunity, and from thenceforth not to bee in any doubt eyther of *Mabila* or the Damosell of *Denmarke*. Eight whole dayes did *Amadis* remaine at *Mirefleur* with *Oriana*, leading a life as pleasantly as they could wish, during all the which time he was not scene of any, except of those that were the meanes of his bringing thither, as it hath beene tolde you, for all the day long hee was close with the Ladies in the chamber, and when the euening approached they came forth into the garden, where often times after many amorous discourses, *Amadis* alayed the heate of his fire (by the sweete embracings of *Oriana*) at the musick of the birds, who chanting out their pleasant notes, were witnesses of the pleasure that these two louers receiued, vnder the shade of the little young Trees, wherewith this place was sufficiently stored. Now did *Gandalin* every day go and come from *London* to *Mirefleur*, to bring newes, from the Court: so that one time amongst others, hee told *Amadis* that the Armour which by *Enil* he had caused to bee made for him, would bee very shortly finished. Moreouer hee told him, that the King was in great doubt for the battaile which he had enterprised against king *Cildadan*: for the most part of those that hee had to deale withall, were cruell Giants, and without reason, and therefore hee had stayed *Galaor*, *Florestan*, *Agraius*, and *Don Galuanes*, to assist him in that encounter. Who (said *Gandalin*) are so angry for the famous report that is spread abroad, of the *Faire Forlorne* to the dispraise of

*Amadis*, as if they had not already passed their promise to the king, seeking not to enterprise any combat or voyage before the battaile, they had beene already vpon their way to haue fought him out to fight with him, and they secretly giue it out, that if they doe escape aliue, they will not rest vntil they haue both found him, and fought with him. In good faith, answered *Amadis*, they shall see me the sooner if God please, but it shal be after another manner then they hope for: wherefore do thou returne to the Court, and let me know if any thing hath since happened. Herewithall *Gandalin* departed, who went directly to *London*, where hee found the king ready to sit downe to dinner, and euen as they were taking vp the Table, there entered in a very ancient Gentleman, attended vpon with two Elquires, apparelled both in one liuery. This old mans beard was shauen, and the hayre of his head was white with age, who came and kneeled before the king, and saluting him in the Greeke tongue (in which countrie he was borne) hee said vnto him. It may please your Maiesty, the high renowne that is spread in all parts of the world, of the knights, Ladies and Gentlewomen that are in your Court, hath beene the only cause that enforced me to address my iourney hither, to see if in the same I may finde that which this threescore yeeres I haue fought in diuerse countie farre and neere, to small purpose. Therefore most renowned Prince. I beseech your Maiesty to be pleased, that to finish my trauaile, I may make a prooue of the knights, Ladies and Gentlewomen in this assembly, the which (as I thinke) will neyther be hurt

full nor displeasing eyther to your Maieſty, or to any other. Then all the Lords that were preſent, deſired to ſee a thing ſo rare, intreating the king to grant his requeſt, the which he eaſily conſcended vnto, therewithall the ancient Gentleman tooke from one of his Eſquires, a little cofer of Iaſper, which he did carrie, which was in length about three cubits, and in breadth a ſhaftmont, and it was garniſhed with Gold, and the moſt curious damaske worke in the World: this little cofer he opened, afterward he tooke out of it a Sword, ſo ſtrange, as the like was neuer ſcene, the ſcabberd thereof was made of two bright ſhining bones, and as Greene as any fine Emerald, ſo as the blade was to be ſcene through it, nor after the manner of other blades, for the one halfe of it ſhewed meruailous bright, and the other ſeemed, as if it burned, being as red as fire, and it hanged in a Belt of the ſame ſtuffe as the ſcabberd was of, ſo cunningly made, that any man might eaſily gird it about him. This Sword the Gentleman did hang about his necke, that hee might likewiſe take out of the cofer a kercheiſe, the one halfe whereof, was be ſet with floures as freſh and Greene, as if they had beene euen then newly gathered: and the other halfe was couered with other violets, as withered and dry, as if they had beene ten yeeres in the Sun, neuertheleſſe both the one & the other ſeemed to ſpring from one and the ſelfe ſame roote: wherewithal the king being abaſhed, demanded of him how theſe things might be. If it like your maieſty answered the old man, this ſword cannot be drawne forth of the ſcabbard, but onely by that

knight that amongſt all louers, is the moſt conſtant, and that doth beſt loue his Lady: and as ſoone as hee ſhall haue it in his hands, that part which burneth ſhall become as cleere and bright as the reſt, ſo as the blade ſhall be all of one colour. In like ſort if this kercheiſe beſtrewed with ſo many flowers, be ſet vpon the head of ſuch a Ladie or Gentlewoman that doth loue her husband or friend with the like conſtancie, the withered and drie floures ſhall appeare againe, of a moſt freſh and liuely colour: and your Maieſty may be pleaſed to know, that I cannot be made a Knight, but by the hands of this perfect loue that ſhall draw forth this Sword, neyther may I take armes but of her that ſhall deſerue this precious kercheiſe. For this cauſe haue I theſe threeſcore yeeres continually ſought in many ſtrange Countries for thoſe by whom I ought to receiue knight-hood, but yet hitherto I haue trauailed in vaine, & now proſecuting my voyage (in that manner for my laſt refuge) I am come into your Court: imagining that euen as it farre exceedeth the Courts of all other Emperors and kings, ſo I might in like ſort in the ſame find that which in all others I haue failed of. I pray you ſaie the king, let mee know the reaſon why the fire that remaines in the one halfe of this blade, doth not burne the ſcabbard. It may pleaſe your Maieſty, answered the old man, betwixt *Tartaria* and *India*, there is an arme of the Sea which is ſo hot, that the water thereof (being meruailous Greene) boileth as if it were vpon the fire, and in the ſame there is brought forth a kinde of Serpents more great than *Crocodiles*, the which doe ſhine very

lightly,

lightly, by reaſon of their long wings, but they are ſo infectious, that euery one ſhun them ſo much as they poſſible may. Notwithſtanding when a man findeth any one of them hee eſteemeth of him as a thing much worth, becauſe they are profitable for diuerſe medicines, and theſe Serpents haue a bone that reacheth from the neck to the tayle, the which is ſo great, that vpon the ſame is formed all the whole body which is Greene, as you ſee by this ſcabberd, and furniture, for as much as they are bred vpon (as I haue ſaid) in this burning ſea, no heate of any other fire may hurt them. Thus hath your Maieſty heard the ſtrangeneſſe of this ſword, and of the ſcabberd, now I will tell you of the floures of this kercheiſe. In the ſame Countrey of *Tartarie*, there is alſo an Iſland enuironed with the moſt ſtrange and dangerous gulfe that is in any part of all the Sea. By meanes whereof (although the floures of theſe two branches are rare & pretious) yet there is no man ſo valiant that dare goe to gather them: but if it ſo chance, that any one be ſo madde as to aduenture himſelfe therein, and if hee may bring them away, assure your Maieſty, he ſelleth them at as great a price as he pleaſeth: for amongſt other ſingular vertues that they haue, this is one, that whoſoever doth charily keepe them, they doe neuer leaue their greeneneſſe, and liuely colour, as you may behold in this kercheiſe. And ſeeing that I haue declared vnto you the excellency of theſe Jewels, it may pleaſe your Maieſty likewiſe to vnderſtand who I am, and after what ſort I came by theſe things. I beleeue that you haue many times heard ſpeaking of *Apollidon*, who

in his time, was one of the beſt Princes of the Earth, he it was that did beautifie the firme Iſland, with many rare and ſingular things, as euery one knoweth, my Father was his Brother, and king of *Gaul*, who being in loue with the daughter of the king of *Canaan*, did begget me of her. And when I was of ſufficient age to be made knight, my father commanded me, ſeeing I had been conceiued with far more perfect and loyall loue, then euer was any other prince, that I would not in like ſort receiue knight-hood, but by the hand of the moſt faithful loue that might be found in all the World, neyther to take armes, but from that Lady, or Damoſell who ſhould loue her husband or friend, with the like conſtancy as the knight doth. The which I both promiſed and ſwore vnto him to performe, thinking to accompliſh his will very eaſily, onely in going to mine Vncle *Apollidon* and *Grimanſe* his wife, towards whom I went: neuertheleſſe, my miſfortune was ſuch, that I found *Grimanſe* dead, wherefore *Apollidon* (knowing the cauſe of my coming) was very ſorrowfull. For *Grimanſe* being deceaſed, elſe where very hardy might I finde (as he told me) that which I had promiſed vnto my Father, the ſucceſſion of whoſe Crowne was denied vnto mee except I were a knight, as by the ſtatute and ordinance of his Realme was appointed, and therefore mine Vncle willed me to returne vnto *Gaul*, and that within one yeere following, I ſhould come againe vnto him: during which time hee would endeavour to finde ſome remedy for the fooliſh enterpriſe which I had vnderſtanden: and according to his appointment I returned. Then he

gaue

gaue methis Sword, and kerchief, by the which I might know those whom I was to finde, telling mee that seeing had beene so rash in my promise, therefore I should from thenceforth trauaile so long vntil that I finding such a constant knight and Lady, had accomplished whatsoeuer my Father was commanded. And thus your Maiesty may see the reason of my long trauaile and search, therefore if it like your Highnesse, you may trie the Sword first, and your knights afterward. And in like sort the Queene and her Ladies, may prouue what shall bee the euent of the kerchiefe, and he or she that shall finish these aduentures, shall possesse the Jewels as their owne, I gaine rest thereby, whereof I shal reape the profit, and your Maiesty honour and renowne amongst all other Kings and Princes, hauing found that in your Court, of the which I haue sayled in all other Countries. Thus the old man hauing ended his discourse, there was not any that were present, who did not generally desire to see the matter in proofe: and although the king was as desirous to see the triall thereof as any other, yet did he defer it off vntil the fift day following, vpon the which day, was the feast of Saint James to be celebrated, and the more to make it manifest, he sent for a great number of his knights. For the more full my Court is (said the king) the more is the likely hood to haue this aduenture thoroughly tried. Vnto the which determination euery one agreed: all this discourse did *Gandalin* heare, who by good fortune was agt. 1. houre before arrived at *London*. But so soone as the Conclusion was agreed vpon, he got againe to

horse-back and rode forthwith to *Mirefleur*, where he found the faire *Forlorne* playing at Chefts with *Oriana*, who seeing him returne so suddainly, shee demanded of him what new euent was chanced in the Court. Madam, answered he, I am sure that you will be wonderful glad to vnderstand what it is. And what is it said *Oriana*? then *Gandalin* recited all the whole discourse of the olde Gentleman, with the strangenesse of the sword and kerchiefe: as also how the king had put off the prooffe thereof vntill the feast day of Saint James next ensuing. During all this long discourse, the faire *Forlorne* became more pensue then hee was accustomed to bee, which *Oriana* straight perceiued; neuertheless she made no shew thereof, vntill *Gandalin* and the company were departed, and that shee came and sat downe vpon the knees of the faire *Forlorne*. Then shee kissing him and hanging about his neck, said vnto him: My loue I pray you tell mee whereupon you misde, whilst *Gandalin* declared vnto us the newes at *London*. In faith Madam, answered the faire *Forlorne*, if my will were to my wish, you and I should all our life time liue in more rest and contentment then hitherto we haue done, for the kerchiefe should be yours, and the sword mine, and so all suspicion and iealousie should neuer more raigne betwixt vs. What sweete loue said shee, do you doubt that I would not gaine the Kerchiefe if it were by firme loue to be gained? No Madam, answered he, but I did feare, because the way all is to bee made in the king your Father his Court, that you would make it difficult to enterprise the same, and yet I know that I am able

ble both to carrie you thither, and bring you back againe (if it please you) so that none that doe see vs, shall know who we are, My Lord said she, you know that I will obey you all my life long, and that you may dispose of me at your pleasure so as I doe more feare the danger whereinto these Gentlewomen may fall, if wee should be discouered, then any of our owne, and me thinks it were good to heare what their opinion is, before we vnder take any thing. Whatsoeuer shall please you Madam, answered the faire *Forlorne*, that do. Then shee called *Mabila* and the Damosell of *Denmarke*, who were talking with *Gandalin*, vnto whom they declared all that you haue heard. And although that vndoubtedly the danger was very great, neuertheless the gentlewomen seeing that they whom it did neere touch, were (as they thought) most forward therein, they would not speake that which they thought thereof, and answered *Oriana* that in moth she should neuer in all her life, haue the like occasion to win the most pretious Iewell in the world. Well said the Princeesse, vnto the faire *Forlorne*, doe then what you thinke best. I will tell you answered hee, how wee may goe I will answered *Enil* (who as yet doth not know what I am) to tell the King, that a strange Knight with his Lady will make triall of those Jewels, if it so please his Maiesty to giue them safe conduct, that nothing shal be said nor done vnto them against their wil, which granted I will conduct my Lady disguised in strange apparell, hauing a very fine launce or cypresse before her face, thorow the which she may see euery one, and yet shall not she bee knowne of any,

and I being wholly armed with my beuer downe, will leade her. By my faith, said *Mabila*, your enterprise is great: but I haue a garment that my mother did lately send vnto me by the Damosell of *Denmarke*, of the rarest fashion in the world, which will be fit for this purpose, and if it please my Lady, wee will presently try it vpon her, herewithall they went for it, which being brought, she and the Damosell of *Denmarke* apparelled her therewith, after so strange a manner, that they all began to laugh, seeing the Princeesse so disguised, and whatsoeuer the faire *Forlorne* had before determined to doe, they thought might now be very easily performed. Whereupon they forthwith commanded *Gandalin* to go buy some faire Palfrey for *Oriana*: and that hee should not faile to bring him to the end of the Castle wall of *Mirefleur*, the night before the trial of these Jewels was to be performed, and further that he should aduertise *Durin* to bring his horse the same euening into that place where hee first alighted when hee entred into the garden. For I will depare, said he, this night to goe vnto the Fountaine of the three channels, where *Enil* is to meete mee, whom I will forthwith send vnto the King, to purchase our safe conduct. Thus *Gandalin* departed, who did effectually performe whatsoeuer was committed to his charge. Therefore so soone as the evening was come, the faire *Forlorne* took his leave of the Ladies, who brought him vnto the foote of the garden wall, and sliding down on the other side, he found where *Durin* held his horse, vpon the which he mouned, taking his way towards the Forrest, and about the breake of day he arrived



riued at the fountaine, where with-  
in a while after *Enil* came bring-  
ing with him the Armor which he  
had caused to bee made, with the  
which he armed himselfe, and then  
demanded of him what newes  
there was in the Court. My Lord,  
answered hee, euery man there  
speaketh of your prowesse: and  
there is not any one but is very de-  
sirous to be acquainted with you.  
Then falling from one speech to a-  
nother, hee began to tell him the  
newes of the old Gentleman, who  
had brought the Sword, and the  
Kerchiefe, Trust me, said the *saire*  
*Forlorne*, it is now foure dayes ago,  
since a Gentlewoman aduertised  
mee thereof vpon this condition,  
that I should cary her to the court,  
to make triall of this aduventure,  
therefore I am constrayned to go  
thither, neuertheless thou know-  
est how much I desire, not to bee  
yet knowne of the King, nor of a-  
ny other, vntill my deedes do give  
them further testimony of my va-  
lour then yet they haue. For this  
cause thou must returne vnto *Lon-  
don* to tell the King, that if it please  
him, to giue security vnto a Gen-  
tlewoman and me, that nothing  
shall be eyther said or done vnto  
vs against our wils, we will come  
to make trial of the stranger his re-  
quest: but faile not in like sort to  
aduertise the Queene and her La-  
dies how the Gentlewoman con-  
strayneth mee to conduct her thi-  
ther, according to the promise  
that I haue made vnto her, and  
that otherwise I would not haue

come there, and after thou hast  
fulfilled my commandement, faile  
not in any case to returne hither  
the night before these Jewels may  
be shewed. In the meane season, I  
will goe seeke the Gentlewoman  
who is somewhat far from hence:  
and according to the answer that  
thou shalt bring vnto vs, wee will  
eyther go forward, or returne back  
again. Then *Enil* departed, and  
the *saire Forlorne* tooke the way to  
*Mirefleur*, where hee arrived so  
soone as day was shut in, and there  
he found *Durin* ready to receive  
his horse. By whose helpe hee got  
ouer the wall, and entred into the  
garden where *Oriana*, and the o-  
ther gentlewomen were, of whom  
he was most courteously entrai-  
ned: but when *Mabila* espied him  
comming, she said vnto him, what  
is the cause my good Cousin, that  
you are more braue now, than you  
were this last morning? How you  
met with any good booty of late?  
You know not the meaning of that?  
answered *Oriana*, hee went of  
purpose for this *saire Asmode*  
thinking to escape by force from  
this prison wherein we keep him.  
Is it true? said *Mabila*, if you de-  
termine to fight with vs, see that you  
be well aduised first, for you haue  
somewhat to do. And in this con-  
iuring together, they came vnto  
the Princeesse her chamber, where  
his supper was brought vnto him:  
for all that day he neyther had  
eaten nor drunken, fearing lest he  
should haue beene discovered.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XV.

*How the Damsell of Denmarke was sent vnto London to know what an-  
swer Enil had receiued from the King, touching the safe conduct which  
was demanded by the saire Forlorne, who did afterwards bring Oriana  
thither to prome the strange Jewels.*



SOOONE as the *saire*  
*Forlorne* was returned  
to *Mirefleur*, he told  
*Oriana* how *Enil* was  
gone to the Court  
according to their determination  
concluded the day before. Where-  
upon the Princeesse desirous to  
know an answer, and also to pro-  
uide all things necessary for their  
safety before hand, shee sent the  
Damsell of Denmarke vnto the  
Queen to certify her Maiesty, that  
because she found her selfe some-  
what ill at ease, it would please her  
grace to hold her excused, if shee  
could not as yet come and do her  
dutie vnto her Highnesse. So the  
Damsell departed, and returned  
not vntill it was very late, for shee  
stayed the arrivall of the Queene  
*Brillania*, to meet with whom the  
king himselfe did go, and she came  
into the court with one hundred  
knights, ready to begin the search  
of *Amadis*, according to the ap-  
pointment of *Gador* and *Fireflan*,  
and therefore shee was determined  
not to depart from Queene *Brilli-  
ana*, vntill they were returned again,  
neyther would she nor her women  
bee apparrelled with other Gar-  
ments then of black cloth, vntill  
he were found, for such weeds did  
she weare at such time as hee did  
make her Queene, and now would  
shee neuer change her manner of  
life, if he were lost. In your iudg-  
ment said *Oriana*, is the fofoire as  
thereport goeth of her? So helpe  
me God, answered the Damsell,

except your grace, she is the fairest  
woman, and of the best behaviour  
that ever I did see; shee was very  
sorry when she heard of your sick-  
nesse, and shee sendeth you word  
by me, that she will come and doe  
her dutie vnto you so soone as you  
shall thinke convenient. Truly,  
said *Oriana*, I am more desirous to  
see her then any other that I doe  
know. Madam answered the *saire*  
*Forlorne*, beleaue me the well de-  
ueth that you should shew her all  
the honour you may, although  
heretofore you haue wrongfully  
foraymed some griefe for her sake:  
gentle loue, said the Princeesse, for  
Gods sake, let vs speake no more  
of puffed melancholies, for I am  
assured that I did thinke much.  
You shall yet be better assured, an-  
swered she, by the testimony that  
you shall receiue, of those Jewels  
which we shall giue, the which  
will henceforth be a witness with  
all these vnto happy times that you  
haue concerned against me, if they  
should chauce to come againe  
into your sight, increasing in  
you the opinion of that blacke and  
dutie which I haue done and done  
vnto you. My lady, said *Oriana*,  
and well assured that the Jewels  
shall make you beleeue, that what  
wrong soeuer you receiued of me,  
proceeded of no other cause, but  
by the extreame love which I did  
beare vnto you: we shall see there-  
ly said the Damsell of Denmarke,  
what will happen. For the king  
hath granted your request by *Enil*.

K

In

In this sort did *Oriana*, and the rest of her company passe away the time, vntill the day came wherein they must depart, to make triall of that which you haue heard, which caused her to rise about midnight, attiring her as the *faire Forlorne* had deuised, and hee likewise was armed at all points, that done they passed through the garden, and came to the place where *Gaudalin* held their horses in readines. Then mounted they vpon them, taking their way toward the Forrest, right vnto the Fountaine of the three channels. But there *Oriana* thinking vpon the enterprise which she went about, foreseeing the inconuenience and danger thereof, not onely if she were disclosed, but also how if she failed in gaining the kerschiefe, *Amadis* might haue iust cause to suspect her, and by that meanes she might loose that good reputation which shee had gotten with him. Herewithall she began to repent her forwardnesse, and to tremble so extremely, that the *faire Forlorne* perceived it, who said vnto her. Madam, had I thought you would haue been so ill at ease with this voyage, I sweare vnto you that I would rather haue died then haue brought you out of doores, therefore if it please you, let vs returne againe to *Mirefleur*. So saying, he turned his horse head, neuertheless *Oriana*, considering that by her an aduenture so commendable should bee deferred, changed her minde and answered him. I beseech you sweete loue not to take any heede vnto the feare that a timorous woman may haue in the midst of this great wood, but vnto the vertue and valor that remaineth in you. Very sorry was the *faire Forlorne* because hee had spoken in such sort vnto her,

doubting lest he had offended her, and he said vnto her. Madam, seeing that your discretion hath surmounted my folly, I beseech you to pardon me: for I assure you, my meaning was not to speake any thing that should be offensive vnto you. As they had ended their conference, they came vnto the fountaine being yet an houre from day, where they had not long stayed before *Enil* came vnto them, whereat they were very ioyfull. Then the *faire Forlorne* saide vnto *Oriana*: Madame, behold the Esquire which I promised you to send vnto king *Lisuart*, by whose answer we may determine what to do. In faith my Lord, answered *Enil*, he sendeth you by me all the assurance that you demand, and further he aduertiseth you that the triall of the aduenture begunneth this day after his Maiesties coming from the Chappell. All the better said the *faire Forlorne*, we shall then haue no great need of stay. Hereupon hee gaue him his shield and launce, and without putting off his Helmet at all, they took the right way to *London*: the people had already heard that the knight which did ouercome the Giants should come vnto the kings lodging, they said one to another: Heavens shield, the *faire Forlorne* from all mischief, he is worthy of great praise, and most happy may that Lady thinke herselfe, to whom he remaineth a servant. These words might *Oriana* vnderstand very well, whereat she was not a little ioyfull, knowing that she was Lady & Maistresse of him, whom so many people did both loue & honor: afterward they came and alighted at the Palace where they found the king, Queene Ladies, and a great number of knights

knights already assembled all together in a great hall, to make trial who should gaine the old mans Jewels. And as soon as they knew of the arrival of the *Faire Forlorne*, the King rose vp with his traine to receiue them: wherefore the *Faire Forlorne* kneeling down would haue kissed his hands: but the King lifted him vp, saying vnto him: My good friend, you are most hartily welcome hither, where you shall be as free as you would wish, for you haue done as much seruice for me, in so small a time, as euer any knight performed either for King or Prince. The *Faire Forlorne* answered not one word, but onely bowed himselfe to his maiestie in signe of thanks: and without stepping one foote from *Oriana*, (whom he held by the hand) they came towards the Ladies, who did all salute them very courteously. You may imagine if the young Princeesse were not now in some feare to be discovered, being in such an assembly, for the Queene her mother stepped vnto her, looking her stedfastly in the face, although it was couered with a laune, and she said vnto her. Gentlewoman, I do not know who you are, for to my knowledge I did neuer see you, neuertheless, for the loue of this knight (in whose custody you are) that hath done the king so great seruice, assure you that in this place shal be shewed vnto you, all the honour and seruice that possibly may bee. For the which the *Faire Forlorne* humbly thanked her Maiestie, but *Oriana* without speaking one word held her head down continually. Therewithall the king and all his knights withdrew them to one side, and the Queene and her Ladies to the other. And in the meane time the *Faire Forlorne* leading *Oriana* by the hand,

came and beseeched the King, that he and his Lady might remaine in the midst of the hall, for they were not determined to touch the Jewels, except that all the assistance did first misse the gaining of them. The which the king did grant vnto him, who did first of all take vp the sword, which was layd vpon the table by the olde Gentleman named *Macandon*: and the King did draw it out one shaftmont and no more. Wherefore *Macandon* said. It may please your Maiesty, if there bee not found in your Court any, more amorous then you are, I shal not depart from hence so contented as I hoped to doe. Therewithall he took the sword and laid it again vpon the table, for so must he doe after euery triall. Then *Ga-lor* tooke it vp, but yet he performed lesse then the King did. The which *Florestan*, *Galnanes*, *Grondan*, *Brundoinas* and *Lundin* seeing, they all one after another tryed what they could doe, and yet none of them could withstand it so much as *Florestan* did, who drew it forth a foote and more: but then *Gullian* the pensive tooke it, and he passed *Florestan* about halfe a foote, so that hee came vnto the middle thereof. Trust me then, sayde *Macandon*, if you did loue but as much againe as you do, the sword should bee yours. After him there came more then a hundred Knights, who did little or nothing therein, whereupon *Macandon* iesting with them, called them heretiques in loue. Then *Agrais* who had staid to bee the last, being sure (as hee thought, considering the firme loue which hee did bate vnto his Ladie *Olinda*) that the aduenture was ordained for him and on other, stepped forth, and beholding his Mistrresse hee tooke the

the sword and drew it forth of the scabbard within 3. fingers breadth and as he strained himselfe to pull it quite forth, the fire issued from the blade so hot, that it burned part of his apparrel, so that he was constrained to leaue it there, being very ioyfull neuerthelessse, that he had performed more then any of the rest. Truly said *Macandon* you are a loyall knight, and you haue almost had occasion to bee content, and I satisfied. Lastly *Palomir* & *Dragonis* approched, who were but the day before arriued at the court, and they gained no more then did *Galaor*: which caused *Macandon* to laugh, saying vnto them. My aduise is, that you should put both of your parts in the sword together, & it may be that you shall haue sufficient to defend you hereafter. You say true answered *Dragonis*: but if you be this day made knight, you shall not be of so yong yeeres but that you may very well remember it hereafter. At that word every one began to laugh, in the meane season there was neuer a knight remaining in the Court who did not put himselfe forward to gaine the sword, and yet it was all in vaine. Wherefore the faire *Forlorne* holding *Oriana* by the hand, came to take it vp: when *Macandon* said vnto him: knight this sword wil fit you better (if you may gain it) then that which you haue, & yet it cannot be gotten by force of Armes without constancy in loue. It must then be mine answered the faire *Forlorne*, who therewithall did draw it forth of the scabbard as easily as if it had beene his owne, and that part of it, which seemed to be burning, became like vnto the other, and was as bright as euer was seene.

Therewithall *Macandon* (exce-

ding ioyfull) cast himselfe at the feete of the faire *Forlorne*, saying, vnto him, O noble knight, God increafe thy honour: for in ending my long trauaile you haue greatly honoured this Court. And truly that Lady who is serued of you, hath cause to loue you well, except she be the most mischicuous & disloyallst woman in the world. Now therefore do me this fauour (if it please you) as to giue me the order of knighthood, for by no other then you, may I obtaine it, nor yet enioy the signory which of right belongeth vnto me ouer many great personages. Cause first a triall of the Kerchiefe to be made, answered the faire *Forlorne*, and afterward I will performe whatsoeuer I ought to do vnto you. Then girded he the sword vnto his side, leauing his owne for him that would take it vp, and returned to the place from whence hee departed. Great was the praise that all mē gaue vnto him: but more great was the emulation of *Galaor* and *Floures* towards him, concluding in their minds that so soone as the battell against king *Cildadan* was finished (if they thence escaped with life) they would presently seeke him out, and challenge him to the combat, wherein they would die, or else make it knowne vnto every one that their brother *Amadis* was a far better knight then he, who (as they thought) did eclipse his honor, by the reputation which he had gotten in gaining the strangers sword. At that instant the Ladies approched to proue which of them might obtaine the Kerchiefe, and first of all the Queene began, putting it vpon her head: notwithstanding the floures did not any whit change their colour for her: Whereupon *Macandon* said,

said, Madam if the king your husband haue shewed the little loyaltye that remaineth in him, in his triall of the sword, me thinks you do now well enough requite him for it. The Queene blushed and being halfe ashamed she returned to her place: then came the faire Queen *Briolania*, who therein performed as much as the first. Vnto whom *Macandon* likewise said: beleeue me Madam, considering the great beauty wherewith you are indued, you are more beloued then louing, as wee may plainly see by this kerchief. After her came soure kings daughters, meruailous faire *Eladia*, *Espreletta*, *Aldena*, and the sage *Olinda*, vpon whose heads the kerchiefe being placed, the withered floures began a little to flourish, so that there was not any one of them which did not imagine that she should be the owner thereof, wherewith *Oriana* was in a great perplexity. Yet in the end the floures returned to their withered colour. And for the same cause the Gentlewomen set them downe againe in their places: neuerthelessse it was not without receiuing some little frumpe from the olde Gentleman, who for one of his age could very fitly apply them. In the end *Oriana* perceiving that every one had failed, shee was very glad thereof, and therefore she made a signe vnto the faire *Forlorne* that he should leade her to the Table, where the triall was to bee made, but so soone as the kerchiefe was set vpon her head the blasted floures were as greene and as faire as those that were most fresh, so that there was no difference at all to be perceiued. Wherefore *Macandon* cried out: Ah Madam, you are shee whom I haue sought for fortie yeeres before you were

borne, now said he to the faire *Forlorne*, I pray you sir deferre not the honour which is by you two due vnto me: but if you please (as already I haue intreated you) make me knight, then of this faire Lady (according as I am bound) I will receiue my Armes. Let it be then presently said the faire *Forlorne*, for I am not to tarry long here. Therefore *Macandon* caused forthwith his Armour to be brought, wherewith he was presently armed putting it vpon his white coat according as new knights are wont to doe, then the faire *Forlorne*, laying his sword vpon his shoulder, and fastning on his right spur, gaue him his order, *Oriana* girded on his sword which was in like sort brought by his Esquires. Which ceremony being finished, the Gentlewomen beholding him in that order, would in some sort bee reuenged for the flours which he had giuen them, and therefore they all burst into laughter, especially *Aldena*, who spake so loud that all might heare her.

Behold the countenance of this faire Lad how like a young knight hee looketh. Surely wee ought all to reioyce, because hee shal all his life long be as fresh and lusty as now he is. How know you that, answered *Espreletta*: By his apparrell said they, which shal euen last as long as hee. Faire Gentlewomen said *Macandon*, I would not change my pleasure for the best of your fauours: and if I am not so youthfull as you say, yet am I not therefore to bee reamed lesse discrete, but as for you who are yet yong and foolish, it were good that you learne to bee more aduised and modest then you are. This answer of his pleased the King very well, who in

no sort liked of the gentlewomens speeches. Whilst these things were in doing, the *faire Forlorne* was ready to depart, when the Queene who knew not her owne daughter, said vnto her, Gentlewoman although you are not desirous to be knowne in this company, yet bethinke you what it will please you to command either of the king or me. By my faith, Madam, answered the *faire Forlorne*, I am a little acquainted with her as you, although she hath bene seauen daies together in my company, but for that little that I haue perceiued by her, I can assure you that shee is most excellent faire. Trust me faire Lady, said *Briolania* (speaking vnto *Oriana*) I know not your name, but considering the loyaltie wherewith you are endued, if your friend doe affect you with the like constancy as you doe loue him, you may well be esteemed the fairest couple that euer loue vnited together. *Oriana* smiled at the words of *Briolania*, when the *faire Forlorne* tooke his leaue, who seeing that the King would leade her towards her horse he said vnto him. Your Maiesty hath reason to honour her, by whom your Court hath this day bene more highly exalted, then euer heretofore by any other Lady it hath bene. In good sooth answered the king, you say true, and therefore I will my selfe conduct her forth of the City, in the which I could willingly desire that it would please her, (and you also) to make some longer abode. Saying so, they all mounted on horseback, and the king held the raines of his daughters horse, speaking all the way vnto her, who answered him not one word againe, fearing to beeknowne. *Galaor* in like sort

entertained the *faire Forlorne*. But he so much hated him for the reasons before rehearsed, that hee could not speake one courteous word vnto him, whereat the *faire Forlorne* laughed seeing his brothers countenance, and thus they rode together a good way from the city, vntill the *faire Forlorne* said vnto the King: I beseech your Maiesty (if it please you) to passe no further, otherwise you may chance to displease this Gentlewoman, beleeue me said the King, I will rather returne. Therewithall he embraced him, and said, I would sir knight that it liked you, to be one of my knights. If it please your Maiesty, answered he, I will willingly bee one of the hundred that shall accompany you against king *Cildadan*. If you do me that fauour said the king, I hope that thereby our enemies would be no lesse discouraged then those on our part would be encouraged, & therefore I intreate you so to bee. Thus they departed, the king taking his way back to the city, and the *faire Forlorne* with *Oriana* towards the Forrest, being very ioyfull that they had so well finished that dangerous aduenture. But they were no sooner arriued at the Fountaine of the three channells, when they beheld an esquire coming towards them mounted upon a strong horse, who at his arrival said vnto the *faire Forlorne*: knight, *Arcalaus* commandeth thee that thou bring this Gentlewoman vnto him, which if thou deniest to accomplish, hee saith that he will himselfe come take thy head from thy shoulders. And where is *Arcalaus*? Answered the *faire Forlorne*. The Esquire shewed him where hee sate vnder a rust of Trees, together with another knight,

knight, both twaine armed & ready to mount on horseback. When *Oriana* heard this message, the poore soule was in such extreame feare, that shee was likely to haue fallen from her horse, wherefore the *faire Forlorne* said vnto her. How now sweete Lady, are you afraid of *Arcalaus* being in my keeping? no, no, hee threatneth to haue my head, and yet he shall quit himselfe well if hee can saue his owne. Then he betook him to his armes, & said vnto the esquire, go, return vnto thy master and tell him, that I am a strange knight that knoweth him not, and therefore I will not do that. The esquire returned to *Arcalaus* who was so mad angry therewith, that hee said vnto the other knight which was with him, good nephew *Lindoraq*, go take the kerchief from that Damosell, for I do giue it to *Madasima* your loue, & if he that conducteth her will contra-dict it, cut off his head forthwith, & afterwards hang it vp by the hair vpon the next tree. Therewithall *Lindoraq* went towards the *faire Forlorne*, who had heard all the words of *Arcalaus*, whereupon hee came to meete him. And although he seemed to be very great, as hee which was the son of *Cartadaque*, the giant of the inuincible mountaine, begottē vpon one of the sisters of *Arcalaus*, yet did the *faire Forlorne* make so little account of him, that he said vnto him, knight passe no further: wherfore answered *Lindoraq*. Because said the *faire Forlorne*, it pleaseth me not. Thou wilt bee far more displeased when thou must lose thy head. Indeepe said the *faire Forlorne*, so I would, but thou art more like to lose thine own, if thou keep it not the better. And without any longer debating, hee clapped the spurs to his horse,

couching his staffe against *Lindoraq*, & *Lindoraq* in like sort against him, so that they met one another with such force, that their launces (hitting in the middest of their shields) flew in shivers. Neuertheless the *faire Forlorne* finding *Lindoraq* at aduantage, vnhorsed him, and the truncheon of the staffe remained in his body, yet did he rise vp againe speedily, for hee was a knight of a stout heart, and beholding that his enemy turned to charge him againe, thinking to recoile back to auoide his blow, hee fell downe ouer & ouer, so that the truncheon in his body passed further into him, with the extreame paine whereof, hee gaue vp the Ghost, *Arcalaus* who had seen his Nephew throwne downe, did suddenly put his staffe in his rest to reuenge him, and running against the *faire Forlorne* he had surely hit him, if hee had not turned somewhat out of the way, but hee stepped on the one side, letting *Arcalaus* passe by, and in his passing, he strooke him such a blow ouer the left hand, that hee cut off foure of his fingers, leauing him no more then his thumbe to hold his shield which he was forced to let fall, the great paine whereof enforced him to fly as fast as his horse could run, without so much as once looking behind him, and the *faire Forlorne* after him, who made all the hast he could to ouertake him. Notwithstanding *Arcalaus* was so well mortified, that in lesse then an houre hee had so far gotten the start, that the *faire Forlorne* wishing all the diuells in hell to follow him, returned againe to *Oriana*, and therewithall hee forthwith commanded *Enil* to carry the head of *Lindoraq*, and the peece of *Arcalaus* his hand vnto the king,

king, and that he should recite vnto him at large vpon what occasion he was in such sort assailed. So *Enil* departed leauing *Amadis* and *Oriana* together, who shortly after arrived at *Mirefleur*, where they found *Gandalin* and *Darin* staying without the garden walls, to take their horses when they should come: they came to helpe the Princeesse down, and they told her that *Mabila* and the Damofell of *Denmarke* were on the other side of the wall in the Orchard. Hereupon they rayfed vp a Lather, and *Oriana* mounted vpon it, whom the faire *Forlorne* led by the hand, when they were at the top of the wall they beheld *Mabila* and the Damofell of *Denmarke* lying fast asleepe vpon the grasse, very heauy with the feare that they had endured all the day, least matters should not fort to so good effect as they wished. Then *Oriana* called them shewing vnto them the Kerchief which she had gotten, which so soone as they beheld they presently ran to helpe her downe: and when shee was come into the Orchard, *Mabila* said vnto her, Madame, I neuer had greater desire to see you returne, then I haue had euer since your departure from hence. For if you had beene discovered, the Damofell & I had been but in a bad taking: neuerthelesse we determined to arme vs with patience. My good Cousin answered she, thanks be to God, all goeth well, I haue the kerchiefe, and your Cousin hath the sword. I, but thanke our Teares (said *Mabila*) by the which they were chiefly gotten. My Cousin said the faire *Forlorne*, I will not stick to shedde for you as much blood, as you haue for mee done teares, whensoever you haue neede of me, but I pray if you haue

any thing to eate, bring it into my Ladies chamber, for we haue gotten vs good stomachs. Herewithal he led *Oriana* by the hand into the castle. Now because wee will not digresse ouer far from that which happened to king *Lisuart*, we will leaue *Oriana* and her company at *Mirefleur*, to tell you what happened vnto his Maiesty and *Galaor*, as they returned from the faire *Forlorne*, before they came back vnto the citty. For a yong Damofell did meete them, who deliuered vnto each one of them a letter, sent from *Vrganda the Vnknowne*, and without saying any other thing vnto them, she turned her horse toward that way from whence shee came. Wherefore the king opened his Letter which contayned this that ensueth. Vnto you *Lisuart* king of great *Brittaine*, such health & happinesse as becometh your Royall Maiesty. I *Vrganda the Vnknowne*, your humble seruant, doe certifie you, that the battell which is appointed betwixt you and king *Cildadan* shal be one of the most dangerous and cruellest that euer was scene, in the which the faire *Forlorne*, who hath newly giuen such great hope vnto your Maiesty shal lose his name, & by one blow that he shall giue, all his valiant deedes shall be quite forgotten, and then shall you bee in the greatest extremity that euer you were: for many good knights shall lose their liues, and you your selfe shal fall into the like danger, at that same instant when the faire *Forlorne* shall draw blood from you, neuerthelesse by three blowes which hee shall giue, those on his side shall remaine conquerors.

And beyour Maiesty assured that without doubt all this shal happen therfore provide for al your affaies with

with good aduise. After that the king had read this letter, although that he was a stout prince, valiant, and of a couragious heart, yet (knowing *Vrganda* worthie to bee beleueed in all her prophesies) he was afraid, doubling least the faire *Forlorne* in whom he most trusted, would reuolt vnto the side of the *Ireland* king, and knowing also what danger was likely to ensue, hee neuerthelesse dissembled the matter whatsoever he thought thereof. And after hee had a long while mused thereupon, he declared the whole circumstance of it vnto *Galaor*, saying vnto him. My faithfull friend, I doe wholly determine to impart this secret vnto you, and to none other, that I may vnderstand what is your aduise therein. Beleeue me, if it like your Maiesty answered he, considering what *Vrganda* hath written vnto me, I haue more neede of counsell my selfe, then to counsell another, and if it were possible to conclude a peace betwixt you and the king of *Ireland* (provided that your honour were not thereby to be impaired) me thinks it should be for the best, or at least if that cannot be, it were good that you should not bee present in the battaile. For I do see, in this Letter two strange accidents likely to fall out, the one is that the faire *Forlorne*, shal wound you so cruelly, that he shall shed your blood vpon the ground, and the other that by three blowes which he shall giue, those on his side shal remaine conquerors, and by this aduertisement it seemeth that hee shall be against you. Truly said the king I am so thoroughly assured of your good will that I know you doe faithfully and louingly aduise me, so as if my trust were not in God (who hitherto hath bestowed

innumerable fauours vpon me, as in chusing mee king ouer his people) or if I did not stedfastly belieue that no liuing man is able to withstand his diuine determination, I should haue great reason to bee in doubt, but you know that the hearts & discretion of kings ought to bee answerable vnto the greatness of their estate and calling, endeavouring as well to preserue their subiects in safety, as to provide for their owne security. And therefore I determine to remie all into the hands of my God, and patiently to endure whatsoever danger he shal lay vpon me, for in him only remaineth the disposition of things to come, for which cause my good friend, I assure you, that I will bee present in this battaile, for because I would be partaker of all the good, honor, or hurt that may happen vnto those which shall accompany me. Greatly did *Galaor* like of the kings magnanimous determinations and answered him, Beleeue me it is not for nothing that your Maiesty is esteemed the most vertuous and valiantest Prince of the world, and if all kings could as well repress the counsell of those who dissuade them from their haughtie enterprises, none durst be once so bold as to say anything vnto them, but that which should bee for their honour and glory, but now your Maiesty may bee pleased to see what *Vrganda* hath written vnto me. Herewithal he began to reade his Letter, wherein was contained this which ensueth.

Vnto you *Don Galaor* of *Gaule*, most valiant and hardie Knight, I *Vrganda the Vnknowne*, doe send all hearty salutations, as she who both loueth and esteemeth you, & I will that you should vnderstand that



that which must happen vnto you, in this cruell battell betweene the two kings, *Lisuart* and *Cildadan*. If you be there be you sure that in the end thereof, your large and strong members, shall want power to assist your inuincible heart, & at the departure from the Combat your head shall bee in his power, who with the three blowes that he shall strike shall remaine conqueror. In faith said the king, if the contents of the Letter be true, and that you bee in this conflict, you see your death prepared, which should bee a great losse considering your valiant beginning in deeds of armes, therefore I shall so order the matter, as at this time you shall be excused from thence. It may please your Maiesty, answered *Galaor*, I now do very wel perceiue, that the counsell which euen now I deliuered vnto you, hath displeased your Maiesty, when seeing mee sound and able of body, you would perswade me to a matter so greatly to my dishonour, God forbid that I should herein obey you. Gentle friend said the king, you speake both vertuously, and valiantly, for the which I thanke you: and for this time, let vs leaue off this talke, and my aduice is, that none do see our Letters, for (it may bee) they may cause some feare & astonishment euen in the hearts of those that doe thinke themselves to bee most hardy and valiant. By this time they were come so neere vnto the Citty, that they entred vnder the gate thereof, & as the king looked behinde, he beheld two knights armed at all points, whose horses were ouer-trauelled & weary, and their armour all to broken, in such sort that it was very easy to be perceiued that they had been at some bickering. One was *Brunco de*

*Bon Mer*, and the other *Branfu* his brother, who came of purpose vnto king *Lisuart*, to be of the number of those hundred knights which should bee in the battaile, if it pleased him to accept of them. But by the way *Brunco* had bene aduertised, how the aduenture of the Sword was atchieued, where-with he was meruailous displeased that he came no sooner, because hee would haue tried his fortune therein, as he had done vnder the Arch of loyall louers, the which he had passed, and for the firm and constant loue that he did beare vnto *Melicia* sister vnto *Amadis*, hee did verily belecue that no such like aduenture might escape him: these two knights being come neer, did their durie vnto the king, who receiued the very courteously. Then said *Brunco*, it may please your Maiesty we haue bene aduertised of a battell which you haue agreed to be executed by a few knights, & so much the rather ought they to be selected and chosen men. For this cause if it would please your highnesse to doe vs this honor that we might be of the same number your Maiesty may bee assured that we would bee very desirous to serue you. The King who had many times bene aduertised of the prowesse of these twaine, especially of the valour of *Don Bruno* (who for a yong knight, was as much esteemed as any other that might be found) accepted of them very willingly, and thanked them for their good will.

Now did not *Brunco* as yet know *Galaor*, but at the same instant they entred into such acquaintance and familiarity together, that vntill the Battell was finished, they parted not asunder.

And as the king entred into his lodg-

lodging, *Enil* came before him, with the head of *Lindora* which did hang by the hayre at the paitrill of his horse; and he had in his hand the shield and fingers of *Arcales* the Enchanter, by meanes whereof before he was come neer the Palace, a great number of people did follow him, to know what newes he did bring. Afterwards being come into the kinges presence, hee declared vnto him the message that the faire *Forlorne* had sent by him, wherewith he was no lesse glad, then amazed at so many good and blessed chanes that euery day happened and proceeded from this strange knight, and hee remained a great while praising & extolling him without ceasing. In like sort *Filipinel* who had been to giue defiance vnto the Giants, at the same instant approached, & he recited the names and surnames of those which were appointed to be in the battell of king *Cildadan*, amongst whom there were found many strong Giants, and other knights of great worth, who were all embarked already, and how before that foure dayes were past, they would all take landing in the bay of *Vega*, where the battell was to be foughten, then hee told the king how he had found at the burning Lake (which stands in the Isle of *Mongasa*) king *Arban* of North Wales, and *Angriotta d'Esbrauux* prisoners vnto *Grumadaca* wife vnto *Famongomad*: who caused them to suffer infinit miseries and calamities, whipping them euery day most cruelly so that their bodies were wounded all ouer, and they wrote a letter vnto the king, which *Filipinel* deliuered vnto him, the tenure whereof ensueth. Vnto the most high and mighty Prince *Lisuart* king of great Brittain, and to

all our Friends and Allies within his Dominions. Wee *Arban* once king of North Wales, and *Angriotta d'Esbrauux*, now detained in dolorous prison, doe let you know that our misfortune, more cruell then death it selfe, hath brought vs into the power of the most pitiless *Grumadaca* wife to *Famongomad*, who in reuenge of the death of her Husband and Sonne, doth daily cause vs to bee tortured with so many and strange torments, that it is impossible to bee imagined, so as euery houre wee desire the abridging of our daies; that thereby we might bee released of our dolours. But this mischievous womā, the more to lengthen our paine, deferreth our death as much as she may, the which with our owne hands we had effected, but that the feare of the losse of our soules, withheld vs.

And for as much as we are at this present so extremely wounded, that wee are no longer able to resist our deaths, we send you this Letter, written with our blood, by the which wee beseech God both to grant you the victory against these traitors, that haue in such inhumane sort tormented vs, and also that he will bee pleased to haue mercy vpon our soules. Great sorrow and compassion had the King for the losse of these 2. knights, neuertheless seeing that for the present hee could in no sort remedie their misfortune, he distempered his griefe, shewing as good a countenance as hee could, & because he would in no sort discourage the other Gentlemen there present, he set before their eyes the accidents whereinto many others had fallen, for the maintenance of their Honour of Knighthood, from the which many times they haue with great

great glory and honour escaped. But assure you my friends, said the King, that if wee doe gaine the Battaile, I will take such reuenge hercof, that the rumor thereof shall fill the eares of all the people in the World. Therefore they

who are appointed to goe with mee, let them bee ready to morrow, for I will depart to goe meet mine enemies. And according as it was appointed so was all performed.

## CHAP. XVI.

*How that after the Faire Forlorne had brought Oriana back againe to Mirefleur he departed, that he might be in the battel with King Lisuart, and what happened vnto him.*

**T**Hree dayes did the faire Forlorne remain with Oriana after the gayning of the sword and Kerchiefe, and the fourth day following about midnight hee tooke his leaue of her, and being armed at all points, he rode all the night long. Now had hee commanded *Enil* to goe and stay for him at a Castle scituated at the foote of a Hill, neere vnto the which the Battaile was to be foughten, and it belonged vnto an ancient knight named *Abradan*: for in his house were all aduenturous knights often-times honoured and serued, when they came thither to lodge. And the same night did the faire Forlorne passe hard by king *Lisuart* his Campe not being perceiued at all, afterwards hee rode so long that vpon the 5. day following he came vnto *Abradan* his house, where he found *Enil* which was there arriued but a little before: greatly was the faire Forlorne feasted by his Host, and as they were talking together, there entred in two of his nephews that were returned from the place where the combat should be: who assured them that already King *Cildadan* and his troop, were there

arriued, and had set vp their Tent and Pauillions hard by the sea side. In like sort *Don Grameda* and *Gimtes* Nephew to king *Lisuart* were there come, with whom a Tuce was concluded vpon cyther part, to bee holden vntill the day of the battaile, and that neyther of the two Princes should enter into the Combat with any more then one hundred knights in his company, according as it was promised and sworne by them. Nephews, said the host, what do you thinke of the Irish-men, whom God confound. Vncle answered one of them, they haue with them so many Giants, that if God doe not miraculously assist our good king, beleue me it is impossible for him to withstand them. Herewithall the teares fell from their Vncles eies, and he said, I hope that God will protect the best and iustest king in the world, from falling into the hands of such wicked people. Mine host, answered the faire Forlorne, be not afraid as yet, for it happeneth out very often that courage and equity ouerthroweth the pride and presumption of the strongest. But I pray you goe vnto the king, and tell him that there is lodged in your house a knight called the

*faire*

*Faire Forlorne*, and that hee desireth his Maiesty to send word by you, when the day of the battaile shall be. What sayd the olde man, are you hee that of late did send *Don Quadragant* vnto his Count, and slew *Famagadam* and his son, when they had taken my Lady *Leonor* and her knights? beleue me Sir, if ener I did any pleasure vnto aduenturous knights, I doe eten at this present acknowledge me thoroughly to be recompenced, my house beeing now honoured with your presence, and I will not faile to accomplish that which it hath pleased you to command me. Then he mounted vpon his horse, and tooke with him his two Nephews, and rode vntill hee came where king *Lisuart* was encamped, within halfe a league of his enemies, vnto whom he declared the message of the *Faire Forlorne*, at the which all the company did greatly reioyce. And the King answered: seeing that we haue the *Faire Forlorne* on our side, I doe also hope that wee shall haue the honor of the our enterprise. And now see the number of one hundred knights very well furnished, had wee but one knight more. It may please your Maiesty said *Grameda*, you now haue the advantage, for the *Faire Forlorne* is well worth siue. This speech did nothing at all please *Galaor*, *Florestan*, nor *Agrais*, for they hated the *Faire Forlorne* vnto death, for the wrong which they thought he did vnto *Amadis*, neuerthelesse they held their peace, and *Abradan* hauing receiued his answer of the King, returned to his guest, vnto whom he recired the pleasure that every one receiued at the newes that he brought from him, and of the hundred knights there was no

more then one missing, but that they were all assembled. The which beeing vnderstood by *Enil*, hee did so much that he found his Master apart and falling downe vpon his knees, he sayd vnto him: My Lord, although my seruice vnto you hath not bene such as it should, and therefore haue I nothing at all deserued, yet am I so bolde at this time to request one gift of you, which I beseech you most humbly to graunt vnto mee. Demand it sayd hee, and rise vp. My Lord sayd *Enil*, I pray you the make mee knight, to the end that I may goe vnto the King to entreat his Maiesty that hee will bee pleased to accept of mee for the last knight of his number. Friend *Enil* sayd the *Faire Forlorne*, me thinketh that thou shouldst beginne to try thy prowesse in a place lesse dangerous then this battaile will bee, not because I would desire to make thee knight, but in that I know it is too waighty a charge for thee. My Lord sayd *Enil*, I knowe that in all my life I cannot haue a better meanes to gaine honour: for if I die amongst so many men of worth, my reputation shall bee thereby increased, and if I may escape, my renowne shall be perpetuall, hauing been one in number with a hundred of the best knights in the world. The *Faire Forlorne* bearing *Enil* speake so vertuously, with a kind pittie that he had of him, he ruminated these words to himselfe. Thou dost well shew thy selfe to bee a killisman vnto the good knight *Gandalus* my second father. Then hee answered *Enil*, if thou haue so great a desire to proue thy self such a one as thou sayest, I will no longer diswaide thee. And therewithall he presently went vnto his host, and entreated

L

red

ted him to giue him an armour for his Esquire, who desired to bee made a knight, the which he granted, wherefore *Enil* according to the custome, watched all night in the Chappell, and the next morning about the breake of day, after seruiue was ended, hee received the order of knighthood by the *Faire Forlorne*, which done they all mounted on horse-back, in the companie of *Abradan* and his two Nephewes, who serued them for their Esquires. In the end they arrived where king *Lisuart* had already ordered his battaile, being ready to goe meete his enemies, who stayed his comming in a plaine field, but when the King beheld the *Faire Forlorne*, hee was exceeding ioyfull, and there was not any in the company, whose courage was not increased at his comming. Then hee approached neer vnto the king, vnto whom he sayd, it may please your Maiesty, I am come to accomplish my promise, and also I do bring another knight with me, for I was aduertised that your number was not full, where-withall the king gaue him most hearty thanks, and although there was not any one of the hundred knights, who were not all approomen, and esteemed amongst the best, yet king *Lisuart* (after he had ordered his battallion, seeing his enemies aproached) beganne to make this Oration vnto his armie. My fellowes, louing friends and countriemen, I am sure there is not any one amongst you, who knoweth not very well, how wee haue vnderaken this battaile with great right, especially for the defence of the honour and reputation of the Realme of Great *Brittaine*, which king *Cildadan* and those of *Ireland* would abase, in

denying vnto vs the tribute which they haue time out of minde paid vnto our predecessors, for the acknowledgement of the fauours that in times past they haue accepted at their hands. Moreover I am thoroughly assured that there is not any of you all, whose heart is not both valiant and invincible, for which cause there is no need that you should bee further animated, or incouraged, against those with whom you are so encounter, hauing your honor before your eyes, which I knowe you doe more esteeme then an hundred liues, if it were possible that so many you might haue) one after another. Therefore then my deere friends let vs boldly march on, notwithstanding a small number of cruel and bloody minded Gyants, that are in their troupe, for a man is not to be esteemed the valiant by the outward appearance of his great, strong, and huge members, but by the magnanimous & courageous heart that remaineth within him: you doe oftentimes behold the dogge to master the bull, and the sparrow hawke or hobbin to beate the kite. Our enemies trust in the force of these monsters, without hauing any respect vnto the wrong that they maintaine, and wee onely put our trust in God, who being the righter of all iniuries, will giue vnto vs sufficient strength to vanquish them, by the dexterity of our persons & our owne endeauiours. Let vs boldly then march on my friends, euery one bearing this minde, that hee is able both to combat and conquer the proudest of their troupe, assuring you: it this day we gaine the honour of the battaile, that besides the honour and glory that shalbe spread of vs thorow the whole

whole world, neuer enemy to great *Brittaine* dare once hereafter be so bold as to lift vp his head to doe vs the least iniury that may bee. Thus did king *Lisuart* incourage his knights: and king *Cildadan* on the other side did the like vnto his, for he went from ranke to ranke to animate them, saying vnto them: Gentle knights of *Ireland*, if you vnderstand vpon what occasion you goe to fight, there is not one of you that will not blame his predecessor, for being so slacke in the vndertaking of so glorious an enterprise. The kings of Great *Brittaine*, Vsurpers and Tyrants (not onely towards their subiects, but also vpon their neighbours) haue heretofore without any right, exacted vpon their ancestors such a tribute, as is very well known hath often bene payd, and for this cause wee haue made this assembly, and are come vnto this place to defend our liberty, which cannot bee paid by any treasure. It is your cause, it is your right, and not yours onely but your childrens, who vntill this present time haue bene held, and reputed by those whom you see determined likewise to make you seruants and slaues. Wilt you then alwayes liue in this sort? Will you continue this yoke vnto your successors? are you of lesse courage, or of lesse substance then your neighbours? Ah if wee are conquerours they shall restore that which they haue had of vs. I am very sure that Fortune doth fauour vs, for you see what men of worth are come vnto our ayde, knowing our great right. Let vs resist them, let vs resist them valiant knights. I see King *Lisuart* and his troupe now in feare & ready to turne their backs vnto vs. They are as they say, accustomed

to vanquish, but wee will reach them: to accustome themselves to be vanquished. One thing I would aduise you, that euery one helpe his fellow, keeping you as close together as possibly you may. And longer would hee haue continued his Oration, if hee had not seene King *Lisuart* prepared to ioyne with him. Wherefore hee retrayed into the midst of his Squadron, and sayd very loud, Now haue at them, since they will care, giue them cold iron enough.

At this cry euery man prepared to receiue his enemy, shewing by their countenance that they were men most hardy, and couragious. And foremost of all did march the *Faire Forlorne*, accompanied with *Enil*, as also *Galaor*, *Florestan*, *Agates*, *Gondalar*, the Gyant (who stole *Galaor* away when he was but two yeares olde) and his two sons *Bramandill*, and *Garnus*, whom *Galaor* had newly made knights. After them *Nicoran de Pant Craintif*, *Dragomis*, *Palomir*, *Vinorant*, *Giontes* (Nephew to the King) the most renowned *Brannio de Bonne Mer*, his brother *Bransill*, and *Guillan* the *Pensif*, who all marched after old *Grumeden*, (a knight of honour belonging to the Queene) who carried King *Lisuart* his standard.

On King *Cildadan* his side the Gyants made the front of the battaile, with twenty knights all neere a kinne vnto the King, who (like a prouident Generall) appointed that *Amadefabull* the Gyant of the Isle of the Vermillion Tower, should remayne vpon the top of a little hill, with ten of the best knights in their troupe, commanding them not to stir from thence, vntill they should perceiue assuredly toward the end of the battell that the most

valiant knights of King *Lisuart's* side should be scattered and weary, and that then they should rush in vpon them, without spearing any man, sauing the Kings person. Whom they should take prisoner, and if they should perceive any great resistance to be made, they should kill him if they could not carry him vnto their ships. Thus the two battailes approached so neere one to another, that they came to the ioining together: there might you haue seene Lances broken, armour clattering, armes stroken off, some crying, others breaking the ranks of their enemies, so that this day might be well called a sorrowfull and dismall day, for those that were in this conflict, the which continued so long, vntill the most part of the day was past, yet none of them had so much times as once to breathe, and yet it was so hot, that there was neither horse nor knight that was not weary. & extreemly trauailed: for some lay vpon the ground, and the most part of the rest (in little better case) were so weake, that they could scant sit vpon their horses. At the same time the *Faire Forlorne* fearing least the losse should fall vpon their side, began to shew al his force and strength, and he lighted vpon neuer an *Irishman* nor giant, but that he drew the blood from his body. Close by his side did King *Lisuart* ride, who did well shew the great prowesse that remained in him, and hee was not ignorant of what consequence the end of this battaile was, for loosing the victory thereof, he lost his dignity, his life and honor, by meanes whereof without sparing his person, hee was entred in amongst his enemies, hauing his right arme all dyed with the blood of those,

whose liues had passed by the edge of his sword. On the other side, *Agrais, Galaor, Florestan*, hauing from the beginning seen the great force and high knight-hood that the *Faire Forlorne* had executed vpon his enemies, they who of long time did maligne him, determined either to dye, or to make knowne vnto every one, that they could also fight as well or better then hee, so that this emulation was partly the cause of the animating of them so far, that they all had likely to haue lost their liues, for *Galaor* chased like a Lion that is pursued, came rushing in among the Giants, and encountered *Cardague* of the invincible mountaine, who already with his battaile, had overthrowen at his feete six of King *Lisuart's* knights, although that hee was wounded vpon the shoulder, with a blowe that *Therestus* had giuen him, whereby hee lost much of his blood, then *Galaor* came vnto him, and with all his strength, hee gaue him so great a blowe vpon the head, that hee cleft his helmet, and the sword passing down along cut off his ear, and the helme of his axe clost vnto his fist.

Wherefore the Giant finding himselfe disurnished of his weapon, ran vpon *Galaor*, and lifted him vp with such force, that hee tooke him vp from his horse, crushing him betwene his armes so streightly, that one might easily haue heard his bones cracke. Neuerthelesse, the Giant could not sit so sure in his saddle, but that hee was forced to fall to the ground with his burthē, wherefore *Galaor* (which yet held his sword in his hand) sold the meanes to thrust him in the bearer of his helmet, and it entred so farre into his head, that hee there withall

withall yeelded vp the Ghost. But *Galaor* was so tyred, that after hee was gotten vp from vnder *Cardague* he had not power to pull his sword from the place wherein hee had thrust it, and (that which was worst) he was so crouded with the presse of people, that hee was likely to haue died vnder the horses feet, for many good knights both of the one and of the other side, (hauing seene the encounter betwene him and the Gyant, and the perill of them both) were approached, of purpose to succour them, by meanes whereof the battaile was then very great and maruailous hot, for King *Cildadan* suddenly came to that place, who overthrowen all those hee found in his way, and had not the *Faire Forlorne* beene (who with one blowe of his sworde stroke him off his horse) *Galaor* had there surely died or beene taken, but when hee beheld King *Cildadan* on foot beside him, he princely ceased his sword which hee held, and began to defend himselfe, and that so valiantly as mauger all his enemies, hee made them giue him roome. Notwithstanding hee had overchased himselfe so much in this last bickering, that hee was quite out of breath, and hee fell downe flat vpon the earth. There was the Gyant *Gandalac*, who had fostered him vp in his infancy, hee seeing him fall, was so angry that with great rage hee buckled with *Albadanor* another Gyant, and so many strokes they gaue vnto each other with their clubs, that they & their horses were overthrowen, where-with *Albadanor* had his arme broken and *Gandalac* his legge. But they were not alone that were thus intreated, for one might haue seene more then six score knights

lying vpon the ground, and yet was not halfe the day spent. Then *Mandasaball* the Gyant of the Isle of the red Tower, who had beene appointed not to depart from the little hill, whoselike remayning vntill the extremitie of the battaile, seeing so many knights dead, slauered and wounded, thought that he might well end this enterprise, and that it were very easie for them to defeat the rest, by meanes whereof hee began to runne right vnto that place where was the greatest presse, crying vnto his knights: Take heed that none escape away aliue, let all passe by the edge of the sword, as for mee, I haue vowed to take King *Lisuart* in hand, for hee is mine dead or aliue. This cry was heard of euery one, especially of the *Faire Forlorne*, who returned from asking of a fresh horse, which one of the nephewes vnto his host had reserved for him, and fearing that the Gyant would doe as hee said, hee came and stepped before the King, with *Agrais, Florestan, Brans de Bonne Mer, Bransil, Guillan the Peniff* and *Enil*, who had all day long behaued himselfe so valiantly, that hee was had in very great reputation. Now was *Mandasaball* better seconded then he thought, for as hee approached neere vnto the esquadron of King *Lisuart*, *Sarmadan* the *Leonhois*, vnto the King *Cildadan*, one of the best knights of his stocke, came forth of the troupe, and running against the *Faire Forlorne*, he hit him so right a blow through his shield, that he wounded him, yet not very much, and in passing by, the *Faire Forlorne* did hit him such a thwart blow with his sword vpon the bearer of his helme, that he cut both his eyes and the halfe of his visage off, L 3 throw-

throwing him downe starke dead vpon the ground.

Herewithall *Mandasaball* and those that were with him beeing mad angry, entered pell mell among King *Lisuart* his knights with such furie, that murthering their resistance, *Mandasaball* took hold of the King by the collar, and lifted him from his horse, carrying him vnder his armes right vnto his shippes. But the faire *Forlorne* was ware of it, who ran after him and ouertooke the Gyant, hitting him so forcibly with his sworde vpon the arme, that hee cut it off hard by the elbow, and the blowe sliding downe, wounded the King in such sort, that the blood fell downe vpon the ground. Then *Mandasaball* with the great griefe that hee felt, gaue a loud cry, and without going any further, he fell downe dead in the place, whereupon the faire *Forlorne* seeing that his blow had so well profited, as that therewithall hee had slaine such a Gyant, and deliuered the King in like sort, hee began to cry aloud *Gaule, Gaule*, here is *Amadis* who is yet aliue. So saying hee entered amongst the thickest of his enemies, who had in a manner lost their hearts, by seeing two of the principallest of their army in that sort to be slaine, especially knowing that *Amadis* (whom they long before thought to be dead) was present to their confusion. And had not *Gandaturie* one of the strongest Gyants in their troupe encouraged them againe, they had then surely turned their backs, but hee valiantly made head against his enemies, which being perceiued by *Amadis*, who was desirous to reuenge his brother *Galaor*, whom hee imagined to be dead, he thrust himselfe amongst his e-

nemies, and entered into the thickest of the presse, so farre that there he had remained, without the ayde which King *Lisuart* brought vnto him, who had recovered his horse, and there were in his company *Branco*, *Florestan*, *Guillan*, *Lede*, *Galmes*, *Olinas*, and *Don Grimaud*, who carryed his standard, which was cut asunder betwene his armes. All those seeing *Amadis* in so great danger (although the most part of them were very sorely wounded) had such exceeding ioy when they knewe that it was hee, that they bestirred them in such sort, as notwithstanding all the resistance that these *Trisfmes* could make, they gaue ayde vnto *Amadis*, and passing on further they found *Agrais*, *Palomir*, *Drusil* and *Dragonis*, manfully fighting on foote against those that had throwne them downe. Yet they were so neerely driuen, that they could not any longer withstand the force of their enemies, although they had already slaine more then sixe, as well Gyants as *Trisfmen* which would haue overrunne them, and without doubt they had bene so handled had not these succours come vnto them. So that they which would haue forced them, had enough to doe to defend themselves, because that *Amadis* (in spight of them) made them to recoyle backe, and that in such sort as with the ayde of his troupe hee was the meane that his Cousen *Agrais* and his fellows did remount their horses. Then the forces of King *Lisuart* entered, and the *Trisf* troupes decreased, who despairing of all helpe, had recourse vnto their vessels which were afoate hard by the shoare to saue their booty if the tunc had not contradicted them but

but *Amadis* pursuing the victory, chased them with such fury, that the most part of the vanquished, desired rather to be buried amidst the waues of the Sea, then on the shoare, which was so died and watered with their blood. The which *Gandaturie* perceiuing (being esteemed amongst all the Gyants one of the stoutest) without any feare at all of his death, which hee saw ready prepared for him, desiring before the end of his dayes to be reuenged, bearing his head somewhat lowe, and holding his sharp sword in his hand, he would haue stroken at king *Lisuart*, but *Florestan* stepped before him, who hit him so sound a knock with his sword vpon the Helmet, that hee made it flie from his head, and the King who was hard at hand, seeing him bare, diuided his pate into two parts. Then was there a great slaughter of the *Trisfmen*, for they were all now ouerthrowne by *Amadis*, *Florestan*, and *Agrais*: who persued them euen into the Sea, where they were swallowed vp with waues, wherewith king *Lisuart* and his people retired. And because that *Amadis* had marked the place where hee had seene *Galaor* stroken downe, hee prayed his Cousen *Agrais* & others that they would helpe him to finde him amongst the dead. Neuerthelesse they had not found him without the helpe of *Florestan*: who knew him by a greene sleeue which hee did weare, wrought full of white flowers, but hee was so couered with blood & dust that they could scant knowe him. And I doe not knowe so hard a heart which had then seene the mone that *Amadis* did make for him, that would not haue burst forth into teares, for he beholding him in this estate, fell

downe all along vpon him. Whereby his wounds did open, against which the congealed blood was already setled, and I thinke that *Amadis* had died vpon him if twelue Damofels had not by chaunce come thither suddenly, who were very richly attyred, and had caused a rich bed to be brought by their Esquires, these finding *Amadis* so desperate, sayde vnto him: My Lord wee are come hither to seeke your brother *Galaor*, and if you will euer see him aliue, suffer vs to carry him presently away, otherwise there is no Chyrurgion in all Great Brittain that is able to heale him.

Herewithall *Amadis* was greatly ashamed, because the Damofels had found him in that order, and although that hee knew them not, yet hearing them speak of his brothers health, hee determined (seeing the extreame perill wherein he was) not to refuse their request, though it was to his extreame griefe. And therefore he answered them, my faire gentlewomen, may in please you to tell vs whither you will carry him. Not now said they, but if you will desire to haue him liue, giue him vnto vs without any longer delay, otherwise wee will be gone. Alas answered he, I pray let mee followe you. You may not, and yet for your sake wee are content that *Arda* the Dwarfie and his Esquire shall accompanie him. Then they layd him vpon the bed (all armed as hee was) & they caused him forthwith to be carried into the ship from whence they were come, which was yet close to the shoare. Afterwards they returned againe vnto king *Lisuart*, to entreate him that hee would giue them king *Cildadan*, who lay among the dead, and to induce him



thereunto, they shewed vnto him that although Fortune had fauoured him in this exploit, yet hee should not extend his cruelty vpon his enemy. The which the King considering, permitted them to carry him away dead or aliue, wherefore the Damofels took him vp and carried him away with *Galaor*, and so soone as they came into the ship they set sayle, hauing the winde so faire, that suddenly they were out of all mens sight.

Thus king *Lisuart* remayned conquerour ouer his enemies, going quite through the field to find out as well such of his owne people as those of his enemies, that were not yet thoroughly dead, to cause them carefully to bee looked vnto by skilfull Surgeons. And as hee went from one place to another, hee met with *Amadis*, whose face was all to be blubbered with tears, vnto whom he had not as yet spoken since his returne, and seeing him so heauy, after he had knowne the cause of his mone, hee shewed an euident signe of the sorrow that hee sustayned for *Galaors* sake, who hee loued as dearely as himselfe, & not without cause, for from the first day that hee receiued him for one of his knights, he alwaies serued him faithfully, neuer forsaking him for any warre or debate that happened betwene his maiesty & *Amadis*, as hereafter shall bee rehearsed vnto you. But the King desirous to manifest the force of his vertue, the better to comfort his knights, all wounded as hee was, lighted from his horse to embrace *Amadis*, who kneeled down to shew his duty vnto his Maiesty. My deere friend sayd king *Lisuart*, you are most happily met, I know now very well, that without your ayde the realme of Great Brittain

had beene in no small danger, and I pray you be not so heauy for the losse of your brother, seeing that the Damofels haue assured you of his health.

In this sorte went king *Lisuart* comforting of *Amadis*, whom hee caused to mount on horse-backe, and afterwards hee brought him into his tent where there was brought somewhat for them to eat, & because he would depart the next day, he appointed our knight that the dead should bee buried in a Monestarie hard by the place where the battaile was giuen, vpon the which place hee had bestowed great riches, to cause them to pray for him. In like sort hee dispatched a knight to goe in haste to aduertise the Queene of the victory that hee had gotten ouer his enemies, and the next morning he tooke his way toward the City of *Gonata* (which was about foure leagues off) where hee remained vntill he and his people were healed. While these things were in doing, the Queene *Briolante* got leaue of Queene *Brisena*, that she might goe to *Mirefleur* to visit *Oriana*, hauing a great desire to see her, because she was renowned through all the world for her most excellent beauty. Of whose coming *Oriana* being aduertised, she caused the place to bee decked vp as well as possibly it might be, and she receiued her most honorably, but when she beheld her to be so faire, the suspicion that shee had conceiued against *Amadis*, was not so thoroughly mortified but that it somewhat reuiued againe in her, notwithstanding all the proof that she had had of him, eyther by his passing thorough the Arch of loyall louers, or by his winning of the olde mans sworde, beleeuing

assuredly that it was a thing impossible that any man could be so constant as hee might forbear from louing a creature so beautiful as *Briolante* was. On the other side *Briolante* verily thought that the often sighes of *Amadis* in her presence, proceeded of no other cause, but the affection which hee did beare vnto *Oriana*: for shee was the most rare Princessse and of the sweetest grace that euer shee had seene. Thus were these two Ladies suspicious one of another, and they remayned together discourting of diuerse matters agreeable to their affections, especially of the vertues and perfections of *Amadis*. But *Oriana* (the better to diue into the thought of *Briolante*) sayde vnto her, I doe much maruaile gentle *Cosen*, considering the bond wherein you are tyed vnto *Amadis*, (as also seeing that hee is descended from Emperours, and the sonne vnto the king of *Gaul*) that you haue not chosen him for your husband. Madame answered *Briolante*, beleeue me I should haue thought my self most happy if the same might haue beene brought to passe, but yet of one thing I can assure you, the which I pray you to keepe as secret as it deserueth. Many times did I motion such a matter vnto him, but his continuall sighes did presently yeelde me an answer in his behalfe, yet could I neuer vnderstand in what place his loue was so settled, so couert and secret is hee in all his affections: neuertheless let him be whatsoeuer hee will be, he shall dispose of me, and all that mine is for euer, as he shall thinke good. Exceeding glad was *Oriana* to vnderstand these newes, by the which shee appeased her new conceiued ialousie against

*Amadis*, and sayd vnto *Briolante*, I doe greatly maruaile what there is whom hee loueth as you say, and there is no doubt but that hee is one of the number of these louers, by the testimony which the image of the enchanted Arch hath declared of him, for according vnto that which hath beene recited vnto me, it shewed more for him then euer it did for any that there before had passed. He loueth without doubt answered *Briolante*, but it is so secret that non may knowe what, or where she is.

In this sort did the two Princesses passe away their time, still talking of *Amadis* during their aboad in the Castle of *Mirefleur*, from whence within a fewe dayes after they departed to go towards *Fenusa* to see the Queene *Brisena*, where she stayed for King *Lisuart*, who was very glad to see her daughter returne in so good health. There they had newes of the victory that the King had against the Prince of *Ireland*, wherewith their ioy redoubled, and God was highly praised: but when Queen *Brisena* knew that he which was called the *Faire Forlorne* was *Amadis* of *Gaul* neuer was there woman more ioyful then she. And although that *Oriana* and *Mabils* knew the cause thereof very well (as you haue heard) yet did they dissemble the matter, and seemed to wonder thereat no lesse then the rest, by means whereof *Briolante* did often times say thus vnto them: would you euer haue suspected that *Amadis* would haue thus disguised himselfe, & taken a strange name amongst his dearest friends, desiring thereby to extinguish his owne renowne by the great prowess that hee performed vnder the title of a stranger? By my faith,

answered *Oriana*, if hee returne with the King, wee must know of him wherefore hee did it, and also what shee was that gained the ker-

chiefe with him. I assure you *Briolania* that we will not flie to demand it of him, and I beleeue he will willingly tell vs.

## CHAP. XVII.

*How King Cildadan and Galaor were vnawares to themselves, carried away by twelue Damofels, and one of them was put into a strong Tower inuironed with the Sea, and the other in a garden inclosed with high walls, where they thought they had bene in prison, and of that which happened there vnto them.*

**N**ow wee will rehearse vnto you, the enter-taynement that was made vnto King *Cildadan* and *Galaor*, whom the Gentlewomen had put into the ship, and they were carried and so well looked vnto, that the third day following they began to amend, for vntill then they had lost all manner of feeling and remembrance. And *Galaor* found himselfe to bee layd in a chamber (within a garden) furnished in the most sumptuous order that euer he had seene, the which was supported vp with foure Marble pillars, inuironed notwithstanding with great gates of iron, through the which he might easily see from his bed where hee lay, all the circuit of the garden, the which was cloated about with high walles, not hauing any entrance into it but one little dore covered ouer with plates of iron, whereby he thought that hee was in prison. Then did he begin to feele such great griefe in his wounds, that hee hoped for nothing but death. Then did hee remember that hee had bene in the battaile, but he knew not who had either brought him away, or layd him in a place so strange as this was. And no lesse abashed was

king *Cildadan* to see that hee was locked vp in a strong Tower, compassed about with the maine Sea, although that the chamber where in hee remayned was most richly hanged, and hee laid in a good bed. Neuerthelesse hee was alone, and he thought that hee did heare some people talking right vnder the vault, but hee could neither perceiue doore, nor place where thorough any body might enter into his chamber. Wherefore hee rose vp, and put his head forth at the window, and he could see nothing but the Sea, whose waues did beat against the place wherein hee remayned shut vp, the which was built vpon the top of a moist steep and hard Rocke, neither did hee know how hee was brought from the place where hee was smitten downe among the presse of people. Notwithstanding hee knew very well seeing hee was in such a place that hee had lost the battaile, and that his knights were either all dead, or taken, but yet he comforted himselfe as well as hee could, & layd him downe againe vpon his bed, bewailing greatly the griefe which hee did feele in his wounds. Thus was *Galaor* lying sick on the other side, as hath bene recited, who heard the little doore of the garden

garden open: which caused him to rise from his bed, as well as hee could, and hee perceiued a faire Gentlewoman comming vnto him, being very richly attired, the which did bring with her a knight so olde and crooked, that it was wonder how hee could bee able to stand. These approaching nere vnto *Galaor*, sayd to him through the grates of yron, without opening the chamber dore. Knight, provide for your soules health, for we will not henceforth warrant you. Then the Damofell tooke forth two little boxes, one of iron, and the other of siluer: and shewing them vnto *Galaor*, she sayd vnto him. Knight, the party which hath caused you to come hither, will not that you should die, before shee doe knowe whether you will accomplish her will or no, and in the meane season she will cause your wounds to bee cured. Gentlewoman, answered *Galaor*, if thee desire that I should do any thing contrary to mine honour, I had rather die. You may doe, sayd she, as you list, although it is your choyce either to liue or die. Herewithall the olde man opened the gate, and so soon as they were entred into the chamber, the Gentlewoman presently gaue vnto him the yron boxe, willing him to step back, the which hee did. Afterwards she sayd vnto *Galaor*. My Lord, I am so sorry for your sicknesse, that for to saue your life, I will hazard mine owne death, and I will declare that which I was put in charge to doe. Which is, that I should fill these two boxes, the one with payson, and the other with oyntment to make you sleepe, to the end that when you did awake, you might feele such extreame paine, that with the rage thereof, you might cruelly end your life, but

I haue done cleane contrary, for I haue filled them with such a saluē, that if you vse it but ten dayes together, you shall finde your selfe whole, sound, and able to mount on horse-backe. Then she rubbed his wounds with the oyntment, the which was of such vertue, that at the same instant his paine was appeased, and hee felt such ease, that he sayd vnto the Damofell. Faire Gentlewoman, you doe binde me so greatly vnto you, that if euer I come forth from hence, you may bee sure that neuer any Gentlewoman was better recompensed by any knight, then you shall be by me, neuerthelesse, if you haue no other meanes to deliuer mee, I beseech you at the least, doe so much that *Vrganda the unknowne* may be advertised thereof, for I haue euermore had a great confidence in her. The Gentlewoman began to laugh, and answered him. What? doe you make such account of *Vrganda*, seeing that hitherto she hath been so carelesse of your wealth or woe? I know well, sayd he, that as she knoweth the secret thoughts of men, so is shee not ignorant how much my desire is to serue her. Neuer care you for any other *Vrganda* (answered she) then me, and haue only a good hope, endeavouring to hasten your health, taking vnto you the courage of a valiant man, such as you haue alwaies bin esteemed, seeing that you know that manhood and valour, is not onely requisite at combats and dangerous encounters, but in other accidents that may suddainly happen, like as at this present the case standeth. And for the recompence of the perill that I doe vndertake, to heale you and deliuer you from hence, I pray you grant vnto me one gift, which shall neither be hurtfull nor disho-

dishonorable vnto you. Trust me Damofell sayd hee, you shall haue of mee euen whatsoeuer you shall please, if it may well and lawfully be performed. Goeto, then answered shee, let this suffice you now, vntill it bee time for mee to retorne againe to dresse you, in the meane season couer you, and feigne as if you slept soundly, the which hee did. Then the Gentlewoman called the olde man, and sayd vnto him, see how the knight sleepeth, the poyson doth now worke vpon him. All the better, answered the olde man, hee which hath brought him hither, so farre as I see shall be sufficiently reuenged vpon him, and seeing that you haue so well obeyed that which you were commanded, I am content henceforth that you doe come without any guard at all to visite him. But vse him after this manner fiftene dayes together, for at that time they shall come hither, who (for the iniuriethat hee hath done vnto them) shall take such satisfaction of him, as they please. *Galaor* heard all their talke, and hee knewe very well that the old man was his mortall enemye, neuerthelesse hee had some hope in the Damofels promise, who had assured him that hee should be healed in seauen dayes, hoping (if so shee did) that hee might easily saue himselfe from their hands. Hereupon the olde man and the Damofell departed: but shee tarried not long before hee did see her retorne with two other young virgins, exceeding faire, who brought viuals vnto *Galaor*, and caused him to eate. This done the Damofell commanded the other two to keepe him company, and to reade before him some pleasant Histories, to keepe him from slee-

ping in the day time, so that *Galaor* being greatly comforted by the Damofels kinde entertainment, was thoroughly assured that shee would helpe him as shee had promised, and so shutting the gate, she departed & left the two young Gentlewomen discoursing with him. Farre otherwise did it happen vnto king *Cildadan*, who being shut vp within a Tower, and layd vpon his bed, did see a doore of stone to open (the which was close fastened in the wall, that it seemed as if it had bene the wall it selfe) by the which there entred in a gentlewoman of middle age, accompanied with two armed knights, the which came close to his bed side. The King saluted them, but they answered not, the gentlewoman listd vp the couering that he had vpon, and looking vpon his wounds, shee dressed the, afterwards she gaue him somewhat to eate, & returned both shee and the knights the same way they came, not once speaking vnto him. When the king beheld their maner of behaviour, he beleued that hee was in the prison of such a one where his life was in no great safety, neuertheles he took as good comfort vnto him as he could, not being able otherwise to remedy his mishap. But the gentlewoman that looked vnto *Galaor* seeing that it was time to dresse him went vnto him, and asked him how hee fared. Passing wel answered *Galaor*, & I hope (seeing the good beginning of my amendment) that I may be healed within the time that you haue promised. There is no doubt thereof said shee, therefore I will that you promise me as you are a loyall knight, not to depart from hence without my leaue, otherwise your life may be in perill of death. *Galaor* did sweare

vnto

vnto her so to doe, beseeching her most instantly to tell him how shee was called. But she answered him. How now *Galaor*; doe you not yet know my name? Truly now I am greatly deceined. considering the seruises that heerebefore I haue done for you, when you are so forgetfull of me? I am called, The wise among the wisest: saying so, shee went forth of the chamber sayning to bee very angry, and pulled the doore rudely after her. Wherewith *Galaor* remained more penfue then before, and hee remembered him of the faire sword that *Vrgande* had giuen vnto him, when his brother *Amadis* made him knight, whereby hee suspected that it was shee her selfe, neuerthelesse, hee was in some doubt, because that when he saw her first, she seemed to bee olde and crooked, and this was young, faire, and in good liking. And as he was in this study not being able to sleepe, hee turned his head toward the place, where the young Gentlewomen were accustomed to sit in keeping him company, but in stead of them he perceived *Gasacl* his elquire, and *Arden* the Dwarfie of *Amadis*: at which he was no lesse abashed then ioyfull, and he called them because that they slept. Who at their awaking, seeing their Maister, they became no lesse amazed then he, and they rose vp doing their duty vnto him, and hee demanded how they were come thither, who answered, that *Amadis*, *Floraflan* and *Agrais*, had commanded them to follow him. They further declared vnto him, in what estate the Damofels tooke him vp, for which cause *Amadis* seeing in what extremity you remained, permitted them to carry you away. together with King *Cildadan*. What do you say?

sayd *Galaor*, was *Amadis* in this assembly? My Lord, sayd shee, it was hee that was called the *Fabio Fortune*, by whose strength and courage the battaile was rayned. Then hee recited vnto him the manner how hee deliuered the King, and killed *Alondofball*, and thereafter he made himselfe knowne, crying *Gaul* with a loud voyce. Thou addest me wonders, sayde *Galaor*, but by my faith, hee was too blame to hide himselfe from mee. This was the estate wherein *Galaor* and *Cildadan* remained, who in few dayes felt so great ease of their wounds, that they began to walke about the chamber. Wherefore *Vrgande* (in whose power they remained in her vnkowne Island) made her selfe knowne vnto them, saying vnto them. That the faine whereof shee had put them, had bene the meanes to effect their health: the sooner, otherwise they had bene in danger of their liues. After which she commanded her two Maisters to be fetched to keepe them company, which were daughters vnto King *Talangeris*, brother vnto King *Lisuart*, who had gotten vpon them the sister of *Vrgande*, one of them was called *Indians* (whom *Galaor* did shortly after beget with childe of a son, that was named *Talange*, and afterwards proued a valiant Knight) and the other was called *Solise*, who also had by King *Cildadan* many the Dilectore. And these two Knights staied with these two Damofels, till *Vrgande* set them at liberty, at heretofore it shall be declared vnto you.

In the meane time King *Lisuart*, *Amadis*, and the other Knights staied at *Gonats*, and after they were healed of their wounds, they determined to goe visit the Ladies which staied for them in the Castle

M

of

of *Ectasa*, of whom they were rec-  
eached with great ioy. But during  
their abode there, as *Amadis* talked  
with Queen *Briolantia* (in the com-  
pany of *Oriana*) she sayd vnto him.  
My Lord, I assure you I was so for-  
rowfull when it was told mee that  
you were lost, that I can in no sort  
expresse vnto you the displeasure  
that I receiued therewith, and at  
the last seeing that you staid so  
long before you returned, I deter-  
mined to come vnto this Court,  
with a hundred of my Knights, to  
cause the search of you to begin,  
according to the appointment of  
my Lords your bretheren. Neuer-  
theless by meanes of the battaile  
which the King had appointed  
with King *Cildadan*, my enterprise  
was staid, and that in a good  
houre, seeing that it pleased God  
so soon to bring you home againe.  
Therefore aduise you now (if it  
please you) what you will that I  
shall doe for you, for I will obey  
you all my life long. Madame,  
answered *Amadis*, if you were in a-  
ny perplexity for mee, you had  
great reason, for I am well assured,  
that there is no might in the world  
more ready to do you seruice then  
is *Amadis* of *Gaul*. But seeing that  
it pleaseth you to refer all your af-  
faires vpon me, I pray you to tarry  
yet in this Court eight or tenne  
daies longer, vntill we may heare  
some newes from my brother *Gu-  
luz*, in the meane time you shall  
haue the pastime of a Combate,  
which my brother *Floristan* must  
performe against *Laudin*, and af-  
terwards I will conduct you home  
into your Countrey, and from  
thence I will take my way vnto the  
Fisane-Island, where I must needs  
be. I will do, saide *Briolantia* what-  
soeuer it shall please you, prouid-  
ed that you doe tell vnto vs the

wonder and maruilles that  
haue these fauent. And she  
hauing excused him, drew  
him by the hand, and said  
vnto him. My Lord *Amadis*,  
some what to doe, for I  
leane you in peace before I  
tolde vs something. In this  
Ladies, answered hee, she  
take in hand to recite the  
larities of the whole, yet  
it impossible: neuertheless  
truly tell you that the  
chamber is the most faire  
in all the world, and if  
gained by one of you two,  
beleue that so long as we  
uer may any other see  
therein. *Briolantia* reme-  
mber while without answering  
the end she said vnto *Amadis*.  
I doe not thinke that I may  
to finish such an aduenture  
notwithstanding (such as I  
were not to be reputed  
me, I would willingly make  
thereof. Madame, answered  
is not to be counted a pri-  
on, to trie that wherein  
haue failed vntill this pri-  
cause they were not faire  
and you which are one of the  
excellent creatures in the  
should doe so much and  
ferre this singularity, as  
might turne you greatly  
blame, in not performing  
deuout. *Amadis* did fad-  
ceine by her countenance  
one was not greatly pleas-  
this discourse, and altho  
thought that hee had said  
but what might redound  
honor, yet did it greatly  
that he had spoken so  
had seene the old image  
nesse, and he knew very well  
lania was in no sort  
her in beauty, therefore

not attaine vnto that glory, the  
which hee made no doubt at all in  
*Oriana*. But *Oriana* iudged farre o-  
therwise, for shee imagined that  
there was not any thing in the  
world that *Briolantia* might not ac-  
complish, if by beauty it might be  
conquered, and dissembling before  
her the malice that she now had co-  
ceiued against her, shee praised her  
that if shee entred into the forbid-  
den chamber, that she would vouch-  
safe to send her newes thereof. Then  
shee rose vp, and went to seeke out  
*Mabila*, whom when she had found,  
she recited all the conference that  
had passed betwixt *Amadis* and  
*Briolantia*, (in her presence) saying  
vnto her. By my faith your Cofin  
doth very often giue mee the like  
alarmes, although hee bee assured  
that I take no pleasure at all in any  
thing, but onely in that wherein I  
may best please and obey him,  
without respect of mine honour,  
fear of God, or obedience to my  
parents. But he knoweth that hee  
hath full power ouer me, which cau-  
seth him now to dispise me, for the  
which I may onely blame that pri-  
uac familiarity which I haue shew-  
ed vnto him, thinking that I had  
done all for the best. In vttering  
these her supposed wrongs, aboun-  
dance of teares fell from her eyes,  
which *Mabila* perceiuing (as be-  
ing very discrete) she bethought  
her of a present Antidote to expell  
this poison. And therefore faining  
to be exceeding angry, with the  
injury that *Oriana* offered vnto *A-  
madis*, she answered her very sharp-  
ly and shrewdly: Madame, I doe  
greatly wonder at you, and your  
manner of behauiour, for so soen as  
one mischiefe hath forsaken you,  
another doth presently follow  
you, and you ought (methinkes)  
to take better regarde vnto that

which you say of my cofin, and not  
to bee perswaded that hee hath spo-  
ken either one thing or another to  
anger you, seeing that you may  
be assured that hee hath intended  
to offer you any offence, either in  
word or deede. And heereof suffi-  
cient witness you haue: in the  
proofes & trial that he hath made,  
as well in your presence as in your  
absence, but I see well what your  
meaning is, you would haue mee  
know (being weary of my compa-  
ny) that you would put mee away  
vnder the coullour that my cofin  
is so wholly yours, abusing your  
selfe with the bondage wherein  
he is subiect vnto you. Neuer-  
theless, when you shall haue for-  
saken me, it will be no great matter,  
so that your *Amadis* (for you may  
I call him) be not worse used. For  
you know very well and I also, that  
the least displeasure hee shall take  
at your griefe, will bee sufficient to  
cause his death, therefore I mar-  
uaile what pleasure you take to tor-  
ment him so often, hee aduentu-  
ring himselfe for you as much as is  
possible to be done for any other  
Lady living. Doe you not consi-  
der, that *Apollin* willed the proofe  
of the forbidden chamber should  
be comon to all the world? What  
a great error should my Cofin  
then commit, to diswaide *Briolantia*  
that shee should not doe as much  
as others? Truly I beleuee that  
neither you nor shee are yet faire e-  
nough to performe that, which all  
the fairest during these hundred  
yeres could neuer obtaine. There-  
fore I am thoroughly assured, that  
this new ielousie ptecedeth not  
from any fault which he hath com-  
mitted, whose minde is wholly a-  
dicted to obey you. Mistruster  
his misfortune hath so much over-  
ruled him, that to please

you hee hath not onely forgotten himselfe, (but also regarded none but you) hee hath quite disdayned all his kindred, and hath accounted them as meere strangers, not knowing them at all, nor any other but you whom hee adoreth as his God, and yet you would by your folly procure his overthrow. Ay mee, the dangers and euident perill wherein hee and his haue oftentimes beene brought vnto for your sake, as well against *Arcalaus* as in this last battaile, are very ill acknowledged by you, seeing that now in satisfaction thereof, you desire the destruction of the chiefe and principallest of my kindred. Is this the fauour and recompence for the seruices that I haue done vnto you? Truly my hope is now greatly deceived, seeing before mine eyes, a complot is layd for the ruine and fall of a wight whom I doe most loue in the world, and hee, that is yours more then his owne, notwithstanding (if it please God) it shall not be so, nor shall such a misfortune happen so neere vnto mee. For I will intreate my brother *Agrais* and my Vncle *Galuanes* to carry mee into *Scotland*, whereby they shall doe mee a great pleasure to take me away from your company who are so vngratefull. Herewithall shee wept so extreemely, as though shee would haue drowned her selfe with teares. Alas sayd she God grant that the cruelty which you commit against your *Amadis*, light not vpon your owne head, to satisfie all his kindred, who shall not lose so much (in his lacke) as you alone shall doe, although it should be the greatest misfortune that could happen vnto vs. When *Oriana* did heare *Mabila* speake in such choller, her heart was so

ouercharged, that her speech failed vntill shee had a litle while rested her, when bursting out into teares, shee mainly cryed out, ah mee poore soule, about all this late and sorrowfull women, and wretched: who would haue imagined this which you haue now made manifest vnto mee, could euer haue proceeded forth of your heart? Alas I haue disclosed my secrets vnto you, (having about me no other worthy to understand my sorrowes) to haue counsel & comfort at your hand, but you discomfort mee, and make mee worse then I haue deserved, reputing me to be farre other then I am, or euer shall be so long as breath remaineth within my sorrowfull heart, which maketh mee to presume that notwithstanding my misfortune, hath brought upon mee this vnhappy change, seeing that you haue taken in such ill part that which I did tell you for the best. And let God neuer helpe mee if I did thinke dayes of my life vpon that whereunto you do blame and accuse mee, for I haue so great confidence in your Colen, that I study vpon nothing so much, as how to content him: yet thus much I must tell you, that I had rather die then any other but my selfe should gaine the honour of the forbidden Chamber. Iudge you then what griefe it would be to me if *Briolania* (who goeth before to make prooffe thereof) should accomplish it, notwithstanding my good Colen & dear friend, I pray you to pardon mee, and (if it please you) defend me to aduise me what you thinke best for mee to doe. For your Colen might bee very angry if hee did know that which I haue suspected of him. Madame, answered she

*Mabila*, seeing you acknowledge your fault, you must be better aduised hereafter. You haue had experience enough, by that which is past, what inconuenience may happen vpon so light occasions, take heed henceforth then, how you commit the like errors. Thus were these two Ladies reconciled together as before, neuerthelesse shortly after *Mabila* came vnto *Amadis*, vnto whom she declared all the talke that *Oriana* had with her, reproouing him sharply for that which he had said to *Briolania* before her, knowing that already she had been suspicious of them both. Therefore my good Colen sayde *Mabila*, endeavour henceforth not to giue her any farther occasion to vse you ill, speaking hereafter more discretely then you haue done, especially before my Lady, for it is a very hard matter wholly to banish and extinguish ieaousie from a woman after it is much rooted in her mind, and had it not bene for my sharpe answer vnto her, by my faith shee had passed the bounds of reason. Sweet Colen answered *Amadis*, I doe much maruaile at the phantasie of my Lady, but yet I doe giue you exceeding great thankses, for the counsell that you giue vnto mee, although I doe sweare vnto you that whatsoeuer I did speake, I thought was wholly for her aduantage. And I will tell you how euery one knoweth that *Briolania* is reputed one of the fairest Ladies in the world, so as one would thinke her sufficient to enter into the forbidden chamber, but this thought is false: for I haue seene the Image of *Grimanesa*, vnto whose beauty *Briolania* in no sorte comes neere, wherefore it is most sure that shee shall neuer attaine

to this honour, the which my Lady shall obtaine without any difficultie. Neuerthelesse if it were first before *Briolania* had made her tryall therein, one might say afterward, If she had begun before *Oriana*, that then shee had first achieved the aduventure: by means whereof I was so bold (in the presence of my Lady) to giue her that counsell which you haue heard. *Mabila* liked well this excuse of *Amadis*, and tolde *Oriana* thereof, who did greatly repent her that shee had spoken so much, fearing least *Amadis* would haue been offended with her, and to make amends for this fault which she had committed, she sent him word by *Mabila*, that he should come to see her in her lodging, where she and *Briolania* stayd for him, the which he did. At his coming the Ladies tooke him by the hand, and made him sit betweene them, then they prayed him to tell them the truth of that which they would demand of him, wherunto hee disclosed. Well vs then sayd *Oriana*, what is the Ladie that gained the kerchiefe with the flowers, when you conquered the burning sword? *Amadis* perceined well that he was not onely overtaken, but also constrained to tell the truth, for which cause he answered *Oriana*: In faith Madame I know no more what she was then you doe, although I remained in her company sixe daies together. But thus much did I see in her, that she had the fairest haire that any Lady or Damosell could possibly haue, and shee is besides most beautifull, and of a most excellent grace, for the rest you know as much as I doe. By my faith said *Oriana*, if shee got the kerchiefe with great honour, it had bin like afterward to haue cost her



very deere as it was tolde mee, for without your assistance *Arcalaus* the enchanter and his Nephew *Lindorag* had taken it from her, & also done her some villany. It was not hee answered *Briolania* (if hee be *Amadis*) but another who was called the *Faire Forlorne*, from whom wee must not derogate the honour to attribute it vnto another. And although I am greatly bound vnto *Amadis*, yet will I not let to speake the truth of the *Faire Forlorne*, because if the one haue surmounted *Apolidon* in prowesse by winning of the Firme-Island, the same being vnto him an exceeding great reputation, so in like sorte was the other worthy of no lesse praise, who in one onely day ouerthrew tenne of the best knights in Great Brittain, and slew the most redoubted Gyant *Famongomad*, and *Basigant* his sonne: if *Amadis* did passe vnder the Arch of loyall louers, in whose fauour the Images of copper did found a more melodious tune, then it did for any other that euer proped the same aduenture, thereby manifesting his loyalty, it seemeth in like sort that the *Faire Forlorne* had as great an aduantage in gaining the burning sword, the which for the space of threescore years no other could draw forth of his scabbard. Therefore Madame, it is not reason to take away the honour from the *Faire Forlorne*, and without desert to giue it vnto *Amadis*, seeing that both in prowesse and loyalty they may (as I thinke) equall one another. And as they were in these pleasant discourses, a Damosell came and told *Amadis* that the King asked for him, because that *Don Quodragant* and *Landin* his Nephew were before him to acquite them of the

promise that they had made by the meanes whereof *Amadis* was constrained to leaue the Lady, and to goe vnto the Court. By the way hee met with *Brunco* and *Bransfi*, who followed him, & they found that *Quedragant* had begunne his speech vnto the King, saying: It may please your Maiesty, I haue stayed heere for *Amadis* of *Gaule*, according to the couenant that I made with the *Faire Forlorne*, and now that hee is in the Court I will discharge me of my promise. True it is that by force of armes, I was constrained to graunt vnto the *Faire Forlorne* that I should not depart from your company, vntill *Amadis* were returned, and then hee being come before your highnesse, I should cease all quarrells that I had enterprised against him, for the death of king *Abies* of *Ireland* my brother, and neuer after to demand any thing at his hands, therefore and in like sort that I should neuer hereafter beare arms against your Maiesty, or any of yours. Which matter hath since grieued me more then one would thinke, because I could not be present at the battaile, the which you had vndertaken against king *Cildadan* and his followers, of the number of whome I thought to haue bene, but fortune was so contrary that my intent was turned farre otherwise then I had purposed, for the hate which I did beare vnto *Amadis*, is conuered into a most great amity, the which I am determined to holde inuolable with him, if he think it good being assured that I was overcome by him, vnder the name of the *Faire Forlorne*, the which he had taken because hee would not be knowne. So that I doe manifestly perceiue that fortune is wholly de-

determined to aduance him, as the force which hee did shew in this last battaile can sufficiently witnesse, the honour whereof ought wholly to be yeelded vnto him and to no other. For this cause it may please your Maiesty, seeing my Lord *Amadis* is heere present, that first you will discharge mee of that which I haue promised vnto him vnder a contrary name, and as for him I remit all the euill will that I did beare vnto him, for the death of my late deceased brother king *Abies*, and I doe further intreate him to accept mee for his companion and perpetuall friend. Sir *Quedragant* answered the King, you speake like a prudent and wise knight, for what prowesse or courage soeuer a Gentleman hath, if hee bee not gouerned by counsell & reason, he is not worthy that any man should make account of him. You are sufficiently knowne for one of the best knights in the world, yet you may be assured that the fellowship which you demand of *Amadis* shal in no sort deminish your praise & renowne, you two continuing in mutuall amity together: and you may beleue that hee will be very glad to accept of the offer which you doe make vnto him. Is it not true gentle friend? sayd the King vnto *Amadis*. If it like your Maiesty answered he, *Quedragant* is so worthy a knight that his fame is spread abroad in many places, and seeing that it please him to chuse mee for his consort, I doe thankfully accept his kind offer. Herewithall they embraced, and so long did their friendship continue, that it was neuer seperated but by death. At the same time was *Florestan* & *Landin* before the King, purchasing

their leaue to enter into the field, according to their appointed agreement (a good while before) in maintenance of *Amadis* his quarrell against *Quedragant*: but when they saw their friends their combate was finished, and their hatred conuered into amity, wherewith *Landin* was exceeding glad, for hee had already proued *Florestan* in the iourney against king *Cildadan*, and seen his valour and prowesse.

Thus were these quarrels ended, & how much the Court had heretofore been troubled, by so much was the ioy and pastime thereof increased, neuertheless the King hauing not forgotten the miserie wherewith king *Arban* of *Northmales* and *Angriota de Estranaux* remained, (after he had some few dayes stayed with the Ladies) he vnder-tooke their deliuerance, and the better to effect the same, hee determined to passe into the Isle of *Mongaza*, to set them at liberty, wherewith hee made his knights acquainted. Then *Amadis* answered him, your Maiesty doth know that my brother *Galaor* hath bene lost in your seruice, therefore I beseech you to excuse mee from accompanying your grace in this voyage, for if God please my cosins and I will goe seeke him as it is reason, and so soone as we haue found him, I assure your Maiesty that incontinently wee will follow vnto that place where wee shall heare your grace abideth. Friend *Amadis* answered the King, I promise you of my faith, that I my selfe would willingly accompany you, so sorry am I for *Galaor*: but you know the present affaires that I haue, whereby I am in truth to be excused, yet neuertheless I am well pleased with your departure,

ture, both when you list, and with such companie as you like. Herewithall there rose vp more then a hundred of the most approuned knights, who did all sweare the searck of *Galaor*. For saide they,

hardly may we vndertake a wor-  
thier or more strange aduenture:  
& they preuailed with the King so  
much that they got leaue to depart  
the next morning.

## CHAP. XVIII.

*How the evening ensuing, the King being risen from the table, walking about the galleries of his Pallace, he beheld two great fires vpon the Sea, that came directly towards the Cittie.*

**N**ow it happened the same day after the King had supped, as hee walked along a gallerie, being almost bed-time, hee beheld two strange fires vpon the Sea, which came with great swiftnesse directly towards the Cittie. Wherewith he was greatly amased, because hee thought it very difficult that water and fire should continue together, especially when hee beheld in the midst of these fires, a galley, at the mast whereof were many great burning torches, so that one would haue iudged the vessell had bene all on fire. This wonder did astonish the people so much that in a manner they came all forth of the Cittie, presuming that seeing the Sea was not able to quench this fire, it was impossible to defend the Cittie from being burnt to ashes, if the same once tooke hold thereof, wherefore the King as fearfull as the rest mounted vpon his horse, and came forth with them vpon the sands. And as hee came neere the water side, he did see that the most part of all the knights were already arriued, and amongst the rest was *Amadis*, *Enil*, and *Guillan*, who were at that time so neere the galley, which

was hard at shore, that he thought it impossible for them to escape from the fire thereof. Hereupon he set spurres to his horse, because hee tooke on exceedingly with the noyse that was made, and whether hee would or no hee brought him close to the galley side: vpon the which shortly after he saw a cloth lifted vp which couered it, and a Damosell appeared clothed in white silke, that held a small Coffer of gold in her hand, which she opened, then shee tooke out of it a burning taper which she cast into the Sea, and presently the two great fires vanished away so suddenly, that it was not perceived what was become of them. Wherewith all the people were marvellous glad, seeing that they were out of danger, for there remained no more light then that of the torches, which burned vpon the mast of the galley, with the brightnesse whereof all the shoare received light. Then the galley was plainly perceiued which was decked with many garlands of flowers, & instruments began to sound very sweetly. Herewithall there appeared vpon the pouer twelue Damosels richly apparelled, euery one of the having a chaplet of roses vpon their head, and a rod of gold in their hands, And

And she marched forth first of all that had throwne the taper into the Sea, who, comming ashore did her duty vnto the King, and he receiued her very kindly, saying vnto her: Madame in satisfaction of the feare wherewith your fire affrighted vs, tell vs if you please who you are, although wee already surmise that we know you well enough: Your Maistie answered she, is of such a valiant courage, that it is impossible to terrifie you with so small a thing, yet the fires which you haue scene were ordained to no other ende but for the safety of my women and me when we are determined to goe by Sea. For the rest if you thinke mee to bee *Arganda* the unknowne, your thought is true, and I am expressly come into these parts to visit you, as the best Prince in the earth, and the Queene also, who is one of the wisest Ladies that liueth. Then shee called *Amadis* saying vnto him. My Lord *Amadis* come neer and I will tell you, (to ease you of the trauaile that you should haue in seeking of *Galaor*) that your brother is well, and so thoroughly healed, that you shall see him heere very shortly, therefore leave off your determined search of him, for hee is in such a place as all the men in the world can neuer finde him. Madame answered *Amadis*, when hee was demanded of me by the Damosels that carried him away, I imagined that he should be saved by you, and that no other but *Arganda* would haue vndertaken such an enterprise, which hath euersince put mee in good hope, without the which I thinke I had bene dead. For this one thing I am sure of, that there is no knight in the world more bound to Lady or gentlewoman then I am to you,

for the which I am not able to yeeld you such comfigne thanks as I doe owe, and you deserue, but you know very well, that *Amadis* his life shall neuer be parted to do you service. Madame did the king, will it please you to come and visit you in my Pallace. Your Maistie answered *Arganda*: I shall pardon me, for I will forby: at this night in my galley, and to morrow I will doe whatsoeuer it shall please you, but *Amadis*, *Agrates*, *Brance*, and *Guillan* shall keepe mee companie, because I knowe they are as amorous at my selfe, and their companie will be a meane to drive away all melancholie. Doe what you will said the King, for you shall be obeyed. Then he caused the people to returne vnto the Cittie, and he himself (bidding *Arganda* good night) departed, leaving for her guard a number of archers vpon the sands: the next morning the Queene sent vnto *Arganda* a chace of her owne hacknies richly trapped, vpon the which shee and her women entred into the Cittie, and *Arganda* rode in the midst of the foure knights which she had overnight detained to keep her companie. They intertained her with diuerse discourses by the way, where in shee tooke so great pleasure that shee said vnto them, Beleeue mee it would bee a long time before I should be wearie of so good companie as this of yours is: for I assure you that I finde you all foure so agreeable to my nature, that you are particularly euen all one with my selfe, for if I bee in loue, you are no lesse, holding Ladies in most great estimation. And this saide *Arganda*, because that shee languished with extreame loue which shee did beare vnto the faire Knight, of whom in our first

first booke wec haue mentioned vnto you. Their conference was no sooner ended, when they approached neere vnto the Pallace, but the King who there had staid, came forth to meete them, and as hee embraced *Vrganda* (bidding her heartily welcome) she looked round about her vpon the companie, and beheld a great number of knights, in each place. Whereupon she sayd, me thinks your Maiesty is now royally accompanied, not onely for the multitude of great personages that are with you, but especially for the loue which I am sure they do beare vnto you, for which you ought greatly to praise God. For the Prince that is beloued of his subiects, may be sure to maintaine his estate in great safety, therefore your Maiesty must endeauour to entertaine and vse them Kingly, that your fortune (which hitherto hath fauoured you) do not forsake you if you doe otherwise: and aboue all things take heede of false reports, seeing that it is the very poyson and ruine of such Princes as giue credit vnto them. And as the King would haue brought her to her chamber, she said vnto him: may it please your Maiesty that I may first goe and doe my duty to the Queene? I with all my heart gentle Lady answered hee, I am sure that shee will be most glad to see you, as shee that hath greatly desired to honour and please you. Herewithall hee conducted her where the Ladies were, and so soone as the Queene did see her, she rose vp and kissed her, saying, that she was exceeding welcome: then shee made her sit downe betwene *Oriana* & *Briolania*, whom *Vrganda* had neuer yet scene: and shee found that *Briolania* was the

fairest Lady in they world, & *Oriana* by her excellency had mistaken her beauty, and to speake truth there was great difference betwene them two. Then *Vrganda* sayde vnto the Queene, Madame, I doe now finde that which I haue euer heard reported. Which is, that the King was accompanied with worthy knights, then any other Christian Prince, and you also attended vpon by the fairest Ladies on the earth, for hee which conquered the Firm-land (being a better knight then *Amadis*) & the famous victory which so lately hath bene obtained against King *Cildadan*, by the effusion of the blood of so many Giants as there dyed, are sufficient witnessses of the one, and I am sure (to proue the other) it will be granted vnto me, that the firmament it is not possible finde fairer Ladies then these heere, pointing to *Oriana* and *Briolania*: but if your Court be his prebeminence, it is yet honourable for one thing and farre more commendable, which is the loyalty wherein loue is there maintained, as well to be scene by the prooffe of the burning sword, and the kerchiefe beset with flowers, which aduenture was performed in your presence. When *Oriana* heard her goe so farre in her praise, her heart beganne to tremble, and she became sorry and pensif, fearing least *Vrganda* would speake more, in disclosing the secret betwene *Amadis* and her. But *Amadis* who was present, knowing the wisdom of her that knew all things, and the doubt of *Oriana*, hee approached vnto her, whispering thus in her care, I assure you Madame, that *Vrganda* is not discreet to speake any thing foolishly

ly or vnadvisedly. And therewithall hee turned vnto the Queene, saying vnto her, Madame, your grace may demaund (if it please you) of *Vrganda* what she was that gained the kerchiefe. I pray you sayd the Queene, tell vs that. By my faith answered *Vrganda*, there is great cause why *Amadis* should know better what shee was then I, for shee followed him, and afterward hee deliuered her from the hands of *Arsalans* the enchanter, and from *Lindorag* his Nephew, not without great daunger of his person. Madame sayd *Amadis*, it was impossible that I should either know her or my selfe, better then you did, seeing that you knowe that shee desiring to remaine vnknowne would neuer vncouer her face before me, yet from you nothing may bee so well concealed, that is not at your pleasure reuealed. Truly answered *Vrganda*, for your sake I will presently declare vnto you, as much as I know. The Damofell (whose loyalty is so knowne) is no maide, for shee is a faire wife, aboue all others most excellent: and for the same cause did shee conquer the kerchiefe so renowned, especially through the constant loue which shee did beare vnto her Lord. Shee is by birth, of the Kings countrey, by her Mother an Alien, and her continuall abiding is in this Realme, where shee liueth so abundantly, that if shee werneth any thing, it is onely because shee cannot (at all times when shee pleaseth) enioy him whom shee loueth better then her selfe, further shall you not knowe what shee is by me. *Oriana* who seeing herselfe touched by *Vrganda*, was not wel contented, (doubting lest shee should haue proceeded further) vntill shee held her peace,

and that the Queene answered: gently gentle Ladies you haue so cunningly deciphered her name, that there is not any heere, in my opinion, the better for her knowledge, seeing onely shee now did thinke her a maide, and you tell me vs that shee is a wife. A time will come said she, that you shall know her better. Herewithall the King who was minded to see *Vrganda*, came to seeke her, that hee might lead her to dinner: hee made her sit close beside him, & afterwards they spent the rest of the day in sporting & making good cheer, vntill it was time to goe to rest. Then *Vrganda* came vnto the Queene, to entreate her that shee would be pleased to suffer her to lie in *Oriana* her chamber, the which shee willingly did grant vnto her. Neuertheless shee sayd the Queene, I feare that her youthfull behaviour will somewhat disorder you. In faith Madame answered shee, her beauty shall be more hurtful then many good knights, whose protection cannot be so great as that it may defend them from sundry perils, which they are liuely in danger into for her loue, for that their deaths will hardly be eschewed, if they do not wisely prevent it. The Queene could not refrain from laughter, and sayde vnto *Vrganda*, Hither to shee may be pardoned for any such danger that shee hath as yet brought shole vnto of whom you speake: and therefore for this time I bid you good night. Hereupon the Queene departed, and *Vrganda* was brought vnto the Princeesse her lodging, where shee found the Queene *Briolania*, and *Mabilla*, that kept her company with whom shee discoursed so long of diuerse pleasant matters, vntill out of some of sleep, shee was constrained

strained to lay them downe. Now they were all soure lodged in one chamber together, notwithstanding *Vrganda* perceiving *Briolania* and *Mabila* to be fast asleepe, and *Oriana* awake, shee sayd vnto her, Madame, if you now doe not take your rest for thinking vpon him, that day and night doth wake for your loue, your quiet and his are both alike. I knowe not what you meane answered *Oriana*, but sure I am, that loue neuer hindered me from sleepe. *Vrganda* knew very well that she made her this answer, because shee would not that *Briolania* should vnderstand the loue betwixt her and *Amadis*, wherefore shee sayd vnto her: assure you that I am so carefull that your secrets be not disclosed, as I will not offend you with any thing that I speak, for I know what is needfull for you better then your selfe. Madame answered *Oriana*, you may waken the Gentlewomen that are in this chamber. Let me alone for that sayd *Vrganda*, I will rid you straight of this feare. Therewithall shee tooke forth a booke which was so little one might haue covered it with his hand, and after shee had read therein a little while, shee sayd vnto *Oriana*, let this suffice you, that now wee may speake in safety, for what noyse soeuer we make, they shall not stirre, vntill I awake them, and if any doe enter into this chamber, they shall fall downe vpon the floure in as sound a sleepe as they, and hearken how they snore already. Heereat *Oriana* began to laugh, and rising forth of her bed shee came vnto *Mabila* and *Briolania*, whose armes shee pulled very rudely, but for all that euer shee could doe, they stirred no more then a stone, will you yet see sayd *Vrganda* the pastime

of those that shall come to the threshold of your chamber, call the Damosell of *Denmarke* who is in this wardrobe, *Oriana* did. And as the Damosell had set her foot in the chamber, shee fell downe vpon the floure, beganne to sleepe and snored soundly then either *Mabila* or *Briolania*. Wherefore *Oriana* layd her downe by *Vrganda*, and sayde vnto her: Madame, that you know so much of such faires, I beseech you to tell me what must happen vnto me, I answered *Vrganda*, do you desire sooner to escape that which is destined vnto you by heauen, than to be free of a forchaunce? I beseech you that it is not in the power of any mortall man to alter that which God hath appointed vnto him, bee it good or bad, but it be by his free will and pleasure, uerthelesse since you desire to know your fortune, I am content, afterwards make your profit thereof as you can. Now then, at such time as you shall see at the court, many good knights shall come for your loue. Then they were accompanied with a lion, which shall come forth of his den with his loud roaring, and in such sort assault you, that he shall haue you in his power, and mangle all their force, and shall remaine in the power of all beast, who shall then take your head therewith, and shall no more bee yours. Afterwardes this famished beast shall take your body in his power, and shall put you into his caue, where he shall feede in such sort, as he shall be hungered, and shall be flayed, and my daughter take heed of this, for this which I haue told you

you shall without doubt come to passe. By my faith answered *Oriana*, I could haue beene well content to haue forborne this curiosity, for the sorrowfull end that is prepared for mee doth trouble all my spirits. Faire Lady, saide *Vrganda*, another time bee lesse curious to vnderstand that which is beyond your capacitie: neuerthelesse, often times such things as are mysticall and fearefull, doe for the most part turne into ioy, pleasure, and profit, therefore be not you discomforted in any sort, seeing that you are daughter vnto the best king, & most vertuous Queene that liueth vpon the earth, being endued with such excellent beauty, that your renoune is spreade ouer all countreies, and moreover you are beloued of him, who is honoured and esteemed more then any other Knight. You know as well as I that hee loueth you, by the experience not onely of that which hath beene tolde you, and you haue made knowne vnto him, but also by the aduentures which hee hath brought to passe in your presence: therefore you ought to thinke your selfe happy aboue all those that are best beloued, being mistresse of him, that deserueth (by his chivalrie) to be Lord of all the world. Now it is time to wake the Ladies, & end our discourse. Heerevnto shee began to read againe in her booke, and at that instant the Ladies that were asleepe, began to breath as if they had beene overwearied, and shortly after they rose vp, but when the Damosell of *Denmarke* perceived, that shee was laid in such sort naked in the midst of the chamber, there was neuer woman more amazed then shee, the which when *Oriana* perceived, shee demanded (smiling to her

selfe) if shee were come thither to seeke fresh aire. By my faith Madame, answered shee, I know neither who brought me hither, nor can I remember how I came hither. Whereat they all began to laugh: and after they were ready they went vnto the Kings lodging, whome they found together with the Queene in the church: and so soone as seruice was ended, the King came vnto *Vrganda*, and bid her good morrow, and shee after her duty done vnto his Maiestie, saide, that if it were his pleasure to cause the Knights and Ladies in his Court to assemble together, that before her departure (which should bee very shortly) shee would declare something before them that should happen vnto him, heereupon the King appointed a large hall to bee made ready, in the which the next morning a great number of Lords and Ladies were come. Then *Vrganda* being in the midst of them all, addressing her speech vnto the King, shee saide vnto him. Seeing that your Maiestie hath kept the letters which I did write vnto you and *Galathea*, presently after the *Fair Fiersterre* had obtained the burning sword, and the Damosell the benchcise with flowres, it may please you now to cause them to be read, that every one may plainly know that I am not ignorant of things before they happen. Heereupon hee sent for them, and they were read before all the assistance, whereby it plainly appeared that shee had wholly foretold the manner of the battaile, such as it happened out, and they all greatly wondered thereat, especially at the stout heart of the King, that would be in a battaile so dangerous, when hee was before hand threatened so rigorously by his letter. In like sort was it

certainly known that the *Faire Forlorne* had been the cause of the victory, by the three blowes that hee gaue. The first when he cast King *Cildadan* at *Galaors* feet, the second in killing *Sarmadan* the Leonnois, and the third when hee succoured the king, whom the stout *Mandafabul* of the virmillion tower did carry vnto his ships, whose arme hee cut off close by the elbow, which was the cause of his present death. And in like sort that which she had said of *Galaor* was come to passe, for his head was certainly at the mercy of the *Faire Forlorne*, at that time when the Damosels demanded to carry him away. But now, said *Vrganda*, I will tell you in order that which must happen, great contention shall arise between the mighty serpent & the strong Lion, which shall be aided by many cruell beasts, they shall come with such fury, that a great number of them shall suffer most cruel death. The subrill Roman foxe shall be wounded with the clawes of the strong Lion, and his skin shall be cruelly torne, wherewith the mighty serpent shall be brought into wonderfull perplexitie. In this time the mecke sheepe couered with blacke wooll, shall come into the midst of them, who by his great humilitie and pittifull bleatings, shall pacifie the pride and fiercenesse of their courages, causing them to depart one from the other, but presently the starued wolues shall descend from the steepe mountaines against the mighty serpent, who being by them put to fight with a great part of his traine, shall be closed vp in one of his dens. The tender licorne putting his mouth to the eare of the fierce Lion, shall awake him out of his sound sleepe with his loud crye, making him

afterwards to take part of his beasts, with the which hee shall speedily goe to the succour of the mighty serpent, whom they shall finde bitten and wounded by these starued wolues, that his blood shall be abundantly shed vpon the earth, at the same time shall he be deliuered from the teeth of the wolues, and they be cut in pieces. Then the life of the mighty serpent being restored (leauing within his den all the poyson of his entrails) he shall be contented to put himselfe betweene the clawes of the strong Lion, and the white hind, who in the dreadfull Forrest did lift vp her greeces to Heauen, shall be taken from thence and called home againe. Wherefore noble King, may it please your Maiestie to cause this to be written, which before all this company I haue recited, for there is no doubt but all this shall come to passe. I will so doe, answered hee, seeing I please you, but I beleue there is not any of vs that at the present understands this prophesie. Asline you, saide shee, that a time will come when it shall be manifested vnto all of you. So saying she cast her eyes vpon *Amadis*, whom she perceived to be maruailous pensieue, and said vnto him. My Lord *Amadis*, you muse vpon that which cannot trouble you, wherefore expel this fancy from your minde, and haue vnto a match that you shall make, wherein you shall get little gain. At such time as you shall be wounded to death in the defence of others life, the smart being yours, and the profit his, the recompence that you shall reape thereby, shall be a wonderfull discontent, and banishment from that whereto you shall most desire to approach. Then shall your good

rich

rich and sharpe Sword so bruise your bones, and in so many places wound your flesh, that with the losse of your blood you shall become very feeble, and moreouer you shall be so sharply pursued, that if halfe the world were yours, you would giue it, that your sword were cast into the bottom of some deepe lake, from whence it could neuer be taken forth againe, therefore bethinke you of your destiny, which shall be such as I haue foretold you. *Amadis* seeing that euery one had their eyes fixed vpon him, looked vp with a smiling countenance and answered *Vrganda*, Madame, by the things that are already come to passe wherof you foretold vs, we may wel credit and beleue that which now you tell vs, and knowing that I am mortal, I am very sure that my life shall not be prolonged one minute longer then it pleaseth God, and therefore whilst I may, I will endeaour to gaine some reputation, rather then seeke to conserue my life. Notwithstanding if any perill were to be doubted, I should haue more occasion to feare those that doe hourly happen vnto mee, then

such as are hidden & yet to come. I know well said *Vrganda* that it is more easie to draw the Sea drie, then afright your vndaunted and magnanimous courage with any further dread of danger. And because if it please your Maiestie (said shee to the king) that I must presently take my leaue of you, remember I beseech you what I haue aduertised you of, before this great and honourable company, as shee that desireth the honour and profit of your Maiestie, and stop your cares henceforth from those, whose words you shall know to be vniust and peruerse. Herewithall she arose from her place and al the company in like sort, and shortly after she tooke leaue of the King, and of the rest of his court, which done she returned into her galley, accompanied onely with the foure knights that had conducted her to the Court, who hauing seene her embarked, returned backe to the Citty, but they had no sooner turned their backs, when a thicke and great Cloude so ouershaddowed the ship, that presently they lost the sight thereof.

## CHAP. XIX.

How after the departure of *Vrganda*, the king being ready to mount on horse back, to execute the enterprize which he had determined to make vpon the burning lake, there came before him a Damosell Gentle, to understand whether his Maiestie would be pleased to referre the quarrell that he pretended in this voyage, vpon the combat betwixt *Ardan Canila*, and *Amadis of Gaule*, with such conditions as shall be declared vnto you.

**S**OME few dayes after the departure of *Vrganda*, king *Lisuart* walking vpon the sealand consulting with his knights about the voyage which

he determined to make vnto the Isle of *Mongaza*, to set at liberty king *Arban*, and *Angrista*, they beheld a shippe making towards the shoare which cast anchor hard by them. Whereupon they all approached



proched to know who or what newes it had brought, when suddenly they perceiued two Esquires waiting vpon a Damofell, comming forth thereof, who was no sooner landed but shee demanded for the king. Those vnto whom she spake, answered that he was there: but they did all wonder at her greatnesse, for there was not a man in all the Court whom she exceeded not in height a hand breadth: for the rest, shee was indifferent faire, and well apparelled. Then she approached neer vnto the king, to whom she said, if it please your Maiesty, I am hither come to let you vnderstand that which I am commanded to declare vnto you in the behalfe of some great personages, but if it pleased your highnesse, I would haue the Queene present. Herewithall the king tooke her by the hand, and brought her to the Palace, and afterward he sent for the Queene and her Ladies, that they might heare what the Damofell would say, they being all come, the Damofell enquired if *Amadis* of *Gaule* (lately called the *Faire Forlorne*) were in this company or no. And *Amadis* (vnto whom by châce she spake) answered her, that hee was the man, ready to doe her any pleasure if she would imploy him: notwithstanding, for all his courteous speech, the Damofell looking vpon him with a sterne countenance began to raile at him, saying, the lesse do I esteeme thee: for thou wast neuer ought worth, nor neuer shall be, and by the effect of this my message all this company may know whether there bee any heart or courage at all in thee: then she tooke forth two Letters of credit, sealed each of them with a scale of Gold, the one of them she pre-

sented to the king, the other to the Queene. But so soone as the king had red his letter, he commanded her to declare whatsoeuer she pleased. Wherefore shee spake aloud and said, It may please your Maiesty, *Gramadusa* the giant of the burning lake, and the faire *Madafima*, with the most redoubted *Arden Canila* (who is at this present with them, to protect and defend them against you) haue knowne for certaine, that you determine to passe into their country to assaile them, and because the same cannot be done without the losse of many worthy men on eyther side, they haue deuised a meanes (if your maiesty think good to auoid the effusion of blood, & the losse of diuers valiant knights, which is this, that the combat of two persons onely shall determine the quarrell betweene you and them, vpon the victory of him that shall win the field, the one is the valiant and famous *Arden Canila*, the other *Amadis* of *Gaule* here present: vpon this condition, that if *Amadis* be ouercome, *Arden* may freely cut off his head and carry it with him, to the burning lake vnto *Madafima*, and also if fortune proue contrary to the said *Arden*, & that *Amadis* remaine conqueror, the land & the countrie that you intend to conquer, shal without contradiction be yeelded vp into your hands. And moreouer my Lady shall in like sort presently let at liberty king *Arban* of *North Wales*, and *Angriotta d'Estrauaux*, who hath bene a long time her prisoners, as you know. Therefore if *Amadis* do loue them as they thinke and doe imagine he doth, let him presently condescend vnto this Combat for the liberty of two such great friends of his otherwise he may be

assured

assured that *Arden* to despight him the more, will send their heads vnto him for a present, very shortly. Damofell answered *Amadis*, if I agree to this combat, what security shall the king haue for the performance of this your promise? I will tell you said she, The faire *Madafima* accompanied with twelue Gentlewomen of great birth, shall be sent as hostages and become the Queenes prisoners, vnder this condition, that if this which I haue said be not wholly accomplished, the king may cause them all to die in what sort hee pleaseth, and as touching you, I demand no other assurance, then this, that if you be vanquished *Madafima* may afterward haue your head without contradiction. And to let you know that they from whom I bring this message, will not gainsay that which I haue promised, I will yet further cause *Andangel* the old giant, with his two sons, and nine of the chiefeft knights of the countrie, to enter into the king his prison, as pledges for the performance of the former couenants. Truly answered *Amadis*, if the king and Queene haue these persons which you speake of in their power, the security is sufficient, but yet you shall haue no answer of me, vnlesse you first grant to dine with me in my lodging, with these two Esquires that attend vpon you. I do greatly wonder said shee, what moueth thee so instantly to intreat and inuite me to dine in thy company, seeing that I hate thee more then any man that I know. I am sorry for that said he, for I loue you, and will willingly doe you all the honour and seruice that I am able, but if you will haue an answer, grant mee that which I demand of you. I do grant it, said the

Damofell, more to take away all occasion from thee to deferre the combat, then for any desire that I haue to remaine in thy company. I thanke you answered *Amadis*, and because it is reason that I aduenture my person, not onely to saue two of my best companions & friends from death, but also doe my best for the enlaizing of the limits and authority of the king and his Realme, I accept the combat against *Arden*, and let the hostages come when it shall please you, because for my part, so glorious an enterprife shall not be foreflowed. Certainly said the Damofell, thou hast greatly satisfied me, neuerthelessse I feare mee thou hast said this eyther in choller, or to auoide the shame that otherwise thou mightst incur before so many valiant men, and therefore it may please the king to assure me, that if thou stie before the fight, hee will not ayde thee at any time against the kindred of *Famangomad*. Damofel answered the king, I promise you I will not. Now let vs goe to dinner said *Amadis*, for considering the journey which you haue made you must needes haue a good appetite to your meate. Truly answered she, I will go more contented then I hoped for, and seeing it hath pleased the king to grant mee that which I requested, I assure you that without faile *Madafima* and her Gentlewomen with the knights, shall yeelde themselves prisoners vnto his Maiesty and the Queene, so that also hee will be pleased to warrant *Arden* from all the rest of his Court, except *Amadis*, from whom I hope he shall carry away the head. When *Don Brunco* heard this, hee answered the Damofell, I haue many times seene one make account of

another mans head when hee hath lost his owne, and the like may happen vnto *Arden*, whom you so much exalts. Gentle friend said *Amadis*, I pray you let this Gentlewoman speake at her pleasure, for one like vnto her selfe, for she and such as resemble her, haue liberty to say what they list, and oftentimes when they know. What are you answered the Gentlewoman? hee answered, that so well can please for *Amadis*? I am, said he, a knight that would willingly beare a part in this enterprise, if *Arden Canila* had a companion with him. By my faith, answered she, I beleeue that if you did think to bee receiued you would not speake so proudly, but you haue already heard that *Arden* and *Amadis* must bee alone without any more, which maketh you to speake so haughtily, neuertheless if you be such a one as you say, I am assured that the combat of them two, shall be no sooner ended, but that I will bring before you a brother of mine that shall teach you to hold your peace, and I assure you that hee is as great an enemy vnto *Amadis* as you professe to bee his friend. He shall be very welcome, and better entertained said he, and tell him hardly that he forget none of his Armour behinde him at his lodging, for be he neuer so valiant it will be all little enough for him. Herewithall hee threw downe his gloue. See here said he my gage, take it vp for your brother, if hee will allow you to do it, and will accept the combat that you haue vnderaken for him. The Damosell tooke vp the gloue, and afterward vnying from about her head a carquener of Gold, she said vnto the king, If it like your Maiesty, I accept the combat for my brother a-

gainst this knight in his absence, witness whereof, your grace may keepe (if it is please you) these two pledges, the which since gaue vnto him, and the king gaue vnto them, although hee would willingly haue remitted this quarrell, for hee had ready doubted the other, for hee had heard of the valiant deeds of *Arden Canila*, who neuer did meete (as it was tolde) with any knight in foure yeres before, durst combat him. When the Damosell perceived that she had executed her commission, according vnto her desire, she tooke leave of the Court, and went with *Amadis*, who brought her vnto his lodging, but it had been better for him that he had beene at that time a sleep, for the courtesie which hee did shew vnto her, turned him to a great displeasure, that shortly after he was in great danger to haue lost his life. Because that he would the more honour this Damosell, he brought her into that Chamber wherein *Gandalin* did bestow his Armour. But shee had no sooner set her foote in the same, but she cast her eyes vpon *Amadis* his good Sword, which shee thought was of so strange a fashion, that from that time forth, she determined to steale it, if shee might finde the meanes, and to doe the same more cleanly, she walked so long about the chamber, that as *Amadis* and his people had their backs towards her, she slyly drew the sword forth of the scabbard, and held it vp close vnder her cloake. Afterward shee presently went forth of the chamber, and taking aside one of the Esquires (in whom shee most trusted) she gaue it vnto him, saying: dost thou know what thou shalt do? run quickly into my ship, and hide me this Sword vnder the

ballast in such sort that none doe see it vpon thy life. The Esquire was diligent and departed. Then *Amadis* entred into talke with the Damosell, demanding of her at what houre *Madafima* would arrive to the Court. I beleeue answered she, that you may see her, and speake with her before the king haue dined: but what mooves you faire sir to enquire so much after her? Because said *Amadis* I would go meete her vpon the way to doe her honour and seruice, to the end that if shee haue receiued any displeasure by mee, I may make her such mends as she shall demand of me. I know answered she, that if thou run not away, *Arden Canila* shall be he that shall make thee answer the wrong that thou hast done vnto her, with the losse of thy head, the which hee shall present vnto her, for other satisfaction she desireth not to accept. I will keepe them both fasting without that (if God please) said *Amadis*, neuertheless if shee will haue any other thing of mee, I sweare vnto thee, by my faith Damsell, that she shall haue it, as shee whose good will and fauour I doe most desire. Then were the Tables covered, & dinner was brought in, wherefore *Amadis* causing her to sit downe, desirous to leave her alone, said vnto her, that the king had sent for him, and that shee in the meane time should make good cheere, for hee would returne presently againe. The Damosell shewed by her countenance that this departure of his did not a little please her and fearing least her theft should be perceived, she made as short a dinner as shee could. Which ended, she rose from the Table, and said vnto those that serued her, you may tell *Amadis* that I giue

him no thanks at all for the entertainment that he hath shewed me, thinking thereby to do me honour, and assure him that I am sith that wil purchase (as long as the breath remaineth in my Body) his death and vicer destruction. Soe *Gibbe* he helpe, answered *Amadis*, I beleeue well, and according to that which you haue already manifested, is in my opinion your death most meritorious woman that I haue seene in all my life. What foruer I am, said she, I care not for that, and lesse for him, and if thou thinkest mee iniurious, yet is it not so much as I would be both towards him and thee, and for the paines that thou hast taken in serving mee this day at dinner, I would as recompence thereof, that I had seene you both twaine hanged. Saying so, she departed and got into her ship. Very joyfull of the Swore which he had stolne, which so looke as shee was returned back vnto *Madafima*, shee presented vnto him, letting him know and *Madafima* also, how *Amadis* had consented vnto the combat which shee had demanded of him. Is it true answered *Arden*, let me neuer be accounted a knight of any worth, if I doe not then bring back againe my Lady to her honour and reputation, deliuering henceforth her countrey from the attempts of king *Lisuarte*, and if I take not the head of *Amadis* from off his shoulders in lesse time then the best sooreman in the world may haue run hake a league, I am content (said he vnto *Madafima*) not to deserue your loue so long as I liue. But shee hearing him speake so rashly, held her peace: and although shee greatly desired to be reuenged of him for the death of her Father, and brother whom *Amadis* had slaine, yet did

did he so extremely abhorre *Arden* that shee a great deale rather wished his death then his life, because hee pretended to marry her. For she was exceeding faire, and he a deformed villaine and voide of all humanity; and this combat was not practised by her meanes, but by the perswasion of her Mother, who had sent for him; for the defence of her Countrey upon this condition, that if he reuenged the death of her husband and sonne, she would giue it vnto him, and her daughter *Madasima* in marriage, for hee was so feared and had in such reputation, that shee thought she could not bestow her daughter better. And to let you know his manners and perfections, hee was descended from the race of giants, borne in a Prouince called *Canila*, the which was in a manner wholly inhabited by such kinde of people, notwithstanding hee was somewhat lesse of body then they, but not in strength: his shoulders were narrow, his necke and brest vncreasonable thicke, his hands and thighes large, his legs long and crooked, his eyes holow, flat nosed like an Ape, his nostrils wide and thicke, his lips great, his haire red and thicke bristled in that sort, as very hardly might it be curled. To conclude, he was so beset with freckles and blacke spots, that his face seemed as though it had been of sundry sorts of flesh, hee was of the age of thirtie yeeres or thereabout, bold and expert in armes, furious, spitefull, and as vncourteous as might bee. And yet since hee was twenty and fve yeeres of age, he neuer fought with any Giant or other knight, eyther a foote, a horseback, or at wrestling, that was able to resist him, & whom he did easily not o-

uercome: such was the beauty, fashion, and gentle behaviour of *Arden Canila*. When the iniurious Damofell heard *Arden* make such large promises vnto *Madasima*, & perceiued that shee made no account thereof, she tooke vpon her to speake in her behalfe, she thinks my Lord that you should thinke the victory very sure on your side, seeing that Fortune is so fauourable vnto you, and so contrary vnto your enemy, as you may well perceiue, in that shee hath caused him to lose the best part of his armes. And this shee said in respect of the sword which she had stolne. By my Gods, said *Arden*, I am more glad of his displeasure for the want thereof, then for any good that I hope to receiue thereby, for although *Amadis* had the force of three such as hee is, yet were hee not able to withstand the strength of my arme, accustomed to tame his betters. The next morning very early hee departed, accompanied with *Madasima*, and the rest which should be deliuered vp as hostages, according to the promise that the Damofell had made vnto king *Lisuart* before the Combat was agreed vpon, and *Canila* did assuredly hope, that he should easily obtaine the victory. By meanes whereof hee departed with great ioy, saying vnto those that were with him, *Amadis* is famous for one of the best knights in the world, neuertheless I will haue his head, if he dare enter in to the lists against me, and by that meanes my glory shal be the more increased in the ouercomming of him, my Lady shall rest well reuenged, and I remaine her husband and louer. And because he would know before hee entred into the court, whether *Amadis* had repen-

ted him or not, hee sent the iniurious Damofell before, to aduertise the King of their comming, and in the meane season hee caused his tents to be set vp, somewhat neere the Citie where King *Lisuart* did remaine. But you must know, that incontinently after the Damofell was departed from *Amadis* his lodging, *Enil* told him thereof: therefore because he would prouide all things necessary for his enterprise, hee withdrew him vnto his chamber, accompanied with some of his most priuat friends, and in like sort there came at that instant vnto him, *Florestan*, *Agrates*, *Galuanes* without land, and *Guillan* the pen-siue, who were altogether ignorant of the enterprise of this new combat. But when they were aduertised thereof, thinking that it should haue bene performed with a greater number of knights, ther was not any of the who were not displeased with *Amadis*, in that he had not choise the to assist him therein, especially *Guillan* who greatly desired to proue his man-hood against *Arden Canila*, for he had heard that he was esteemed for one of the strongest Knights in all the West. And as he was about to reprove *Amadis* in forgetting him, *Florestan* preuented him, saying vnto his brother. So God helpe me, my Lord, I now doe very well perceiue, the little loue and the small account that you doe make of me, in that you would not send for me to be with you in this combat. In faith, answered *Agrates*, if hee had thought mee any thing worth, he would not haue left mee behinde, and what of me? said *Galuanes*. My Lords, answered *Amadis*, I beseech you all to holde mee excused, and not to bee displeased with mee, assuring you that if it had bene in my choyse to haue

electd a companion to assist mee in this encounter (seeing the great prowesse wherewith you are all endued) I could not tell which of you to chuse. But *Arden* desired to fight with mee alone, for the hate hee beareth vnto mee, and the loue he hath to *Madasima*, and seeing that hee hath so required it, I neither could, nor ought to refuse it, without shewing my selfe to be a recreant and a coward, nor I could not make any other answer, then that which was agreeable to his demand. And when he should haue comprised any more Knights with him, where doe you thinke I would haue sought for aid and succour but with you, beeing my friends? seeing you know how my strength is redoubled when we are together. In this sort did *Amadis* excuse himselfe, praying the all to beare him company the next day, to go meeete *Madasima*, both to receiue her, & shew her as much honor as they might deuise. Whereunto they all agreed: so that the day following (knowing that she was neere at hand) *Amadis* accompanied with eight of the best knights in King *Lisuart*'s Court, mounted on Horse-backe in very good order. But they had not long ridden when they did behold her a farre off, comming with *Arden Canila*, who did lead her, & she was apparrelled all in black, mourning as yet for the death of her father, who *Amadis* had slain. This sad apparrell did so much grace her, that although of her selfe (without any other helpe) she was esteemed one of the fairest that might be seen, yet was her beauty much more increased by this mourning weede, with the which the lively whitenesse of her face was the more manifested, by the grace which this blacke coullour

colour added thereunto, and her two cheeks seemed like two white roses, beautified with a naturall rednesse, so as euen then those which had conceiued a mortall hate against her for the mischiefe which she procured vnto *Amadis*, were now forced to loue her. Behinde her marched the twelue gentlewomen, apparelled with the like attire. After them came the old giant, and his son followed with nine knights, which all came as pledges. Great was the entertainment that *Amadis* shewed vnto her and the rest of her traine, and thence in like sort saluted them most courteously. Then *Amadis* approaching more neere, said vnto her, I promise you Madame that if you bee accounted faire and of good behauiour it is not without great cause, seeing that I am now my self an eye witnesse of the truth thereof, and truly that man ought to thinke himselfe happy, whose seruice it shal please you to like of, assuring you that I am willing to do you any pleasure, and ready to obey your commandements: when *Ardan Canila* heard him speake so courteously (although hee was small fauoured by *Madasima*) hee was overcome with ielousie, and answered *Amadis*, knight stand back and speake not so priuately vnto her, whom you know not. Sir said *Amadis*, the cause of my coming hither is not onely to be acquainted with her, but also to offer vnto her my person and my goods. You are no doubt answered he some good fellow, and worthy to be by her greatly employed, neuerthelesse faire sir, get you gone from her, otherwise I will make you know that it is not for so base a companion as you, to vse so great familiarity with a woman of

so high worth as she is. Whatsoever I am answered *Amadis*, yet do I desire to serue her, notwithstanding your threats, for although I am not of that worth as I would be, yet shall not the affection that I beare vnto her, bee abated by thy malapert boldnesse. But sir, you that are so lusty, who would make me know my duty & depart from her, for whom willingly I would employ my best meanes, tell mee what you are? *Ardan Canila* exceeding angry, beholding *Amadis* with a sterne and scornfull countenance answered him, I am *Ardan*, who am better able to increase her welfare and honour in one day, then thou canst with the best meanes thou hast, doe her seruice in all thy life. It may very well be said *Amadis*, notwithstanding I know that this whereof thou vauncest shall neuer by thee be executed, so indiscreete and spitefull art thou.

And because that thou greatly desirest to know whether I am a sufficient man or not, know thou that my name is *Amadis of Gaule*, against whom thou desirest to fight: and if this Lady be displeased with ought that I haue said vnto her, I will make her such amends therefore as shee shall please to command at my hands. By my Gods, answered *Ardan Canila*, if thou tarriest the combat, the satisfaction which she shall take shall be thy head. That would displease me meruailously, said *Amadis*, but I will giue her a head that shall bee more welcom to her (if she please) breaking the marriage of you two, being so far vnfit one for another: for she is faire, wise, and of courteous behauiour, & thou deformed foolish & churlish. Hereat *Madasima* & the Gentlewomen began all

to laugh, & *Ardan* to be extreame-ly angry, that to behold his countenance and the rage wherein hee was, one might easily haue iudged the little good that hee wished to *Amadis*, vnto whom hee answered not one word more, yet he ceased not grumbling and gnashing his teeth vntill hee came before the king. Then very indiscreetely he began to say, King *Lisuart* behold here the knights that must now enter into your prison, according to the promise which yesterday a gentlewoman made vnto you, in my behalfe. Wherefore if *Amadis* dare be so bold to do as he hath boasted, I am here ready to breake his head. What will you doe answered *Amadis*? Thinkest thou my heart so weake or my right so small that I cannot abate the pride of a man so audacious as *Ardan* is? I assure thee that although I had not vnderaken it, yet would I combat thee onely to hinder the marriage betweene thee and *Madasima*. And therefore deferre not to deliuer vp these hostages which thou doest brag off, for I verily hope to reuenge the good and valiant King *Arban*, & *Angriotta*, for the great wrong they haue receiued, during their imprisonment, I haue brought them along with me, said *Ardan*, knowing that you would demand them, but I am in good hope to restore them againe into the power of the faire *Madasima*, and to giue her therewithall the mold of thy cap, to testifie that it becometh not such a gallant as thou art to vse mee with such proude and spitefull tearmes, and that (in the executing thereof) she may receiue the greater pleasure, it may please your king to appoint that she may be set in a place hard at hand, to the end that she may both plainly

see the reuenge that I shall take of thee, and also the cruell death wherewith thou shalt die. At the same instant the pledges were brought, and the faire *Madasima* together, with her twelue Gentlewomen came to doe their humble duties vnto the Queene, and by her side was the old Giant, his two sons, and the nine knights, who all fell vpon their knees before the King. At the same time euery one did attentiuely beholde the faire *Madasima*, who shewed such a humble countenance, that she was greatly esteemed, yet could not *Oriana* cast one good looke vpon her, thinking that shee (of her owne will) did procure the ruine of *Amadis*, for the which none was more sorrowfull then shee. But *Mabila* who was in like sort neerely touched with the matter, put her in hope that God would ayde him, and that her Cousin might as easily ouerthrow and vanquish *Ardan Canila*, as hee did the proude *Dardan*, and many other knights, both valiant and stout. The pledges then being receiued as the custom was, both the knights retired each of them to the place appointed for them, staying vntill the time that they should enter into the field, the which the king had commanded to bee closed in with pales. Then *Gandalin* went to fetch his masters Armour. And as hee would haue taken it downe he perceived that some one had stole his good sword forth of the scabbard, which had almost made him die for anger, seeing the fault that hee had done vnto *Amadis*, towards whom he ranne, and as one beside himselfe, he cryed. My Lord, I haue so much & so grievously offended you, that you haue great reason to kill me forthwith. Why answered *Amadis*,

*Amadis*, art thou foolish or mad. My Lord said *Gandalin*, it had beene better for you that I had died ten yecere ago, so much I haue deceiued you in your neede, for I haue let your good sword to bee lost, the which somebody hath stolne since yesterday, leaving onely the scabbard where it did hang. Is this all thou makest this great stir for? answered *Amadis*, belecue me I thought (in hearing thee rage in this sort) that some body had beene carrying thy Father to his graue. Go, go, neuer care thou, for I care not so much for the goodnesse thereof, but onely because I did win it so honourably as euery one knoweth, and by the meanes of my constancy in loue. Yet see thou tell no body thereof, but go vnto the Queene and tell her that I intreate her grace, if shee haue yet that sword which *Guillan* found at the fountaine with my armour, that she will bee pleased to send it vnto me. And if thou meetest *Oriana* by chance, tell her also that I desire her to set her selfe in such a place, where I may behold her at my ease, when I shall bee in fighting, for I shall receiue by her sight more force by far, then she being absent I should. So *Gandalin* departed, who did wisely accomplish all that his master had commanded him. And as he returned vnto him, he met with the Queene *Briolania* together with *Olinda*, who called him and said vnto him, friend *Gandalin*, what doest thou thinke thy master will doe against this deuill, that will fight with him? what answered he, my Ladies doe you doubt that he shall nor do well enough with him? I am sure that I haue seene him escape far greater dangers then this which now hee undertaketh. God grant hee may

said the Ladies. Herewithall he came vnto *Amadis* that stayed for him, who hauing the sword that the Queene did send vnto him and being thoroughly well armed, he mounted on horseback. And as hee would haue entred into the field, the king met him, and said vnto him, how now my most dear friend, this day doe I hope to see some part of your courage, to the cost of *Arden Canila*. In faith if it like your Maiesty answered hee, there is a great mischance happened vnto me, some one hath robbed me of the best sword that euery knight did weare. Is it possible said the king? Who hath done you this shrewd turne? I know not answered *Amadis*, but whosoever hath done it, sure I am he is not my friend. Truly said the king, that is likely, but take you no thought therefore, for although that I haue made an oath neuer to lend mine in any combat that is made by two knights in my court, yet am I content for this time to stretch my conscience so far as to giue it you. Nay if it like your Maiesty, God forbid that the oath of the best king in the world, should be broken for my sake. What will you then do said the king? The Queene answered *Amadis*, hath done so much for me as to keep that sword which I left at the fountaine of the plaine field, the which *Guillan* did bring with the rest of my Armour, when I became a Hermit. And is the very selfe same which I had, when I was cast into the Sea, which is so fit for the scabbard of the other which is stolne, that it seemeth to bee the very same. By the faith that I owe vnto God, answered the king, I am very glad, for by the vertue of this scabbard that is left, you shall bee both defended from

from ouermuch heat, or too great cold, neuertheless the difference is great betwene the two blades, but God shall supply this default if it be his pleasure. And because it is already very late, and that the night approacheth, it were better to deferre the combate vntill to morrow morning. I will sayde *Amadis* doe whatsoever shall please your Maiesty, so that *Arden* bee content. I will goe send vnto him answered the King, whereunto *Arden* did easily agree, and returned vnto his tents to vnarme himselfe, afterwards he caused diuerse sorts of instrumens of musicke to bee brought, & all the night long both he and his neuer ceased from dancing, feasting, & royaltie. But all that while was *Amadis* in the Church deuoutly praying. After hee had like a Christian confessed his sinnes, he beseeched God to assist and succour him, in such sort continued hee vntill about day breake, when he withdrew him to his lodging, where shortly after the King came vnto him with a great troop of knights. Who after they had bidden him good morrow, they armed him, and brought him with great triumph vnto the Cathedrall Church to heare seruice, & at his returne from thence *Florestan* presented him with an excellent faire courser, which *Corisanda* had sent vnto him not long before. Then euery one got to horsebacke to accompanie him to the field. And *Florestan* carried *Amadis* his Launce, *Brunco* his helmet, and *Agrais* his shield, before the did the King ride with a white truncheon in his hand, he rode on a Spanish Ienner, beeing as fine a made horse & as proudly paced as any could be seene. The Inhabitants of the City, and many stran-

gers were already standing all along the barriers, & the gentlewomen and Damosels placed in the windowes. In this sort did *Amadis* enter into the field, into the which he was no sooner come but that he did his dutie vnto the Ladies, and amongst them all he spied out *Oriana*, who the more to increase his courage did put her head forth of the window. And smiling kindly vpon him, she made a signe vnto him that he should somethings do for her lone, wherewith *Amadis* did imagine that all the force in the world was at that instant placed round about his heart, and hee thought that *Arden Canila* stayed too long before hee came. In the meane time he buckled on his helmet & retired to that part of the field where they appointed, Iudges were seated, which were *Don Grumadan*, *Quedragant*, & *Brandoinas*. And shortly after came *Arden* in richly armed, mounted vpon a great strong horse, and hee had about his neck a shield of fine Steele shining as bright as burning glasse. At his side did hang the good sworde of *Amadis*, holding in his hand a great huge Launce, the which he weilded so strongly, that notwithstanding the thicknesse thereof, hee shook it with such force, that he made it double in his fist. Wherewith *Oriana*, *Mabila*, and the other Ladies beholding the sterne countenance of *Arden* (as it often happeneth in those things which one feareth to lose) they beganne to bee in doubt of him whom they all fauoured, so as *Oriana* sayd: Alas if God take not pittie vpon *Amadis*, this day will be his last. But *Mabila* presently reproved her saying: Madam, if you shew not a pleasant countenance vnto my Cousen, hee shall be easily van-



vanquished, although *Ardan* strike neuer a stroke. Hereupon the trumpets sounded. Then *Amadis* beholding *Oriana*, set spurres vnto his horse, and they both met so rudely, that their Launces were broken into shiuers, encountring together with their shieldes & bodies so forcibly, that *Ardan* his horse fell down dead in the place, and the other of *Amadis* had his shoulder broken, neuertheless *Amadis* with great lightnesse rose vp, although the truncheon of his enemies Lance remained sticking in his vambraces, the which hee presently pulled forth, and drawing out his sword, hee valiantly marched against *Ardan Canila*, who in like sort with great paine was risen vp. And as hee stayed to mend his helmer which was somewhat shaken with his fall, seeing his enemy approach, hee made head against him, and there began betwene them so cruell an encounter, as there was not any man present that did not greatly wonder thereat, for with the sparkles of fire which preceeded by their stroakes from their helmets, they seemed to bee all on fire, and by their waighy blowes which with great prowesse were bestowed, they manifested the hate which they did beare vnto each other, for there was not one blowe smitten but the blood followed, neuertheless it seemed that *Ardan* had the aduantage ouer his enemy, as well because of the shield of Steele which he had, as also for the hurt which hee did with the sword of *Amadis*, which the iniurious *Damocell* had giuen him. But yet *Amadis* followed him so neare, as oftentimes hee brought him out of breath, wherewith *Ardan* was much abashed, and hee verily

thought that in all his life hee had not found a knight that handled him so rudely, especially hee imagined his enemies force to be redoubled when most of all his impaird. Wherewith as it were disdainning that hee should so long continue, covering him with his shield, hee ran vpon *Amadis*, who had all his armour and shield in such sort hacked and broken, that he could not wel tel wherewith to defend him any more, because that *Ardan* neuer fastened blowe vpon him but that his flesh felt it, whereby euery one iudged that he would carry away the victory. Then was *Madasima* very sorry hereat, for she was a woman of so stout a heart that she would rather haue lost her land and herselfe then to marry him, and so long these two knights maintained the combate, that euery one did marvelle how they were able to continue. But *Oriana* seeing the pitious estate of *Amadis* and the danger whereunto hee was brought, by the reason that his armour was so broken, she was likely to haue sounded, & she became very pale and out of heart, vntill *Mobille* perceiuing it, sayd vnto her. Madame it is no time now to leaue *Amadis* in this perill, seeing that if you turne your backe, you haue his end, and deprive him of his victory, at the least if you cannot beholde him, turne your face quite from him. At that time was *Amadis* so sorely pressed by *Ardan*, that *Brandoinas* one of the iudges sayd vnto *Grumeden*, and *Quadrant*, Truly my Lord *Amadis* is in great necessity for want of good armour, see how his shield is hacked, & his haubert so broken, that in a manner he hath not wherewithall to defend one blowe.

Trust

Trust mee you say true answered *Grumeden*, and I am very sorry for it. Of my faith sayd *Quadrant*, I haue prooued *Amadis* when I fought with him, but the longer he fighteth, the stronger and more inuincible hee waxeth, so that it seemeth each houre his force increaseth, the which is not so with *Ardan*, as by prooffe you may now see by his vnweeldinesse, & more shall you see before the battaile be ended. This speech was heard by *Oriana* and *Mabla*, wherewith they were greatly comforted, and because he had seene *Oriana* almost ready to depart from the window, not daining any longer to behold him, hee thought shee was displeased, for that hee deferred so long to get the victorie of his enemy. Wherewith hee was so griued, that griping his sworde fast in his fist, hee stroke so found a blow vpon the helmet of *Ardan*, that hee made him bowe one knee to the ground, but by mischance his sword broke in three peeces, the least whereof remained in his hand. Then did hee thinke his life in very great danger, & there was not any of the beholders that did not suppose him vanquished, and *Ardan* victor: who began to lift vp his arme, saying so loud that euery one did heare: behold *Amadis* the good sworde which with wrong thou gottest, by the which thou shalt receiue a shamefull death. See gentle Ladies see, look forth of your windowes, to behold my Lady *Madasima* reuenged, and say whether I am not worthy of her loue. When *Madasima* heard *Ardan* make this bragge, and seeing that without doubt fortune fauoured him, so as according to the promise which her mother had made vnto him, she should be con-

strained to take him for her husband, shee came and cast herselfe at the feete of the Queene, beseeching her most humbly that it would please her grace to hinder this marriage, the which she might iustly doe, because that *Ardan* had sayd vnto her that if hee got not the victory of *Amadis* in lesse space then the best lackie in the world could run halfe a league, that he was content that she should neuer loue him so long as she liued, and that now it was more then foure houres since the combate began. Gentle Lady answered the Queen, I will doe that which shall be reasonable. In the meane time *Amadis* was much astonished, and seeing that hee had no meanes to defend himselfe, he began to remember that which *Vyganda* had foretold him, which was that if hee were Lord of halfe the world, hee would giue it vpon condition that his sworde were in the bottom of some deepe lake. Moreouer looking vp towards *Oriana*, he perceiued that to encourage him shee was come againe to the window, whom when hee had beheld, hee thought that hee had recovered new force and helpe. By meanes whereof, hee either determined to die speedily, or to be reuenged vpon his enemy suddenly, and the better to execute his determination, hee leaped vnto his enemy so lightly, that before *Ardan* could strike him, hee pulled the shield from his necke, and then stepping alittle aside, he took vp a truncheon of a Lance, that lay in the field, and hee thought to haue thrust it thorough the sight of *Ardan* his helmet: but hee went backe, and lifting vp his sworde hee stroke so great a blowe within the shield which *Amadis* did hold, that al-

O 2 though

though it was of fine Steele, yet did it enter therein more then a great hand breadth. And as hee strived to pull it forth, *Amadis* thrust the head of the truncheon through his arme, wherewith hee felt such extreme grief, that he forooke the sword which hee held, on the which *Amadis* presently fastened his hand, & pulled it forth, thanking God for ayding him in his greatest need. When *Mabila* beheld the case thus altered, shee called *Oriana*, who hauing seen her friend in such extremitie, was newly layd downe vpon a bed, studying with her selfe what death she might chuse for the speediest, if *Amadis* were vanquished. And *Mabila* sayd vnto her, Madame, come see how God hath holp vs, *Arden* (without doubt) is overcome. The great ioy which *Oriana* receiued at these newes made her suddenly to start vp, and looking out of the window, shee perceived how *Amadis* had stroken his enemy so mighty a blow vpon the shoulder, that hee separated it from his necke, wherewith he felt such anguish, that hee turned his backe, but hee ran not farre before *Amadis* stroke him againe, and he pursued him so sharply, as that hee made him recoyle backe euen to the top of a Rocke, against the which the Sea did beat, so that he could goe no farther. Then was *Arda Canila* brought between two extremities, for on the one side the deepe and vnmercifull waues

set before his eyes his vnhappy end, on the other side hee perceived the sharpe sword of his enemy which did no lesse terrifie him. Who pursued him so close, that he pulled his helmet from his head, and lifting vp his arme hee wounded him most cruelly, so that hee fell from the top of the Rocke downe into the Sea, and was neuer after scene. For the which many praised God, especiall king *Arban* of *Northmales*, and *Angriotta de Estranaux*, because they had seen *Amadis* in such daunger that they greatly stood in feare of his safety. Heerewithall *Amadis* wiping his sword did put it vp into his scabbard, and came whereas the King and the other knights were, who in great triumph brought him into his lodging, and the more to honour him, hee was led between those whom hee had deliuered from cruell prison, that is to say, by *Arban* King of *Northmales*, and *Angriotta de Estranaux*. And because they were leane, pale, and almost spent, as well with the euill vsage which they had receiued during their imprisonment, as also with the griefe and melancholly that they had taken, *Amadis* was desirous that they should lodge in his chamber, where they were so well tended and dyeted, by the aid of expert Physitions and cunning Surgeons, that they did shortly after recover their health, as by the sequell of our History you may vnderstand.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. XX.

*How Brunco de Bonne Mer did fight with Madamaïne the ambitious, brother to the Damosell iniurious, and of the accusations that were made by some of the enemies of Amadis vnto the King, for which cause hee and many others (that were desirous to follow him) departed from the Court.*



He next day after the combate was ended between *Amadis* and *Arden* (as hath bene related heretofore) the iniurious Damosell came and presented herselfe before the king, beseeching his Maiesty to send him that should fight with her brother, whom according vnto promise shee had caused to come thither. For (sayd the Damosell) although my brother be conquerour and cannot take that reuenge of his enemies as the friends of *Arden* may rest satisfied for his death, yet will it bee some small comfort vnto them notwithstanding. Now *Brunco*, was there present, who (without making stay, answered to the rash speeches of the foolish woman) said vnto the King. If it like your Maiesty, I am the man she speaketh of, and seeing that her brother is come hither as shee saith, if it be your pleasure and his will, wee shall quickly know if hee be such a gallant as hee vaunteth. Vnto the which the King condescended. Wherefore they both went immediately to arme them, and anon after they entred into the field, whether they were accompanied with certaine knights their friends. They being then in the place assigned for that purpose, the Trumpets sounded to warne them to begin the combate. Forthwith they charged their Launces, and set

ting spurs to their horses, they ranne the one against the other such force that their Launces flew into shiuers, & encountering each other with their shieldes and bodies, *Madamaïne* lost his stirrups, and was vnhorsed, & *Brunco* wounded in the left side. Notwithstanding so soone as hee had finished his carriere, hee turned himselfe to his enemy, and saw that he had already recovered his feet, and held his sword in his hand in a readines to defend himselfe: but as *Brunco* drew neere to charge him, he sayd to him: Sir knight alight, or else assure you that I will kill your horse. Truly sayd *Brunco*, at your choyce bee it, for it is all one to me, to overcome you on foote or on horsebacke. When *Madamaïne* saw that his wish came to a good end, being as he thought stronger then his enemy, who was but little, and himselfe in a manner a Gyant, he was most glad thereof, and sayd to *Brunco*. It were better for you to alight, and then you should soon make profe whether you were able to effect that which you make brags of: well quoth *Brunco*, & so withdrawing himselfe he alighted & left his horse, then he tooke his shield & set hand to his sword, approaching vnto *Madamaïne*, who like a valiant & stout knight receiued him coragiously. They began to lay on load the one at the other both of the pretending to get the victory, which was the cause that

neither shield nor armour of how good temper soeuer, was able to withstand their blowes, for they hacked them to peeces, so that the field in many places was couered with peeces of their shields. Now if the knights did assaile one another with great hardinesse, their horses did no lesse, for they set vpon one another, and with their feete and teeth fighting together, they did ioyne in such sort, that the most part of the lookers on, were more intentiue to the combate of the beasts, then the fight of the knights. Notwithstanding *Madamain* his horse in the ende had the worse, being constrained to leape ouer the barriers, and to run away. This gaue a great presumption to euery man to imagine that *Brunco* should obtaine the victory, and so it fell out, for hee pursued *Madamain* so neere, and brought him to that extremitie, that being almost out of breath, he sayd vnto *Brunco*. I doe belecue considering the rage thou art in, that thou imaginest the day will not bee long enough to end our quarrell. Howbeit, if thou doest consider, that thy armour is almost vnriued, thou shalt finde that it were better for thee to rest thy selfe, then to assaile mee so vndiscreetly as thou doest, and therefore I being vnwilling to vse thee so rigourously as thou deseruest, I am content to giue thee leaue to take breath, that we may afterwards begin the fight more hotly then before. *Brunco* answered, thou declarest in plaine termes that which is needfull for thy selfe. Wherefore I pray thee as lustie as thou art, not to spare mee a whit. Art thou ignorant of the occasion of our combate? Knowest thou not that either thy head or mine must cease

this strife? I doe assure thee that I am no more determined to listen vnto thy preaching: wherefore if thou determine not to dy presently, looke to thine owne defence, better then thou hast done heretofore. Immediately without any further disputations hee assailed *Madamain* afresh, but hee was already so weake (as not being able so much as to defend *Brunco* his blowes) hee drew himselfe by little and little to the top of a Rock, euen to the place where *Amadis* had cast the body of *Ardan* into the Sea. And there *Brunco* thrust him so rudely downe, that he sent him to be buried in the Sea, but before hee came to the bottome, his body was torne in twenty scurall peeces. Which the inuiolous Damosell perceiuing, she entred into such fury and dispaire, that as a mad woman shee ranne vnto the place where *Ardan* and *Madamain* were throwne downe headlong, where finding *Madamain* his sword, she set it to her breast, crying so loud that all the companie heard her, Seeing that *Ardan* the flower of chiuallrie, & my brother haue chosen their graue in this raging Sea, I will beare them companie. And so casting herselfe downe headlong, she was immediately couered with the water. Then *Brunco* (mounting on horsebacke againe) was conducted by the King and many other knights to the lodging of *Amadis*, where hee desired to keep him company, in whose honour hee had undertaken the combate. And because that the Queene *Briolania* perceived that *Amadis* was not like to be cured in a short space, nor to accompany her as hee had promised, she tooke her leaue of him to goe see the singularities of the

Firme.

Firme-Island, wherefore *Amadis* commanded *Enil* to conduct her, and to desire *Isania* the Gouvernor thereof, to doe her all the honour, and giue her the best entertainment hee could deuise. So *Briolania* departed, bidding *Oriana* farewell, assuring her that she should be aduertised what happened vnto her in trying the aduentures of the Island, but shee was no sooner gone from the Court, when it seemed that Fortune endeauoured the ruine of the kingdom of great *Brittaine*, which had so long time liued in happinesse. Yea euen king *Lisuarte* himselfe, who (forgetting not onely the seruices hee had receiued of *Amadis*, of his kindred and friends, but especially the aduice and counsell of *Virganda*) listened to flatterers, two ancient knights of his house, to whom (vnder the colour of the long education they had receiued, as well of the King *Falangris* his eldest brother, as of himselfe) hee gaue credit, beleueing their vntrothes which he ought not to haue done, as you shall presently vnderstand. These two of whom I speake as wel by reason of their ancient age, as of a kinde of hypocrisie, cloaked with wisedome, tooke more paines to seeme good and vertuous, then to bee so in deede, by meanes whereof they entred into great authority, and were oftentimes called and made priue to the most secret affaires of their Lord, one of them was named *Brocadan*, and the other *Gandandell*. This *Gandandell* had two sonnes, who before the comming of *Amadis* and of his followers into great *Brittaine*, were esteemed two of the most hardiest knights in all the countrey, notwithstanding the prowesse and dexteritie of the o-

ther, did abate the renowne of those whom I speake of. Whereat their father was so displeased, that forgetting the feare of God, the faith which hee ought to his Prince, and the honour which all men of honesty ought to be cherished withall, determined not onely to accuse *Amadis*, but likewise all those whom hee esteemed as his friends, and did conuerse withall, hoping to build his treason in such sort, that by the ruine of so many good knights, he would worke his owne & his friends profit. Wherefore finding the King on a time at leasure, hee vsed speeches of like substance vnto him. It may please your Maiesty, I haue all my life long desired to bee faithfull vnto you, as to my King and naturall Lord, euen as my duty binderh mee, and will yet continue, if it please God, for besides the oath of fidelity which I haue sweorne vnto you, you haue of your gracious fauour deputed so many benefices vpon me; that if I should not counsell you, in that which doth concern your royall Maiesty, I should commit a great fault both towards God and men. In consideration whereof if it like your Maiesty, after I had long weighed with my selfe that which I will declare vnto you, I haue often repented that I deferred the matter so long, not for any malice I beare vnto any man (as God is my witness) but onely for the damage which I see ready to ensue, if your Maiesty do not speedily and wisely seeke remedy to prevent it. Your Maiesty knoweth that of long time there hath bene great controuersie betweene the kingdomes of *Gaule* and great *Brittaine*, because that the Kings your predecessors, haue alwaies pretended title of

soveraigntie thereunto. And albeit that for some time this quarrell hath linc dead, notwithstanding it is likely that those of that Countrey (calling to minde the warres and damages they have endured by your subiects) haue secretly determined to take reuenge thereof. And in my opinion, *Amadis* who is chiefe and principall amongst them all, is not come into this Countrey, but to practise and gaine your people: who (ioyned with the forces which he may easily land heere) will so trouble you, that it will be hard for you to resist them. And I beseech you to consider whither the likelyhood thereof bee not already very apparent. Moreouer your Maiestie may be pleased to consider that he of whom I speake, and those of his aliance likewise, haue done mee so much honour and pleasure, that both I and my children are greatly bounden vnto them, and were it not that you are my soueraigne Lord, I would in no wise pleake against *Amadis*, but in those things which concerne your person, let mee rather receiue death, then that I spare any man liuing were he mine own sonne. You haue receiued *Amadis* with so great number of his parents and other strangers into your Court (like a good and liberall Prince as you are) that in the end, their traine will become greater then your owne, wherefore if it like your Maiestie, it were good to foresee this matter before the fire bee kindled any further. When the King heard *Gandandel* speake in this sort, he became very pensieue, and afterwards answered him: In faith louing friend, I beleeue that you aduertise mee as a good and faithfull subiect, neuertheless seeing the seruices that they of whom

you speake haue done vnto me, I cannot be perswaded in my mind, that they would procure or imagine any treason against me. May it please your Maiestie, answered he, that is it which deceiueth you, for if they had heretofore offended you, you would haue bene ware of them as of your enemies, but they can wisely cloake their pretended treason, colouring it with an humble speech, accompanied with some small seruices, wherein they haue employed themselves, watching a time of more fit opportunity. The King turned his head on the one side without answering any farther, because there came some Gentlemen vnto him, neuertheless *Gandandel* being as yet ignorant how the King had taken his aduertisement, he practised with *Brocadan*, and drew him vnto his league, declaring vnto him the whole discourse which he had with the King, assuring him that if they might banish *Amadis* and his allies, that from thenceforth they two alone should gouernethe King and his Realme peaceably. *Brocadan* receiuing this counsell for good, did afterwards imprint in the King his minde so great ielosie, and suspicion against *Amadis* and his felowes, as from that day hee hated them in so strange a sort, that hee could not in a manner abide to see them, forgetting the great seruices performed by them, as well when he and *Oriana* were deliuered from the hands of *Arcalaus*, as afterwards in the battaile against King *Cildadan*, and in many other places heretofore recited. Truly if this King had well remembered the counsell and aduise which hee had receiued of *Vrganda*, hee had not so farre digressed from the bounds of reason, although that

the like malady doth often haunt al Princes, when they take not heed of falling into the like accidents and danger as King *Lisuart* did. Who giuing credit to the deceitfull words of these traitors, did neuer afterwards visit (as hee was accustomed) *Amadis* and the others that were wounded, whereat they were not a little abashed, but to doe them the more dispite he sent for *Madasima* and other pledges, vnto whom he sayde, that if within eight dayes the Isle of *Mongaza* were not yeelded vnto him according to their promise, that then hee would suddainly cause their heads to be smitten off. When *Madasima* heard this rigorous constraint, neuer was woman more afraid, considering, that in performing the will of the King, shee should remaine poore and vtterly dishereted, and on the other side, denying to satisfie his behest, shee did see her death prepared, so that she was in such perplexitie, as not being able to answere him, she had recourse vnto her teares. Wherefore *Andangell* the old Gyant answered the King, saying: If it please your Maiestie, I will go with those whom you shall appoint to send, vnto the mother of *Madasima*, and I will deale with her in that sort, as shee shall accomplish your will, yeelding the Countrey and places which you demand, otherwise your Maiestie may doe your pleasure with vs. This the King liked well of, and euen that day he sent him with the Earle *Latin*, and caused *Madasima* and her women to be carried back to their accustomed prison, whether they were brought by diuers Gentlemen. Whom she moued greatly to pitticher estate, by the complaints and sorrowfull lamentation that

she made vnto them, praying euery one of them particularly to labour in her behalfe vnto the King, so that there was not one amongst them all, who promised not to doe for her as much as possibly they could, especially *Don Galuanes*, who at that time held her by the arme, beholding her with such an eye, as hee became of her enamoured, and said vnto her: Madame, I am sure that if it would please you to accept mee for your husband, the King would freely bestow vpon vs all the right that he pretendeth in your Countrey. I beleeue also that you are not ignorant of my nobility, being brother to the King of *Scotland*, and that by me your authoritie shall not be deminished. For the rest, assure your selfe that I will vse you as you are worthy. Now *Madasima* had known him of long time, & she was assured that he was one of the best Knights in the world. Wherefore accepting the offers of *Galuanes*, shee fell downe at his feete, most humbly thanking him for the good and honour which he did offer vnto her, and euen then was the marriage betweene them agreed vpon, the which afterward *Galuanes* laboured to effect to his vttermost power. And the better to accomplish it, some few dayes after he came vnto *Amadis* and *Agrais*, making them acquainted with that which you haue heard, and *Agrais* said vnto him: Vnkle, I know very well that loue hath no respect of persons, sparing neither young nor olde, and seeing that you are become one of his subiects, we will beseech the King so much in your behalfe, that you shall enioy your desired loue, therefore determine to behaue your selfe like a lusty champion for

*Madasima*

*Madafima* is a woman, not likely to bee pleased with a kisse onely. By my faith (answered *Amadis*) my Lord *Galuanes*, the King in my opinion, will not refuse vs, and I promise you that so soone as I am able to walke, your Nephew and I will goe vnto his Maiesty to entreat that which you demand. But you must vnderstand that whilest these things were in doing, *Gandandel* the better to couer & dissemble the treason which he had conspired, did goe oftentimes to see and visit *Amadis*, so that one time amongst the rest hee sayd to him: my Lord, it is long since you saw the King. What is the cause thereof answered *Amadis*? Because saide *Gandandel*, by his countenance it seemeth hee beareth you no great good will. I know not answered *Amadis*, yet to my knowledge I neuer offended him. For this time they passed no farther, vntill at another instant this traytour came againe to see him, shewing vnto him a better countenance then he was accustomed, saying: my Lord, I told you the other day, that I thought by the speeches which I heard the King speake of you, that his friendship was not so firme vnto you as it was wont to be, and because that I and mine are so greatly bound vnto you, for the pleasures which you haue done vnto vs, I will truly let you vnderstand how the King hath a very bad opinion of you, and therefore looke vnto it. So many times did hee repeat this and the like matter vnto *Amadis*, that hee began to suspect least hee had layd some snare to entrap him in, whereby the King might conceiue some euill opinion of him. And therefore one day when *Gandandel* perseuered in his aduertise-

ments, *Amadis* being very angry, answered him: My Lord *Gandandel*, I doe greatly wonder what moueth you to vse this speech so often vnto me, seeing that I did neuer thinke vpon any thing but onely wherein I might doe the King seruice? And I cannot beleue that a Prince so vertuous as hee is, would euer suspect mee for a thing which I neuer committed. Wherefore neuer breake my head more with such follies, for I take no pleasure therein. For this cause *Gandandel* durst neuer after that speake any more thereof vnto him, vntill that *Amadis* being healed, went vnto the Court, but so soone as the King beheld him hee turned his head from him & his fellowes, not vouchsafing so much as once to looke vpon them. Then *Gandandel* who was hard by them seeing the Kings countenance, came to embrace *Amadis*, saying vnto him, that hee was glad of his recovery. But by my faith sayd he, I am very sory that the king vseth you no better, notwithstanding now you may know whether the aduertisements that I gaue you were false or not. *Amadis* answered him not one word, but came vnto *Angrins & Brunco*, who thinking that hee had not marked the countenance which the King shewed vnto them, aduertised him thereof. There is no cause answered *Amadis*, that you should take it in ill part, seeing that very often a man is intencive vnto some thing whereon his minde is set, that hee taketh no heed vnto that which others doe, it may be that the king mused vpon some other matter when we saluted him, therefore let vs returne and speake vnto his Maiesty for that which *Galuanes* entreated vs. Herewithall they approached

anto

vnto him, and *Amadis* sayde vnto the King. Although, if it please your Maiesty, that I haue not heretofore done you that seruice that I desire, yet haue I presumed (trusting in your good bounty) to request one gift of your highnesse, which can not but turne greatly to your honour, moreouer you shall binde those vnto your Maiesty, whom you may please with your gracious grant. At this time was *Gandandel* present, who playing the hypocrite (as he was accustomed) very malapertly took vpon him to speake, and answered *Amadis*. Truly if it bee so as you say, the King ought not to denie your sute. If it like your highnesse, saide *Amadis*, the gift which I and my fellowes here present, do besech your highness to grant vnto vs, is, that it would please you to bestow vpon the Lord *Galuanes* the Isle of *Mongaza*, for the which he shall yeeld you fealty and homage, in marrying with *Madafima*, by the which fauour your grace shall both aduance a poore Prince, and extend your pity vnto one of the fairest Gentlewomen in the world. When *Brocadan* and *Gandandel* heard this demand, they looked vpon the King, making a signe vnto him that hee should not grant it to them. Yet neuerthelesse it was a great while before hee spake, considering the deserts of *Don Galuanes*, and the seruices which hee had receiued of him in many places, especially how that *Amadis* had conquered with the price of his blood, the land which he required for another, neuerthelesse hee gaue no care vnto him, although by vertue hee was bounden to condescend vnto a request so resonable, yet hee thus answered *Amadis*.

That man is ill aduised who re-

questeth a thing that cannot bee granted. I speake this because of you my Lord *Amadis*, who doe entreate mee for that which within these five dayes I haue bestowed, as a gift vpon my youngest daughter *Leonor*. This excuse had the King sayned of set purpose to refuse *Galuanes*, whereupon *Amadis* who was greatly discontented with the slender entertainment that he shewed vnto them, knowing that this was but an excuse, hee could not so much command himselfe as to hold his peace, but that he said vnto the King. Your Maiesty doth very well manifest that the seruices which for you we haue done, haue beene little pleasing vnto you, and lesse profitable for vs. And therefore (if these my companions will bee ruled by me) wee will hence-forth bethinke vs what to doe. Boleue me my Nephew, answered *Galuanes*, you say true, and those seruices are very ill employed, which are done vnto those that haue no desire to acknowledge them, and therefore euery man of courage ought to be ware for whom he adventure himselfe. My Lords, answered *Amadis*, blame not the King for not granting that which hee hath promised vnto another, and let vs onely entreat him that he will be pleased to permit that *Galuanes* may marry with *Madafima*. And if he grant this fauour, I will giue vnto him the Firme-Island. *Madafima* (answered the King) is my prisoner, and if she deliuer not vnto mee the land which she hath promised me, shee shall lose her head before the moneth be past.

By my faith, saide *Amadis*, had your Maiesty answered vs more kindly, you had done vs no wrong at all, if at the least you had a desire



desire in any sort to thinke well of vs. If my entertainment like you not answered the King, the world is large enough to finde out some other, that may vse you better. Truly this word hardly digested, turned afterward into a greater consequence, then the King thought it would, who perceiued shortly after by *Brocadan* and his companion, how hurtfull a thing, hatefull and vncourteous speech is, as the forgetting of good and his honour, is oftentimes the ouerthrow both of a king and realm *Amadis* was so displeased with this farewell, that he said vnto the king. If it like your Maiesty, I haue hitherto thought that there was neither King nor Prince in the world more indued with vertuous and honourable qualities then you, neuertheless we now by prooffe perceiue the contrary. Therefore seeing you haue changed your ancient good custome, by the aduise of some latter bad counsell, wee will goe seeke out another manner of life. Do answered the king, what you will, for you know my minde. Saying so, hee rose vp in a great rage, and went vnto the Queene, vnto whom he imparted the whole discourse that he had with *Amadis* and his companions, and how hee was dispatched of them, wherewith hee was very glad. I am in great doubt said the Queene, least this your pleasure doe not hereafter turne you to displeasure, for you are not ignorant, from the first day that *Amadis* and his confederats entred into your seruice, how your affaires haue alwaies prospered better and better, so as if you consider that which they haue done for you, you shall finde that they haue deserued no such answere as you haue made vnto

them. Besides when it shall bee manifest vnto others what they both haue done and can doe, and the little account you doe make of them for their deserts, they may hereafter hope for no better at your handes, and therefore will they desist to employ themselves for you, repuring them fooles, that shall do but the least seruice for so vngratefull a man. Tell mee no more of it said the king, for it is done, but if they make their complaint vnto you, tel them that long since I haue giuen that land which they required of me to our daughter *Leonor*, as I did tell them. I will doe it answered the Queene, seeing it is your pleasure, and God grant that all may turne to the best.

But you must vnderstand, that after *Amadis* and those in his company had seene in what sort the King had left them, they went forth of the Palace, and as they went to their lodging they concluded to say nothing thereof vnto their friends vntill the next morning, against which time they would pray them all to meete together, and that then they would take counsell what was best to be done. And at the same instant *Amadis* sent *Durin* to tell the Princesse *Mabila* that he would (if it were possible) the night following speake with *Oriana* about some matter of importance newly fallen out. In this sort the day passed, and the night approched, being already apparrelled in his sable weede: wherfore at such time as euery one was in their soundest sleepe, *Amadis* called *Gandalin*, and came vnto that place by the which hee commonly entred into the chamber of *Oriana*, who stayed for him according to the message which

shee had receiued by *Durin*, where being arriued, without acquainting her at the first with any thing that might displease her, after they had a little while discoursed pleasantly together, *Mabila* & the Damofell of *Denmarke* (who were desirous to sleepe, or it may be not being able to endure that heat wherewith loue did pricke them, seeing the kissings & embracings wherewith these two louers entertained one another) sayd vnto them, the bed is bigge enough for you two, and the darknesse fit for your desires, it is now late, lie you downe if it please you, and afterwardees talke together as much as you will. Madame said *Amadis* vnto *Oriana*, by my faith their counsell is very good. It is best for vs then to beleeue them answered shee, and therewithall hauing nothing vpon her but a cloake cast about her, she had quickly gotten her in between a paire of sheets, and as shee layd her downe close in her bed, hee lent so neere vnto her ouer the beds side, that after the curtains were drawne (not to encrease his passion, but to redouble his pleasure) a wax taper being onely lighted vp in the chamber, they began to kisse and embrace each other so incessantly, that remaining in this great ease, their spirits entertained a double delight, by the sweet solace which their metamorphosed soules did mutually receiue from the outward parts of their lippes, being brought at the same instant into such an extasie, that they were thereby vnable to speake one worde, vntill the Damofell of *Denmarke* (thinking that *Amadis* had bene asleepe) pulled him by the garment, saying, My Lord you may lightly take colde, get you into the bed if it please you.

With this waking as it were forth of a sound sleepe, hee fetched a deepe sigh. Alas deare loue sayd the Princesse, should you not be as well at your ease if you were laid downe in the bed by mee, as to take so much paine and hurt your selfe. Madame (answered he) seeing it pleaseth you so to command me, I will not make it daintie to straine a little curtesie with you.

No sooner had hee sayde these wordes, but that hee threwe himselfe starke naked betweene the Princesse her armes, then begunne they againe their amorous sports, performing with contentment that thing which euery one in the like delight doth most desire: afterwardees they began to conferte of diuers matters, vntill that *Oriana* demaded of him wherfore he had sent her word by *Durin* that he had somewhat of great importance to tell her. Madam answered he, I will declare it vnto you, seeing that your desire to know it, although I am sure it will be both strange & grieuous vnto you, neuertheless I must of necessity aduertise you thereof, because it is of so great consequence. You must vnderstand therefore Madame, that the King your father yesterday did speake vnto *Agriates*, *Galuanes*, & me in such discourteous sort, that thereby we wel perceiued little good hee wisheth vs, afterwards he recited vnto her word by word, of all that had happened, & how in the end the king rising vp in a great rage, told them that the worlde was large enough for them to goe seeke some other place where they might bee better requited then of him. And for this cause Madame sayde *Amadis*, wee must of force doe what hee hath commaunded, otherwise

wee should greatly preiudice our honours, remaining against his will in his seruice, seeing that he might presume that wee had no other place to goe vnto, where we might be entertained, therefore I beseech you not to be offended, if in obeying him I am constrained to leaue you for a season. You know what power you haue ouer mee, and that I am as much yours as you can with, moreouer I know very well that if I should gaine any bad reputation, you are she that would bee most offended therewith, so much am I sure that you doe loue and esteeme mee, which maketh mee againe to entreate you to allow of my departure, and to giue mee leaue, vsing your accustomed constancy and vertue. Alas, answered shee, my deere loue, what doe you tell me? Madame, if it please God the King heereafter will acknowledge the wrong that he hath done vnto vs, and I shall bee as well welcome vnto him as euer I haue bin. Gentle friend, answered the Princess, you do much amisse to complaine of my father, for if he hath receiued any good from you, it was for my loue, & by the commandement that I gaue vnto you, and not for his sake, for I alone did bring you hither, and was the cause that you remained with him. And therefore it is not hee that must recompence you, but I, vnto whom you belong. It is very true that hee hath alwaies thought otherwise, for which hee is the more to bee blamed for answering you so vndiscreetly. And although that your departure is the most grievous thing that could happen to me (being a matter of constraint) I am content to fortifie my selfe, and to prefer reason before the delights and pleasures which I receiue by

your presence. Therefore will I frame my will to your liking, because I am sure that in what place soeuer you shall bee, your heart (which is mine) shall remaine with mee, as pledge of the power which you haue giuen me ouer your selfe, and yet moreouer, my father in losing you shall know by those few that he shall haue left, what he hath lost by you. Madame, said *Amadis*, the fauour which you shew vnto me is so great, that I esteeme it no lesse then the redemption of mine owne life. For you know that a very vertuous man ought to haue his honour in such estimation, that hee ought to preferre it before his owne life. In like sort Madame, seeing that to conserue it I must of force depart from you, doe thus much if it please you for mee, as (during my absence) to let me heare very often from you: And to hold mee alwaies in your good fauour, as he who was neuer borne but onely to obay and serue you. And truly whosoever had seene the Princess then, when *Amadis* took this sorrowfull farwell, he might easily haue bin witness of the passion which she indured. Neuerthelesse *Amadis* seeing the day constrained him to depart (in kissing her sweetly) hee rose vp, leauing her so full of sorrow & heauines, that although shee dissembled as well as shee could, this her extreame griefe, yet had shee not so much power ouer her selfe, but that shee awaked *Mabila* and the Damosell of *Denmarke* with her loud sighes, who thinking her to bee taken with some new disease came hastily vnto her, and found that *Amadis* was already apparelled. Then they demanded of him, what moued *Oriana* in such extreame sort to complaine. *Amadis* tolde them the whole discourse in what

what sort hee was constrained to forsake the court, and the seruice of the king, wherefore my louing friends said he, I pray you to go & comfort my Lady. Which said, he tooke his leaue of them, and departed, leauing al the three Ladies accompanied onely with sorrow, and extreame passion. Now you must know that so soon as *Agrais* and *Galuanes* were come vnto *Amadis* his lodging, they sent vnto all their friends particularly, to intreate them to meet there the next morning, the which they accordingly performed, then they went altogether to the Church to heare seruice, at their returne from whence, they all walking in a great field, *Amadis* began to speake vnto them in this manner: My Lords because that some one may wrongfully blame my Lord *Galuanes*, *Agrais*, me, & some others here present, for leauing the king his seruice (as wee are determined to do) they and I haue thought good to let you vnderstand what is the occasion thereof. I beleue that there is not any in this company that knoweth not whether since our arriual in great *Brittaine* the authority of a Prince bee increased or diminished. Wherefore without spending the time in rehearsing the seruices which wee haue done vnto him, for the which we had great hope to haue receiued (besides his good will) a great reward, I will declare vnto you particularly, with what ingratitude he vsed vs yester day, & euē as, fortune which is mutable & inconstant, doth often times ouerthrow all things, so hath hee changed his conditions, eyther by some bad counsaile which he hath receiued, or for some sleight occasion whereof we are ignorant. But this much

I am sure, that my Lord *Galuanes* did desire vs to bee a meanes for him vnto his Maiesty not past eight or ten daies since, that hee would bee pleased to permit him to marry with *Madasima*, and in so doing, to suffer him likewise to inioy her lands, vpon this condition that he should hold them of him, and of his Crowne, by fealty and homage, the which wee promised to performe. By meanes wherof, so soone as I was able to goe, I and others in this company did make this request vnto him, but he without any regard eyther vnto vs that were tutors, or vnto him for whom we sued, who is (as euery one knoweth) brother vnto the King of *Scotland*, as valiant and hardy a knight as possible may be, & such a one as in the late battell against king *Cildadan* hath not spared his life, but hath done as much as any other that was there, he hath not only refused our requests, but also giuen vs such iniurious words, as were far vnfit and vnworthy such a king. And notwithstanding at the beginning wee made small account thereof, vntill hee said vnto vs all (as we shewed vnto him some reasons for our request) that we should goe seeke elsewhere for such a one as would acknowledge, and better esteeme of vs then he did, and that the world was wide enough, without importuning him any further. Therefore my fellows and friends since that being in his seruice, wee haue beene euer dutifull vnto him, so for my part I am yet very well content in this case not to displease him and to get mee forth of his countrie.

But because it seemeth vnto mee that this his licence to depart doth not onely touch mee, and those vnto whom hee spake,  
P 2 but

but all others who are none of his subiects, I thought it good to acquaint you therewith, to the end, that you might bethinke what to doe. Much were these Knights amazed at the words of *Amadis*, considering that if the great seruises of him and his brethren were so badly requited, that very hardly would that little which they had done be recompensed. Wherefore they determined to forsake the King, and to go seeke their fortune else-where, especially *Angriotta de Estramaux*, who to draw the rest vnto his opinion and to follow *Amadis*, hee began to say with a loude voyce. My Lords, it is yet no long time since I knew the King, and for that little acquaintance that I haue had with him, I did neuer see a Prince more wise, vertuous and temperate, then he hath bin in his affaires, wherefore I doubt mee greatly, that this which hee hath done vnto *Amadis*, and to these Lords present, proceedeth not of his own fancy: but he hath bin incited thereunto by some wicked malicious person, who hath perswaded him to vse this in that sort. And because that for these eightene daies, I haue seen *Gandandell & Brocadan* very often consulting with him, and that so he hath been more priuat with them then any other, I feare me that they are the men that haue bin the chiefe workers of this mischief, for I haue known the of long time for the most malicious persons in all the world. Therefore I am determined even this day to demand the combat against them, and to maintain that fasly and wickedly they haue set discord betweene the king and *Amadis*, and if they will make excuse because of their age, they haue each of them a sonne which of long time haue

borne Armes, against whom I alone will fight, if they dare bee so bolde to maintaine the reason of their wicked parents. Ah my Lord *Angriotta*, answered *Amadis*, I should bee very sorry that you should hazard your body in a matter so vncertaine. By my faith, answered *Angriotta*, I am very sure thereof, and I haue perceiued it of long time, so that if the king would bee pleased to tell but what hee knoweth, hee would affirme them to be such as I say. I pray you Gentle friend, said *Amadis*, deferre it yet for this time, to the end, that the king may haue no cause to bee discontented, for if those whom you speake of (who haue alwaies shewed to mee a friendly countenance) haue beene so malicious as to play false play behinde my backe, assure you that at length their wickednes shall bee discovered, and their desert recompensed, then shall you haue reason to accuse them. Well, answered *Angriotta*, although this is against my will, yet I am content to deferre it, but beleene mee that heereafter I shall both complaine, and bee reuenged of them well enough.

For the rest, my good friends, saide *Amadis*, if it pleased the King and Queene so vouchsafe to see mee, I am determined to go forthwith and take my leaue of them, and so to retire vnto the Firme-Island, in hope that those which will follow mee, shall wholly bee pertakers with mee, in all the good and pleasure which there I shall haue. And as you doe know the Countrey is pleasant and wealthy, full of faire women, store of forrests, and many rivers fit for hauking, furthermore, diuers as well of our acquaintance as of strangers, will come and

visite vs: besides, in our neede if we shall want any aide, and that king *Lisuart* will attempt any enterprise against vs we shall bee supported by my father, from the Countrey of little *Brittaine* and from *Scotland*, especially from the Realm of *Sobradisa*, the which the Queene *Briolania* will wholly yeelde into our hands, at all times when wee shall please. Seeing that you are in these tearmes answered *Quedragant*, now may you know those which do loue your company, from those which doe not. By my faith said *Amadis*, I am of the opinion if any loue his owne particular profit, that hee should not forsake so

good a Master, yet those which will follow mee shall neither fare better nor worse then mine owne selfe. And as they thus consulted in the meddow the king happened to come by them, accompanied with *Gandandell* and many other knights, and seeing them together he did passe on, making as though he saw them not.

Then caused he a cast of Iackes or Hobbies to be let flie at a Larke, and after hee had a while solaced himselfe with this pastime, hee returned backe vnto the Citty, without speaking cyther to *Amadis* or any other in his company.

## CHAP. XXI.

How *Amadis* with many others his confederats forsooke the seruice of King *Lisuart*, and went as well to proue the aduentures of the Arch of Ioyall Louers, as also of the forbidden chamber.



When *Amadis* did see that the king perseuered still in the euill opinion which he had conceiued against him and his, according to his former determination at his coming forth of the meddow, he went vnto the court and he found the king ready to sit downe to dinner. Then approaching vnto him he said, may it please your Maiesty if in any thing I haue offended your grace, God and your selfe can witnesse, assuring you, that although the seruices which I haue done vnto you haue beene very small, yet the will which I haue had to acknowledge the benefits and honour which hath pleased you to bestow vpon mee hath beene exceeding great. You tell me that I should seeke abroad for one that would better requite me then you, giuing me ther-

by to vnderstand the small desire you haue, that I should obey you, not that I will depart from you as my liege Lord and Soueraign, for I was neuer subiect to you, nor any other Prince (God only excepted) but I take leaue of you as of him who hath done me great good and honour, and vnto whom I doe beare affectionate loue and desire of seruice. Scant had hee spoke this word when suddenly these in like sort did take their leaues *viz.* *Galmanes*, *Agrais*, *Dragonis*, *Palamir*, *Brunco de Bon'Aer*, *Branfill* his brother, *Angriotta d'Estramaux*, *Grindonan* his brother, *Pinnores* his Cousin, and *Don Quedragant* who stepped before all the rest, saying vnto the King.

Your Maiesty knoweth that I neuer had come nor remayned in your Court but at the instance and request of *Amadis*,

willing and desirous to bee his friend for euer, and seeing that by his occasion I became yours, by the like reason will I now leaue your seruice, and hereafter forsake you, for what hope may I haue that my small seruices shall bee regarded, when his being so many and great, are so badly requited, without remembrance how greatly you are indebted vnto him, in deliuering you from the handes of *Mandasabull*, and for the victory also which you haue obtained of king *Cildadan*, with the price of his blood and other of his kindred. I could well remember you of the good turne which he did vnto you when hee deliuered you and your daughter *Oriana* (as I haue many times heard it said) from the hands of *Arcalaus*, and now of late my Lady *Leonor*, whom *Famangomad* and *Basigant* his sonne the cruellest giants in the world had taken prisoner, with intent to put her to death, for which cause the ingratitude which now you shew vnto him is so great, that it quite deprieth you from all knowledge of the truth. And therefore he ought to make no lesse account of this his short farewell then of the slow reward hee hath receiued for the seruices past. As for me, I am determined to follow him and to forsake your court together with him. Whereunto the king replied, *Don Quedragant* your tongue doth well declare the little loue you beare vnto me, yet notwithstanding mee thinks you are not so tied nor aliéd vnto *Amadis*, as in accusing me you should excuse him as you do: but your thought is otherwise, you say more then you thinke. Your Maiesty may speake what you please, said *Quedragant*, like a mighty Lord as you are, neuerthe-

lesse you much mistake mee in thinking me to be a dissembler or a counterfeiter of leasings, as a number of others about you are, by whom I am sure that in the end you shall finde your selfe but badly serued. Moreouer before many dayes be past, you shall perceiue who are the friends of *Amadis*. Which said, hee retired, and *Landin* stepped forth, saying to the king, may it please your Maiesty, I haue not found one in all your court, that was able to giue any ayde or comfort to my wrongs, but onely my Lord *Amadis*, whom I now do see ready to depart from your seruice, for the wrong that you haue done vnto him, for which cause not desiring to forsake him, nor my Vncle *Don Quedragant* also, I do take my leaue of you. Truly *Landin* answered the king, so far as I perceiue wee are assured that henceforth you haue no desire to remaine with vs. Beleeue mee if it like your Maiesty said he, looke what they are so will I bee, for during my life will I obey them. At that instant there stood in a corner of the hall (whispering together) *Don Brian* of *Moniasa*, a most renowned knight, sonne to King *Ladasan*, and to one of the sisters to king *Perion* of *Gaule*, *Yrlandin*, son to the Earle of *Orlanda*, *Grandores*, and *Madansil* of *Pont d'argent*, *Listoran* of the white Tower, *Ledes* of *Fryarque*, *Tantilies* the haughty, and *Don Grauat* de *Val Crapissif*. All these came vnto the king and said. Your Maiesty may be pleased to vnderstand that the occasion of our comming hither was to see *Amadis* and his brethren, and to be their friends, if it were possible. And euen as they were cause of the seruice that you haue receiued of vs, they also shall bee the

meanes

meanes that we will forsake you, and we do take leaue of your grace to keepe them company. When the king perceiued that hee was so suddenly forsaken of such a great number of good knights, hee was highly displeased, for very spight he would not permit *Amadis* to goe take his leaue of the Queene, who (as much as in her lay) did wholly oppose her selfe against the counsell of *Gandandell* and his companion. And therefore *Amadis* intreated the auncient knight *Don Grumedan* to make his excuse vnto her Maiesty. Afterwards taking his leaue of the king with great reuerence, he retired vnto his lodging with his friends and companions, where they found their dinner ready, and as soone as the Table was taken vp, every one went to arme him, and they trouped altogether in a place where *Oriana* might behold them, and their number was so great, as they were thought to be sixe hundred knights and more, the most part of them being Sons vnto kings, dukes or earles. Afterwards in very good order they all passed along hard by the Queenes lodging. Then *Mabila* being in one of the windows called *Oriana* who was laid vpon her bed as melancholy as might be, saying vnto her, Madame, I pray you forget your heauinesse, and come see how many knights you haue at your commandement. All the while my cosin was in the seruice of the king your father, he was accounted but as a simple wandering knight, but no sooner is he departed from him when hee sheweth that hee is a Prince and mighty Lord, as you may now behold, and if you haue power ouer him, by greater reason haue you power ouer all his troupe, of whom hee is the chiefe

and principall Leader. *Oriana* was so greatly comforted with this sight, that euer after she was more merry and at better hearts ease. In this sort did *Amadis* and his followers passe through the Citty, and there accompanied them king *Arban* of *North Wales*, *Grumedan*, a knight of honour belonging to the Queene, *Brandornas*, *Quenorant* *Giontes* Nephew to the King, and *Listoran* the good iouster. All these were very sorry for the departure of so many good knights, especially for *Amadis*, who prayed them that in any matter wherein his honour might bee blemished, they would shew themselves to be such friends for him, as hee esteemed them. And although the king (without any occasion) had conceiued a hate against him, yet they should not cease for all that to be his friends, without forsaking the seruice of so good a prince, and they answered him that excepting their seruice and loyalty in the which they were by duty bounde vnto the king, they would bee ready to pleasure him at all times and places, when and where he would employ them, for the which hee heartilie thanked them. Afterwards hee saide vnto them, If you finde the king fit to be spoken vnto, you may aduertise him that which *Pyganda* declared to mee in his presence is now accomplished, for shee told mee that the recompence which I should haue in gayning Dominions for another, should be hate, anger, and banishment from that place where most I desired to remaine. I haue conquered as euery one knoweth with the edge of my sword, and the losse of my blood, the life of *Mongana*, thereby enlarging the limits of the realme of great *Britaine*, and poe-

withstanding al this, the king without cause at all, hath requited mee with hate, but God is iust, and will recompence euery one according to his deserts.

By my faith, answered *Grumedan*, I will not faile to let the King know as much as you haue sayde. And cursed be *Vrganda* for prophesing so right, which saide, they embraced one another and tooke their leaue, but *Guillan* the pensif whose eyes were full of teares, said vnto *Amadis*. My Lord, you know my occasion, and how I cannot of my selfe doe any thing, being subiect so the will of another, for whose sake I suffer and endure strange griefes and anguishes, which is the cause that I cannot follow you, for which I am very sorry and ashamed, so great a desire haue I to acknowledge the fauour and honour that I haue receiued of you, being in your company, beseeching you most humbly at this time to holde me excused. Now did *Amadis* vnderstand in what subiection loue did holde him, and hee knew very well by himselfe what paine hee might suffer, by meanes whereof he answered him: My Lord *Guillan*, God forbid that by my occasion you should commit any offence vnto the Lady whom you loue so constantly, but I rather counsell you to be obedient vnto her, and to serue her as hitherto you haue done, and the King likewise being sure that your honour saued, you will be vnto me in all places a faithfull friend and louing companion. Heerewithall he embraced him, & taking his leaue, *Guillan* and his fellows returned vnto the Cittie, and *Amadis* and his followed on their way to the Firme-Island, vntill at the last they arriued along by a river, vpon the side whereof *Amadis*

had sent before to cause his Tents and Pawillions to be armed and set vp. There they lodged for that night, praising God in that they had so happily been warned of the Kings ingratitude, with whom if they had remained any longer, space, they had but lost their time. But *Amadis* was so heauie for his banishment from *Oriana* (ignorant when he should see her again) that he knew not in what sort to dissemble his malancholic, and thus they passed away the night vntill the next morning, that they had rode forward on their way. In the meane time King *Lisuart* was in his Pallace, who after the departure of so great a number of Knights, perceived that he now was but meanly accompanied. Then he began to acknowledge the fault which he had committed, and to repent him greatly for the words which he said vnto *Amadis*. At the very selfe same time, *Gaudandel* and *Brucelas* were aduertised what *Angriotta* had said of them, whereat they were maruailously abashed, fearing least the King and the rest should dislike of the bad counsell, which they had giued vnto him, neuertheless, since there was no remedy: they determined to passe it over, and to worke such meanes that neuer any of those Knights who were departed should enter into the King his fauour againe. And the better to bring it to passe, they both came vnto him, saying. Your Maiestie ought greatly to praise God, that you are so honestly rid of those men who might haue wrought you much mischief, for your highnesse knoweth there is nothing more dangerous then a secret enemy.

Wherefore you haue now no other thing to trouble you, neither

need you take any care for your affaires, because that wee two will take order, and warily prouide for any perill that may happen to this Realme. When the king heard them speake so audaciously, hee looked vpon them with a fowre countenance, and answered them: I do much meruaile how you dare bee so presumptuous to perswade me that I should leaue vnto you the gouernment, not onely of my house, but also of my whole realm, knowing that you are nothing fit, nor sufficient for such a charge. Doe you imagine that the Princes and Lords of this monarchie will obey you, knowing the place from whence you are descended? And if you thinke to play the good husbands, desiring to enrich mee by sparing of my treasure, vpon whom doe you thinke that I may better imploy it, then vpon such Gentlemen and knights as are in my seruice? Seeing that the Prince cannot be named a king, but only because hee hath many at his commandement. And if in times past I haue shewed my selfe liberall vnto those whom at your instance I haue driuen away, euen by them was I maintained, feared, and redoubted, and therefore content you with that you haue done, without any farther dissembling & forging of matters, otherwise you shal know that you nothing please me therewith.

Saying so he left them, much abashed at these wordes, and hee mounted on horsebacke to goe chase a hart which his hunters told him was inclosed within his toiles. As these things were in doing, there arriued at the Court a Damosell that was sent from Queene *Briolancia* vnto *Oriana*, who after shee had done her duty, said vnto

her, Madame the Queene my Mistresse hath her commended to your good Grace. And shee hath expresse sent me vnto you, to declare vnto you at large how shee hath bene in the Firme-Island, and what happened vnto her in pursuing the adventures which there she found.

God keepe so good a Queene from mischief, answered *Oriana*, and you also that haue taken so much paine. Then all the Ladies and Gentiewomen desirous to heare newes, came round about her, and the Damosell began to rehearse that which she had seene, saying. Madam, at the departing from this Court, the Queene my Mistresse and her companie, arriued the fift day following in the Firme-Island, where so loone as she was come, she was demanded if it pleased her to procure the forbidden Chamber of the Arch of loyall Louers, but shee answered that shee would first see the other maruailles of the place. And for that cause *Isania* caused her to be conducted to a most faire house, situated halfe a league or thereabout, from the principall Palace of *Apelidon*, in the which after she had a little while walked, beholding the excellent building thereof, shee came vnto one of the corners of a Parke which was very darke and deepe, that none durst approach vnto the same, so fearefull a thing was it. Afterward my Lady was brought into a most fair Tower, well furnished with windowes, from whence shee might see all the waies round about her, and there we were so well serued and entertained as might bee. And as the second seruice was brought in, wee did see come forth of that deepe ditch, a great serpent, which

did



did cast fire and smoake as well from her eyes and eares, as from her throte, who came and entred into this Tower, shewing a countenance so furious, that the stoutest in the company trembled with great feare, after him there suddenly followed two Lions, who in like sort came forth of this ditch, they came leaping in and assailed the Serpent, herewithall there began a battaile betweene them, the cruelest that may possibly be scene betweene brute beasts, and it lasted halfe an houre and more, and so long continued it, that the two Lions became so wearie as they fell downe in the place as if they had been dead, & the Serpent likewise so out of breath, that hee remayned a great while lying vpon the ground. In the end hauing rested a little, hee rose vp and swallowed one of the Lions down his throat, and carried him into the ditch, and presently after he returned, & did the like vnto the second, and were no more scene all the day after. Those of the Isle (accustomed to such wonders) beholding our feare laughed at vs, assuring vs that all the day long wee should see no other nouelty. Whereupon we began to laugh at our folly, reproching one another, for the affright that had happened vnto vs, & thus we passed all the afternoone vntill it was bed time, that my Lady and wee her women were brought into a chamber richly hanged, in the which wee were all layed. But about midnight, wee did heare our chamber doore open with so great noyse, that wee awaked with great feare thereof, and therewithall we saw entring in a Hart, one side of whom was as white as snow, and the other side more blacke then a rauen: hauing vpon his head thir-

tie hornes, vpon euery one of which there was a burning candle, which gaue so great a light, that one might haue scene as plaine within the chamber, as if it had beene broad day. The Hart entred in running with great force, for hee was pursued by a cry of swift hounds, that laboured to ouerrake him, and incourage them thereunto, there was heard an Iuory home sounding after the beast, who in the ende was so hardly pursued, that after hee had long turned about the chamber, hee leaped vpon our beds euen thorough the midst of vs. The feare whereof made vs to cry, and suddenly to rise vp, all naked as wee were, some of vs ran vnder the beds, others vnder the benches, but the more we thought to saue our selues, the more were we pursued by the Hart and hounds that followed him, till at the last hee ran towards the windowes, afterwarde being a little better assured, we took vp our apparel which was fallen downe vpon the ground, and wee began to chat of the feare which we had. And as wee were in these tearmes, there came a Damofell, accompanied with two other women, who asked vs what moued vs to rise so early. By my faith sayde my Lady, we haue had such an alarme, that my heart yet trembleth with feare. This Damofell smyled and sayde vnto her, that shee and wee might sleep in safety, for we should haue no more stirre all the night after. Whereupon wee layd vs downe in our bed, and there wee remained vntill it was indifferent late the next morning, when my Lady caused vs to rise vp, and after wee had heard seruice, as shee walked in a great meddow watered with many pleasant brookes going through

through a pleasant and delectable wood where we found at the end thereof many pleasant orchards, and a house very round, set vpon twelue pillars of Marble, so artificially wrought, that in stead of stone and mortar, the walls thereof were of fine Christall, through the which they that were within, might easily see those without, and there was neuer a doore thereof which was not of Gold or Siluer. And (that which was most admirable) there was about it many Images of copper, made in the likeness of Giants, each of them holding in their hands a bended bow, and an arrow therein, the head whereof was of such a burning brightness, that it seemed fire came out thereof. And it was told vs that no sooner was any so hardy to enter therein, but presently he should bee slaine by the arrows which by them are shot, whereupon my Lady was desirous to make prooffe thereof, by a Horse and two Apes, who being put into the Chamber were presently consumed by the fire, proceeding from these Arrows that compassed them about. And there was grauen vpon the portall these words. Let no man nor woman be so hardy as to set foote within this Palace, except it be he or shee that loueth as constantly as *Grimanesa* and *Apolidon*, that made this enchantment. And they must of necessity enter in both together for the first time, otherwise let them be assured to die most cruelly, and this enchantment shall last, and all the rest of this Island, vntill that the knight & Lady (who do surpasse in loyalty those that made the defences of the forbidden Chamber) bee entred in, and there haue taken their pleasure. Hereupon my Lady cau-

fed *Isania* to be called, and tolde him she was glad that she had seen these wonders, but shee would yet see the Arch of loyall Louers, and the chamber so renowned, and in the meane season, she desired him to tell her what was meant by the Hart, Serpent, Dogs and Lions, Madame answered *Isania*, I know no other thing thereof, but that euery day at those houres and places that you did see them, the combats of the beasts are made, and the Hart doth alwaies leape downe from the window, and the Dogs after, who pursue him into a Lake not far from hence, where they are hidden and scene no more vntill the next day and houre that the chase beginneth againe, as you haue scene it this night past. But thus much you shall know, that if you were one whole yeere in this Island, yet should you not haue time enough to see all the wonderfull things which there are. For this cause my Lady and her company mounted on horseback, and we came vnto the Palace of *Apolidon* to see the arch of loyall Louers and the forbidden Chamber. Whereunto my Lady was no sooner come but she alighted, and approached vnto the Image of copper (as she that had neuer falsified her loue) and passing vnder, there was heard the most sweete, and melodious tune in all the world, and the Queene passed through euen vnto the place where the portraictures of *Apolidon* and *Grimanesa* were, which seemed vnto her as though they had been aliue. And from thence shee came vnto the pillar of Iasper, where she saw written these wordes. *Briolania* the daughter to *Tagadan* king of *Sobradisa*, is the third Damofell that did euer enter into this place. But

as my Lady looked rou'd about her in all places she was afraid, seeing that she was alone: therefore without long tarrying there, she returned vnto vs that stayed for her, and for this time shee would make no farther prooffe vntill the 5. day following, that shee did put on the richest, and costliest apparrell that in al her life she had euer worne, & letting her hayre hang downe, which were the fayrest that euer nature framed, shee had vpon her head, no more then a border of Gold garnished with many pretious stones, the which did become her so well, and made her seeme so faire, that as well her owne followers as strangers did plainly say, that without doubt shee would finish the aduentures of the Isle: hereupon recommending her selfe vnto God, she entred vpon the forbidden path, and passing the brasse pillar, she came close vnto the other of Marble, where shee the red the Letters that were grauen thereupon, afterwards she marched on farther, so that euery one did then iudge that shee would enter into the chamber without any difficultie. When *Oriana* heard that *Briolania* had passed so far, she began to blush and change her naturall colour, in such sort that one might easily haue knowne the great alteration of her minde, fearing that *Briolania* had passed no farther, thereby ending the aduenture of the forbidden chamber. But the Damosell proceeding forward in her discourse, said, you must know that so soone as the Queene came within three paces of the chamber, she was taken so rudely by her fair and golden haire, that without all respect of pittie, shee was throwne out with such force beyond the pillar that she remained in a sword

a long time, as many others had done before her: whereupon wee suddainly tooke her vp, and carried her vnto her chamber, where shortly after shee recovered, and shee determined the next morning to depart from thence. The which shee did, taking the way to *Sobradisa*. Neuerthelesse shee had before commanded me to come vnto this Court, to aduertise you of that which I haue declared. Truly Damosell said *Oriana*, the Queene your Mistresse hath done much for me. Madam, said the Damosell, she hath expressely charged me to returne vnto her incontinently, wherefore it may please you to giue me leave to depart. Faire Damosell said *Oriana*, you shall see the Queene, & then to morrow morning you shall depart. Well Madame said she, I am content to obey you. Now about this time *Amadis* and his fellowes arrived at the Firme-Island, where they were most royally entertained and receiued by all those of the country, who were exceeding glad for the recoverie of their new lord, whom they had thought to haue been lost. And after that these knights (who had followed *Amadis*) had well viewed the Isle, and scene the fertility, and the inuincible situation thereof, they iudged that king *Lisuart* nor any other prince could be of power sufficient as once to dare come and assaile them. For besides the force of the country, it was furnished with many citties & towns, and beautified with foure Castles, the most sumptuous and magnificent that were in all the world beside. In one of them might a man beholde the sport of the Hart chased by the Dogs, in the other, the Combat betweene the Lions and the Serpent, then in the third, the tower

tower which made the turning passion, for foure times a day it turned so fast, that those which were therein did thinke that it would sinke: Lastly in the fourth was the pastime of the baited Bull: whocomming forth of an olde ditch, passed ouer the people that stood in his way, and did come running with his hornes against a gate of iron with such force, that hee ouerthrew it, and opened a Tower, from whence there came forth an old Ape, so wrinkled that his skinne hanged downe on all parts of him, the which held a whip, wherewith he nimblely chased the Bull euen vnto the ditch, from whence he came forth. In all these foure Castles did *Amadis* and his fellowes oftentimes take their pastime, for the strange sights that there they sawe. And in this sort did these knights passe the time away, staying vntill fortune did offer them some new occasion to arme themselues, the which shortly after shee did: for *Balais Carfantia* (whom *Amadis* had heretofore deliuered from the prisons of *Arcaleus*) came vnto him, from the Court of Kings *Lisuart*, who after hee had declared vnto them many nouels, hee tolde them how king *Lisuart* was preparing an armie to passe into the Isle of *Monagaza*, for *Grumedaca* had made answer vnto the Earle *Latin* (who was sent with the olde Gyant and his sonnes, to take possession of the countrey) that shee would sooner consent vnto the death of her selfe and all the world, before she would yeeld vp the Burning lake, and the three strong Castles which shee held, and that they should doe with her Daughter *Madasima* and the other Damosells what they would. I pray you saide *Agrais*

rell vs what countenance the King shewed, hearing such an answer. By my faith answered *Balais*, he is determined to put all to fire and sword if hee be resisted, and within a moneth after, to cause the heads of the pledges which hee holdeth to be smitten off. Truly said *Amadis*, hee may doe what he please, but if hee vsed more curtesie, it were perchance better for him.

When *Galuanes* whom (I haue said) *Cupid* had depriued of all liberty, to make him a louer, and seruant vnto this *Madasima*, vnderstood the outrage that was likely to be offered vnto her, his courage increased in such sort, that in great choller hee sayd. My Lords, here is not any of you knoweth not that my Lord *Amadis* and wee are all departed from the Court of king *Lisuart*, especially for the bad vsage that hee hath offered vnto *Madasima*, vnto whom I bear such loue, as a husband should vnto his wife, and therefore I beseech you very earnestly to aid and assist me, for I haue promised to stick to her and to helpe her, though I should die in the quarrell. Then *Florestan* (vnderstanding the aid which *Galuanes* demanded) had not the patience to let any other answer before him, but rose vp saying. My Lord *Galuanes* if it were possible to make a peace for her with the king that were the best course: but I assure you, if wee must make it with our swords, I am alwaies ready to assist you. My Lord answered *Briā of Monissa*, we do al very well know, that you are both valiant & hardy knights, neuerthelesse this enterprife which you determine, toucheth you no more in particular, then it doth all vs in generall, for we are departed frō the Kings

seruice all vpon one occasion: and therefore it is reason that all of vs should succor him that hath most need of helpe. And although wee had no desire to aide *Don Galuanes* heere present, yet are wee bound to fauour Ladies in all that we can, and amongst other *Madasima* and hers, assuring you that through my fault they shall neither haue hurt nor displeasure. By my faith said *Quedragant*, you speak vertuously, and according to good reason, for doing otherwise we should be unworthy of the name of knights, and although I were my selfe alone yet would I seeke aide to execute that which you haue determined: knowing that the poore *Madasima* (forsaken of euery one) hath freely yeelded her selfe into the King his prisons, not by her owne will, but by the dutifull obedience which shee desired to shew vnto her mother: For which cause if the king pretend any right vnto the lands of the Isle of *Mongaza*, I say hee doth wrong. My Lords answered *Amadis*, those things which are debated by sound deliberation, doe assuredly come vnto good end, & you need not doubt that enterprising this which you determine, you shall performe it vnto your honour, yea although it were more dangerous and difficult then it is, neuerthelesse (if it please you) I will declare what I

thinke thereof. You doe all conclude (so farre as I see) to set at liberty the twelue Damosels now prisoners with king *Lisuart*. Therefore I am of the opinion that twelue of you without any more should vndertake this enterprise, so euery one of you shall haue one of them, and the twelue gentlewomen shall bee particularly bound vnto twelue knights, and the rest of this company shall spare themselves, and tarry heere to preuent such inconueniencies as may happen.

Mee thinkes that *Galuanes* vnto whom this matter doth chiefly appertain, deserueth well to be the first man that shall be named, next *Agrais* his nephewe, *Florestan* my brother, *Palomir*, *Dragonis*, *Brian*, *Nicoran*, *Orlandid*, *Garnat*, *Imosil* brother to the Duke of *Bargoine*, *Madansil*, and *Eaderin*. You twelue are such valiant knights as you may answer twelue others whatsoever they bee, and King *Lisuart* cannot deny the combat although it should bee against the chiefest of his Realme, considering the houses from which you are descended. This counsaile was so well allowed of all, that about mid-night following, the twelue knights mounted on horsebacke, taking their way vnto the Citie of *Thasillana*, in the which the King sojourned.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XXII.

*How Oriana remayned in great perplexity, not onely for the departure of Amadis, but also because she felt her selfe great with childe: and of that which happened to the twelue Knights that were departed from the Firme-Island, to deliuer Madasima and her Damosels.*



Little before it hath beene tolde vnto you, how *Amadis* remained eight daies in *Mirefleur* with *Oriana*, contenting their affections and desires to the full: in such sort as two moneths after, or there about, the Princesse doubted that she was with childe, neuerthelesse for the little experince that shee had in such matters, she made no account thereof, vntill after the departure of *Amadis*, whē the liuely colour in her face beganne to fade and decay, and her stomack waxed very bad, and weake, so that this doubt was turned into a certaintie, wherefore shee determined to acquaint *Mabila* and the Damosell of *Denmarke* therewith, as vnto those whom she esteemed the true treasurers of her secrets. For which cause being one day withdrawne into her closet, hauing her eyes full of teares, and her heart oppressed with griefe, shee sayd vnto them: Alas my deare friends and louing counsellors, I do now well perceiue that Fortune wil wholly work my ruine and ouerthrowe: You haue seene what inconuenience hath happened of late vnto the person whom I doe most loue in the world, and now (that which is worst of all) the thing which I haue most feared and doubted, is lighted vpon mee: For certainly I am with child, and I know not what I shall doe, that I be not discouered and

vndone. Much abashed were these two Damosels at this: neuerthelesse (as those which were wise & well aduised) they dissembled that which they thought thereof. And *Mabila* answered *Oriana*: Take no care Madame, God shall provide well enough for you, (if it please him) but by my faith, (said shee in smiling) I alwaies doubted that vnto such a Saint such an offering would be brought. *Oriana* smiled to see with what a prettie grace *Mabila* deliuered this pleasant speech, & answered her: For the honour of God doe you both aduise to giue mee some remedy, and then you shall see if I cannot requite your frumps. As for mee I thinke it best, that wee find the meanes to retyre vnto *Mirefleur*, or elsewhere fro the Court, staying the time, vntill it shall please God to regard me in pitty: for I feele my belly to rise, and I see my face already waxen leane. Madame sayde the Damosell of *Denmarke*, it is an easie matter to preuent an inconuenience, when it is foreseene before it happen: I will tell you answered the Princesse) whereupon I haue be thought mee: It is necessaric that you (Damosell) doe hazard your life for the sauing of my honour. You see that I doe put more trust in you, then in any other person that liueth. Madame sayde shee, you knowe (or at the least you should know mee so well) that I haue neither life nor honour

Q 2 which

which I holde so deare, that I would not adventure to doe you seruice. I beleue it answered *Oriana*, and also you may bee assured that if God doe lend mee life and health, I will acknowledge and requite it to the full: wherefore depart to morrow morning, and get you to *Mirefleur*, finde the meanes to speake with the Abbesse, & tell her that you are with childe, praying her earnestly to keepe your counsaile as secret as shee would doe her owne, and that she would doe you that good as to finde out some woman, to nurse the fruite that God shall send you; the which you shall cause to bee layd within the entry of her Church porch, as a thing found by chance. I am sure that shee loueth you as much as any woman liuing, and shee will willingly doe this good turne for you: By this meanes shall my honour be faued, and yours little or nothing the worse. Repose your selfe vpon me sayde the Damofell, I will play this part well enough, and therefore bee you merry: In the meane season do you purchase leaue for your departure, and follow me. These and such like were the consultations of these three Damofels, whom wee will for the present leaue, to returne vnto king *Lisart*, who after that the Earle *Latin* was returned backe againe, and that he had declared vnto him how *Grumadas* the old Gyantesse, was not determind to yeelde the Castle of the burning Lake, nor the three strong places whereof we haue spoken: he (by the counsaile of *Broquadan* and *Gandandel*) sent for *Madafima* to come vnto him, vnto whom he said: Damofel, you knowe how you and your women are entred into my prisons vpon this condition, that if your mother

did not yeeld into my hands the Isle of *Mongaza*, with the burning Lake, & the other places therunto belonging, your heads should answer me for it. And because I haue beene of late certified by those which I sent thither, of the refusall which she hath made, I will make you an example of it, that every one thereby may see what a matter of importance it is, not to keepe promise with a King: for you shall all die. When the poore Lady heard this conclusion so rigorous, the faire vermilion colour of her face was sodainely changed into a pale and deadly hew, and falling at the king his feete shee answered him, If it like your Maiesty, the death which you threaten vnto me, doth so much trouble my spirits, that I haue no meanes nor power to make you an answer. But if there be any in this companie that taketh pittie vpon twelue poore distressed Damofels, I doe most humbly beseech him to take our quarrell in hand: for if I haue entred into your prison, I did it by the comandement of my mother, and they by my perswasions did the like. And although that by reason every Gentleman bearing armes, is bound to maintaine the right of afflicted women, if (by misfortune) wee cannot finde any that taketh compassion of our miserie, yet it may please your Maiesty (mitigating the rigour of your lawes) to extend your mercy, and to heare vs in our iustifications, as reason and equity willeth. When *Gandandel* heard *Madafima* speake so boldly, hee suddenly answered, saying vnto the King, if it please your Maiesty, there is no reason that these women should bee suffered thus to pleade, for if you cause them not to die, every

one will doe as they doe, neuer performing any thing that they do promise vnto you. They are come hither as pledges, nothing ignorant of the conditions: wherefore then shall there bee any wrong done vnto them, to cut off their heads, for not yeelding that which they haue promised? My Lord *Gandandel*, answered the good knight *Grumedan*, if it please the King, his Maiesty shall not doe as you counsaile him: for mercey is more commendable in a King then cruelty, which he may vse when it pleaseth him. You know that these women, more by the comandement of a mother, and the obedience of a childe, then by any their owne wils, haue beene constrained to yeelde themselves prisoners, as they are, and euert as God loueth those that are humble and dutifull, so also the King who is his minister, ought not to despise them. Moreover I haue beene aduertised that certaine knights are already departed from the Firme-Island, to maintaine their quarrell against you, and the right which they haue: and therefore my Lord *Gandandel*, if you or your sonnes dare maintaine this counsell which you doe giue vnto the King for good, it may bee you may finde, that you or they which shall haue to doe with them, shall not be all at their best case. *Gandandel* hearing *Grumedan* to speake so virtuously, could willingly haue wished the words vnspoken, which he vttered so lightly: but now it was too late to remedy that which was past helpe, wherefore to saue his honour, he answered. *Don Grumedan*, you seeke to purchase me displeasure, and yet haue I not any way deserued it of you. As touching my sonnes there is not any in

this company, who knoweth them not for valiant and bolde knights, and such as will maintaine before all and against all men, that this which I haue sayde vnto the King, is according to right and equiuy. Wee shall shortly see what they will doe sayd *Grumedan*: but vpon mine honour, I speake not this in that I wish you any hurt, but onely because it seemeth vnto me that you counsaile the King amisse. Now did the King certainly know that against all right, and without any cause at all, hee had banished *Amadis*, notwithstanding his ancient vertue could not banish this new passion, but hearing *Grumedan* speake so wisely, hee willingly gaue eare vnto him: and afterward demanded of him who were the knights that came for *Madafima*. *Grumedan* named them all vnto him one after another. Truly sayd the King, for so small a number they are men of worth, and valiant knights. *Gandandel* did now very well perceiue, that his affaires were like to prosper worse and worse: knowing his two sonnes to be no such men as to match or compare with *Don Florestan*, *Agriais*, *Brian*, or *Garnat* of the feared full valley. Wherefore so soone as the King had sent the Damofels backe againe to prison, he went on seeke out *Bracadan*, vnto whom he wholly reioined all that which *Grumedan* had sayde vnto the king in his presence, at which hee was not lesse amased then hee, whereupon they both retyred into a chamber, that they might more priuately conferre together. And as they were in this consultation, & that *Bracadan*, reprooued *Gandandel*, cursing the houre that ever he was aduised by him, to bring *Amadis* into these trammes: a yong knight

named *Sarquiles*, Cosen vnto *Angriotta de Estranoux* (being in loue with one of the Nieces of *Broquadan*) was by chance hidden behind the Tapestry of the same chamber, staying for some signe or watch word, which was to be giuen vnto him by his louing Mistressse, hee I say heard all their counsaile, whereat hee was wonderfull abashed. For which cause incontinently after the traytours were departed, hee came foorth from his place, where hee had almost all that day beene hidden: and the next morning hee armed him, and as if he had beene come some farre journey, he entred into the Pallace where the king was, vnto whom he came and sayd: If it may please your Maiesty, I am none of your subiect nor liege man, but in requitall of the bringing vp and education that I haue had in your Court, I am bound to preferue and defend the honour of your Maiesty. Wherefore your highnesse may be pleased, to bee aduertised that within these three dayes, I was in such a place, where I heard that *Broquadan* and *Gandandel* did not only then conspire (but already had committed against God and your grace) the greatest treason that might be imagined. It is sure that they determined to counsell & perswade you to put *Madasima* and her gentlewomen to death, and for the rest I hope if it like your Maiesty, before ten dayes be past, that their wickednes shalbe wholly laid open & proued vnto you. And because that in maintayning such traitors, you haue of late banished my Lord *Amadis*, and many other good knights from your company, I am not determined to stay any longer with you, and therefore

I take my leaue of your grace, to goe seeke out my Vncle *Angriotta*, whom (if God please) you shall see in these parts, and I with him, determined to anouch by force of armes against these two traytors, their vniust conspiracies. God be with you (answered the king) seeing that you haue so great haste. Herewithall *Sarquiles* rose vp, leauing the king alone very pensiu for the wordes which hee had said vnto him, and some few dayes after he arriued in the Firme-Island, as *Amadis*, *Angriotta*, *Bruncor*, and others were walking by the Sea side, causing certaine ships to be prepared and rigged, to passe into *Gaule*: where king *Perion* had sent vnto *Amadis* that he should come for certaine affaires which were lately happened vnto him. When *Angriotta* beheld his Nephew *Sarquiles*, he wondred thereat, inquiring of him why hee had left king *Lisuart*. My Lord, answered *Sarquiles*, it is for a matter wherewith you & all this company will greatly admire. Hereupon hee recited vnto them the whole discourse of the practices and counsailes that *Broquadan* and *Gandandel* had held vpon the accusation of *Amadis* & his companions: Well answered *Angriotta*, I did alwaies thinke for of them. And you my Lord, said hee vnto *Amadis*, doe now finde that to be true which I haue heretofore told you: But seeing it is so, I protest they shall repent their treacherie: for I will depart hence to morrowe morning to goe and fight with them, and make them acknowledge their villany. Gentle friend answered *Amadis*, the matter being so certaine as it is, you haue no reason to deferre the execution of your enterprise: and if you had any sooner performed that

that which you now determine, it had beene (perchance) with lesse assurance then you now haue. And after many other discourses they went vnto their lodging, vntill the next morning that *Angriotta* took his leaue of *Amadis*, and accompanied with his Nephew *Sarquiles*, tooke the right way towards great *Brittaine*, where within few dayes after he arriued. Now you must vnderstand that euer since the departure of *Amadis*, king *Lisuart* was so melancholly as no man could be more, and hee spent all the day long in studying with himselfe: whereof one time about all the rest, *Broquadan* and *Gandandel* seeing him alone very pensiu, came vnto him and sayd. May it please your Maiesty, it seemeth vnto vs, that the ouer great care which you take in these your affaires, deprieth you of your wonted manner of life, and you take matters more to heart then you neede. It may welbe answered the king, but what meane you to tell me so? Is it (if it like your Maiesty) sayd they, for doubte of those that come from the Firme-Island, in the defence of *Madasima* and her Damosels? by the faith wee owe vnto God, if it please your grace to credit our counsell, you and your estate shall be henceforth in greater security then euer yet it hath beene. And to bring that to passe, commaund the heades of those pledges which you haue, this day to bee smitten off: Then afterwarde send vnto *Galuanes* and the rest of his company (your enemies) that vpon their liues they be not once so hardy as to enter into your countries, and if by chance they be already arriued, command them foorthwith to depart, or otherwise you will cause them to bee cut in pec-

ces. When the King heard this wicked speech, and vngodly counsaile of theirs, hee remembered that which *Sarquiles* had tolde vnto him, & therewithall he knew that without doubt these two traytors did with wrong procure the death of these Damosels: notwithstanding because he would not at that time amase them, hee onely answered this. You counsaile mee to things farre vnfitting my estate: the one that I should without processe or order of Iustice, put *Madasima* and her Damosels to death: and the other, that I should forbid fro my Court those knights that are minded to come thither. But if I should doe this which you say, I might be grievously reproved for it before God, who hath by his great bounty and mercy instituted mee King, to administer Iustice vnto euery one alike: therefore the counsell which you doe giue vnto mee, is wicked and vnworthy to be receiued. Let it suffice you therefore that I haue already listned vnto you in the accusation which you haue contriued against *Amadis*, wherof I doe greatly repent mee: for I neuer receiued of him, nor any of his, but all honor, pleasure, & seruice, wherefore I charge you vpon your liues, that you moue me no more thereof.

Saying so he rose vp, shewing by his countenance that hee was very angry, whereat *Gandandel* and *Broquadan* were greatly abashed, and they were constrained to depart vnto their lodging, to determine what was best for the to be done, seeing that already fortune had maruailously crossed them, & they came not in the King his presence all that day after vntill the next morning, when they attended



vpon him as hee rode into the fields. The King beeing halfe a league from the Cittie, he behelde comming toward him the knights of the Firme-Island, for the deliue-ry of *Madasima* and her Damofels, being come somewhat neere they all did their duties to his Maieftie. Then *Galuanes* who marched for- most, took vpon him to speake for all his fellowes, saying vnto the King. If it like your Maieftie, wee (being all of vs well assured of your accustomed vertue) are come to demand iustice of your grace for *Madasima* and her Damofels, and to defend their right if by force of armes it is defensible. My friends, answered hee, seeing that you haue already set vp your Tents in this place, if you thinke good you may heere abide for this day, and to morrow you may come vnto mee, to aduise vpon that which shall be reasonable to bee done. If it please your highnesse, said *Brian* of *Moniasta*, wee all are assured that accor- to your, ancient royall beha- viour, iustice shall not bee denied vnto vs, and if wee finde it other- wise, it is rather by the counsaile of some wicked traitors that are a- bout you, then any of your owne motion. *Brian, Brian*, saide the King, I am well assured that if you had beleued your father, you would neither haue departed from my seruice (as you haue done) nei- ther would you in this sort haue helde argument against mee. The argument which I do hold against your Maieftie, said *Brian*, is not for any ill will, or that I would not per- forme any dutifull seruice for your grace, for I know well that in time you will acknowledge that which I say true. And where your Maieftie doth tell me that if I had beleued my father, I would not

haue forsaken you, sauing there- uerence of your Maieftie I did ne- uer forsake you, for I neuer did be- long vnto you: but I onely came into your house to seeke my cousin *Amadis*, who so long as hee was yours, so long had I a desire to serue you, and neuer did I whilst I there remained offend you. Well, well, answered the King, wee will debate of this another time more at large. Which said, he bad them good night, and departed: for it was already somewhat late. Heere- tofore you haue heard how the King had the day before, after din- ner, taken vp *Gandandel* and *Bro- quadan*, who beeing very heauie, did consult a great while how they might with honour finish their wicked enterprife, for the next morning the twelue Knights of the Firme-Island met the King at Church, who after seruice was en- ded, called *Broquadan* and *Ganden- del*, vnto whom he said. You haue of long time counsailed me to put *Madasima* and her Damofels to death, beeing our prisoners, and that in their behalfe I should haue no iustification whatsoeuer. There- fore you must now make answer vnto that which these 12 Knights will maintaine. Then *Imosell* of *Burgoine* stepped forth, sayng vn- to the King. If it like your Maieftie, I and my fellowes are come into your Court to beseech you most humble, that you would extend your iustice and mercy to *Madasima* and her Damofels. Whereup- on *Gandandel* stepped forth and answered: My Lord *Imosel*, you request that iustice should bee ex- tended to *Madasima*, and so farre as I percciue, you twelue wil main- taine, that they ought to be heard in their iustifications, but by the faith that I owe vnto the King, if he

consent

consent thereunto he doth amisse, considering vnder what condition they are entred into his prison.

Belecue me *Gandandel* said *Imo- sel*, had you held your peace you had done but your duty, for the king hath not yet commanded you to speak, & also because you know that by the custome of great *Brit- taine* no woman ought to suffer death, except it bee in two cases, the one for *Leze maieftie*, the o- ther for treason. But there is not any in this company, who know- eth not how these poore women were brought into the king his hands, more by compulsion then their owne consent. Therefore we beseech your Maiefty and you my Lords all to consider of the mat- ter, for reason and pittie are most fit to be vsed therein. You are to blame answered *Gandandel*, to re- quest a thing so vnreasonable, and seeing it hath pleased the king to heare vs both, let him order the matter as to his maiefty shall seem most conuenient. Then the king caused euery one to depart, & cal- led some of the most principall of the realme vnto him, and amongst others his Vncle the Earle *Arga- mons*, an auncient & most vertuous Prince, vnto whom he said, Good Vncle, I pray you and all the rest also, to counsell me vpon this con- trouersie. But there was not any that would speake their opinion, before they had heard the king. Seeing it is so sayde the king, you shal presently know mine opinion, It seemeth vnto me *Imosel* of *Bur- goinie* hath both reasonable and wisely spoken, and that the Damo- fels ought to be heard, what they can say in their own defence. Truly if it like your Maiefty, sayd the old Earle, you speak like a ver- tuous king, and it is not possible to

giue a righter iudgement, of which opinion they were all. Wherefore he commanded *Gandandel* & *Bro- quadan* to bee sent for, and in the presence of the knights of the Firme-Island, hee gaue the same sentence, for the which they hum- bly thanked his maiefty, beseech- ing him that *Madasima* & her wo- men might be set at liberty. For we hope said they, to haue them acquitted either by reason or arms. It is well saide answered the king, who sent for the Damofels to come vnto him, and afterward said vnto them, Looke vp Ladies, be- hold these Gentlemen which will defend your right, will you be co- tent to put your quarrell and ad- uenture your liues vpō their force. Alas if it like your Maiefty answer- ed *Madasima*, seeing it pleaseth them to affoord vs this good, wee doe put our liues into their hands, and your good mercy. Trust mee Madame saide *Imosel*, If there bee any heere which will gainsay that you are not deliuered and set at liberty, behold me ready to proue the contrarie, & if there be twelue together of the like opinion, wee are twelue likewise that wil hazard our liues for yours. Therewithall the king did cast his eyes vpon *Gā- dandel* and *Broquadan*, and he per- ceiued that they hanged downe their heads, looking vpon the ground, so much amased, that they were not able to answer one word, wherefore the king saide vnto the knights of the Isle. My Lords, I pray you to withdraw your selues for this day, and to morrow you shall haue answer of those with whom you are to deale. Where- upon they all departed, and pre- sently after the king called apart *Broquadan* & *Gandandel*, vnto who he said, come hither, you knowe

Q 5

that

that many times you haue solicited me to put these poore Damofels to death, perswading mee that it was iust and reason so to doe, and that if need were you & your sons would maintain this counsaile vnto the death. You haue heard what *Imosel* and his fellowes haue saide vnto mee, which I doe thinke to be good & right, wherefore it is time that you determine what to do. For by the faith that I owe vnto God, I will not permit that any other of my knights shall fight with them, & if you look not vnto it, you shall bee answerable for all, and the Damofels deliuered. If it please your Maiesty, answered they, to morrow we will be ready to maintain whatsoever we haue saide. And for that time they departed to their lodging, greatly troubled for that which they were to do. Neuertheless, seeing that now there was no remedy, they determined to perseuer in their daurned opinion by argument of words onely, without putting themselues or their children in danger: knowing assuredly that they were not able to resist any of those that were come from the Firme-Island. But it happened out so well for them, as the very same night newes came vnto the King, that *Grumedata* the olde Giantesse was dead, and that a little before her death, shee had yeelded vp her strong places into the hands of the kings people, beseeching him to haue pittie vpon her daughter *Madassima*.

Whereupon the next morning at their returne from church, hee caused the twelue knights of the Firme-Island to bee called, vnto whom he said. My friends, you may carry away with you the Damofels which you demand, when it shall please you, for I set them at liberty,

because that this night the *Eagle Latin* hath written vnto me, that he hath the Isle of *Mongaza* in his hands, and that the olde Giantesse is deceased. If any were glad hereof, you may beleue that the two traitors *Broquadan* and *Gandandel* were nothing sorry, for as much as they did perceiue that if this had not happened, their treason had bid discovered. The *Imosel* answered the king. If your Maiestie doe but *Madassima* right, shee must not remaine poor nor disinherited, seeing your grace knoweth that children are bound to obey their parents as shee hath done, more by feare then free will. And so if it please your Maiesty, vsing your accustomed liberality, you should shewe her some grace and fauour, shewing thereby an example to all other vertuous and courageous Princes to do the like. *Imosel* sayde the king, let it suffice you that the Damofels are at liberty, for I cannot reuoke the gift which I haue made to my daughter *Lenor*, of the land which you demand. I most humbly beseech your Maiestie, answered *Galaanes*, to haue pittie vpon her and mee, who at this presēt ought to hold the place descended frō her ancestors, of whom shee is the lawfull inheretrix, especially of the land which you doe take from her: and if it please your highnesse, in remembrance of the seruices which I haue done vnto you, you may restore them vnto vs to hold them of your grace by fealty and homage. I haue said enough my Lord *Galaanes*, answered the king, that which is done, cannot be vndone. Trust me, answered he, seeing I can neither haue right nor reason of you, I will trie if I may get it some other way. Doe what you can, said the king, I am in good

hope

hope seeing I haue won if frō greater then you, to defend it against those that are lesse the they. Sir, answered *Galaanes*, he which got it for you, hath bin very badly recōpensed therefore. Care not you for that, saide the King, if he of whom you speake dare but adventure to aide you, I dare bee so bolde as to withstand him, and to make him beshrew himselfe. *Agrates* hearing these threats, was exceeding angry, and in great choller answered: Sir, although my Lord *Amadis* was neuer other the a wādring knight, yet did he that good for you which as yet you neuer recompensed, for he hath many times defended you, and deliuered you from death. *Floresan* did well perceiue that *Agrates* entred into farther tearmes then was fit hee should, for which cause he a little pulled him back, and said vnto the king. Sir, although you be a king and a great Lord, yet it may be you shall finde somewhat to do, to vse my Lord *Amadis* in such sort as you threaten him: By my faith, said *Brian*, *Amadis* hath done you too many seruices to be thus badly requited, especially he being sonne vnto a Prince as worthy as your selfe. Soft and faire *Dam Brian*, saide the king, we know wel enough that you are one of his friends. I am and so ought to be, said *Brian*, for euery one knoweth that I am his cosin german, and therefore it were a shame not to succour him in his neede. Truly, answered the King, for the same cause doe I hold you excused. And as they were in these tearmes, *Augriotta de Estranoux*, & *Sarguiles* his Nephew came before the King, who beeing armed at all points, did their duty vnto his Maiestie: but when the knights of the Firme-Island did beholde them, they greatly wondred, for they

knew nothing at al of this their enterprise. Then *Augriotta* with a loud voice began his speech in this manner. May it please your Maiestie, my Nephew and I heere presēt, do beseech your grace to cause two traitors that are in your Court; *Broquadan* and *Gandandel*, to appeare before your Maiestie, vnto whom I will declare the treason which they haue done against you. Much affrighted was *Broquadan* and his companion, hearing *Augriotta* speake after this manner, who continuing his speech saide: If it like your highnesse, these two wicked persons of whom I speake, without respect or feare of God or men, haue falsly accused my Lord *Amadis* & other of a matter whereof they neuer so much as in hoghe offended. By means whereof I dare well say, that you haue banished from you the best Knights that euer entred into Great Brittain, therefore if those traitours dare maintaine that they be not such as I teame them, I alone, by the help of God, and the edge of my sword will make them confesse it. And if they ought to bee excused by reason of their age, there is neither of them both which hath not a sonne of long time bearing armes, and well enough esteemed of amongst the Knights of your court, against whom I will fight if they will maintain the quarrell of their wicked fathers. Most mighty foueraigne, answered *Gandandel*, doth not your grace see the boldnes of this proud iniurious fellow, who is come into this countrey to no other end, but onely to shame the Gentlemen of your court? By my faith if your Maiestie would haue beleued me long agoe, so soone as hee had entred into your Realme, hee should haue bin hanged vp, vpon the first tree

tree that he had come vnto, but seeing that your grace doth suffer him, you must not hereafter be abashed if *Amadis* in his owne person doe come euen hither to iniurie your owne selfe. Notwithstanding, thus much I protest, that by the liuing God, if I were as young now as when I began to enter into the seruice of the late deceased king your brother, vnto whom I haue done many great seruices, I am well assured that *Angriotta* durst not so much as haue dreamed to vtter halfe these iniurious words of me, as hee hath proferred now before your Maiesty. But the gallant doth well know that I am olde and crazed, as well by the great number of my aged yeeres, as by the infinite wounds which I haue receiued, in a manner in all the parts of my body, in the warres of yon predecessors, wihnes wherof are yet these relikes. Saying so hee opened his breast, vpon the which were many scarres apparrantly to be seene. Villaine, said *Angriotta*, shouddest thinke to defend thee with the eloquence of thy tongue. But by the faith of a Knight, if the King do but iustice vnto vs both, hee shall apparrantly perceiue thy great treason. There withall *Sarquiles* stepped forth and kneeling downe, hee said vnto the King: It is long since I did aduertise your Maiestie, that so soone as my Lord *Angriotta* heere present, should come vnto your Court, I would let you vnderstand that, which with my two eares I did hear spoken by the mouth of these two traitors: heereupon hee recited word by word, the whole consultations which he had heard, wherat al they that were present did greatly wonder to heare such conspiracies repeated. And for as much if it like your Maiestie, said *Sarquiles*,

as they can in no sort excuse themselves, my Lord *Angriotta* and I will combate with their three sons, if they dare maintaine the contrary. Now were they present of who they spake, who seeing the injury that was done vnto their aged fathers, and that euery one gaue credit to the words of *Sarquiles*, in a great rage they thrust through the preefe, and falling on their knees before the King, they said: May it please your Maiestie, *Angriotta* and *Sarquiles* haue most falsly and wickedly lied in the words which they haue saide before your Maiestie, and wheresoeuer, or whensoever they doe say so they shall lie, and therefore it may please you presently to grant vnto vs the combat which they haue demanded. Truly, answered the King, it is now very late, but I am content that to morrow after seruice you shall do that which you can, as well on the one part as on the other. Then *Damas* one of the sonnes of *Briquedan* by the sister of *Gandandel*, a valiant and expert man at arms (but wholly adicted to villany) stepped forth saying vnto the King: Saving the reuerence of your Maiestie, *Sarquiles* hath vntruly and leaudly lied in all that he hath said; and I shall be one of them that will maintaine it against him. By my faith, answered *Angriotta*, if there were a fourth here too, he should be as well handled as I hope thou shalt. Go too then, saide the King, depart you all for this day, and to morrow thinke vpon your business.

Afterwards hee called *Grumedan* and *Giontes* his Nephew, and after hee had consulted with them a litle while; hee commanded *Gandandel* and *Briquedan* to come before him, vnto whom hee sayde: Come hether, you haue

haue so many times declared vnto me, that *Amadis* and his associates had determined to betray me, and to vsurpe vpon mee the land of Great Brittain, yet neuertheless when it is come to an issue, you excuse your selues from the combate, setting your sons to maintaine your wickednesse, who cannot doe therewithall, notwithstanding God is iust, & by all that I do owe vnto him, it is very lewdly spoken of you, neuer would I ever haue thought you such as you are. May it please your Maiesty answered *Gandandel*, our children seeing vs too slow in our iustification, put themselves forward to maintaine the honour of their fathers. They had reason sayd *Grumedan*, for hardly could you haue recovered any other, & no doubt but you are men of little worth, or reputation, for the Diuell could neuer haue inuented such wickednesse as you haue set abroach, so as if the King should cause a thousand such as you are to be hanged, yet could hee not holde him satisfied for the treacherie which you haue done vnto him, but your children shall beare the punishment for you. My Lord *Grumedan* said they, although you wish it so, yet shall it not hapen so, if God please: for our sonnes deliuering vs from shame, shall obtaine the victorie with honour. You shall see sayd *Grumedan* what the issue will bee. And because this talke continued longer then the King liked, hee sent euery man vnto his lodging. And the same night those which the next morning were to performe the combate, did looke that nothing might be wanting in their armour, especially *Angriotta* and his Nephew, who withdrew them vnto a Chappell where they

continued in prayer vntill the day breake. And because the King had receiued iniurious speeches by the twelue knights of the Island, they went vnto their tents, with *Madasima* and her Damofels, where they remained all that night. But the day appearing, they all moued on horseback, & came to accompany their fellowes *Angriotta* and *Sarquiles*, vnto the place of combate, there were already arriued the King, Princes, and Lords, with the Queen & the other Ladies. Thus the combatants entred into the field, *Angriotta* and *Sarquiles* on the one side, *Tarin*, *Corian* and *Damas* on the other side. Then the trumpets sounded, whereupon each of the pulled downe the beauer of his helmer, and with their Lances in their rests, they set spurs to their horses, running with such force one against another, that *Corian* and *Tarin* brake vpon *Angriotta*, & *Damas* vpon *Sarquiles*: but *Angriotta* hit *Corian* so found a stroke with his Launce that he vnhorfed him. Then turning his face, he saw *Tarin* ready with his sword in his hand: who beholding his brother ouerthrowne, came with great rage against *Angriotta*, & thinking to strike him vpon the top of the helmer, the blow fell short, and lighted vpon the head of his horse, wherewith hee was grievously wounded. Notwithstanding *Angriotta* finding that he was neere his enemy, he hit him so soundly with his sworde, that with the stroke hee vnhorfed him, and at the same instant he himselfe perceiued his horse waxed faint, with the wound hee had receiued vpon his head, forsooke him and leaped on the ground. Then with his shield on his arme, he came against him whom he had first overthrown

throwne, who was already risen vp & marched against *Angriotta*. And thus began the combate betweene the two, where shortly after came *Tarin* in like sorte, and *Angriotta* was to answer them both: neuerthelesse he did make knowne, that he was not to seeke in such an extremitie: for hee had led them so roundly that hee gaue them not so much leasure as to take their breath, so that in lesse space then an houre, their armour was hacked in peeces, & they so wounded that the blood ran downe on all parts. I beleue there is none of you all that doth heare this History, who vnderstandeth not well enough, that *Angriotta* could not defend himselfe so well, but that hee felt some part of the strokes, for he was fore wounded in many places, yet was it nothing in respect of the others. In the meane time *Sarquiles*, whom *Damas* had in hand, began to be ashamed with the ouer great resistance that his enemy made vnto him, and for the same cause setting spurs vnto his horse, he found the meanes to buckle with his enemy: and as they were struggling together and struing who should fall first, *Angriotta* doubting that his Nephew would haue the worst, drew towards him, but before hee came neer vnto him, *Sarquiles* and *Damas* fell down one vpon another: By this means was their incounter re-enforced, because that *Angriotta* endeauoured to succour his Nephew, & the others to relieue their kinsman: Who being vnder *Sarquiles* could by no meanes rise vp, for *Sarquiles* held him so short, that pulling off his helmet, hee thrust his sword into his throat, then seeing his enemy dead hee left him there, & came running vpon *Tarin*

and his companion, who were in a manner out of breath, & ready to yeeld, or to ask mercie. The which the King, *Broquadan* & *Gandalin* perceiuing, they were so sory that they departed. Notwithstanding although they were displeased with this sight, yet all the rest of the Court there present, tooke pleasure to behold it, for the loue which they did beare vnto *Amadis* & his friends. And more gladder yet were they when they saw them brought to the extremitie of their vnhappy end. For scant had the King turned his head frō the window, but that *Angriotta* did hit *Corian* so forcible a blow, that hee quite cut off all his right shoulder: with the extreame griefe whereof, giuing a signe of his death, he fell downe kissing the ground with his nose, after whom *Tarin* staid not long before he did as much.

Thus were the sons of these traitors slaine, for the which *Madassima*, *Oriana*, and many others did greatly reioyce. Then *Angriotta* & his Nephewes tooke the bodies of the vanquished, and dragged them forth of the fields, afterwards they demaunded of the Iudges if they had performed as much as was requisite, who answered that they had. Whereupon they both retired in great triumph, & accompanied with their friends, they came vnto the tents of their fellowes, conducting with them *Madassima* and her women, because they knew assuredly that King *Lisuart* was very angry for the good fortune which had hapned vnto the, so much hurt did he wish vnto *Amadis*, notwithstanding that he wel perceiued how his affairs prospered very badly euer since he had driuen him away, & the *Frēch* knights of his cōpany.

The end of the Second Booke.

A



## A Table of the Chapters contained in this Second Booke.

### CHAPTER I.

**T**He description of the *Firme-Island*. who made the incantments, and placed those great riches which were found in the same. Fol. 1.

Chap. 2. How *Amadis*, *Galaor*, *Florestan* and *Agraies*, hauing taken leaue of the faire *Briolania*, to returne vnto King *Lisuart*, were carried into the *Firme-Island* to prooue the arch of *Loyall* louers, and the other aduentures in the same. Fol. 6.

Chap. 3. How *Durin* departed to goe towards *Amadis*, vnto whom he deliuered the Letters from *Oriana*, and what hurt hapned thereby. F. 14.

Chap. 4. How *Gandalin* and *Durin* followed the same way that *Amadis* had taken, brought the rest of his armour which hee had left behinde, they found him sleeping, and how he fought against a Knight who hee did ouercome. Fol. 18.

Chap. 5. who was the Knight vanquished by *Amadis*, and what happened vnto him, before he fought with him. Fol. 23.

Chap. 6. How *Don Galaor*, *Florestan* and *Agraies*, undertooke the search of *Amadis*: who hauing left his armour, changed his name, and withdrew himselfe to an Hermitage, in the company of a very olde Hermit. There to liue solitary. F. 27.

Chap. 7. How *Durin* returned vnto the *Princesse Oriana*, vnto whom hee declared the sorrowfull newes of *Amadis*: and of the great sorrow which she made, after she vnderstood of his dispaire. Fol. 35.

Chap. 8. How *Don Guillian* the

*Pensue* did bring vnto the Court of King *Lisuart*, the shield, armour and sword of *Amadis*, which hee had found lying by the fountaine of the plaine field. Fol. 39.

Chap. 9. How the faire *Forlorne* being in the *Rocke* with the *Hermite*, there arriued a ship, in the which was *Corisanda*, who sought for her friend *Florestan*, and of that which happened vnto them. Fol. 46.

Chap. 10. How the Gentlewoman of *Denmarke* going in search of *Amadis*, after long trauaile coasting along many strange Islands, by chance she arriued in the poore *Rocke*, where *Amadis* was, who was called the faire *Forlorne*, whom she knew, & how they returned together towards *Oriana*. Fol. 53.

Chap. 11. How *Galaor*, *Florestan* and *Agraies*, departed from the *Firme-Island*, to goe seeke *Amadis*, of whom they could heare no tydings at all, wherupon they al returned vnto the Court of King *Lisuart*. Fol. 60.

Chap. 12. How King *Lisuart* being set at the Table, there came before him a strange Knight armed at all points, who defied him: The conference that *Florestan* had with him, and how *Oriana* was comforted with the good newes that she received from *Amadis*. Fol. 71.

Chap. 13. How the faire *Forlorne* sent *Enil* his Esquire vnto London, to cause a new armour to be made for him, & what aduenture chanced vnto him in going to *Mirefleur*. Fol. 78.

Chap. 14. How that after the faire *Forlorne* had ended his aduenture,

## The Table.

venture, he went unto the fountaine of the three Channells: from thence he took his way to Mireflour, where he found Oriana, with whom he remained eight dayes together: and at the same time there arrived in the Court of King Lifuart an auncient Gentleman, bringing with him two Jewels of singular vertue, whereby the faithfull lover, from the fained might be tryed, the which Amadis & Oriana, determine to make prooffe of, in such secret manner, that they would neither be knowne of the King nor any other. Fol. 90.

Chap. 15. How the Damsell of Denmarke was sent unto London, to know what answer Enil had received from the King, touching the safe conduct which was demanded by the Faire Forlorne, who did afterwards bring Oriana thither to prove the strange Jewels. Fol. 99.

Chap. 16. How after the Faire Forlorne had brought Oriana backe againe to Mireflour, he departed, that he might be in the battell with King Lifuart: and what happened unto him. Fol. 110.

Chap. 17. How King Cildadan and Galaor were unawares to themselves, carried away by twelue Damsels, and one of them was put into a strong Tower, enuironed with the Sea, and the other in a Garden enclosed with high walles, where they thought they had beene in prison, & of that which happened there unto them. Fol. 120.

Chap. 18 How the evening ensuing, the King being risen from the

Table, walking about the galleries of his Pallace, he beheld two great fires upon the Sea, that came directly towards the Citie. Fol. 130.

Chap. 19. How after the departure of Virganda, the King being readie to mount on horsebacke, to execute the enterprize which he had determined to make upon the burning Lake, there came before him a Damsel Gyantesse, to understand whether his Majesty would bee pleased to reserve the quarrell that hee pretended in his voyage, upon the comate betwixt Ardan Canila, and Amadis of Gaule, with such conditions as shall be declared unto you. Fol. 137.

Chap. 20. How Bruneo de bonne Mer did fight with Madamine the ambitious, brother to the Damsel inuasions, and of the accusations that were made by some of the enemies of Amadis unto the King, for which cause he and many others (that were desirous to follow him) departed from the Court. Fol. 151.

Chap. 21. How Amadis with many others his confederates sought the service of King Lifuart, and went as well to prove the adventures of the Arch of loyall lovers, as also of the forbidden chamber. Fol. 163.

Chap. 22. How Oriana remained in great perplexitie, not onely for the departure of Amadis, but also because she felt herselfe great with childe: and of that which happened to the twelue Knights that were departed from the Firme-Island, to deliver Madasima and her Damsels. Fol. 173.

FINIS.

# THE THIRD BOOKE Of Amadis de Gaule.

CONTAINING THE DISCORDS  
and warres which befell in Great Brittain, and  
there about, occasioned by the bad counsell, which  
King Lifuart received from Gandandell and  
Brocadan, against Amadis and his fol-  
lowers: whereby many good Knights  
(afterward on either side) cruelly  
concluded their Lives.

Written in French by the Lord of *Essars*, *Nicholas de Herberay*, Commissarie in Ordinarie for the Kings  
Artillerie, and his Lieutenant in the Countrie  
and Gouvernement of *Picardie*, vnder *Mon-*  
*sieur de Brissac*: Great Master and  
Captaine Generall of the  
said Artillerie.

Translated into English by A. M.



LONDON,  
Printed by NICHOLAS OKES, dwelling in  
Foster-lane. 1618.